



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Afr  
108  
89

KPG 602

Harvard College  
Library



THE GIFT OF  
EDWIN R. FAIRCHILD  
OF CAMBRIDGE

July 12, 1924





100



COPYRIGHTED 1883

STANLEY CUTTING HIS WAY THROUGH THE DARK CONTINENT.



0

# HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT

## AND HOW STANLEY FOUND EMIN PASHA.



COMPLETE HISTORY OF ALL THE GREAT EXPLORATIONS AND  
DISCOVERIES IN AFRICA, FROM THE EARLIEST  
AGES TO THE PRESENT TIME,

INCLUDING A FULL, AUTHENTIC AND THRILLING ACCOUNT OF

### STANLEY'S FAMOUS RELIEF OF EMIN PASHA,

REPLETE WITH ASTOUNDING INCIDENTS, WONDERFUL ADVENTURES,  
MYSTERIOUS PROVIDENCES, GRAND ACHIEVEMENTS, AND GLORIOUS  
DEEDS, AS REPRESENTED IN THE DEVOTED LIVES AND SPLENDID  
CAREERS OF SUCH BRILLIANT CHARACTERS AS

**HENRY M. STANLEY, EMIN PASHA, GEN. (CHINESE) GORDON,**

And all the other Great Travellers, Hunters and Explorers, who, for More Than One  
Thousand Years, have made Africa a Land of Wonders by their  
Heroism and Unparalleled Daring.

**COVERING THE WHOLE HISTORY OF AFRICAN EXPLORATION AND DISCOVERY.**

*ENLIVENED WITH STORIES OF MARVELLOUS HUNTS AND WONDERFUL  
ADVENTURES AMONG WILD ANIMALS, FEROCIOUS REPTILES,  
AND CURIOUS AND SAVAGE RACES OF PEOPLE  
WHO INHABIT THE DARK CONTINENT.*

**BY J. W. BUEL,**

THE FAMOUS AUTHOR OF

"The Beautiful Story," "The Living World," "The Story of Man," "Sea and Land," "The World's Wonders,"  
"Exile Life in Siberia," Etc.

**Illustrated with 500 of the Grandest, Most Beautiful and Wonderful Engravings**

AND

**MAGNIFICENT COLORED PLATES.**

PUBLISHED AND MANUFACTURED BY

**HISTORICAL PUBLISHING COMPANY.**

PHILADELPHIA, PA. ST. LOUIS, MO.

✓ ~~Alto 589~~  
✓ 1.PG 602

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
EDWIN R. FAIRCHILD  
JULY 12, 1924



COPYRIGHT, 1889, BY H. S. SMITH.  
(ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.)

**\*\* The illustrations in this work being from original drawings, and protected by copyright, their reproduction in any form is unlawful, and notice is hereby given that persons guilty of infringing the copyright thereof will be prosecuted.**





# INTRODUCTION

The title 'INTRODUCTION' is written in a large, ornate, blackletter-style font. It is enclosed within a decorative rectangular frame with rounded corners. Above the frame, there are floral and leafy branches. Below the frame, there is a small, detailed illustration of a landscape with a body of water, trees, and a small building or structure on the shore. The entire title block is centered at the top of the page.

**R**ELIGION and science, mystery and fact, ambition and disappointment, grandeur and ruin—all the antitheses of human aspiration and realization—find remarkable example in the history of that wondrous country surnamed the DARK CONTINENT. Mystery has, for centuries, hung above it like a gruesome pall, the wild riot of a boundless superstition has hovered over its strange people until the world has whispered the very name with a feeling of dread and given to it that regard which attaches only to ghostly and ghastly things of distempered fancy. But dark as has been the mantle of dread which enveloped her during the long centuries, Africa has at last been revealed, through the search-light of bold exploration, and now meets our scrutiny with the interest of a newly discovered world.

The restless and insatiable ambition of the adventurous, the longing of the scientist, the greed of the avaricious, the mercy of the philanthropist, have at length triumphed over the obstacles which nature and the evil and retarding influence of superstition so long opposed to successful invasion, and behold, now, the panorama of a practically new continent with all its secrets disclosed!

The absorbing popular interest in African exploration, which has been growing apace for fifty years, and which finds emphasis in Stanley's return from his last and most perilous expedition, stimulates afresh a demand for a history of that great natural division of our globe. This desire springs not alone from recent events—these serving rather as a culmination of public concern than the creation of a new interest—for during the past century a hundred things have transpired to focus international consideration of the DARK CONTINENT.

The wonderful labors of Livingstone quickened missionary enterprise, and led to the establishment of stations all over the country; prosperity of the Dutch and English settlements in South Africa, followed by a development of gold and diamond mines, gave fresh impetus to immigration into that region; the Sultan of Zanzibar, by assuming sovereignty over a large portion of the east coast, and encouraging trade with tribes of the interior, has been the prime means of opening a highway to the great lakes. But more than these have been the civilizing effects following Stanley's first journey across the Continent; for by this successful expedition was determined the navigableness of the Congo river and the inconceivably rich region that it drained, as well as the valuable products of the native woods and mines. By these discoveries an incentive for opening trade with the interior was created, nations became competitors for the fruits of this newly opened field, and enterprise in all its phases at once entered the list for commercial gain. In consequence of this friendly rivalry, lines of steamers were placed in service on the Congo, railroad lines projected, and to intensify the ambitious spirit of those attacking the barbarous regions of West Africa, the German Government has entered the eastern districts with equal activity and laid the survey of a railway line from Mombossa to the central lakes.

Another promoting cause, almost equal to the preceding, is to be found in military events that have made the Soudan a centre of marked interest for the past twenty years. When slavery ceased to exist as an institution in America when the serfs were manumitted in Russia, and a scheme for liberation of the slaves in Brazil was approved and adopted by that government, all the civilized world had come to an appreciation of the wrongs and evils of human bondage. The last precedent and example was removed, and there was now a universal sympathy among civilized nations in favor of destroying slavery in every part of the world. In Africa alone the horrors of kidnapping prevailed, and in no countries except Egypt, Arabia and Turkey, was, and is, human bondage encouraged or tolerated. The pressure of a foreign demand for its suppression forced Egypt to at least assume the mask of hostility to slavery and this pretence has had the one most beneficial effect of concentrating international interest, looking towards the destruction of this great human curse. It is from this pretence, assuming aggressive activity through efficient Christian leaders, that the story of Chinese Gordon and Emin Pasha, representing as they did a lukewarm government, becomes so thrillingly interesting. The tragedy



fate of Gordon, and the unspeakable perils, sufferings and heroic sacrifices of Emin, have re-enforced the world's horror at the frightful abuse of Turkish and Arabic power in the Soudan, in which the savagery of the semi-civilized exceeds immeasurably that of the lowest barbarians. This depravity, that is working such inconceivable cruelty, in the torture and enslavement of millions, and the destruction by lash, sword and knife, and the impoverishment of millions of others, has nerved the arm of European nations to bring a swift punishment upon the despoilers of the poor Africans. When armies from the north shall be sent as a retribution, to wreak vengeance upon the kidnappers and slave traders in Egypt and the Equatorial Provinces, columns of emigrants will bring up the rear, and a wave of civilization will thus overspread that now miserable country, to its everlasting glory.

These several mighty influences, operating conjunctively, or to one general end, and the necessity for an outlet that will relieve the congested populations of Europe and China, serve to concentrate public attention upon Africa. Recognizing this pregnant fact, and comprehending the situation of present effort towards the reclamation of the DARK CONTINENT, I have given my abilities herein towards furnishing such a history of Africa as will satisfy not only those who find pleasure in reading the thrilling exploits of great explorers, but also those who desire reliable information respecting the climatic and physical features of the continent, and its soil, products, advantages for agriculture, mining and manufacture. To enlarge the interest which now centres chiefly around Stanley and Emin Pasha, I have undertaken also to give the evidences upon which rest a belief that Africa was, in a prehistoric period, a continent of civilization and human culture, and have introduced such accounts as are recoverable from the musty past, of the powerful and inconceivably rich kingdoms into which the country was once divided, and of which relics are still observable in ruins, manners, traditions, inscriptions, and excavations that reveal abandoned mines, besides allusions made by ancient poets, philosophers and geographers, who at least intimate a knowledge of the interior regions of the country.

Following a history of ancient Africa, I have sought to present a summary of the principal expeditions and individual explorers that have entered the continent during the past two hundred years, together with results of their labors. By so doing I have been able to follow the advancing lines of conquest and reclamation, in settlements along the coast and a gradual extension towards

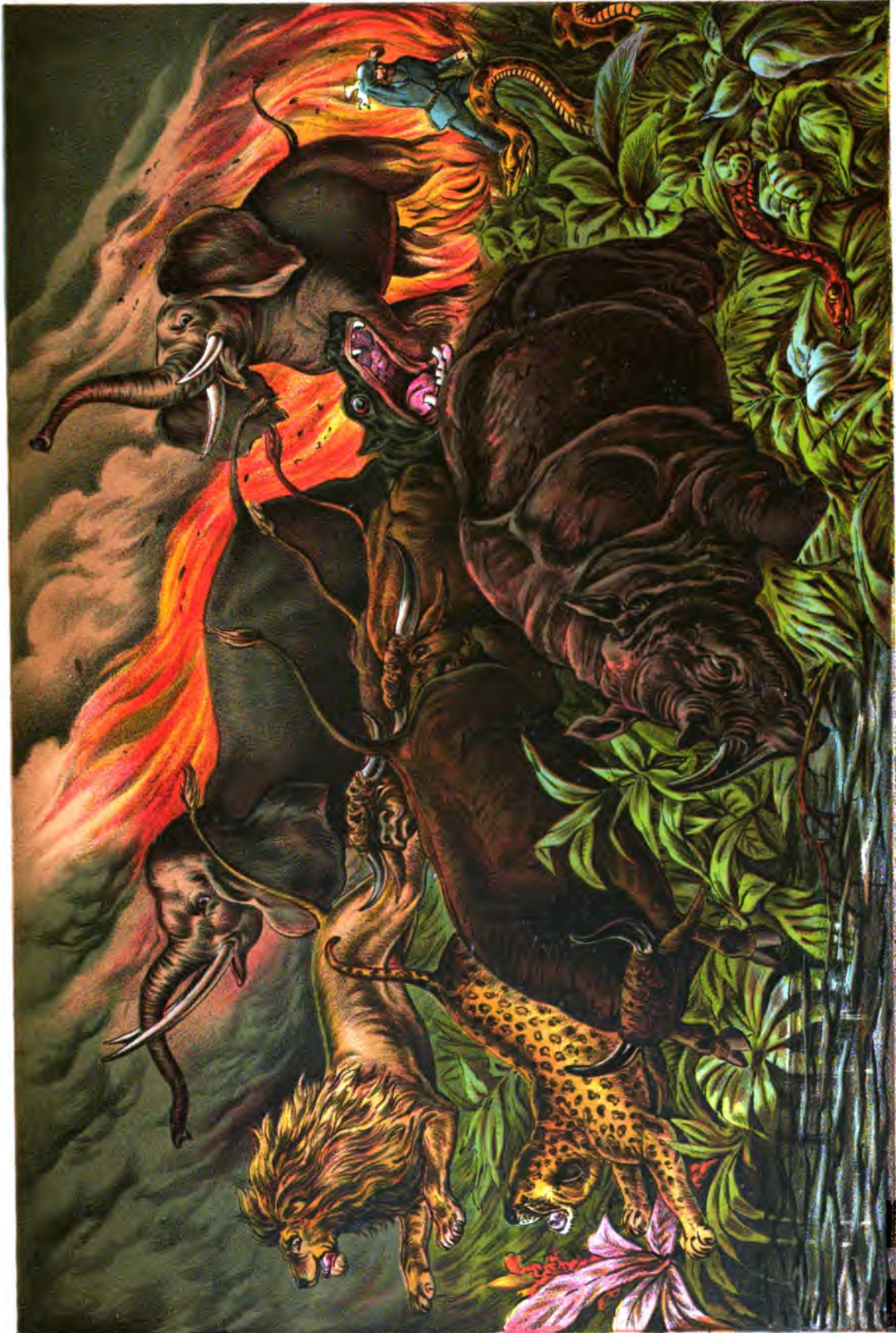
the mid-interior. Not alone this, but the record of discovery in Africa is made complete, its rivers, lakes, mountains, plains and valleys; its tribes, their superstitions, customs and savagery; its animals, reptiles, great birds and monstrosities; its products of gold, ivory, fine woods, and singular samples of ingenious workmanship of the natives; its grains, grasses and domestic herds.

All the facts which I have herein introduced are made to serve as preliminary to the culmination of that great and successful effort which this book is intended no less to describe than to celebrate. The information here given is necessary to a complete understanding of the objects of Emin Pasha's services in Equatorial Africa and the causes which prompted the dispatch of Stanley's expedition to his relief. It also enables the reader to comprehend the perils that attend travel in that country, and also its pleasures, for excursions therein are not entirely without days of rare delight and intense enjoyment, especially to those of adventurous dispositions.

While the geography of Africa is not yet thoroughly known, and there remain several extensive regions in which explorers have not entered, still, no future expedition, unless of a military nature, is likely to excite such popular interest as that from which Stanley and Emin returned in December, 1889. With the subsidence of that applause which hails a victor, more serious matters are likely to engage the European Powers in their relations to Africa, and an army will most likely compose coming expeditions, that will invade the country, not for discovery, but for conquest, and a redemption of the slave-cursed continent to the beneficent purposes of civilization.







WILD GAME OF AFRICA FLEEING BEFORE FIRE.

COPYRIGHTED 1883



# CONTENTS



## CHAPTER I.

**Africa of the Ancients**—Her former magnificence—The cradle of civilization—Ruins of great cities on the Nile—The skeleton of greatness—The ancient kingdom of Sofala—Wonderful remains—A writing that no living person can decipher—Evidences of a vanquished race—The mysterious Prester John—From whence came Solomon's riches?—The country of Ophir located—The surprising land of gold ivory, peacocks and almug trees—A history of the Ophir mines—Enormous number of elephants, . . . PAGES  
23-42

## CHAPTER II.

**A History of Africa**—Why the country has been so long neglected—Whence is derived the name *Africa*—References by ancient poets—Strange beliefs respecting Africa—Astounding legends—A tribe born with a single leg, whose progress is by hopping—Feet that serve as a sun-shade—Headless men—A paradise—Expeditions of discovery—Excursions of the Phoenicians—Crucified for failing to circumnavigate the continent—First expedition to the deserts—In the land of dwarfs—Portuguese conquests on the coast—Finding the route to India—Da Gama's discoveries—Was Africa well known to the ancients?—Maps of Africa many hundred years old—A land of rivers—John Ogilby's map—All the lakes, rivers, towns and provinces well known hundreds of years ago—The source of the Nile long ago known—An ancient map compared with the latest—The wonderful city of Timbuctoo—Rivers of the Sahara Desert—Murder of Colonel Flatters, . . . 45-56

## CHAPTER III.

**Arabian Discoveries in Central Africa**—Rise of Mohammedanism—War of Dynasties—Compelled to flee to the desert—Origin of the *Fellahs*—A golden throne—Slaughter of defenceless natives—The ancient kingdom of Bornu—Splendor of Timbuctoo—Efforts to penetrate Africa from the west—Prince Agave—Mystery of his person—Discovery of a Christian empire—Covilham in Abyssinia—Conquest of Timbuctoo—Murder of Captain Thompson—Seized by a crocodile—Stebb's ascent of the Niger—The French in Africa—Establishment of the first coast settlements—Mungo Park's travels—Commits suicide—Discovery of the Niger's course—A cruel scene—Drinking poison—Lander's discoveries—His death from an arrow wound—Davidson's expedition—Murdered by Arabs—Richardson's expedition—His death—Barth's explorations—Death of Overweg—Relief expeditions—Execution of Vogel—Wreck of the *Medusa*—A tale of horrible suffering—Cannibalism—Riot, murder and suicide—Ten saved out of 150—The story of a raft, . . . 57-77



## CHAPTER IV.

**Early Expeditions into East Africa**—Marco Polo's travels on the east coast—Columbus' reliance in Polo's descriptions—Branding Christians—A wonderful land—Astounding stories about animal life in Africa—Herodotus and his fancies—Hanno's tales—Chariot of the gods—Witchcrafts of the Africans—A bird that carries off elephants—A wonderful boar—Hideous men—Cats with human faces—The apocryphal unicorn—Giants and dwarfs—Astounding stories—Gorillas—African Amazons—The wondrous kingdom, where males are not permitted, . . . . .

76-90

## CHAPTER V.

**Travellers in South and East Africa**—Travels of M. le Vaillant—Lichtenstein's discoveries—The first missionary—Summary of explorations in South Africa—Advent of the hunters—Wild sports—Harris, Cummings and Andersson—Andersson's discoveries—Bain's and Chapman's expedition—TRAVELS OF LIVINGSTONE—His services as a missionary—Joins Oswell and Murray—Discovery of Lake N'gami—In the Makoloko country—Discovery of the Zambesi River—Converting the natives and founding mission stations—The wonderful Victoria Falls—Arrival at Mauritius. . . . .

91-101

## CHAPTER VI.

**Livingstone's Last Expedition and Death**—Arrival at Quilimane—Discovery of Nyassa Lake—Cruelty of the slave traders—Ascending the Zambesi—Elephants, hippopotami and alligators—Fate of the Mabotsa mission—Death of Mrs. Livingstone—Exploration of Lake Nyassa—Return to Quilimane—Trip to India—LIVINGSTONE'S THIRD EXPEDITION—A search for the Nile's source—The horrors of slavery—On the shores of Tanganyika Lake—Casembe's kingdom—Chopping off the hands of his subjects—Discovery of Lake Bangweolo—At Ujiji—Arabs murdering the natives—A long journey—Return to Ujiji—Meeting with Stanley—Travels with Stanley—The parting—Renews his explorations—A dreadful march—Death of Livingstone, . . . . .

102-117

## CHAPTER VII.

**Discoveries in the Central Regions**—Travels of James Bruce—His discoveries of ancient kingdoms—His search for the Nile's source—Expedition of Werne—Burton's East Africa—His fitness for African exploration—A journey to Mecca—Off for the African lakes—In contact with a wizard—The murder of M. Maizan—Large game, and more dreaded superstitions—Discovery of Tanganyika Lake—Visit to Ujiji—Skirting the lake shores—Water antelopes—A wonderful island—Tanganyika Lake known to earlier explorers—In contact with cannibals—The Rusizi River—Speke's discovery of the Nile's source—Burton's jealousy—The value of Burton's discoveries—His observations on the slave trade, . . . . .

118-135

## CHAPTER VIII.

**Captain Speke's Explorations**—Assisted by the Royal Geographical Society—Joined by Captain Grant—Departure for Cape Town—Capture of a Spanish slaver—The journey from Zanzibar begun—A rhinoceros hunt—A savage scene—Tossed by a buffalo—Thrilling adventure—Between two fires—Meeting with an old friend—A visit to King Rumanika—The fatted wives of the king—A grandly successful hunt—The scar of a rhinoceros' thrust—Shooting three rhinoceri—The court of M'tesa—Horrible scenes—The king's harem, and how it was kept replenished—Entertained by the king—Espousal of four virgins by the king—Sacrificing a child—On the shores of Victoria Lake—Trouble with the natives—Hunting in Usoga—Execution of four women—Beliefs respecting the whites—Exasperating actions of King Kamrasi—Floating down the Kafue River—The Wanyoro people—False report of a relief expedition—Meeting a party of slave hunters—Arrival at Gondokoro—Return to England—Awarded the gold medal, . . . . .

136-153

## CHAPTER IX.

**Baker's Expedition to the Nile's Source**—Preparation for his journey—Accompanied by his wife—Pushing his way up the Nile—Death of John Schmidt—Adventure with a hippopotamus—Tribes living along the Nile—Central station of the slave traders—A mutiny—Meeting between Baker, Speke and Grant

## CONTENTS.

23

—A second mutiny—An elephant hunt—Exciting sport—Narrow escape from a wounded bull—More hunting—Charged by a wild boar—A devilish guard—Discovery of the Albert N'yanza—Return to England—Awarded the Victoria medal, . . . . . 159-161

### CHAPTER X.

**Baker's Efforts to Suppress the Slave Trade**—In service to the Khedive—The appointment of the expedition—A fleet of boats—The trip to Gondokoro—Man seized by a crocodile—Attacked by a hippopotamus—Shooting game and liberating slaves—Building a town—The Shillook tribe—Hippopotamus kills a sheik—Capture of a slaver vessel—A fight with the Baris—Terrible adventure with a crocodile—A sailor's arm bitten off by a crocodile—Shooting elephants across the river—Off for the Albert N'yanza—Provoking difficulties—A lively dance of naked Venuses—Effects of music on the natives—Desolating effects of war—News from Kabba Rega and M'tesa—Hunting antelopes—A visit from Kabba Rega—Uncle Rionga—Roasting people over slow fires—Ceremonies over the body of a dead king—Breaking the bones and burying victims alive—The value of female slaves—Blessed is the father who has many girls—Baker's men poisoned—Treachery of Kabba Rega—Baker attacked—Cutting his way through to Foweira—An awful march—Meeting with Rionga—Ceremony of blood brotherhood—The Makkarika cannibals—March to Fatiko—Atrocities of the cannibals—Defeat of Abou Saoud—A grand hunt for noble game—Thrilling scene—The prairie on fire—Flight of royal game—Exciting adventure with a lioness—End of the expedition, and its results, . . . . . 168-198

### CHAPTER XI.

**Henry M. Stanley**—His search for Livingstone—A sketch of his life—An inmate of a poor-house—His fortune in America—The English war with King Theodore—Murder of Consul Plowden—Storming of Magdala—Suicide of the king—Stanley's services in the East—Outfitting an Expedition at Zanzibar—Departure for Central Africa—Haunts of hippopotami—A hard march—Wading turbid streams—Jungles, slaves and African belles—Tidings of Livingstone—A walled and castellated city—The Sultana of Simbamweni—The Sultana's revenge—A terrible swamp—Effects of drunkenness—An imposing entrance into Ugogo—Application of the whip—A moment of dread—Sunshine after the storm—Arrival at Unyanyembe—A whiff of ammonia by an untutored chief—A land abounding with game—Leopard attacks a donkey—A savage boar and ravenous crocodile—Arrival at Ujiji—Meeting with Livingstone—A champagne dinner—Challenged by an elephant—Parting between Livingstone and Stanley—Home again and honored by the Queen of England, . . . . . 199-226

### CHAPTER XII.

**Burial of Livingstone, and Stanley's Second Expedition**—Joint enterprise of the *Herald* and London *Telegraph*—Equipment of the expedition—Search for the Nile's source—Circumnavigating Victoria Lake—A procession of hippopotami and crocodiles—The enchanted cave—Look out for an attack!—The fight!—A messenger from King M'tesa—An imposing reception—Spectacle of the king's troops—The savagery of M'tesa—Effects of Moslem teachings—A sham battle, in which several are killed—A bloody fight with natives—Killing five men at four shots—Attacked by hippopotami—An hour of triumph—A seance with King Lukongeh—Wonderful superstitions—Another battle—Return to M'tesa's capital—War declared—Movement of M'tesa's great army—A wondrous spectacle—A naval battle—The wizards of war—Defeat of M'tesa's navy—Stanley's dreadful war-boat—End of the war—Stanley leaves M'tesa's kingdom—Return to Ujiji—Among the cannibals—Dwarfs and boa-constrictors—Engagement of Tipo Tib—Direful predictions—The strange people of Uregga—Sounding the Lualaba River—A village of skulls—Horrible evidences of cannibalism—Dangers line the way—Capture of a dwarf—Parting with Tipo Tib—In the toils of a boa-constrictor—Drowning of Kalulu and Frank Pocock—Shooting cataracts—A starving expedition—Arrival at Embomma—Return to England—**STANLEY'S THIRD EXPEDITION**—Up the Congo—In conflict with M. De Brazza—Surmounting enormous difficulties—M. De Brazza's treaty with the tribes—Establishment of the Congo Free State—Results of Stanley's Congo expedition, . . . . . 227-273

## CHAPTER XIII.

**Chinese Gordon**—Life Sketch of a remarkable man—From a family of warriors—His services in the Crimea—A visit to the Far East—The war in China—A great Chinese prophet—The Taiping rebellion—The Heavenly King—Two American adventurers—Ever-victorious army—The attack on Shanghai—Death of Ward—Defeat of Holland—Gordon in command of the Imperialist forces—Siege of Taitan—Horrible tortures—Investment of Soochow—A hellish night—Desertion of Chinese generals—Murder of the deserting generals—Gordon's anger—He is rewarded by the Emperor—Starvation of the peasantry—Forced to eat the dead—The storming of Kintang—Blowing up the gates—Fall of Chanchu-fu—Tragic end of the false prophet—Murder of his hundred wives—A man of inconceivable cruelty—End of the war, . . . . . 274-294

## CHAPTER XIV.

**Gordon in the Soudan**—His welcome to England—Employed by the Khedive—Suppression of the slave trade urged—Insincerity of the Khedive—Off for Central Africa—En route for Khartoum—Adventures along the Nile—Crocodiles and hippopotami—Among the Dinkas—The man-hunters of Fashoda—Arrest of a slaver—Opening a route to the lake regions—Fighting all along the line—Dethronement of Kabba Rega—Shooting hippopotami—Guarding against assault—The killing of Linant—Shooting a wizard—An insult from the Khedive—Commendation—On Lake Victoria—Stampeded by elephants—Tossed to his death, . . . . . 295-320

## CHAPTER XV.

**Gordon's Second Expedition**—Affairs in Bulgaria—Two calls for Gordon's services—Re-engagement by the Khedive—Ending a war in Abyssinia—Battles between rival rulers—Remarkable diplomacy—Off again for Khartoum—Perils en route—Killing the camel-drivers—Gordon's epigrammatic speech—His great generosity—Disbanding the Bashi-Bazouks—Services in Khartoum—Battle with the Leopards—A wondrous march—Treachery of Suleiman—A terrible storm—Rapid action, but days of torment—Gordon's tag-rags—A triangular dispute—Breaking up a thieves' den—The horrors of slavery—Human misery in its extremity—Playing it smart on an ambitious young slave dealer—Called to Cairo—Gordon refuses to become a corrupt tool for the Khedive—Back again to Khartoum—Execution of Suleiman—Resignation of Gordon—Gessi rewarded, . . . . . 321-325

## CHAPTER XVI.

**Gordon's Last Expedition**—Gordon the hero—He longs for rest—A visit to China—His services in preventing war between China and Russia—Return to England—Invited to the Belgian Court—Meeting with Stanley—At the tomb of his great lieutenant—Sent to subdue the Boers of South Africa—A visit to the Holy Land—Gordon's researches in and about Jerusalem—Governor-General of the Soudan—The false prophet—His insurrection in the Soudan—His claims to Messianic power and purpose—Descriptions of the Mahdi—His spiritual leaders—Fanatic zeal of his followers—Battles with the dervishes—The fall of El Obeid—Charging the Remingtons—Annihilation of Hicks's army—The last message—England aroused—Gordon sent to relieve Khartoum—Negotiations with the Mahdi—Horrible scenes of oppression—Gordon hailed as a saviour—The cry for help—The Mahdi again in the saddle—Gordon in peril—His coolness and sagacity—Defeated at Heliyeh—Treachery of his officers—Two of them shot—The siege of Khartoum—A desperate defence—Trying to save his people—The spirit of insubordination—Gordon's tragic death—Abandoned by his government—An o'er sad tale, . . . . . 326-350

## CHAPTER XVII.

**Labors of Emin Pasha**—Life of an enigmatic man—His professional career—Not mentioned in Gordon's writings—Emin joins Gordon in the Soudan—His eminent services—On a dangerous mission to Uganda—Success of his undertaking—Makes a treaty with Kabba Rega—Appointed Governor-General of the Equatorial Provinces—Condition of his territory—His administration—His capital at







Lado—Emin's soldier's and their duties—Native tribes of the Soudan—Why they are so hostile—Characteristics and customs of the various tribes—Agriculture and stock-raising—Farmer's pests—Hippopotami and birds—Dress of the natives—Nakedness without shame—Beautiful women of the Madi tribe—Weapons—Savage beasts—Savagery of the crocodile—Thrilling experiences—Kingdoms of Unyoro and Uganda—The Cojoor priests—Burning at the stake—Mwanga, the successor of M'tesa—Kabba Rega—The situation of Emin Pasha—Effects of the Mahdi rebellion—Cut off from civilization—Emin's appeal for help—Escape of Dr. Junker—A dreadful fire—Discovery of the Kubik River—Rebuilding of Wadelai—Stanley to the Relief of Emin—Other relief expeditions—Wissmann's journeys and explorations—Three times across the continent—Wissmann's several expeditions and discoveries—In search of Stanley—Massacre of Dr. Peters—Return of Stanley and Emin—An accident to Emin . . . . . 351-381

CHAPTER XVIII.

Stanley's Expedition for the Relief of Emin Pasha—Great results—England aroused—Effect of Gordon's fate—Sir Wm. McKinnon—The Relief Committee—A call for Stanley—Honors to Stanley—A magnificent testimonial—Equipment of the expedition—Stanley's automatic gun—Departure for Africa—Discussion between Stanley, Junker and Schweinfurth—A visit with Junker and Schweinfurth—Off for Zanzibar—Engagement of Tipo Tib—The trip around Cape Good Hope—Arrangements for transporting the expedition up the Congo—Why Stanley chose the Congo route—The dangers of the route to Uganda—The great war in Uganda—Mwanga's efforts to recover his throne—Christians and Arabs in conflict—Attack on Kalema's army—The Christians again victorious—Execution of native leaders—Burning his brothers, sisters and children—A defeat—Mwanga's new following—Burned at the stake—Advices of Stanley's coming—Battle of Murchison Bay—A letter from King Mwanga—Other reasons for selecting the Congo route—The procession up the Congo—Stanley's boats—Tipo Tib and his harem—His contract with Stanley—Appearance of Tipo's wives—Amours and flirtations . . . . 382-402

CHAPTER XIX.

The Voyage up the Congo—Wooding up—Congo Stations—Station of Lukunga—Superstitions of the natives—Ward's description of an N'Ganga N'Kissi—Witchcraft—Finding the devil—The outfit of a wizard—Drinking poison—How Ward met Stanley—Turning back to Central Africa—An interesting letter—An imposing cavalcade—Tipo Tib and his forty-two wives—A wink and a gentle stroke . . . 403-409

CHAPTER XX.

The Trip to Bolobo—Changes since Stanley's last visit—Arab and Zanzibarian immigration—Stanley assisted by the missionaries—Festivities of Tipo Tib's wives—How the steamers were loaded—Scenery and grandeur of the Congo—The grandest of all rivers—Country of the Ba-yanzi tribe—Musical instruments—Singular manner of dressing the hair—Adventurous incidents of the voyage—Minstrelsy and pretty women—Tipo Tib's narrow escape from a crocodile—Bolobo Station—A cluster of fifteen villages—The Ba-teke musicians—Strange superstitions—A bird of ill-omen—Ceremonies of the N'Kimba tribe—A kind of Free-Masonry—Circumcision—A grand cavalcade—Stanley Falls—Tipo Tib's raids—Why Stanley contracted with Tipo Tib—Tipo's treachery . . . . . 410-428

CHAPTER XXI.

The Entrenched Camp at Yambuys—Stanley divides his command—Leads the advance on the march to relieve Emin—Sad reflections—The parting—Barttelot and the rear column—The country about Yambuys—Game of the region—A hunt—In pursuit of a rhinoceros—The rhinoceros in pursuit of the hunters—Adventure with a buffalo—A cow shot and a bull wounded—A dash at the stricken game—Barttelot tossed on the horns of a buffalo—His injuries very serious—Borne back to camp on a litter—An elephant bagged—Bonny's nerve—A king of the forest falls before his aim—A mad rush for elephant meat . . . . . 426-435

## CHAPTER XXII.

**Affairs Grow Desperate at Yambuya Camp**—The wearying longing of an endless waiting—Tippo Tib's treachery—A slaughter of the natives—Horrible atrocities of the Arab raiders—Pickling a head—Punishment of insubordinates—Retribution on the raiders—Eating their enemies—Ward dispatched to the coast—Singular fatality—Cannibalism on the Congo—A visit to a cannibal camp—How parts of bodies are prepared and eaten—Disgusting sights—Pitiable sights in camp—Slow starvation—Threats against Barttelot's life—Fears for Stanley's safety—Efforts to hire carriers—Barttelot's attempt to go in search of Stanley—A mutiny in camp—Assassination of Barttelot—Abandonment of the Yambuya camp—Death of Jameson—Bonny left in command—Removal of the camp to Banalya . . . 436-448

## CHAPTER XXIII.

**News from Stanley and Emin**—A letter from Casati—He tells of the indignities put upon him by a chief—An order for Casati's execution—Rescued by Emin—Suicide of Casati's companion—The villainy of Kabba Rega—A letter from Stanley to Tippo Tib—The latter refuses to fulfil his contract—Stanley's instructions to Barttelot—Two letters that were intercepted—Rehearsing the privations and fatalities of the march—Fighting his way—The men starving and dropping from sickness—Hewing a path through the forest—Bad boatmen—Stanley's letters to Barttelot—Rehearsing the perils of his march—A sad story of suffering and death—Slavery to the Manyema—Anxieties . . . 449-462

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**Stanley's Description of His Journey**—A previously untrodden way—Wonderful superstitions—The Alakere dwarfs—Men with tails and four eyes—Kabba Rega's fears—Stanley's story of his march—First conflict with the natives—In the wilderness—More fighting—Death and Desertion—The death march—Ravages by Arabs and elephants—Punishment of offenders—Food at last—Viewing a land of promise—Gathering for a fight—Alarum of the war-drums—Work of the sharpshooters—A sight of the N'yanza—A night attack—Inhospitableness of the natives—Retreat back to Ibwire—A sorry review—A letter from Emin—Jephson dispatched to join Emin—Meeting with Emin—Back to Fort Bodo—Sad news—Mr. Stanley's surprise and grief—A deplorable situation—Stanley receives the news of Barttelot's death—Important discoveries—Ruewenzori, the snowy peak—Emin Pasha's forces—An argument with Emin—Disappointments . . . 463-488

## CHAPTER XXV.

**Stanley's Reply to his Critics**—The venom of jealousy—Mr. Mackay, the missionary—Stanley's articles of faith—The relief of Emin Pasha explained—True purposes of the expedition—Stanley's instructions—Stanley's cold meeting with Emin—The contract with Tippo Tib—Tippo Tib's preparations to raid the Congo stations—The appointment of Barttelot—Barttelot's quick temper—Other lieutenants of Stanley's—Circumstances leading to Barttelot's death—Stanley's instructions to Barttelot—Tippo Tib's unreliability—Misrepresentations about cannibalism—Punishment of insubordinates—Blood for blood . . . 489-501

## CHAPTER XXVI.

**Adventures on the Route**—Stanley's studies of the natives—Cruel devices of the natives—Wounded in the feet by concealed skewers—Insects that make life on the Congo unbearable—Mists of the morning—Poisoned arrows—How the poison is made—Agriculture on the Congo—Exciting sport on the Aruwimi—Hippopotami, monkeys and crocodiles—Mohammedans eating hippopotami flesh under a dispensation—A hippopotamus adventure—Lieut. Stairs in danger—Attacked by a wounded hippopotamus—Stanley to the rescue—Among the crocodiles—The snake-eaters—How the crocodile is hunted—Crocodile traps—The Wambutti dwarfs—Some fearful stories—Appearance and customs of the dwarfs—Cannibalism—Affection exhibited by a bereaved mother—Disposition of the Dwarfs' dead—The Quimbandes—Habits and appearance—A tribe with tails—Scared by a camera—Singular tribes—The M'teita tribe—Their customs and hospitality . . . 502-519



## CONTENTS.

27

### CHAPTER XXVII.

**The approach to Albert Lake**—A scramble for a sardine box—Weakened by hunger—"Cheer up, boys!" A park-like country—Purpose of the Maxim gun—A big hunt—Charge of a mad buffalo—Look out for the rhinoceros!—A dash through the carriers—A dreadfully scared company—A bath in the lake—Return to the Aruwimi camp—Deplorable condition of the rear column—Small-pox and other sufferings—Relief after a long siege of starvation—A capture of Dwaris natives—Again on the brink of starvation—Calling a council—Search for the missing—Letters from Jephson—Jephson and Emin prisoners of the Mahdi—The victorious Mahdi—The situation very serious—Release of Emin, but sad forebodings—Stanley's reply to Jephson—Fascinated by the Soudan—Stanley's warnings—Arrival of Jephson—A courier from Emin . . . . . 520-539

### CHAPTER XXVIII.

**Discoveries which Excite the World's Applause**—Stanley's feeling towards Emin—Rehearsing the perils of his march—The Mayuemas and the slave traders—Wonderful discoveries—The Ruewenzori snowy range—Salt lakes—A geographical review—Correcting mistakes of the former explorers—Extent of Albert Lake—Views about Albert Lake and Mt. Ruewenzori—Mistakes of Baker—New sources of the Nile—Disappointments crowd fast on one another—Dangerous position of Jephson and Emin—Invasion of the Mahdists—Indecision of Emin—A lion hunt—Scarcity of lions in West Africa—The game located—A night station in a tree—Approach of three lions—A magnificent moonlight scene—Two lions wounded—Twenty shots required to bag the game—A savage struggle with death—Carrying a lion's head as a trophy . . . . . 540-550

### CHAPTER XXIX.

**A Great Hunt**—Shooting hippopotami on Albert Lake—An elephant hunt—A terrifying spectacle—A vast sea of grass—Flanking the herd—Stanley selects a great tusker—Retreat of the wounded elephant—The pursuit—Another shot—Furious charge of the elephant—Narrow escape of Stanley—Death of the monarch—Vast elephant herds in the Congo region—Tippo Tib's vast stores of ivory—Value of the ivory annually collected—200,000 elephants—Other rich products—Preparing to return to Zanzibar—Vigorous measures for suppressing a conspiracy—Number and kinds of people composing the returning caravan . . . . . 551-558

### CHAPTER XXX.

**The March to the Sea**—Justice to Emin—A letter from Emin—Another letter from Stanley—The lofty Ruewenzori range—A fight—A delusion—A brush with the Warasura—Scaling the mountain—A vast sea of salt—The caravan stricken with fever—A land desolated by pillage—A tradition of the Snow King—Fields of rich promise—Descriptions of the tribes—Remarkable vicissitudes . . . . . 559-568

### CHAPTER XXXI.

**End of the Journey**—The return route—Expert tree-climbers—Why they made their habitations in trees—Shooting an eagle by magic—A funny scene—A singular annual custom—The Wahuma chief and his wives—Incidents of the march—Dying on the way—An accident from exploding shells—Enraged natives—Emin Pasha's daughter—A Hebrew turned Mohammedan—News of Stanley's return—Dying in hammocks—Evil reports—A meeting between Stanley and Wissmann—The mirth that a snake produced—Jephson's wild ride—Arrival at Bagamoyo—Magnificent reception accorded the explorers—A champagne banquet—An accident to Emin Pasha—His fall from a high balcony and dangerous hurt—Honors to Stanley—Banqueted, toasted and feted by distinguished people—Honored by the Khedive—His visit to Cairo . . . . . 569-580



# ILLUSTRATIONS

Peculiar African Warfare, . . . . .	PAGE 34	Dr. Livingstone, . . . . .	PAGE 96
Beside Afric's Ruins, . . . . .	37	Makoloko, . . . . .	97
Market Scene in Sofala in 1505, . . . . .	39	The Zambesi River, . . . . .	98
Fort at Sofala, . . . . .	40	A Makoloko Village, . . . . .	99
Gold Mining Region of Sofala, . . . . .	41	Reception by a Native King, . . . . .	100
Foot Illustration, . . . . .	42	Discovery of Lake Nyassa, . . . . .	103
Agriculture in Africa, . . . . .	44	Livingstone at Shupanga, . . . . .	104
African Elephants, . . . . .	46	Dead Bodies of Slaves in the Shire, . . . . .	106
Melinde, . . . . .	47	The Sultan of Zanzibar, . . . . .	107
Map of Ancient Africa (Ogilby's, 1670), . . . . .	49	Arabs Murdering Exhausted Slaves, . . . . .	108
Falls of the Nile, . . . . .	50	Reception of the Arab's Bride, . . . . .	109
Cataract of the Nile, . . . . .	51	The Slave Gang, . . . . .	111
On the Borders of the Atlas Mountains, . . . . .	53	Arabs Massacring Manyumas, . . . . .	112
Assassination of Col. Flatters, . . . . .	55	The March Through Casembe's Country, . . . . .	114
Foot Illustration, . . . . .	56	Livingstone Beset by Hostiles, . . . . .	115
A Fellah's Family, . . . . .	58	Livingstone's Last March, . . . . .	116
Arabs Hunting Unarmed Negroes, . . . . .	59	Death of Livingstone, . . . . .	117
Crocodile Seizing the Negro Guide, . . . . .	61	Styles of Head Dress, . . . . .	119
Stibb's Ascent of the Niger, . . . . .	63	Bruce Among the Abyssinians, . . . . .	120
French Fort in Africa, . . . . .	64	African Prophets, . . . . .	121
Victims of Portuguese Slave Hunters, . . . . .	66	Burton's March into Central Africa, . . . . .	123
Lander's Journey down the Niger, . . . . .	67	The Murder of M. Maizan, . . . . .	125
Dr. Davidson Prescribing for the Sick, . . . . .	68	Leopard Killing one of Burton's Soldiers, . . . . .	127
Before the King of Timbuctoo, . . . . .	70	Water Antelopes, . . . . .	128
On the Shores of Lake Tchad, . . . . .	72	Market Scene in Ujiji, . . . . .	129
Wreck of the Medusa, . . . . .	74	Fleeing from the Flames, . . . . .	131
Tigers before their Lair, . . . . .	76	Capt. Speke and his Body-guard, . . . . .	133
King of African Beasts, . . . . .	76	An Arab Slave Master, . . . . .	135
Foot Illustration, . . . . .	77	Speke and Grant's Soldiers, . . . . .	137
Mode of Travel in Northern Africa, . . . . .	79	Execution of a Slaver's Crew, . . . . .	139
Along the Banks of the Cerné, . . . . .	81	A Rhinoceros Hunt, . . . . .	140
Dog-Headed Monkey of Senegal, . . . . .	82	A Toss into the Air, . . . . .	141
Legendary Roc, . . . . .	84	A Buffalo Turns Hunter, . . . . .	142
Gorillas, . . . . .	88	Nature in the Jungle, . . . . .	144
A Battle with African Amazons, . . . . .	90	Speke before King Rumanika, . . . . .	146
Caffres of South Africa, . . . . .	92	A Wuhuma Village, . . . . .	147
Anderson's Visit to a Bechuana Village, . . . . .	94	M'tesa's Cruelty to his Attendants, . . . . .	148
Facing a Stampede of Buffaloes, . . . . .	95	Grant on his Way to Uganda, . . . . .	149

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

29

A Levee in Uganda, . . . . .	PAGE 150	Stanley Attacked by Savage Islanders, . . . . .	PAGE 238
Speke's Boat Crew Alarmed, . . . . .	152	Along the Shores of Lake Victoria, . . . . .	239
Speke Circumnavigating Lake Victoria, . . . . .	153	Stanley's Camp at Kagehyi, . . . . .	241
The Savage Tree-dwellers of Unyoro, . . . . .	154	M'tesa's Army on the March, . . . . .	243
Speke's Last Conference with Kamrasi, . . . . .	155	M'tesa's War Canoes, . . . . .	245
Saving the Life of a Servant, . . . . .	156	A Great Naval Battle, . . . . .	246
Buffalo Hunting in the Mahdi Country, . . . . .	157	M'tesa's Warriors after the Battle, . . . . .	248
A Buffalo Killing Baker's Arms-bearer, . . . . .	160	Mirambo, the Great African Chief, . . . . .	250
A Shir Village, . . . . .	161	The Bride of the Nile, . . . . .	252
Baker Quelling the Mutiny, . . . . .	162	Village of Mwana Mambo, . . . . .	253
Disgusting Scene over an Elephant's Carcass, . . . . .	164	Leopard Hunters of Uregga, . . . . .	254
Dispatching a Vicious Boar, . . . . .	165	Encounter with a Boa Constrictor, . . . . .	256
Baker's Satanic Guard at the Feast, . . . . .	166	A Village in Uregga, . . . . .	258
Horrors of the Slave Trade, . . . . .	169	Fighting Their Way through Cannibals, . . . . .	259
Sir Samuel Baker and his Staff, . . . . .	171	Street in a Cannibal Village, . . . . .	260
Crocodile Carrying off one of Baker's Men, . . . . .	172	Reptile King of the Jungle, . . . . .	261
Shilook Women Pounding Maize, . . . . .	173	Killing a Boa, . . . . .	262
A Bari Village, . . . . .	174	Shooting the Cataracts, . . . . .	263
Crocodile Seizing a Sailor, . . . . .	176	Stanley's Starving People, . . . . .	265
Shooting Elephants across the River, . . . . .	178	Cutting a Passage around the Cataracts, . . . . .	267
A Typical Savage Chief, . . . . .	180	Wonderful Bridge across the Gordon Bennett River, . . . . .	269
Baker's Camp at Fatiko, . . . . .	181	De Brazza Concluding a Treaty with the Natives, . . . . .	270
Scene in the Game Country, . . . . .	182	Stanley's Interview with Gaman Kono, . . . . .	271
Baker's Audience with Kabba Rega, . . . . .	183	Malamine Receiving Orders from M. De Brazza, . . . . .	272
Farmers of Unyoro, . . . . .	184	Chinese Gordon, . . . . .	275
The Funeral Dance, . . . . .	185	Soldiers of the Imperial Army, . . . . .	277
The Escape from Bondage, . . . . .	187	Taiping Rebels Committing Atrocities, . . . . .	279
The Fight in the Grass, . . . . .	188	Death of Ward, . . . . .	281
Rionga, King of Unyoro, . . . . .	190	Preparing a Prisoner for Torture, . . . . .	283
Baker exchanging Blood with Rionga, . . . . .	192	Fighting His Way up the Yangtze, . . . . .	284
Beating up Game by Firing the Grass, . . . . .	193	After the Battle, . . . . .	286
Boars in the Net, . . . . .	194	Gordon's Audience with the Taiping Rebels, . . . . .	288
Adventure with a Lioness, . . . . .	196	Execution of the Deserting Generals, . . . . .	289
Arrival of Envoys from M'tesa, . . . . .	197	Storming of Kintang, . . . . .	291
Henry M. Stanley in 1876, . . . . .	200	Beheading the Prisoners, . . . . .	292
Murder of Consul Plowden by King Theodore, . . . . .	201	Gordon before the Emperor, . . . . .	293
Suicide of King Theodore, . . . . .	203	Tail Piece, . . . . .	294
Engaging Porters at Bagamoyo, . . . . .	206	Gordon's Infantry Escort, . . . . .	296
Affectionate Curiosity of Rosoko Women, . . . . .	207	Gordon Reviewing His Troops at Khartoum, . . . . .	297
A Belle of Kisemo, . . . . .	208	Scene along the Nile, . . . . .	298
City of Simbawwenni, . . . . .	210	A Sportive Hippopotamus, . . . . .	299
Stanley Crossing the Inundated Savannah, . . . . .	212	The Fort at Gondokoro, . . . . .	301
Marching into Ugogo, . . . . .	214	Col. Long's Reception by the King of Uganda, . . . . .	302
Impertinent Curiosity of the Wagogo, . . . . .	216	The Soudanese's Love, . . . . .	303
The Chief Teaching His Subjects Manners, . . . . .	218	The Station at Duffili, . . . . .	304
Only a Whiff of Ammonia, . . . . .	219	Harassments along the Nile, . . . . .	305
A Glorious Hunt, . . . . .	220	Indignities to the Head of Linant, . . . . .	306
A Boar! A Boar! . . . . .	221	Kabba Rega's Fetiches, . . . . .	308
Stanley's First Sight of Lake Tanganyika, . . . . .	222	Tossed to His Death, . . . . .	309
Stanley's Meeting with Livingstone, . . . . .	225	Reception of Gordon by the Prince of Bogo, . . . . .	312
Stanley and Livingstone on the Shores of Tanganyika, . . . . .	226	Murder of the Camel Driver, . . . . .	314
Livingstone's Grave in Westminster Abbey, . . . . .	228	Seeking a Friendship with the Natives, . . . . .	315
Stanley's Dogs in the Village of Kagehyi, . . . . .	229	Sebehr Pasha, the Slave King, . . . . .	316
Village of Igusa, . . . . .	230	Caught in a Terrific Storm, . . . . .	317
Stanley Circumnavigating Victoria Lake, . . . . .	231	Treating with the Leopards, . . . . .	319
Magassa Inviting Stanley to M'tesa's Court, . . . . .	233	Murdering Slaves, . . . . .	321
Reception of Stanley by M'tesa, . . . . .	234	Bringing Slaves to the Shaka Market, . . . . .	322
M'tesa's Capital and Palace, . . . . .	236	Buying Slaves in the Shaka Market, . . . . .	323

Track of the Slaves, . . . . .	PAGE 324
Return, after the Death of Suleiman, . . . . .	325
Waterspouts in the Indian Ocean, . . . . .	327
Among the Boers, . . . . .	328
The Mahdi and His Fakis, . . . . .	329
Meeting of Emin Pasha and Stanley, . . . . .	331
A Dongowalis Woman, . . . . .	332
Village of Gebel Geon, . . . . .	334
Retreat of the Mahdists, . . . . .	335
Hicks Pasha's Tag-rags, . . . . .	337
Hicks Pasha's Last Rally, . . . . .	338
Attack on Tokar, . . . . .	340
Victims of the Slave Traders, . . . . .	341
Dance in Honor of Gordon, . . . . .	342
Gordon Counselling with his Generals, . . . . .	343
The Battle at Halfiyeh, . . . . .	345
A Skirmish between Outposts, . . . . .	346
Khartoum during the Siege, . . . . .	347
Headquarters of the Mahdi, . . . . .	348
Murder of Gordon's Body Servant, . . . . .	349
Emin Pasha, . . . . .	352
A Uganda Village, . . . . .	353
Emin and His Escort, . . . . .	354
Emin Hailed by Ungoro Warriors, . . . . .	355
Lado, Capital of the Equatorial Provinces, . . . . .	356
Emin's Irregulars, . . . . .	357
Station at Kirri, . . . . .	358
Cattle of the Nile Region, . . . . .	359
Cave-dwellers along the Nile, . . . . .	360
Defending the Grain Fields, . . . . .	361
A Visit to the Savage King, . . . . .	362
The Demon Dance of the Bari, . . . . .	362
Savagery of the Crocodile, . . . . .	363
Stalked by a Leopard, . . . . .	364
Native Blacksmiths, . . . . .	365
Attacked by a Crocodile, . . . . .	366
Burning a Cojoor, . . . . .	367
Map of Region in which Gordon Operated, . . . . .	368
Conferring Title of Pasha on Emin, . . . . .	369
Industries Inaugurated by Emin, . . . . .	370
Fighting the Great Fire, . . . . .	372
Map of Emin's Equatorial Provinces, . . . . .	373
Waiting the Return of Stanley, . . . . .	374
Slaves Rebuilding Wadelai, . . . . .	375
Major Charles Wissmann, . . . . .	376
Natives along the Lulua River, . . . . .	378
Wissmann Attacked by the Natives, . . . . .	380
Stanley to the Rescue of Emin, . . . . .	381
H. M. Stanley, from a Photograph taken in 1887, . . . . .	383
Sir Wm. McKinnon, . . . . .	384
Gold Casket Presented to Stanley, . . . . .	384
Stanley's Automatic Gun, . . . . .	385
En route for the Congo, . . . . .	387
King Mwanga, . . . . .	390
Village of Busagala, . . . . .	391
Kalema Burns his Brothers and Sisters, and his own Children, . . . . .	392

Mwanga's Camp on Bulinguye Island, . . . . .	PAGE 394
Domestic Scene in Ukumbi, . . . . .	395
Uganda Mohammedans at Prayer, . . . . .	396
Agriculture in the Muta Nziga District, . . . . .	397
Reception of Stanley by Uganda Chief, . . . . .	399
Disposition of the Dead by Boma Villagers, . . . . .	400
Attacked by a Leopard, . . . . .	401
Tail Piece, . . . . .	402
Lakunga Station, . . . . .	404
The N'Ganga Locating the Devil, . . . . .	406
The Assyrian and his Two Wives, . . . . .	407
The Fallen Monarch beset by Hyenas, Jackals, Vultures, and Lions, . . . . .	408
Tail Piece, . . . . .	409
Natives of Kasonge Weaving, . . . . .	411
Tipo Tib's Harem <i>en voyage</i> , . . . . .	412
Ba-Yanzi Musicians, . . . . .	413
An Excess of Sport, . . . . .	415
Tipo Tib's Adventure with a Crocodile, . . . . .	416
Sketches in and about Bololo and Stanley Falls, . . . . .	418
Man and Woman of the N'Kimba Tribe, . . . . .	420
Stanley's March from Kasonge, . . . . .	422
Travelling by Canoe on the Upper Congo, . . . . .	423
A Batoka Feast of Banana Beer, . . . . .	426
Fort Yambuya, . . . . .	427
Major Ed. M. Barttelot, . . . . .	429
A Sudden Change of Base, . . . . .	430
Barttelot's Adventure with a Buffalo, . . . . .	431
African Buffalo, . . . . .	432
A Steady Hand at a Supreme Moment, . . . . .	434
Dividing the Elephant, . . . . .	435
Destroying Villages and Taking Slaves, . . . . .	437
Advancing to Raid a Native Village, . . . . .	438
An Ivory Trader, . . . . .	439
The Walls of Nassibu's Camp, . . . . .	440
In Nassibu's Camp, . . . . .	441
Sketches on the Congo and Aruwimi Rivers, . . . . .	442
Members of the Rear Column, . . . . .	443
Taking it Easy, . . . . .	444
Bungari, . . . . .	445
The Killing of Barttelot, . . . . .	446
Punishment of Petty Insubordinates, . . . . .	447
Son and Daughter of Kabba Rega, . . . . .	450
Natives of Unyoro, . . . . .	451
Stanley in the Dark Continent, . . . . .	452
Cutting a Road to the River, . . . . .	453
Map, Stanley's Route, . . . . .	455
Fight in Mazamboni's Country, . . . . .	457
Natives of Ugarowwa, . . . . .	458
Fort Bodo, . . . . .	460
Warriors Challenging Stanley, . . . . .	461
Natives of the Town of Futa, . . . . .	464
An Alakere Village, . . . . .	465
Sharpening the Teeth, . . . . .	466
Crossing an Affluent of the Aruwimi, . . . . .	467
On the Road to Kilinga-Longa's, . . . . .	469
A Meal in the Wilderness, . . . . .	470

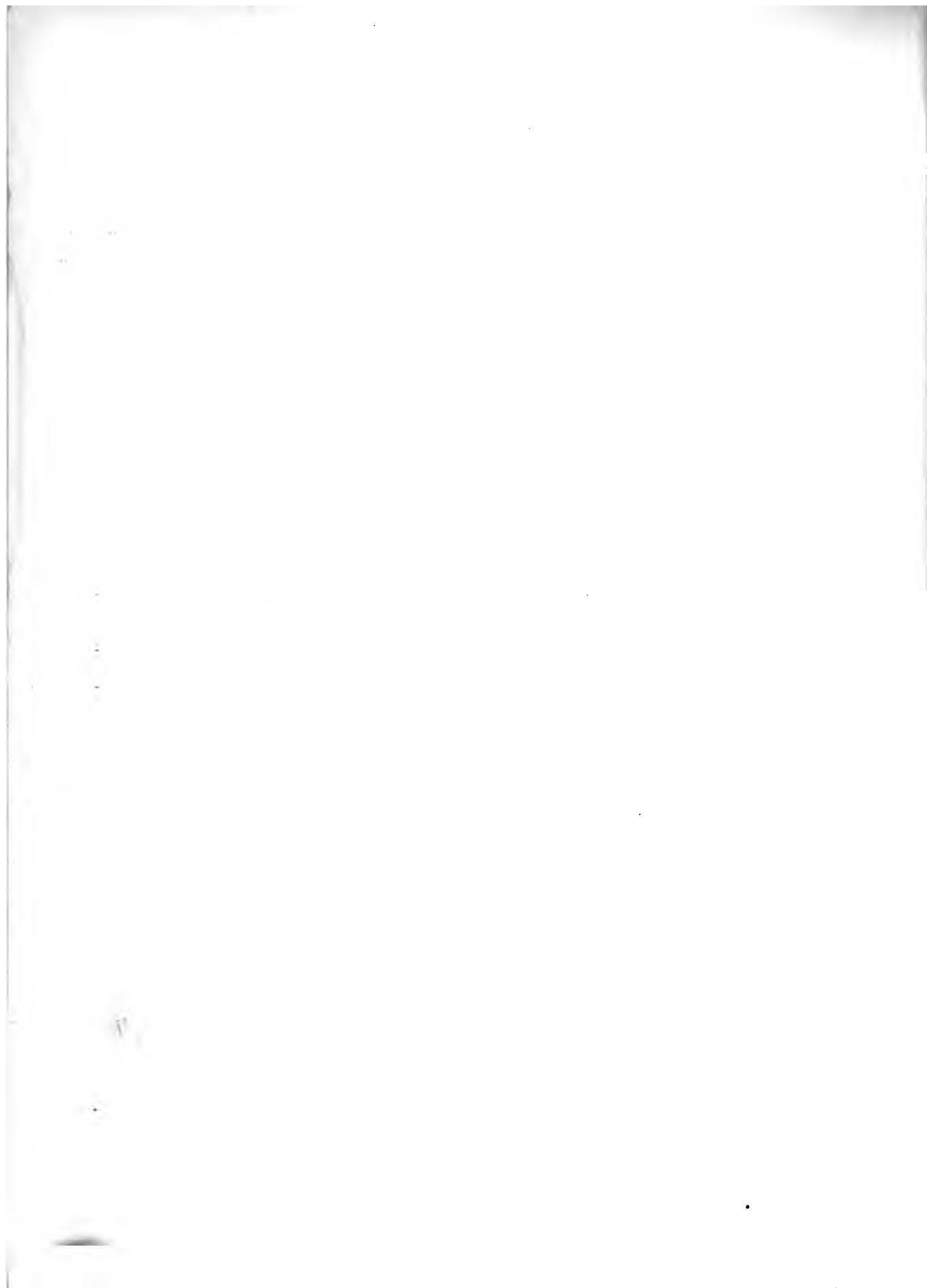


# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

31

Huts of Ibwiri Villagers, . . . . .	PAGE 471	A Dandy, . . . . .	PAGE 518
Whipping an Insubordinate, . . . . .	472	An M'teita Man and Woman, . . . . .	519
Purchasing a Sight of King Mazamboni, . . . . .	473	Starvation Precipitates a Scramble, . . . . .	521
Ascending a Hill in a Storm, . . . . .	474	Stanley Enforcing Orders, . . . . .	522
Natives Forbidding a Passage, . . . . .	475	A Buffalo's Mad Charge, . . . . .	523
Arguing with a Chief, . . . . .	476	A Rhinoceros Creates Consternation, . . . . .	524
Village of Ugarowwa, . . . . .	477	A Wild Rush into the Lake, . . . . .	526
Natives of the Fort Bodo District, . . . . .	480	Fight at Avi Sibba, . . . . .	528
Marching into Banalya, . . . . .	481	A Dwaris Village, . . . . .	529
Look Out for the Crocodile! . . . . .	483	Dwaris Women, . . . . .	530
Native Boatwomen of Kavalli, . . . . .	487	Dispersing a Party of Rebels, . . . . .	533
Interruption of the Pasha's Reverie, . . . . .	490	Torturing the Mahdi's Dervishes, . . . . .	537
Landing of Emin Pasha and Captain Casati at Weke, . . . . .	491	The Courier Taking Emin's Letter, . . . . .	538
Tipo Tib's Captives being sent into Bondage, . . . . .	493	Along the Aruwimi, . . . . .	541
One of Tipo Tib's Slave Gangs, . . . . .	494	Punishment of a Traitor, . . . . .	542
Natives of the Bolobo District, . . . . .	495	Stanley's and Emin Pasha's Forces on the March, . . . . .	543
Bartelot Enforcing Orders, . . . . .	497	The Kavalli Chief's Amusement, . . . . .	545
Slaves Marching into Stanley Falls, . . . . .	498	View on the Semliki River, . . . . .	546
Dragging the Murderer to Execution, . . . . .	500	Stanley Bagging an Antelope, . . . . .	547
Mustering of the Hostiles, . . . . .	502	Buffalo Shooting along the Semliki, . . . . .	548
Dwellings of Tribes below Nejambi Rapids, . . . . .	503	The Lion Hunt, . . . . .	549
Elevated Dwellings along the Aruwimi, . . . . .	504	Antelope Shooting in the Semliki Forest, . . . . .	552
A School of Hippopotami, . . . . .	505	Stanley Charged by a Wounded Elephant, . . . . .	553
Blessing the Body of a Hippopotamus, . . . . .	506	Two-horned African Rhinoceros, . . . . .	555
Stair's Adventure with a Bull Hippopotamus, . . . . .	507	A Warasura Warrior, . . . . .	561
The Prison of Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson at Duffili, . . . . .	508	A Wakonju Woman, . . . . .	566
Novel Means of Killing Crocodiles, . . . . .	509	A Wahuma Band, . . . . .	567
A Crocodile Snare, . . . . .	510	A Tree Climber, . . . . .	570
A Dwarf Watch-tower, . . . . .	511	Plucking the Eagle for Magic Feathers, . . . . .	571
Dwarf Shooting Weaver-birds, . . . . .	512	Ceremony of Scattering Beads, . . . . .	572
Adventures in the Dwarf Country, . . . . .	513	The Wahuma King, . . . . .	573
Gathering Honey, . . . . .	513	Explosion of the Cartridges, . . . . .	574
Dwarfs' Manner of Disposing of their Dead, . . . . .	514	Natives Sending their Imprecations after Stanley, . . . . .	575
First Conflict with the Natives, . . . . .	515	Jephson's Adventure with a Snake, . . . . .	576
Scared by Williams' Camera, . . . . .	516	The Expedition Crossing a Stream, . . . . .	577
The Promised Land, . . . . .	517	Foot Illustration, . . . . .	580

ALSO, 26 SYMBOLIC INITIAL LETTERS.





BATTLE WITH A CROCODILE.

COPYRIGHTED 1883





# HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT.

## CHAPTER I.

### AFRICA OF THE ANCIENTS.



From the many decided mysteries of geography, the unsolvable riddles that vex researchers in the fields of the earth, none appear so great as the African sphinx. This second largest natural division of land, lying most favorably under the fructifying influences of nature, blessed by the bounties of rich soil, variegated landscape, pleasing panoramas, delightful climate and wonderful productions, still remains under the ban of stagnation, if not primeval savagery. The many natural advantages which the country possessed over Europe and Asia were promptly recognized by the mother of civilization, who here set her cradle and rocked her offspring until it flourished into a vigorous manhood. Thus it was that Egypt became the parent of human advancement, and gave to the world the genius of substantial progress, which developed the highest intellectual faculties, builded magnificent cities, established museums of arts, set examples of human aggrandizement, produced surprising results in engineering, created sciences, and gave form to government and law. The modern world, with its wealth of ingenuity and rich attainment, pauses before every successive step to pay homage to that ancient country and to take example from the relics of its departed glory.

Though first to cast the plummet and sound the depths of human wisdom, Africa was likewise first to pause in her ambition, as if surfeited with the circumstance and pride of achievement, and dropping back, watched with indifferent regard the advance of other countries. The offspring of her institutions, the prodigies that gave her greatness, became like a tender vine too long exposed to a scorching sun, which withers after bearing the first season's fruit. Stopping in the advance, on the highway to a grander position among the nations, Africa lay down to a sleep from which she has not yet awakened. Other countries have profited from Africa's early example and pushed on, until in our day the first has become last, and now none are so dark with mystery, so wild with waste and wilderness, so wretched with savagery as she.



PECULIAR AFRICAN WARFARE.



The new world, so young in the contest for supremacy, has risen with the vaulting ambition which distinguished ancient Africa, and now looks down with amazement at her dark sister across the sea; South America, with its over-teeming products that lie in almost insurmountable or impenetrable tangles, opposing every advance, has yet become a seat for the habitation of high and increasing intelligence. Australia has lifted her head above the disadvantages of her surroundings, and established herself among the great nations of the earth. Even the insulated portions of the globe, the islands of the high seas, where wild passions found a natural license in the circumscribed conditions of their environments; where savagery had no examples inspiring to a loftier position, and intellectual force could find so little nourishment—even these have discovered the germ of civilization and given it such careful cultivation that the fruit is ripening to their praise and glory. In short, all the world, save Africa alone, has joined the procession that marches, with ceaseless tread, towards a higher and grander eminence in human affairs, and are thus drawing nearer to that universal brotherhood which promises the flowering of a perfect civilization.

#### AFRICA'S FORMER GREATNESS.

It is not sufficient to say that the past glory of Africa was limited to Egypt, or to the northern coast, where Carthage, with her almost unexampled splendors, her enormous commerce and powerful army, ruled the world. From the ruins of the Nilotic cities, Thebes, Karnak, Memphis, Luxor, Heliopolis, etc., which are scattered so profusely along the river shores, and from the Grecian lays that so graphically and amorously describe the great Punic nation, we gain our chief impressions of Africa's ancient possessions; but the evidences are by no means wanting in proof of the claim that the country, though now so savage, was once thoroughly civilized, even its darkest portions affording testimony of having been occupied by peoples familiar with the arts and sciences. The explorations of our modern travellers, while beneficent in the highest degree to the present age, are but the rediscoveries of very anciently well-known towns, rivers, provinces and kingdoms.

Peoples rise and perish just as the arts flourish and expire. Nearly all our modern inventions are only recoveries of long-lost applications, and it may with truth be asserted that there is no country or land on the globe but has been occupied by a civilized people.

It is no disparagement to the bold spirits who have penetrated and explored the wilds of Africa at the cost of such suffering and treasure, to claim that they were but travellers over a once prominent but now obliterated highway. The results of their exploits are no less pronounced or beneficial, nor is the measure of their praise diminished because they performed a signal service which had once before been accomplished. As well detract from the heroism of a man who plunges into a cataract at the imminent peril of his own life to save that of a comrade, because some one before had done a like heroic act. The danger was none the less because having before been confronted.

Readers of history, and students of archeology, particularly, know that prior to the discovery of America by Columbus, there had long before existed in Mexico, Central America, and northern South America, a civilization that employed nearly all the sciences: mathematic, hydraulics, and a splendid system of engineering and architecture, astronomy, etc., which serve to distinguish the peoples of those countries as highly educated and refined. How they perished history fails to acquaint us. In Greenland, that now woefully desert and frigid country, we find ruins that tell a sad story of the desolation that overtook and destroyed the progressive and cultured people who once made that country their home. So we find like evidences of a vanquished civilization in all countries, though in Africa, excepting Egypt and the northern coast, these relics are less conspicuous, and in many places hardly distinguishable, notwithstanding they unquestionably exist.

#### RUINS OF ANCIENT MAGNIFICENCE.

Some few evidences do, however, exist, pointing directly toward a period in history when at least some portions of Africa, which are now distinguished for their barbarism, were ages ago the seats of enormous commerce and most probably the homes of an advanced people.

Sofala, now a small town on the east coast of Africa, on the Mozambique, is frequently mentioned by Marco Polo, who visited it in the thirteenth century. It was even at that early date a place of little importance, save as a commercial port for the Arab traffic. But long before that period it was the centre of a wondrously rich mining district whose wealth was fairly beyond computation.

The Portuguese Governor-General, in 1857, published a report concerning the former greatness of this region, in which, after speaking of the rich mines of gold, silver, copper, and iron found here, he states that the country was invaded by a warlike people called the Lindens, who wrought such ruin that no effort was ever afterwards made to re-open the mines or re-establish the government. But these mines still bear the names of their supposed discoverers, which are most probably the names of kings who have ruled the country.

In this same report it is stated that five hundred leagues from Sena, which was formerly the capital of the Portuguese dominions in east Africa, situated little more than two hundred miles north of Sofala, on the Zambesi, there are remains of large edifices which indicate that they were once inhabited by a powerful people, but by whom is not known. This report seems to confirm the statements of Barros, who, in describing the relics of a very ancient city called Zimboe, declares that about these ruins are the remains of a fort built of well-dressed stones having a cut surface of twelve feet in length and only a little less in height, in the joining of which no lime appears to have been used. In other words, the masonry is almost exactly like that which is found in the pyramid of Cheops. Over the door to this fort is an inscription which the most learned Arabs have not been able to decipher, nor has any one ever been able to determine the character of the writing.



Around the ruins of this fort are the remains of other constructions having bastions made of like large cut stones, and about the middle of all the ruins is found the wreck of what was evidently at one time a stone tower which must have been at least seventy-five feet in height. These ruins are called by the natives of the country *Zimboe*, which signifies a royal residence.

Barros is of the opinion that the country of Sofala, which no doubt once included Sena, of which indeed it may have been the capital, is the same as that spoken of by Ptolemy as Agyzimba. *Zimboe*, the name of the royal residence,



BESIDE AFRIC'S RUINS.

certainly offers some affinity to that of Agyzimba; and there is still the remnant of a once powerful nation, called the Zimbos, to be found on the banks of the Zambesi.

#### EVIDENCE OF A VANQUISHED RACE.

Covilham, a Portuguese navigator of the fifteenth century, born about 1415, being employed in a mission to the Barbary states, acquired a knowledge of the Arabic language, and was sent by his government to Abyssinia in quest of the mysterious Prester John. After first proceeding to Abyssinia he

made a voyage to the coast of Malabar, and from there returned in 1490 to Abyssinia, bringing letters addressed by John II., to the legendary Prester John. So great were his services considered that the king of Abyssinia, in his anxiety to retain his counsel, forcibly detained him at his court, where Covilham soon after married a wealthy Abyssinian woman and remained in the country until his death, early in the sixteenth century. Though he thus became an Abyssinian by forced adoption, he continued to interest himself in geographical and ethnological matters up to his death, and left a journal of great value, which fortunately fell into the possession of the English Geographical Society. In this journal are contained descriptions of the several India ports which he had visited, and, what was more instructive and interesting, that of the situation and richness of the mines of Sofala. In this journal he declares that the country was once very populous, containing many very rich and powerful cities. He also wrote a letter to the king of Portugal, exhorting him to make a passage round Africa, which he declared to be attended by little danger, and that the cape itself [Good Hope] was well known to the people of India. He accompanied this letter with a chart which he had received from a learned Moor in India, on which the cape and cities all around the coast were exactly represented.

These statements are confirmed by Bruce, and also by the Portuguese, who describe the state of the country when they first settled there (in 1505), representing the native princes as being pure Moors, and that their form of worship was the same as that of the Arabs; and that they lived, especially in the interior, in a more opulent and cultured manner.

#### FROM WHENCE CAME SOLOMON'S RICHES?

As the country of Ophir, abounding with gold, has long continued to be a subject of great dispute, it may be well to observe here that there are stronger reasons for believing it to have been Sofala, on the east coast of Africa, than for locating it in either Arabia, India or Peru. The Bible text (1 Kings ix. 26, 27, 28; x. 11, 12, 22,) reads:

"And king Solomon made a navy of ships in Ezion Geber, which is beside Eloth, on the shore of the Red Sea, in the land of Edom.

"And Hiram sent in the navy his servants, shipmen that had knowledge of the sea, with the servants of Solomon.

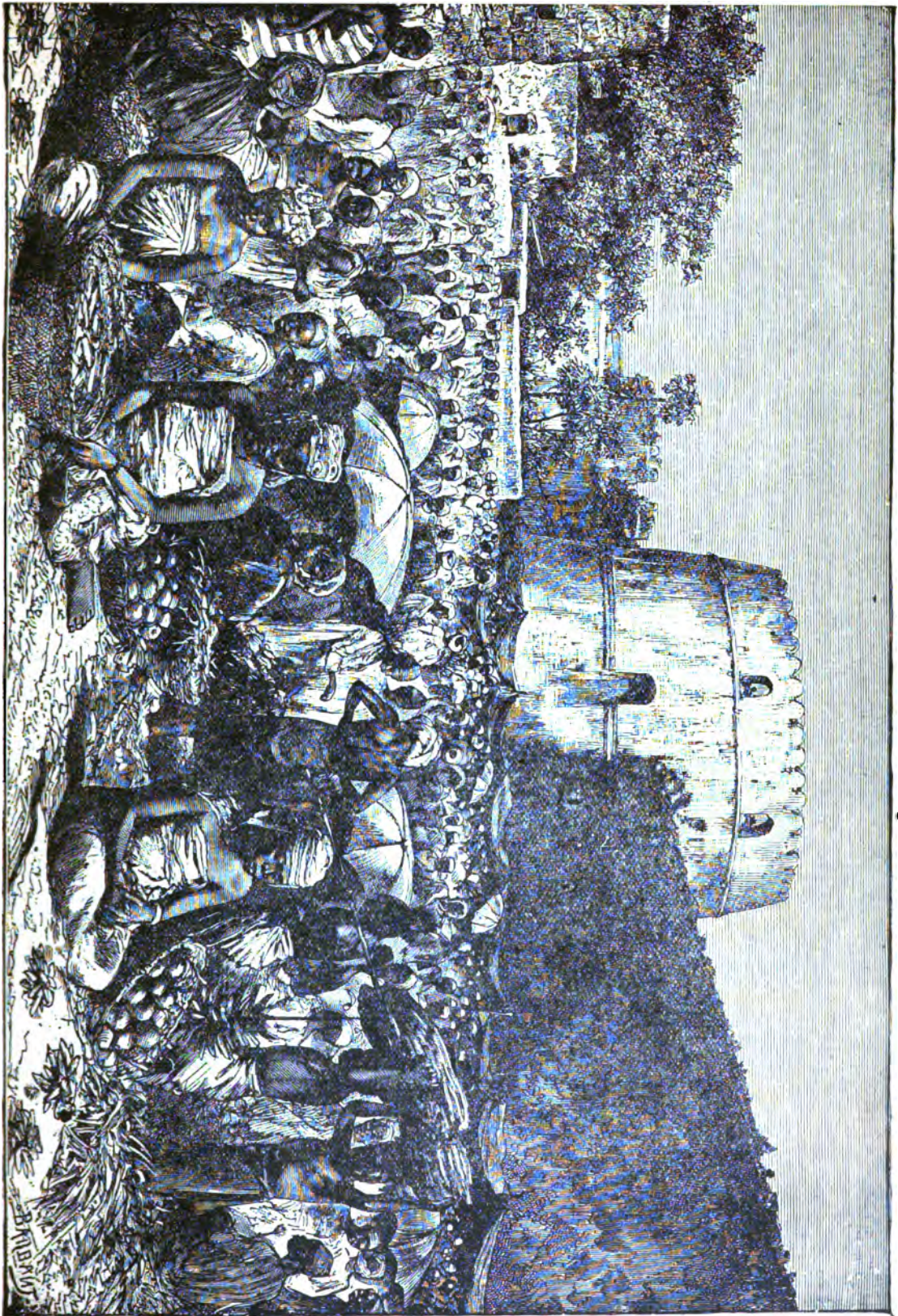
"And they came to Ophir, and fetched from thence gold, four hundred and twenty talents, and brought it to king Solomon."

"And the navy also of Hiram, that brought gold from Ophir, brought in from Ophir great plenty of almug trees, and precious stones.

"And the king made of the almug trees pillars for the house of the Lord, and for the king's house, harps also and psalteries for singers: there came no such almug trees, nor were seen unto this day."

"For the king had at sea a navy of Tharshish with the navy of Hiram: once in three years came the navy of Tharshish, bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks."





A MARKET SCENE AT SOFALA IN 1895.



Writers who have entered upon this discussion usually maintain that the Ophir here spoken of is the Ofor situated on the eastern side of the Arabian peninsula, and that the gold was obtained from a small adjoining coast mentioned by Pliny as the Gold Coast.

It is not to be doubted that this region bears some gold, though certainly not in any considerable quantity, while we do know that it does not contain elephants, hence could not have produced ivory. Some pearls are also occasionally found along the coast, but never in such abundance as to have been an article of commerce. Nor does Arabia, in any part, contain peacocks or guinea-fowls, nor such apes as are referred to in the text, these animals having been



FORT AT SOFALA.

first introduced into the country by Dthoo'l-Adhar, "the terrible one," who received that designation in allusion to these frightful creatures. This was in the first year of the Christian era.

The almug tree, which I believe all authorities unite in declaring to be the same as sandal wood, is not indigenous to Arabia; nor has that country ever produced precious stones.

If, as many declare, the Ophir mentioned in Kings, was in Arabia, certainly a voyage to that place and back could not have consumed three years; besides, if situated in Arabia, it would have been approached by land, instead of by sea, as in those days the former was a much less difficult mode of



travelling, especially as traffic overland between Red Sea ports, Persia, and the Holy Land had become quite extensive.

While none of the facts seem to point to any port of the coast of Arabia as being the Ophir of Solomon, on the other hand all the conditions are found to establish Sofala as the place; the almug tree, or sandal wood, of two species, both most aromatic, grows along the Zambesi and is common on the coast from



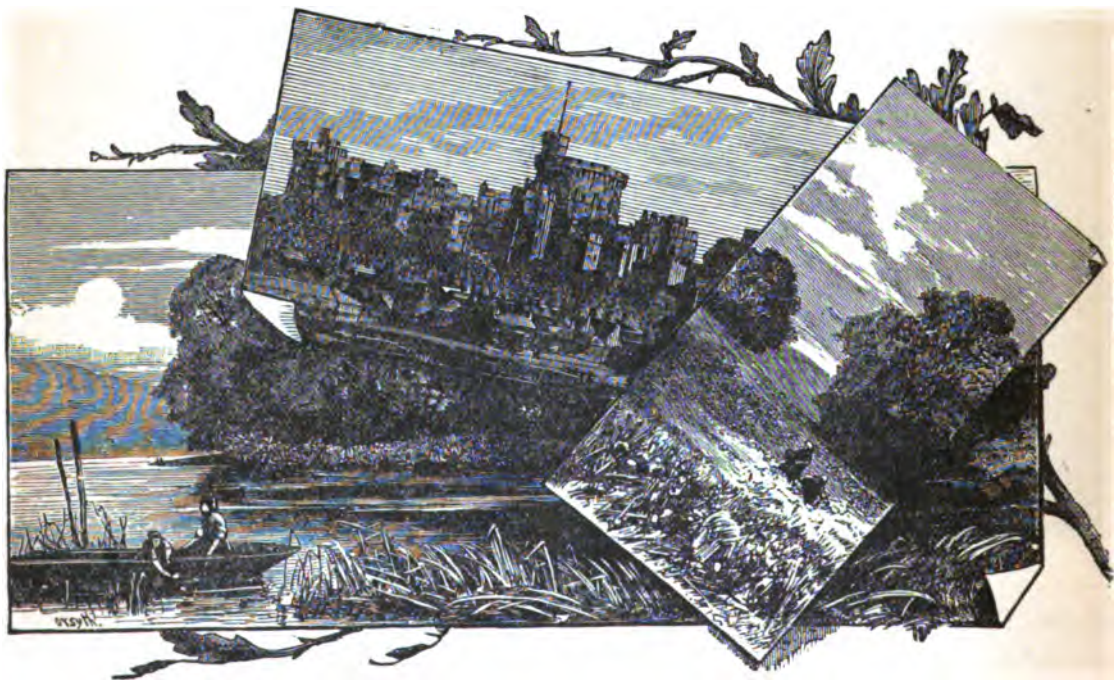
GOLD MINING REGION OF SOFALA.

Delgoa Bay to Mozambique, much of which is gathered here and shipped even to China. We know the disposition of Arabs to call places after their own names, and hence this rich country has an Arabic appellative, *Sofala*, likewise the river upon which it is situated; and the river which leads to the principal mines, the Manica gold mines, is called *Sabia*, an Arabic name, the same as *Yemen*, the name of Arabia's ruler in the time of Christ.



The whole kingdom of Sofala is marvellously rich in gold, silver, copper, and iron, while precious stones of almost every variety have been found there, and the finest pearls have been taken from oysters in the mouth of Sofala river. Indeed, it has often been claimed that the pearl fishery here is equal to that found anywhere along the coast of India, while no gold mines in the world are richer. About all this region elephants formerly abounded in such numbers that, from the ivory gathered there, it has been estimated that from three to four thousand of these animals must have been killed annually.

There are also, and have been from time immemorial, great numbers of apes, monkeys and peacocks, both in a wild and domesticated state, throughout the Sofala region, so that in every aspect the country seems to present itself as being unquestionably the Ophir from whence Solomon derived so much of his wealth and which he used so lavishly in the building of the temple. Reference will again be made to this subject when we come to consider Bruce's travels.



## CHAPTER II.

### A HISTORY OF AFRICA.



TO acquaint my readers with the phases through which Africa has passed, and especially to show the basis upon which the claim is made that it was once well known and evidently thickly populated with peoples advanced in the arts inseparable from a high social condition, I beg to add here a brief history of the country. This history is necessarily imperfect because very little is known concerning Africa, and because so much of legend and dim tradition is associated with its every district, so that the facts themselves thus become very obscure. Another reason is found in the small attention which archeologists have given to the country outside of Egypt; so that our information is principally based upon assumptions which follow most naturally the few known facts, just as we assume certain things from analogy or example.

The name *Africa* seems to have been derived from *Afer*, the son of Hercules, though there are many other derivatives, which show that the real derivation is unknown. The Grecians divided the country into Egypt and Lybia, the latter name being bestowed in honor of a daughter of Epaphus, who was a son of Jupiter. When the Arabians overran a large portion of the country they called their African conquests *Ifriquia*, from *Faruch*, signifying *separation*, because of its insulation from other countries, being connected with Asia by the narrow isthmus of Suez, which, since the building of the canal, has left it an island, as it is now entirely surrounded by water. Other Arabians maintain that the name was given in honor of *Melek Ifiriqui*, who was an ancient king of Arabia Felix, but who, being driven from his own possessions, fled into Africa and planted there a new kingdom which soon became both great and populous.

The name Africa is also said to be derived from *aphar*, a Hebrew word signifying *dust*, given because of the sand-storms that sweep the Sahara Desert and the periodical simooms that carry such great quantities of dust as sometimes to obscure the sun. In the old Phœnician, Africa is derivable from *feruc*, meaning an ear of corn, or when changed to *ferec* signifies a corn country. This derivation is quite probable, because those portions of Africa which the Phœnicians knew produced such crops of grain as were sufficient to feed the then known world, a fact celebrated in the odes of Horace and Virgil and other ancient poets.



## STRANGE BELIEFS RESPECTING AFRICA.

A few hundred years ago the most absurd, though amusing, notions and conceits were entertained regarding the country, nearly all writers holding to the belief that it was incapable of supporting any vegetation except poisonous plants, which grew in great profusion and harbored the most grotesque and horrible animals. A few people were supposed to inhabit this dangerous land who were proof against the ills which surrounded them. Sir John Mandeville gave descriptions of some very strange creatures occupying the mid country, among other things declaring that there were *cynocephali* (dog-headed monkeys)



AGRICULTURE IN AFRICA.

who have heads and claws like dogs and bark like them. He also speaks of what he terms *Sciapodes*, a people who are wondrous swift though they progress by hopping on one leg. At mid-day, when unable to find a forest shade, they lie down upon the back and hold their foot aloft, which is so large that it serves the purpose of a shade umbrella in protecting their bodies from the sun. There are also, he affirms, a headless people called *Blemmyes*, whose eyes and mouths are situated on their breasts, but who have neither ears nor nose.

These ridiculous fancies were put forth in many books and most generally believed, although, thousands of years before, other historians had pictured



Africa as a veritable paradise. By these it was correctly represented as being watered by numerous rivers whose valleys were covered with perpetual green, while the entire land was fanned by cooling gales, so that the country was likened to a great orchard bearing all manner of delicious fruits. Of this African Elysium Homer, in his *Odyssey*, thus writes :

“Close to the gates, well hedged on either side,  
A stately orchard was, four acres wide ;  
There pregnant trees up to the heavens shoot,  
Laden with pears, and store of blushing fruit.  
Olives and figs, green, budding, ripe appear,  
Cherished with western breezes all the year.”

#### EXPEDITIONS OF DISCOVERY.

The first reliable information concerning the country, beyond Egypt and the northern coast, was obtained by Hanno, who sailed from Carthage, out of the gates of Hercules (Gibraltar) and coasted the land as far as Guinea, bringing back with him many surprising tales with which to render more exciting his story of facts.

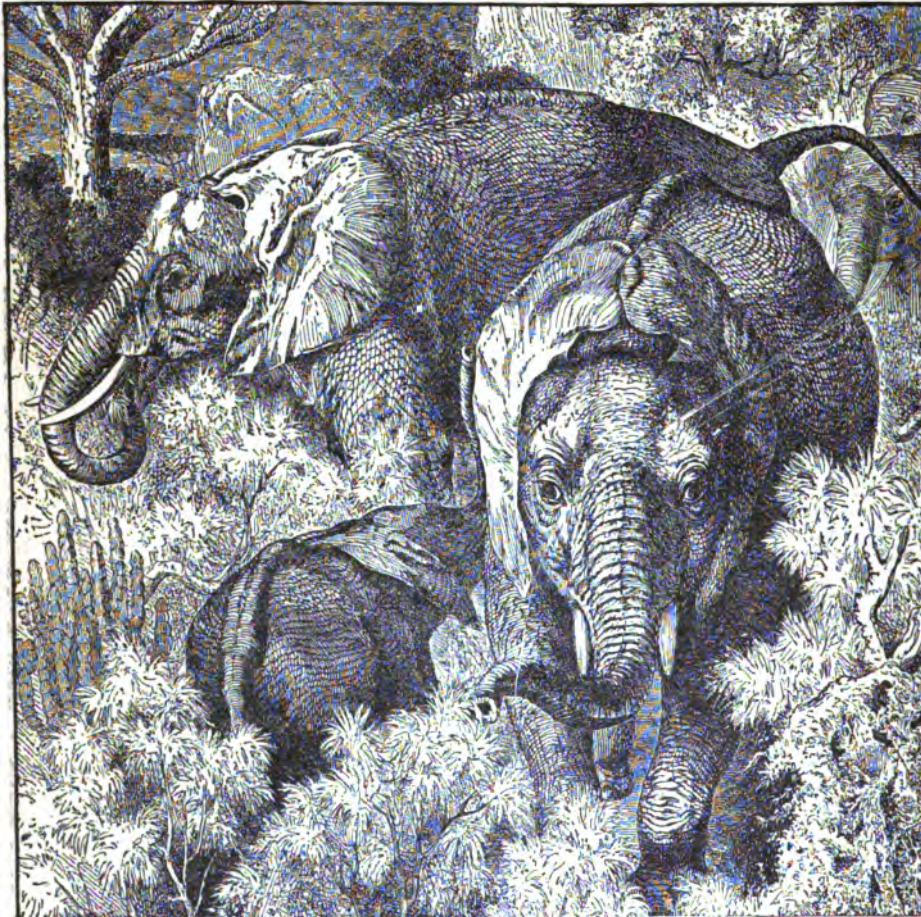
Herodotus, in the fourth of his nine books (*Melpomene*), which he named after the Muses, says that some Phœnicians sailed out of the Red Sea and after three years doubled the lower point of Africa and returned to their country by way of Hercules' Pillars (Gibraltar).

It is also related that Sataspes, a Persian nobleman, having been found guilty of ravishing a virgin, was condemned to be crucified, but through the mediation of his mother, who was a sister of Darius, of Media, his sentence was commuted by Xerxes to the circumnavigation of Africa, this being deemed so dangerous an undertaking as to be a punishment next to death. He sailed out of Gibraltar and proceeded along the coast as far south as Cape Verd, when, being awed by the eastward trend of the sea and the strange animals and people seen along the shore, he returned again by the same route and made a report to Xerxes, stating that it was impossible to sail round the country. Having thus failed to perform the undertaking, he was remitted to his former sentence and suffered death on the cross.

In his second book (*Euterpe*), Herodotus gives an account of another expedition undertaken by the Nasamones, a people then inhabiting Tunis. This expedition was composed of five young men possessing both fortune and qualifications, who were chosen by lot to explore the African deserts. It is not related how large was the caravan that accompanied them, but it must have been a considerable one, for they took a great abundance of provisions in preparation for a long absence. After travelling a few days southward they came upon so many lions, probably in the Atlas mountains, that they changed their course to westward, though by this they were brought into the deserts and were in danger of perishing. At length, however, they came to an oasis in

which there were many trees bending low with delicious fruit. While regaling themselves in this inviting place they were visited by a number of dwarfs, or people whom Herodotus represents as being scarcely half the stature of ordinary people. These dwarfs, though unable to understand any word of speech uttered by those whom they had thus visited, perceived their forlorn and dangerous condition and very kindly led the expedition across a wide desert tract and to their city, in which all the inhabitants were black. A large river

ran by this city in an eastward direction, but Herodotus neglects to report the ultimate destination of the expedition or its fate. It is probable that the party crossed the desert really and visited the city of Bornu, which is so old a place that no history is extant concerning its founding. Though there are now no dwarfs in



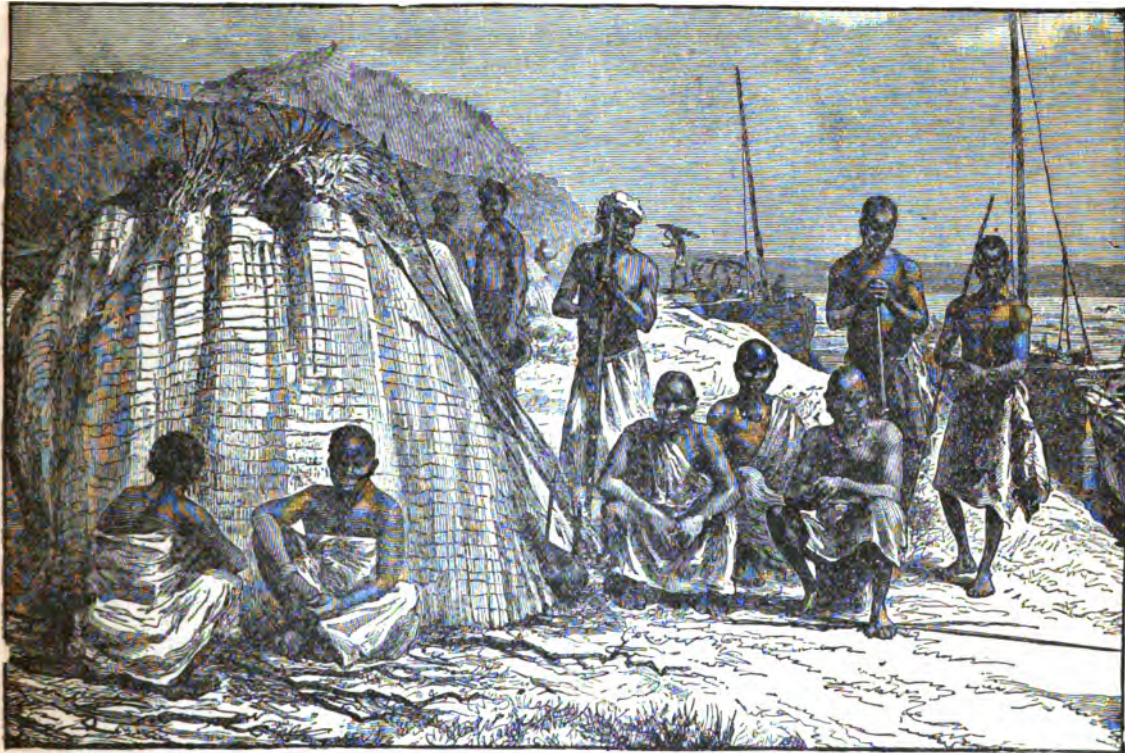
AFRICAN ELEPHANTS IN THE SOFALA COUNTRY.

the immediate region of that place, there is a race of pigmies found not a great distance to the south of it, and who have, no doubt, been driven from their more northern home by the first Arabian invaders.

The greatest progress toward discovery and exploration along the coast and the interior of Africa was made in the fifteenth century, when the Portuguese attacked the Moors along the Atlantic seaboard and captured from them several cities. Having thus obtained a foothold, they increased their African acquisitions to such an extent that the envy of England was excited. Henry, Duke of Viseo, youngest son of Henry I., now resolved to enter the



lists as an explorer, to which end he engaged learned mathematicians and navigators, and in 1420 set sail with a fleet of three vessels to circumnavigate Africa. He continued to make voyages along the coast at considerable intervals, discovering Madeira in 1420, Porto Sancho in 1428, Cape Verd in 1440 and the coast of Guinea in 1452; but it does not appear that he extended his trips further southward, so that his real ambition was never attained. Henry died in 1463, after which no further efforts at discovery were made until King John II., of Portugal, sent out an expedition under command of Diego Cou, who in 1486, discovered the Angola, or Congo country, St. George's Isle, and the mouth of the Congo. A year later, associated with Bartholomew Dias, he continued



MELINDE.

his voyage southward until he reached the Cape of Good Hope, called in the Portuguese language *Cabo de Bona Esperanza*, and entertained the ambition of proceeding thence eastwardly to India, but on account of a mutiny among his crew he was forced to return without doubling the cape.

#### FINDING THE ROUTE TO INDIA.

In the year 1497 Vasco da Gama obtained a commission from Emanuel (known as the Fortunate), king of Portugal, the successor of John the Great, and made a voyage with the avowed purpose of reaching India by an eastward route. Though he set sail with four vessels, with this sole intention, he made search for other lands, and pursuing a tortuous course he discovered the islands

of St. John and St. Helena. After spending a year cruising off the African coast, da Gama proceeded again southward, and doubling the Cape of Good Hope he sailed along the Eastern coast northward to Mozambique, and thence to Melinde, three degrees south of the Equator, and from there he took an easterly course until he reached the East Indies at Calicut, on the Malabar coast. He remained at Calicut only a short time, on account of Arabian intrigues which threatened his life, and returned to Lisbon August 29, 1499, with the proud news of the complete success of his undertaking. Thus did da Gama win the honor of being the first navigator to double the southern extremity of Africa, and of finding a sea route to India.

It is a singular fact, related by da Gama, that along the east coast of Africa there was at this time many splendid ports and large cities well laid out and substantially built, occupied by people who dressed in fine fabrics, such as silks and purples. At one of these places da Gama stopped for some time and formed an alliance with the king of Melinde, who furnished da Gama with a pilot, who conducted the expedition across the Indian Ocean. What became of these people, and how their cities were destroyed, is one of the many mysteries which distinguish the Dark Continent. There is undoubted geologic evidence of a former land connection between the continent of Africa and the island of Madagascar, but there is no evidence of any submergence of the African coast during the past thousand years. Melinde, indeed, still exists, located less than two hundred miles above Zanzibar, but if we are to believe the reports made by da Gama upon his return to Lisbon, the place has very greatly deteriorated, and presents now no semblance of its former magnificence.

#### WAS AFRICA WELL KNOWN TO THE ANCIENTS?

It is a question whether or not all portions of Africa were once settled by a semi-civilized people. The evidence that it was, while being very far from conclusive, is sufficient at least to excite our curiosity and a desire to make further investigations. The Sahara Desert, which covers the face of a sixth part of all Africa, notwithstanding its desolation and the difficulties it offers to travellers, and the impossibility of its occupancy by mankind, except in a few fertile spots, is nevertheless as well known as Palestine, or Egypt itself. Caravans have for ages braved its burning sands and scorching winds until every foot of its shifting surface has been pressed by the keel of a desert ship as it went slowly sailing under a cargo of Eastern fabrics, or taking back to Egypt and Arabia the products of the oases and of Senegambian forests.

It was in Africa that the old legend was born of Atlas supporting the world upon his back, as thus described by Virgil in his *Æneid*:

And now the craggy top, and lofty side  
Of Atlas, which supporteth heaven, be spied:  
A fleece of sable clouds the temples binds  
Of Pine-crowned Atlas, beat with rain and winds;  
Snow clothes his shoulders, his starched beard is froze  
And from the old man's chin a river flows.

The Atlas Mountains in the northern part of Africa, lofty, precipitous, snow-covered and most difficult of ascent, have been scaled by thousands and were well known when Rome was in its infancy. Is it not inconceivable that this bleak, barren, repelling region of the north should have been so well explored thousands of years ago, and have been the home of so-called civilized people ever since; that Egypt, on the east, should have been the seat from whence all civilizations sprung, and yet that great country lying on her western border and fringing the northern desert with inviting productiveness, should have remained wholly unexplored, a very elysian region with gates wide open which no one would enter?

#### MAPS OF AFRICA MANY YEARS OLD.

All the most famous Roman, Grecian and Arabic writers of antiquity have professed an accurate knowledge of Central Africa. Ptolemy, the Hellenic-Egyptian geographer, in the second century of our era, gave particular descriptions of the rivers, lakes, towns, mountains and all the physical features of Africa. Ptolemy was the first person to use the terms latitude and longitude, and to prove that the earth is a globe; and until the sixteenth century his geography continued to be a standard text-book. Is it possible that this map of Africa is only a fancy? Surely some one would have discovered its unreliability before the lapse of sixteen centuries.

Strabo and Pliny, Herodotus, Thebet, and other old geographers have given us the most minute and interesting descriptions of the physical features of the country, and also of its animals; and it is also true that while much fiction has been found among their assertions, there has been also so large a leaven of truth that as a whole their histories are still reckoned as standard works. They frequently mention animals as being peculiar to Central Africa which, being scouted for hundreds of years, have been by modern explorers found to be verities. The same may be said of the mountains of which they speak; for though it is now claimed that the Mountains of the Moon, formerly described as crossing Africa from east to west about the Equator, have no existence, yet there is a range of high table lands, some rising into veritable mountains, as Baker says, 7000 feet in height, crossing the country almost on the equatorial line, and which form the water-sheds of nearly the whole continent. In this region the Nile has its source, as does also the Congo and the Zambesi; here also are the great lakes, and each one seems to be the source of some river, large or small, because the country is ramified by innumerable watercourses, so that hundreds of years ago it was called the "Land of Rivers." From a book published by John Ogilby in 1670, under the patronage of Charles II., I extract the following concerning the lakes and watercourses of Central Africa:

"This region abounds also with many great lakes, the chiefest is that they call the Zaire, or Zembre, which Linefoot takes to be the old Triton, out of whose bottom issue two famous rivers that water the kingdom of Congo, the Coanze and Lalande. Some affirm that the Nile, Zambere, or the Conama,



have here their original." How singularly prophetic is this claim, if it be not made from positive knowledge. Look at a modern map of Africa which now shows the source of the Nile to be Albert and Victoria lakes, while the source



FALLS OF THE NILE.

of the Congo, though not yet discovered, is given by all geographers as a lake which, no doubt, will be sooner or later discovered.

THE SOURCE OF THE NILE LONG KNOWN.

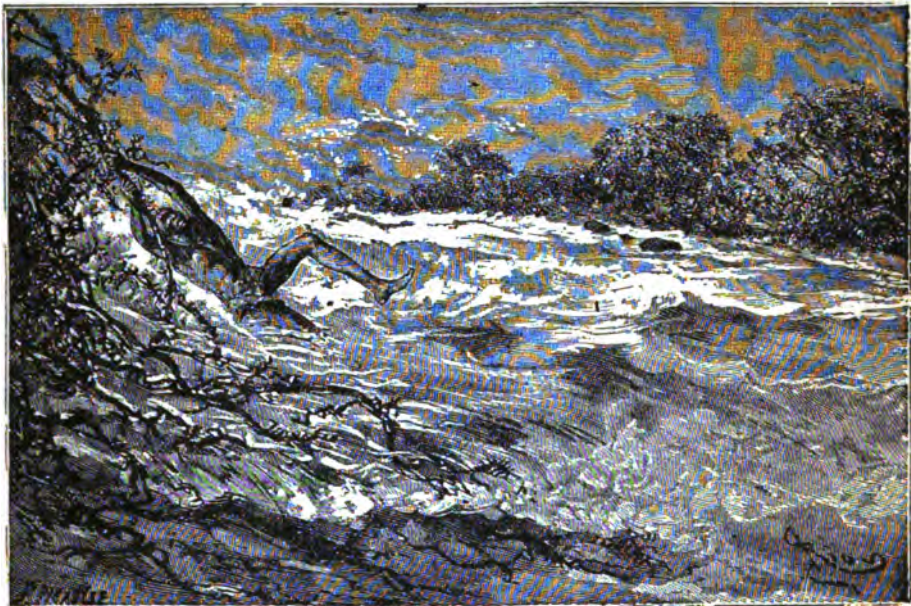
But this same book is quite explicit concerning the source of the Nile, for it says, page 47: "The Nile rises in the country of Sahala, being a part of the province of Agaos, bordering on Goyam; whose source or spring-head



appears in two founts, seeming perfectly round, on the top of a morass or boggy plain, upon a hill surrounded with shady and pleasant groves; the diameter of each though no more than eighteen inches, yet is in depth unfathomable, supposed bottomless. The water keeps within the narrow banks till breaking forth at the bottom of a hill, it soon spreads into a river whose channel, replenished by the concourse of divers others, swells into a lake thirty leagues long and fourteen broad, whence breaking forth afresh, after several windings and meanders, it returns almost to the first head, and there falling down by great precipices, among unapproachable rocks, shoots into the midst of Ethiopia."

A more truthful description of the real source of the Nile cannot be given at this day.

Sir Samuel Baker claims the honor of having discovered the river's source in 1861, though Captain Speke no doubt preceded him and came upon the lakes which are now accepted as the river's head a few months earlier. But Baker followed up the river, and by so doing fully de-



CATARACT OF THE NILE.

termined its course, except for the last fifty miles, when he was forced by the deep morasses, of which Ogilby speaks, to cut across the continent. Baker viewed the Albert N'yanza from the summit of a high hill, at the bottom of which lay this broad expanse of water, certainly as large as Ogilby reports, though its extent has not yet been determined. The precipices were also found, by which it was only possible to pass by carrying the boats over great hills, and the tortuous windings of the river issuing from the lakes, and its diminutive size, have also been authenticated. The two small founts spoken of remain yet to be rediscovered, if they exist, but it is possible that these will be found.

When we consider the fact that the real source of the Mississippi river is still in dispute, we can the better appreciate the accuracy of Ogilby's description, and feel full assurance of the truth of the assertion that ancient geographers must at one time have known from whence the Nile took its rise.

## OGILBY'S MAP.

To fortify more amply the claim that Central Africa must have, during some early period, possibly antedating history, been well known if not populated by civilized or semi-civilized people, I beg to call the reader's attention to the subjoined map published by Ogilby in his book already referred to. This is a reproduction of the original, on which the names of lakes, rivers, towns, provinces, etc., are printed in Latin or Portuguese. The names thus given, however, would afford us little information even if translated into English, as many of them have been repeatedly changed by modern discoverers and geographers. But the positions of rivers and lakes on Ogilby's map are remarkably like those given on the maps of to-day, the differences being wonderfully small when we consider how imperfect was the art of map-making two hundred years ago. It may also be asked why so many villages are located on the Ogilby map if the central African regions were at the time *terra incognita*. If these locations of rivers and lakes be correct, we must believe that the villages are also properly located.

By reference to the map we discover on the west the river Niger, represented as rising in Central Africa and having its source in Niger lake. This is an error, though it is not difficult to conceive how such a mistake was made, as the map must evidently have been drawn from reports made by travellers through the country. Niger lake, however, has its correspondence in Liber lake in the province of Nigrata. This region is still so little known that many other lakes may be located in Nigrata, and those laid down in Ogilby's map may therefore be verities. The Niger is also here represented as having its course through a large body of water named Lake Guarda. This lake, though connected with no river flowing into the Atlantic, is evidently Lake Tchad, which was discovered by Clapperton and Dunham, in 1822. North of the Niger a short distance is the town of Tombotu, or Timbuctoo, though it was not until 1826 that a reward of \$15,000 was earned by the first white traveller who should reach that city. This prize was won by Maj. Alexander Gordon Laing. It is recorded in ancient history that the Tyrians, several centuries before the time of Christ, maintained a large commerce with Timbuctoo, and yet in the present century a very large sum was offered as a reward to the first white explorer who should reach that city. What became of the people of that city, who twenty-five hundred years ago were so refined in their tastes and so wealthy as to clothe themselves in Tyrian purple?

South of the equator we also find on Ogilby's map two very large lakes, called respectively Zaire and Zafflan. The former of these, however, is divided into two lakes, known as Zaire and Zembe. These are represented as being the sources of the Nile. Now let the reader examine a modern map of Africa and note the correspondence and fidelity of that of Ogilby's. Zaire lake thus becomes the Albert N'yanza of Baker, and Zafflan that of Victoria N'yanza of Speke, both being rediscovered in 1861. The Zembre should not be connected



with Zaire lake, and if we separate them, the former may represent Tanganyika, discovered by Burton and Speke, in 1858. South of these we discover, on Ogilby's map, Lake Sachas, which in size and shape exactly corresponds



ON THE BORDER OF THE ATLAS MOUNTAINS.

with the modern lake of Bangweolo, discovered by Livingstone, and near whose banks he died. Lake Nyassa, a large body in the eastern part of Africa, also discovered by Livingstone, is not laid down on Ogilby's map, though about the same location are two small, nameless bodies of water, which may represent,



as they no doubt do, lakes discovered, but whose extent was unknown at the time when Ogilby's map was made.

If we examine this old map to see what correspondence there is between the rivers as there laid down and those given on our modern maps, the coincidence is quite as startling. Between  $15^{\circ}$  and  $20^{\circ}$  we find on the Ogilby map the river Cuama, taking its rise in the south central region and flowing westward into Mozambique channel. On modern maps, this same river becomes the Zambesi, of Livingstone, the source of which has not been determined by modern explorers. On the west coast, Ogilby locates two large rivers, viz.: the Coanza and the Zaire, and traces their length quite as far as modern maps do the same rivers, the former never having changed its name, and the latter being now known by three names, viz.: the Congo, Lualaba and the Livingstone. All along the coast are found rivers debouching on this old map, but their sources are not given, any more than they are on modern maps. It is a strange thing, however, that the real Niger river does not appear on Ogilby's map, the stream to which he has given that name being in fact the Senegal. But several rivers are located as rising in the Mandinga country, or Western Sudan of modern maps, notably the Rio Real da Calabri, which may represent the Niger, as the location of its mouth is correct, though its length is not laid down.

Many other striking resemblances might be discussed, but as an admirable reproduction of Ogilby's map is given, I will leave the reader to make further comparisons with modern maps, in which he will be sure to find much to excite his surprise and interest.

#### RIVERS OF SAHARA DESERT.

That portion of the Sahara region represented on Ogilby's map appears to be well watered, being shown as traversed by numerous rivers, and occasional lakes also appear. To the casual reader, this exhibit, so inconsistent with the facts, would lead him to throw discredit upon the correctness of any part of the map. Sahara is, except about the few wells which give life to a vegetation limited to the immediate surroundings, a waterless waste, where rain never, or very rarely falls, and where an apparently illimitable waste of burning sand makes life of all kinds almost insupportable. But was it always so? Many geologists and a few very ancient writers declare that Sahara was once covered by the sea, and that, most probably, through the effects of some cataclysm the sea receded, leaving here its exposed bed. Or, perhaps, Sahara was once a fertile region, after the subsidence of the sea, whose soil was afterwards denuded by another encroachment of waters; and the land surrounding it on the north and east may have risen, as the evidences of geology abundantly attest, leaving here a great basin, which, ultimately drying up, left the desert as we now behold it.

It is difficult for us to conceive the Sahara as having been a splendidly watered and richly productive region, yet there is proof that it was once so. In 1871 Col. Flatters, of England, was engaged to make a preliminary study

of Eastern Sahara, with the view of building a railway from north-western Africa through Timbuctoo to the Soudan, in pursuit of which work he made

ASSASSINATION OF COL. FLATTERS AND PARTY.

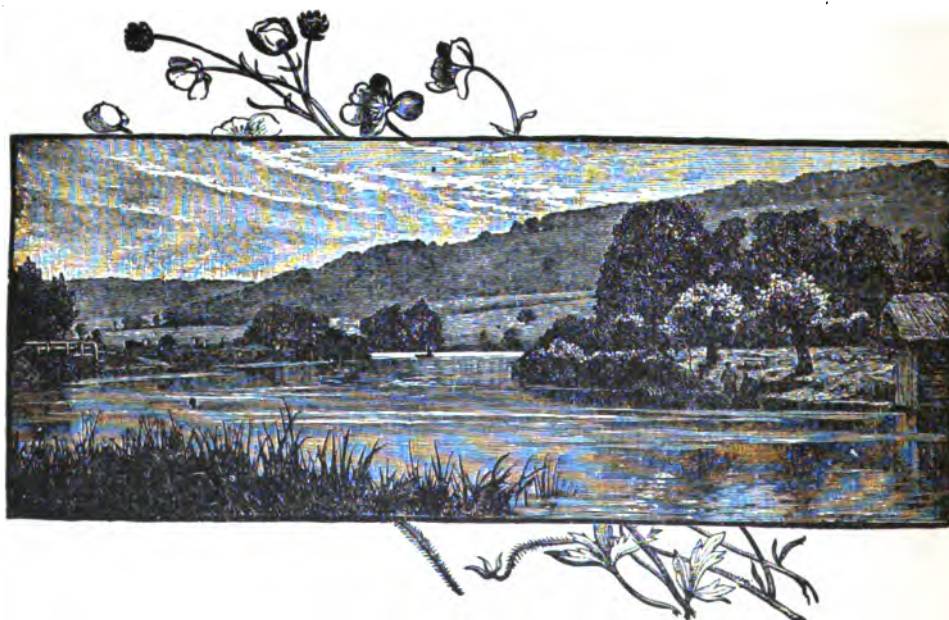


two expeditions to the Sahara regions, and each time crossed the desert, in which latter journey he was murdered by the savage Tonaregs. In describing



the desert, he declares it to be very much less dreary and desolate than travellers generally picture it. But among the many interesting statements which he makes are those in which he declares that Sahara is traversed by many mountain chains which are intersected by the beds of ancient rivers, and everywhere in these valleys an abundance of water is found not far below the surface. He says that the beds of what were once two great rivers rising somewhere in the south, having numerous lateral valleys in which once flowed their affluents, extend from near the northern portion of the Soudan to the cluster of lakes in the southern part of Algiers, where the streams once emptied. These beds, which are still spoken of as rivers, are called the Oued Mya and the Oued Igharghar. When rain falls on the mountains or highlands water forms in their tributaries which sometimes lasts for several days.

By reference to the Ogilby map we notice that the mountains mentioned by Col. Flatters are there represented, as well as the lakes and rivers, so that there is thus a re-enforcement of the evidence that this map must have been drawn from descriptions furnished by travellers who had familiarized themselves with every part of Africa.





## CHAPTER III.

### ARABIAN DISCOVERIES IN CENTRAL AFRICA.



**I**N the seventh century Mohammedanism made itself felt most signally throughout the world. It was in this period that the fanatics of this faith began a conquest of the globe, not only shaking the Roman Empire and over-running the greater part of Europe, but they directed their attention also to countries which until then were unknown to the civilization of Europe. They not only established kingdoms along the Mediterranean shore of Africa and founded large and flourishing cities, but they brought camels into service for crossing the Sahara and opened routes through that previously untrod desert. This invasion of the desert was really the result of a dispute between two rival dynasties of the Kingdom of Barbary, known as the Abassides and the Ommiades. A furious war, though of short duration, followed in which the latter dynasty was defeated, and its followers, to escape the fury of their adversaries, fled across the desert in great numbers and founded settlements in the Soudan, where their descendants still exist as *Fellahs*. Their original possessions, which they occupied without dispute, extended chiefly along the Niger and Quarrima rivers, but these were soon after greatly enlarged east and west. In this region they established an empire, the capital of which they located at Ghana, which is the modern Kano, in the province of Housa, some five hundred miles west of Lake Tchad. The sovereign chosen to rule this new empire was distinguished alike for his cruelty and the unrivalled pomp which he exhibited. His throne is said to have been ornamented with great balls of solid gold, and the dais upon which it rested was likewise a sheet of gold, indicative, as the monarch asserted, of the commerce by which his capital was enriched. This gold was found in a country towards the south, known then as Waugara, but which is now designated as the Gold Coast of Guinea, being transported up the Niger to its junction with the Quarrima, and from the nearest point on that stream carried overland to Kano.

Few travellers have visited this region, notwithstanding its reputed great wealth, because of the savage cruelty of the imbruted, ostracised Arabians that occupy them. These veritable fiends established themselves here by inflicting almost inconceivable cruelties upon the practically defenceless natives, hunting them like so many wild animals and shooting them as they would the most

savage and dangerous creatures that inhabit the earth. East of the Housa empire, and bordering it, is the kingdom of Bornu, once known as Kuka, the capital of which still retains that name and is located on the west coast of Lake Tchad. Clapperton and Denham visited the place in 1822, and report it a city of many thousand people, and as being substantially built, with many ornate and stately edifices. The Bornu soldiery are the most effective of any in

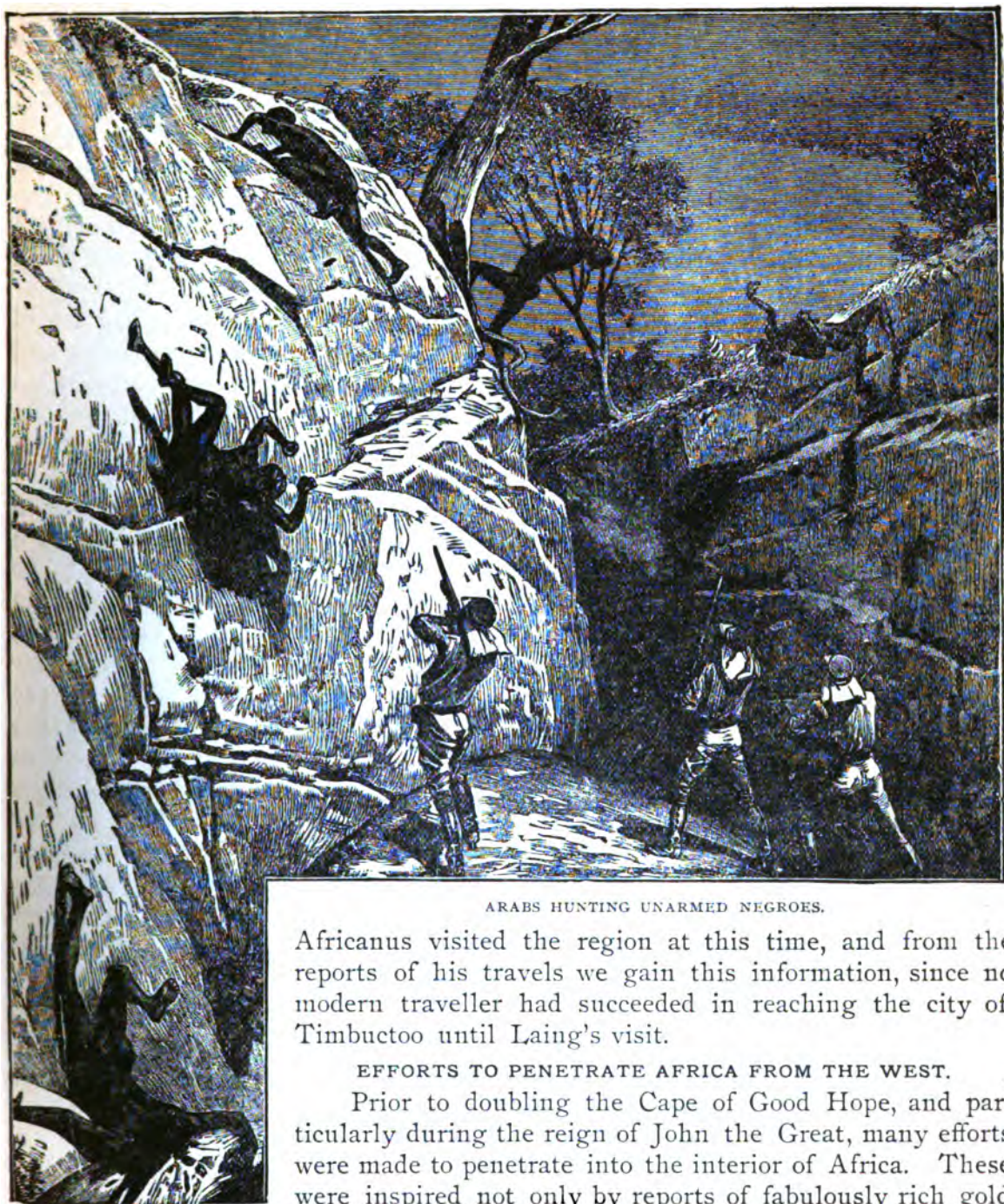


A FELLAH'S FAMILY.

Africa, and render their appearance the more formidable by wearing chain corselets, and clothing their cavalry horses in armor.

Four hundred years after the establishment of the kingdom of Ghana, for some reason which explorers have not been able to give us, Timbuctoo had entirely eclipsed the splendor of Kano, and had become the most powerful city, the chief seat of commerce and splendor, and the mart for gold. Leo





ARABS HUNTING UNARMED NEGROES.

Africanus visited the region at this time, and from the reports of his travels we gain this information, since no modern traveller had succeeded in reaching the city of Timbuctoo until Laing's visit.

#### EFFORTS TO PENETRATE AFRICA FROM THE WEST.

Prior to doubling the Cape of Good Hope, and particularly during the reign of John the Great, many efforts were made to penetrate into the interior of Africa. These were inspired not only by reports of fabulously rich gold mines and many valuable objects of commerce, but also by an adventurous desire to reach the court of a mysterious personage known as Prester John. The first mention of this distinguished personage was made by the traveller Rubruquis, who, claiming to have crossed Africa, brought back word of a Nestorian bishop in the central regions whose wealth and power were made to



appear as illimitable. Following these reports came others directly after, of a Christian prince in Abyssinia, and the two reports were considered as confirmatory of the existence of this religious ruler who was known as Prester John. Henceforth a diligent inquiry was instituted to locate his dominions, which were supposed to be not far from the western coast. Ambassadors were indeed dispatched to Timbuctoo in the belief that this city might have some connection with the kingdom. Di Barros set out in search of Timbuctoo, reports of which had long been current, and succeeded in locating it and its great rival, Genni, though it is not believed that he succeeded in entering either.

Both the English and the French, before the sixteenth century, had found a considerable Portuguese population along the Senegal and Gambia rivers, and their language had been mastered by many natives trading as far eastward as Bambouk, which was only a few hundred miles west of Timbuctoo, yet no effort was made to correct the erroneous impression, or belief, that the Niger flowed westward into the ocean, as set down on Ogilby's map.

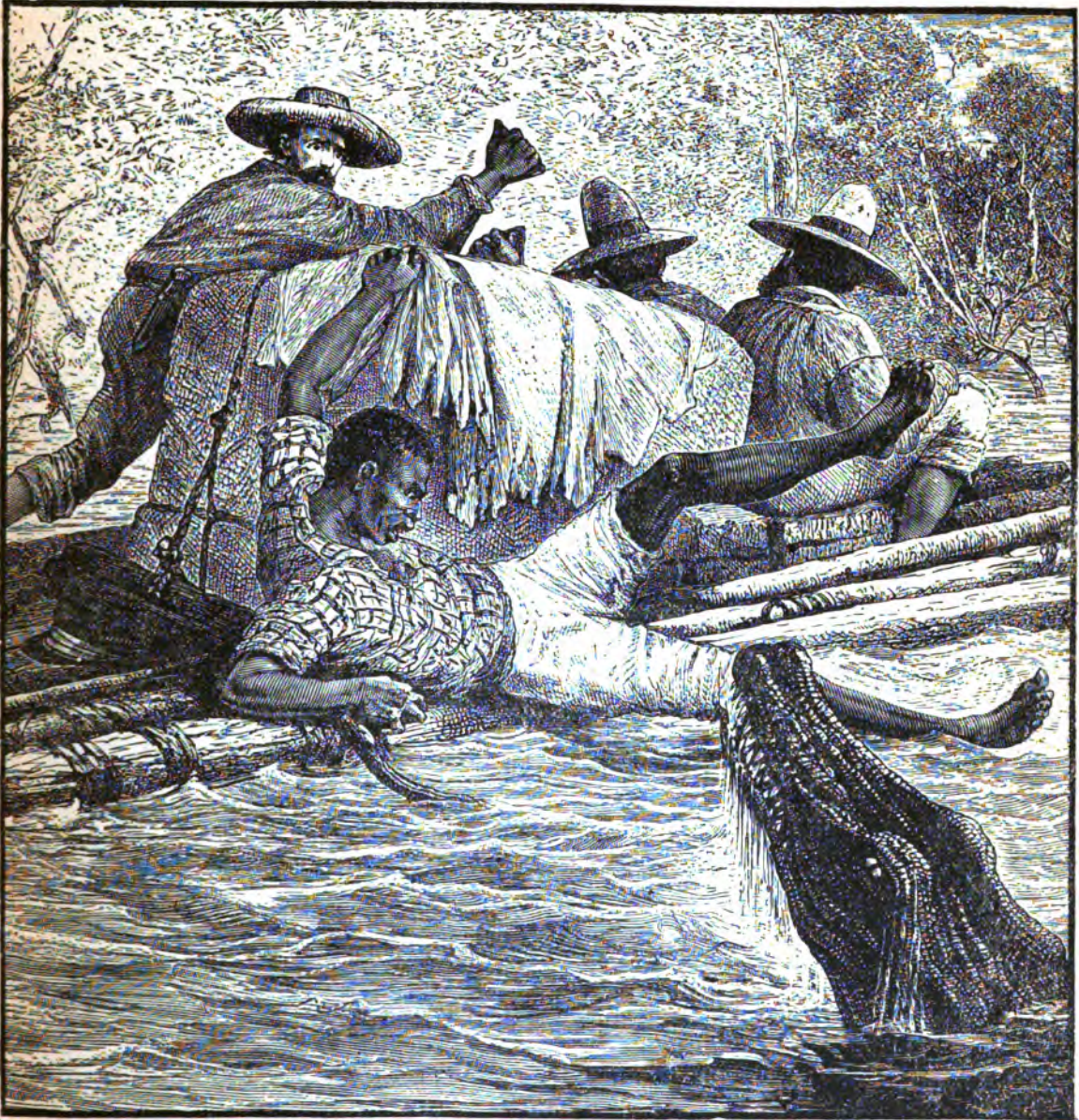
The Portuguese continued their extensions along the coast and formed considerable settlements on the gold coast at Elmina, and at the mouth of a river then known as the Formosa, but which some time after they found to be the Niger. At this latter settlement, the Portuguese found a large trade being carried on between the natives there and those in the interior. There was a king ruling over these coast possessions, but he derived his powers from some great potentate whose court was some two hundred and fifty miles in the interior, and who was known as Prince Agane. This prince was said to be the most powerful in all Africa, a belief probably inspired by the mystery with which he invested his person. It was reported that no one, save his immediate attendants, was permitted to see his face, but that during interviews he was screened from view by a silk curtain, at the conclusion of which he disclosed only his foot, to which those in the royal presence were required to pay homage. It has been popularly, and no doubt properly, supposed that this prince was the Arabian ruler of Ghana, of which the modern province of Ganid composes a part.

#### DISCOVERY OF A CHRISTIAN EMPIRE.

At the close of the fifteenth century the Portuguese not only sent missionaries into the interior, but they extended their influence by sailing around the cape and up the east coast as far as Melinde and Mombasa, reports of which kingdoms, especially the latter, had been brought back by Vasco da Gama after his discovery of a route to India. Covilham was in charge of the expedition succeeding the one which da Gama had commanded so successfully, and proceeding further north than his predecessor, landed on the shore of Abyssinia. This country, though so short a distance south of Egypt, seems to have been unknown to the ancient writers, though it was one of the earliest Christian empires, the seat of the mysterious Prester John. Covilham remained some time in Abyssinia and sent back to his sovereign glowing accounts of

its riches, besides inducing many missionaries to locate there, but he made no effort to penetrate the interior.

We have no further information respecting affairs in Africa until towards the end of the sixteenth century, when the emperor of Morocco sent a large expedition



CROCODILE SEIZING THE NEGRO GUIDE.

against the prince of Timbuctoo, which resulted in a conquest of the city, the mystery of which, however, was revealed only to the conquerors, for the place continued to be as carefully guarded against the entrance of strangers as it was before. This conquest seemed to absorb the attention of all Europe for a time,

popular interest being much increased by reports of vast gold fields in the vicinity of Timbuctoo, in addition to the valuable commerce which the city was known to enjoy. Influenced by these reports, an English company was formed in 1618, for the purpose of penetrating to Timbuctoo by ascending the Gambia, which was then supposed to be one of the mouths of the Niger.

#### MURDER OF CAPTAIN THOMPSON.

This company sent out Captain Thompson with a vessel who, landing at a point where Bathurst now stands, took to a small boat and started up the stream. He proceeded as far as Tenda, about one hundred miles from the Gambia mouth, which was further than any other European had ever before ventured. Here he was attacked by the natives, and after a stubborn resistance himself and boat-crew were killed. The Portuguese also instigated another body of natives to attack the anchored vessel, in which nearly all the crew were likewise killed, thus tragically ending the first English expedition ever sent into African wilds.

The English company, however, was undeterred by its first misfortunes and in 1620 dispatched another party, under the command of Richard Johnson. He proceeded up the river a distance of more than two hundred miles, and from information given by natives he supposed he was near Timbuctoo. Difficulties here arose, however, chief of which was his inability to make further progress in his boats on account of the vegetation which fairly blocked up the stream. The river was also infested with crocodiles which gave the boatmen much alarm, especially after one of their negro guides had been torn from a raft constructed to carry some of the company's goods to lighten the boats. Johnson was thus forced to return, but it was with the hope of renewing efforts to reach Timbuctoo after equipping himself more perfectly for the expedition. But his failure discouraged the English company, which now abandoned the undertaking.

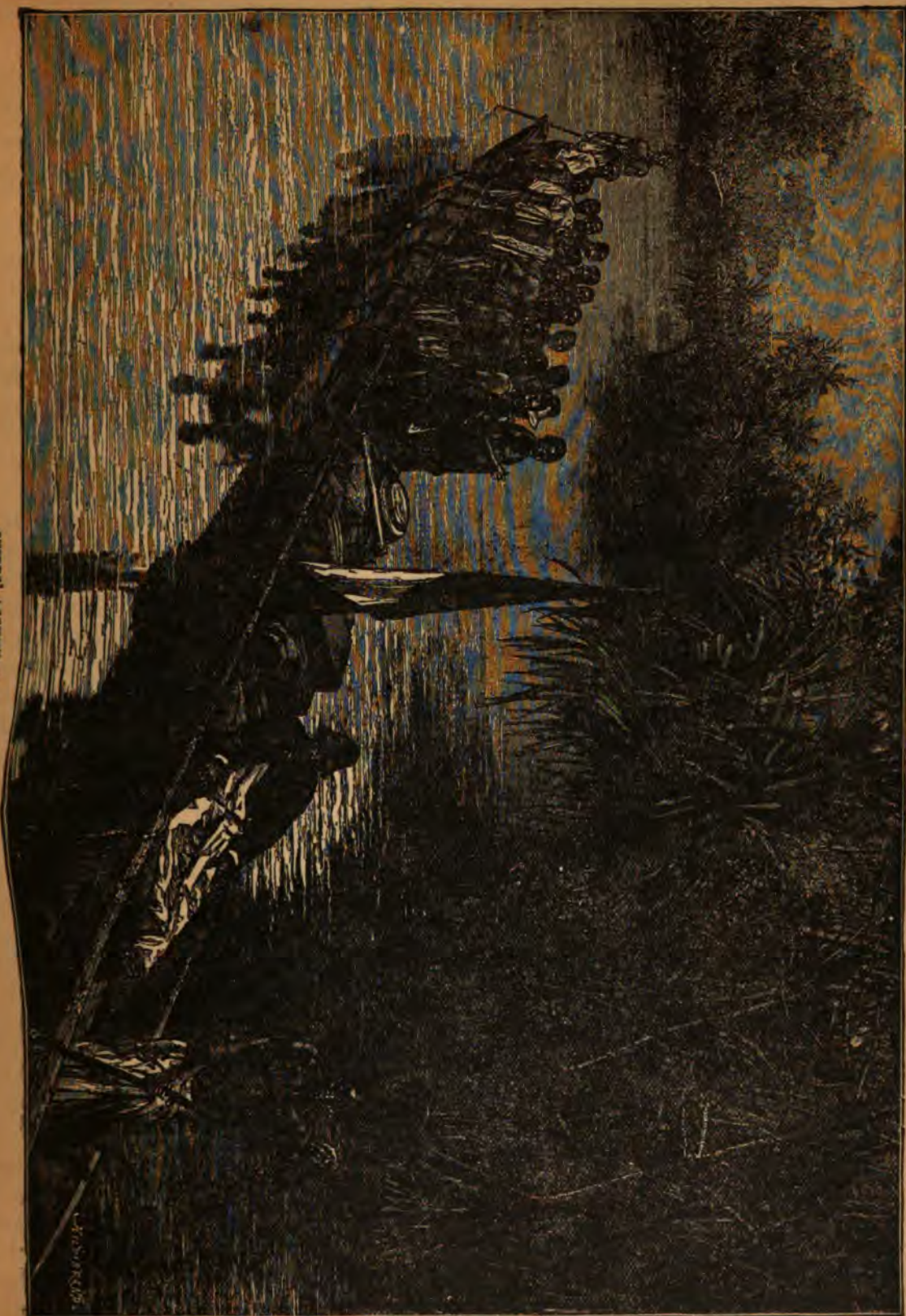
A century elapsed without further effort to reach Timbuctoo, till the Duke of Chandos, Director of the English-African Company, entertained the idea of increasing its small profits by opening communication with the country of gold. In pursuance of this ambition, in 1723 he sent out a company under Bartholomew Stibbs, who attempted to follow up the Gambia in canoes. They proceeded little further than did Johnson, finding the same obstructions, which made navigation, even by canoes, impossible. The information which Stibbs was able to gather from the natives led him to conclude, as he says, "that the original or head of the river Niger is nothing near so far in the country as by the geographers has been represented," though he still believed the Gambia to be a tributary of the Niger. He declared that it had no communication with the Senegal or with any lake, nor did he anywhere hear the river Niger named. This was the last expedition sent into west Africa by the English.

#### THE FRENCH IN AFRICA.

In the mean time the French were making great exertions to form settlements along the Senegal, but with such poor success that in 1630 some merchants



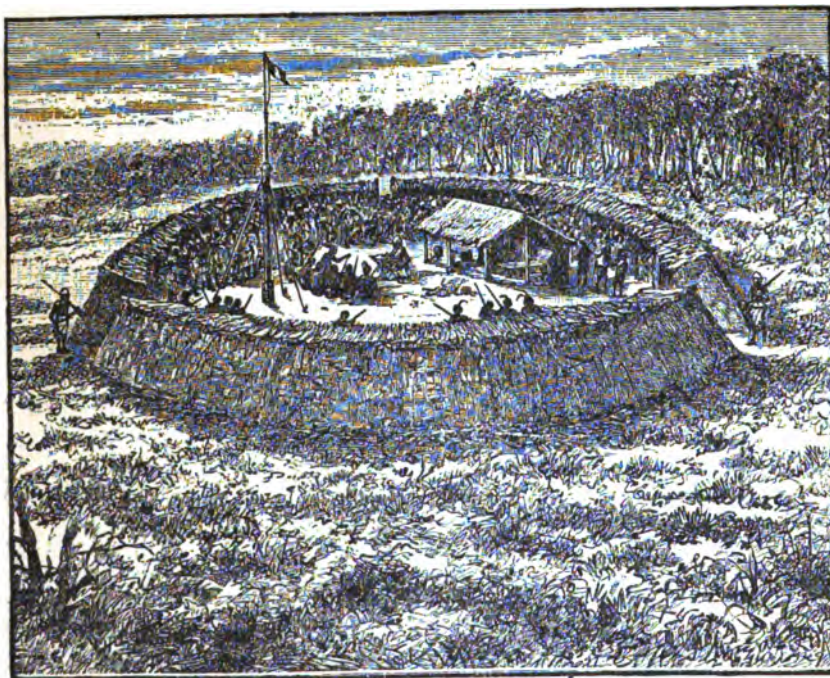
STIDDS' ASCENT OF THE NIGER.





At Dieppe and Rouen opened commercial intercourse with the region, making the crews of their vessels as comfortable as possible in temporary huts hastily erected to shelter them during the time of their stay. In 1664, they were compelled to give way to the West India Company, whose privileges included also Western Africa. In nine years, however, it was bankrupted, and on its ruins was erected a second, succeeded by a third, fourth and fifth effort to build up a profitable trade in that region, which last was merged into John Law's Mississippi scheme.

All the mercantile associations which had up to this time attempted to build up a lucrative trade in Western Africa had met with disastrous failure,



FRENCH FORT IN AFRICA.

though each had its period of activity in which much was done to extend both trade and discovery.

The next effort made at a reclamation of the region was in 1697, under the governorship of Sieur Brue, who, from the settlement of Port Saint Louis, sailed up the Senegal with the purpose of adjusting some difficulties with the king of the Fellahs and to establish a trade with the Arabs.

He succeeded in his negotiations, and afterwards erecting a fort at Giorel, in 1698, he reached Gallam, which was the head of navigation for large barks. At Dramanet he built another fort and established a settlement under the name of Saint Joseph, which afterwards became the centre of French trade in the interior. Through the efforts of one of his associates named Compagnon—an adventurous and shrewd companion truly—he acquired a great deal of information about Bambouk and its marvellously rich gold fields. So anxious was he to obtain possession of these mines that he raised a company of twelve hundred men, intending to overrun the country and take forcible possession, but at the last moment he was unable to secure either the authority or means from his government for such a purpose. He did succeed, however, in determining the fact that the Senegal had no connection with the Niger, and a few years after D'Auville was able,

largely by the information given him by Brue, to construct a map showing the true course of the Niger and the location of Timbuctoo on its north bank, and in restricting Abyssinia and Congo to their true limits.

The history of exploration in Africa remained silent for another century, and until Mungo Park, a Scotchman, traversed a considerable part of the west region in 1795; but he was not equipped to make any explorations, so that the record of his journey is little more than a description of the punishments which he received at the hands of the Arabs. He wandered around for nearly a year, enduring great sufferings in his efforts to escape, and when on the Niger he was attacked by an armed body sent by King Taour to apprehend him; to escape them and the tortures which must follow had he fallen into the hands of this cruel despot, he leaped into the river and thus destroyed himself.

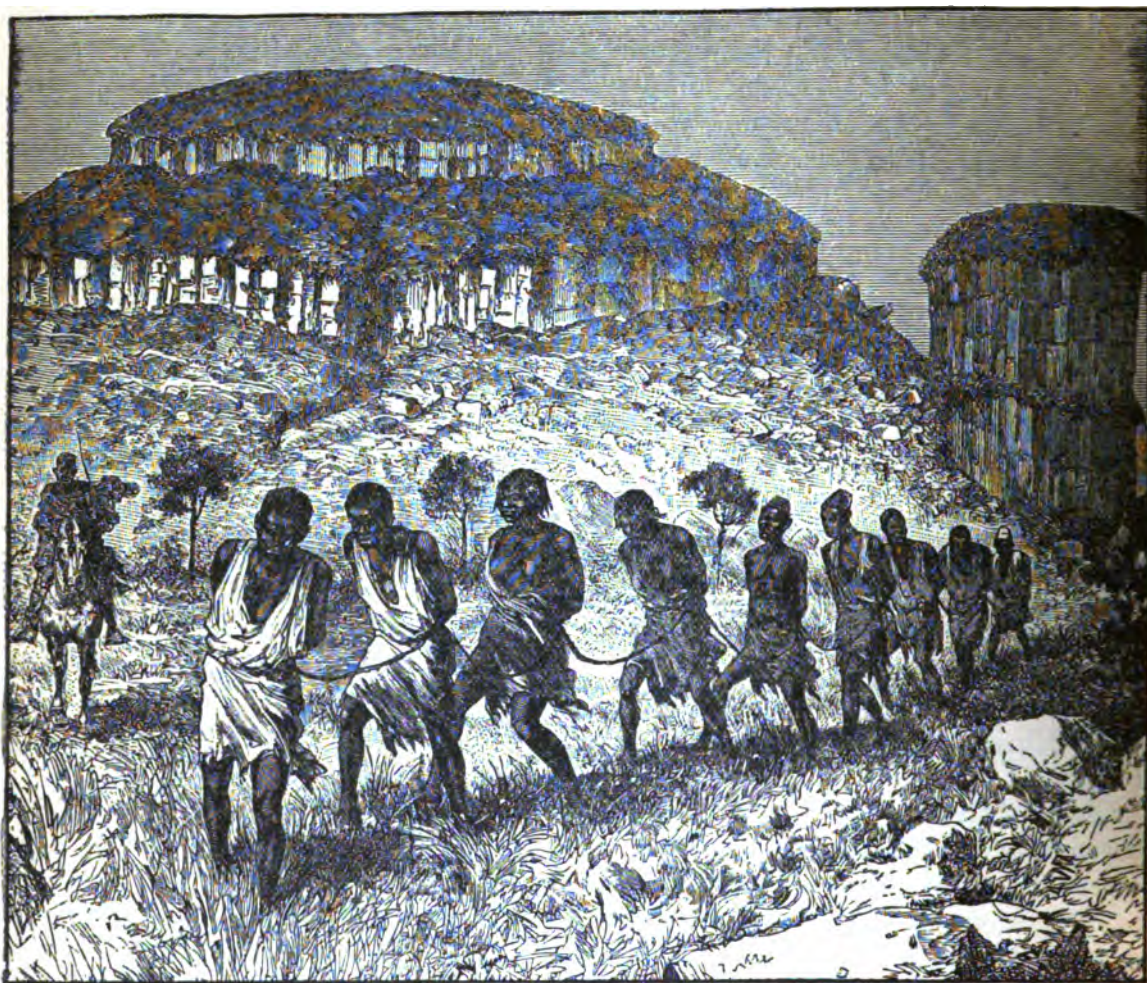
#### DISCOVERY OF THE NIGER'S COURSE.

Richard Lemon Lander, also an Englishman, was the next traveller to attempt a crossing of the Guinea country, whose visit to that region was made with the particular purpose of seeking the Niger's source. He set sail for Africa in 1825, and five months later had reached Katunga, the capital of Yariba. He proceeded thence to Wow-Wow, where he gained the first information of the manner of Park's death. Here he was detained for some time by the attentions of a rich African widow who sought to compel him to marry her. She is represented as having been a very mountain of flesh, which is the prime essential of beauty in that country. He finally contrived to escape the oily attentions of the African second-hand goddess, and proceeded on westward as far as Kano. Here he remained for a time laid up by sickness, but at length was so far recovered as to be able to resume his journey. He next visited Sockatoo, or Sokoto, and there found Captain Clapperton down with a mortal illness, remaining by his side until his death, which occurred early in 1827.

After leaving Sockatoo he experienced many hardships, and indignities offered him by the Arabs, but reached Badagry, on the coast, where he witnessed an embarkation of slaves by the Portuguese. Referring to this incident of human cruelty, he says: "I saw four hundred of these poor creatures crammed into a small eighty-ton schooner, and the appearance of the unhappy beings was squalid and miserable in the extreme. They were fastened by the neck in pairs, only a quarter of a yard of chain being allowed for each, and driven to the beach by a party of hired scoundrels, while their associates in cruelty were in front of the party, pulling them along by a narrow band, their only apparel, which encircled their waists." He ventured to remonstrate against this inhumanity, whereupon the Portuguese made complaint to King Adolee, who commanded Lander to undergo the ordeal of drinking a cup of poisoned water, which he was compelled to do, and was a solitary instance of escaping its fatal effects. He returned home from Badagry in the summer of 1828, without



finding the Niger's source, but in December of the following year, in the company of his brother John, he again set out for the Niger. After many fatigues and discouraging accidents, he finally reached Boussa on the 17th of June, 1830, from which point he began a descent of the river, believing it now more important to determine its course than whence it took its rise, especially as Boussa was the head of possible navigation. At an island a few miles below Boussa, called Patashie, he procured two canoes in which he embarked



VICTIMS OF PORTUGUESE SLAVE HUNTERS.

on a journey to discover the river's mouth. He soon found it expanding into a most magnificent river, fully three miles broad, and bordered by stately forests resonant with the cries of birds and animals, of which many strange species were seen.

One hundred miles below Boussa, Lander found another large island, called by the natives Zagoshi, and which was occupied by a large population actively engaged in many industries. The natives were of a hostile disposition and



maintained a large fleet of war canoes, by which they retained their independence of neighboring and more powerful tribes. Opposite the island, on the north shore, was a very large town named Rabba, while a few miles further down was another considerable place called Egga, which was the termination of the territory of Nyffe, occupied by a comparatively civilized people who were industriously inclined.

The further southward Lander proceeded, the more apparent it became that the river, though now separated into many branches, emptied into the Gulf of Benin, these several branches composing the Niger's delta. While the people of the detached states along the shore were generally of a turbulent



LANDER'S JOURNEY DOWN THE NIGER.

character, after leaving the territory of Nyffe, yet it was plain to be seen that they were in commercial communication with European manufacturers, as they were generally clothed in European fabrics, and had considerable familiarity with the Portuguese language. Nevertheless, our travellers were taken captives by the natives and carried down to Eboe, which was the great mart for slaves and palm oil, with which trade the natives did not hesitate to combine piracy. With great difficulty and by the promise of a large ransom, Lander effected his release and arrangements for his conveyance to the sea.

Thus after a two months' journey down the river, this explorer at length reached the Niger's mouth by way of the delta branch known as Brass river;



which, though not the largest, is yet the most direct channel from the main stream. Thus was solved, through the agency of one man, a grand problem in African geography, in the search after which so many abortive efforts had been made, viz., the true course and termination of the Niger. With profound sorrow, however, the sad fact must be related, that Lander was not permitted to long enjoy the great honors which he had thus won, for within a



DR. DAVIDSON PRESCRIBING FOR THE SICK.

few weeks after he had made this most valuable discovery he died from the effects of an arrow wound received in a contest with the natives.

#### FATAL ENDING OF DAVIDSON'S EXPEDITION.

John Davidson, a very learned and energetic Englishman, and a physician of great ability, was the next adventurer to penetrate the African wilds in search of the wonderful city of Timbuctoo, the name of which was now on



everybody's tongue, because of its reported wealth, and that a guard was set about the place to prevent the visit of strangers. He secured as guide the services of a former native of Timbuctoo named Abou Bekr, who having been taken captive by a hostile tribe was sold into slavery and taken to the West Indies, where he remained for thirty years. During this time the slave learned at least three languages, and being already familiar with the Arabic he was a most desirable companion on such a journey. He was liberated and sent to England, where Davidson chanced to meet him, and after a short interview engaged his services.

Davidson started on this dangerous trip in 1835, but was long detained in Morocco by the perfidy of the Sultan, who was anxious to retain him as the court physician. However, he was at length suffered to depart, but after reaching Wadnoon, on the borders of Sahara, he found the dry season to have set in, it now being April (1836), so that he was again forced to suspend his journey and employ his time ministering to the sick for seven months. When at last he proceeded it was with four attendants, and being lightly mounted on camels the party made great progress, so that Davidson expressed the hope of taking a New Year's dinner in the famed city of Timbuctoo.

Unfortunately for this pleasurable anticipation, his little party was met by a large body of wandering Arabs who infest this region, and who robbed him of all his valuables but allowed him to proceed. Three days later, while he and one of his attendants were waiting, at a place named Swekeya, for the two others to come up, whom they had outstripped a few miles, another band of sixteen Arabs of the tribe of El Harib came upon them. Unsuspecting treachery, Davidson's attendant, El Abd, undertook to conduct the Arab chief, at his request, to a watering place, the others of the party remaining behind with Davidson. The two had gone only a few yards when the report of a gun attracted El Abd's attention, and looking around he saw that one of the treacherous Arabs had taken up his gun and shot poor Davidson dead. Thus ended another noble life, sacrificed in the cause of commercial extension and civilization in the wilds of Africa.

#### THE RICHARDSON EXPEDITION.

In 1849 the British government decided to send an expedition into Central Africa with the purpose of establishing and increasing trade relations with that region, and with the hope that many valuable discoveries might be made to increase the sum of geographical knowledge respecting that so little known country. The command of the expedition was given to James Richardson, who had distinguished himself by having crossed the Sahara Desert, as far as Ghat, in 1845. It was also determined to invite at least one German traveller to join the expedition, which favor fell to the fortune of Henry Barth, who had made an extensive journey through Barbara, Syria, and nearly the whole of Asia Minor. At his request, Adolph Overweg, a distinguished geologist, was also permitted to join the expedition, and who became a most valuable acquisition.



OVERWAG AND DARTH BEFORE THE KING OF TIMBUCTOO.

The British party, well supplied with all necessities for the prosecution of such an undertaking, left London in the latter part of November and entered Africa, by the way of Tunis, a month later, following the seashore down to Tripoli, from which point they struck out across the desert. The route followed was through the territory of Fezzan and the central desert region of Imosagh. They went southward to Kano, thence to Kuku and lake Tchad, and then westward about fifteen hundred miles to Timbuctoo, with the king of which they held a pleasant interview. After leaving this celebrated city, on the return journey, Mr. Richardson was taken violently ill, and upon reaching the lake Tchad region again his condition became practically hopeless. He still lingered, however, and hope began to revive, but when in a condition of convalescence he suddenly took a relapse and died, March 4th, 1851. The place of his death was a small village in the kingdom of Bornu, near the banks of lake Tchad, called Nguratuwa, which in the Arabic language signifies *place full of hippopotami*.

The expedition continued an exploration of the region about Lake Tchad, going southward to Yoka, and thence back again to Kuku, from which point the party made excursions to Bagir-mi, Masena, Zuider, and other important places, until the fall of 1852 when another fatality occurred which proved a sad stroke to the expedition, compelling a change of its original plans. Mr. Overweg was taken ill with a fever contracted by the indiscretion of wading in the bogs about Lake Tchad and getting very wet, neglecting to change his clothes. He was taken to the house of a friend living in the village of Maduwari, where after a week of violent delirium he expired, September 27, 1852.

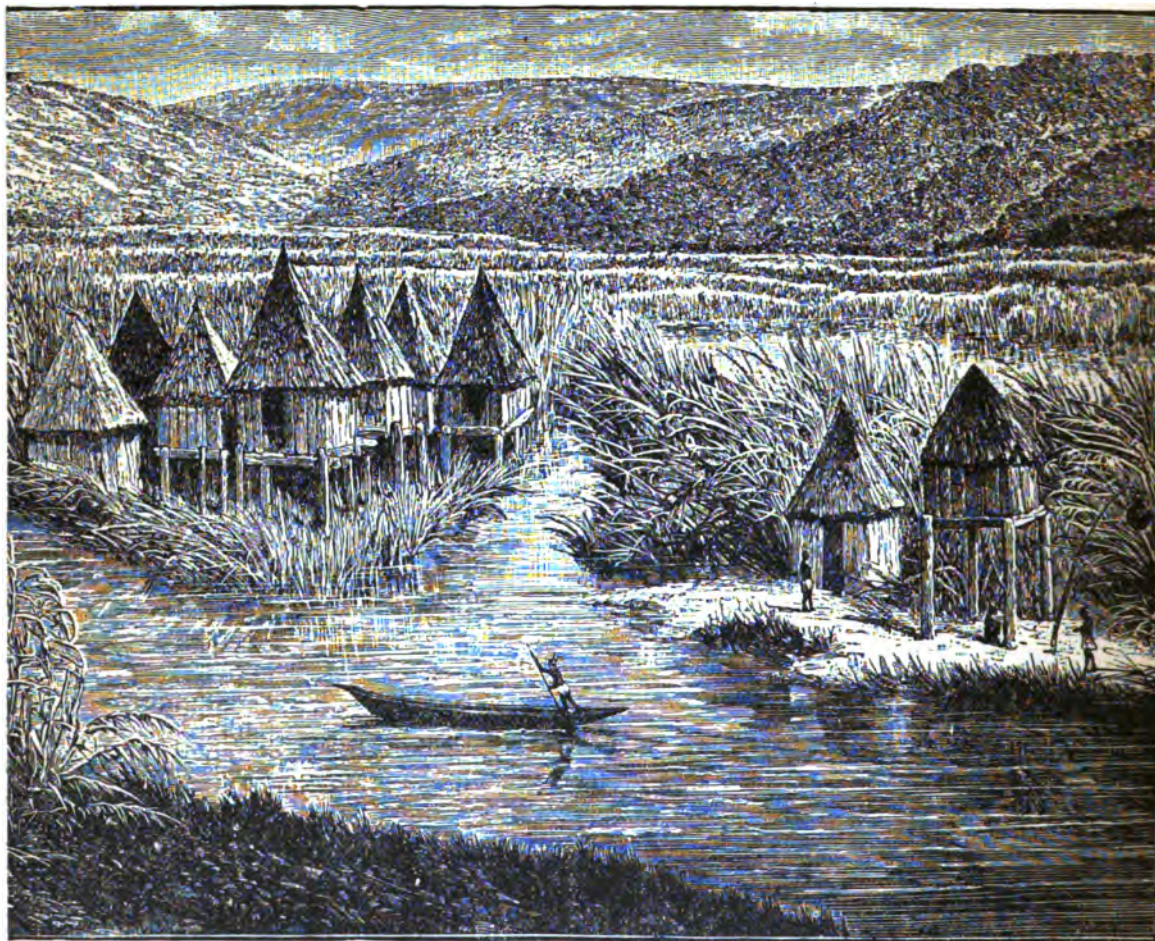
#### RELIEF EXPEDITION.

The death of Richardson seems to have little affected Barth, who entertained a great prejudice, if not jealous hatred, for his superior, whom he rarely mentions in his three volumes entitled "Travels and Discoveries in North and Central Africa." But the loss of Overweg was a most severe blow, as the two were devotedly attached to each other; besides, Overweg was, in one sense, the brains of the expedition, upon whom devolved the several duties of geologist, astronomer, naturalist and hunter. Before his death, too, he had corrected the mistake long entertained respecting the physical features of Sahara, and proved that instead of being a low depression it was in fact a high plateau.

When news of the deaths of Richardson and Overweg reached Europe other expeditions were immediately proposed to go to the rescue of Barth. One was soon fitted out by Edward Vogel, also a German, who, leaving London with two volunteers and a large supply of necessities, including scientific instruments, succeeded in joining Barth on the 24th of December, 1854, at Boondi, 230 miles west of Kuku, on his return trip from Timbuctoo. Before meeting with Barth, however, Vogel had visited Tchad and Kuku, at which latter point he was stopping when news of Barth's arrival at Boondi reached him.



After remaining together a short while the two separated, Barth starting eastward over his first route, going home, while Vogel determined to conduct an independent expedition to the unknown region lying beyond the Tchad. In April, 1855, he penetrated the kingdom of Waday, which lies eastward of Lake Tchad, but instead of being civilly received, as expected from previous conduct of Bornu chiefs, he was arrested by orders of the Waday king, who detained him prisoner for several months, together with all his assistants and



ON THE SHORES OF LAKE TCHAD.

attendants. Being rendered desperate by the indignities to which he was constantly subjected by his guards, Vogel at length made a desperate effort to escape by boldly attacking the night watch, but he was quickly overpowered, and two days later was beheaded.

The report of Vogel's tragic ending did not reach Europe for several years, but final receipt of the news so inflamed the popular mind that no less than six different expeditions started out to confirm the report or avenge his death. Nearly all the members of these perished, however, either upon the burning

sands of Sahara, or at the hands of savage robber hordes who infest that dark region. Von Henglin headed the most important of the several expeditions thus sent out, and in 1860 reached the Waday country, where he learned the particulars of Overweg's death and also succeeded in recovering the executed traveller's papers.

Barth reached London in 1855, and forthwith began a preparation of his journal for the publishers, which was given to the public two years afterwards, in three large volumes, so dryly written that few persons have had patience to read them.

#### THE WRECK OF THE MEDUSA.

Of the several expeditions sent to penetrate Africa from the west, the most famous, perhaps, because most unfortunate, was that undertaken by the French in 1816, when the fleet of four vessels was sent to resume their possessions on the west coast of Africa after the treaty with England in 1783. The fleet set sail from Aix for Senegal June 17th, and proceeded without detention until they passed Cape Bayados July 1st, when the vessels separated, and from St. Croix the officers of the *Medusa*—a frigate of forty-four guns—lost their reckoning, and thenceforth the ship ran wild. The following day, July 2d, the vessel stranded at high tide, and despite every effort made to release her, by throwing over a part of her cargo and running out anchors to draw her off, she stuck fast. The sea was very rough, which added greatly to the difficulties, and after two days of fruitless effort to release her it was decided to abandon the ship. There was on board about four hundred souls, a majority of whom were soldiers, to provide for whom, or the excess above what the ship's boats were able to carry, a large raft was constructed, upon which one hundred and fifty of the unfortunates were placed, including one hundred and twenty soldiers and their officers, twenty-nine sailors and passengers, and one woman, while the others embarked in seven row boats of different sizes. For a time the row boats towed the raft, but the cowardly conduct of the ship's officers, most of whom were in the large boat or barge, finally led to an abandonment of the raft and those upon it, who had to sustain themselves for an indefinite period on twenty-five pounds of biscuits, six barrels of wine, and two small casks of water.

#### ABANDONED AT SEA.

This cruel desertion, the most inhuman and base of cowardly and perfidious acts, had a truly dreadful effect upon those left upon the raft. So crowded were they that there was no room to take a single pace, or to lie down, while those on the ends of this frail support stood waist deep in water. When the boats moved away landward, which was hardly more than fifteen miles distant, many of those on the raft fell into immediate despair, crying in the greatest distress, and some even attempted suicide. Neither compass nor charts had been left by the monsters who had so savagely abandoned their companions, and this fact added so much to the alarm already felt that it was with the greatest difficulty several were restrained from throwing themselves into the sea. But



this was only prophetic of the intense suffering they were soon to endure. At their first meal on the raft all the biscuits were consumed, and thereafter wine alone was to constitute their nourishment, doled out in allowances of less than a pint per day.

The only means for propelling the raft, which was made of spars and boards laid for a footing, was by a rude sail cut from the main-top-gallant sail of the frigate and drawn up a short mast by ropes hastily converted into shrouds and stays. The most dreadful horrors of this desperate situation fell upon the



WRECK OF THE MEDUSA.—From the painting by Theo. Gericault (1791).

miserable crowd of sufferers the succeeding night. The wind having freshened, the waves rolled high and as darkness came on the enfeebled passengers were unable to resist the sweeping waves which dashed them about and upon each other in the most furious manner. Amidst all this riot of misfortune, and above the sullen roar of the maddened waves, arose the voice of prayer, and upstretched hands called for help from Him who rides in the tempest and carries the sea in the hollow of His hand.

Towards morning the wind fell and the ocean grew less boisterous, but when



daylight at length dispelled that miserable night what a scene of horror was presented. A dozen unhappy wretches, having their feet entangled in the openings between the masts that composed the raft, had been unable to extricate themselves and were literally thrashed to death by the sweeping sea, while nearly as many more had been washed overboard, and their sufferings thus happily ended. Every hour now witnessed some deeply affecting scene. Some plunged headlong into the waves in reckless despair, while others took affectionate leave of their friends and then calmly committed themselves to the deep.

#### A BLOODY FIGHT ON THE RAFT.

If the first night on the raft was one of horror, the second may be designated as a reign of terror, for again the sea arose and dashed with impetuous fury over the sufferers, causing hope to flee from even those who had been the most courageous. The soldiers, in their despair, became mutinous, and believing that their destruction was inevitable, knocked in the head of one of the wine barrels and resolved to drink themselves into insensibility. When much of the wine had been thus consumed their minds became unruly, and they threatened to cut the raft asunder so that all might go down to destruction at one time. An axe was lifted to sever the cords, when the desperate mutineer fell dead, pierced by an officer's sword. This was the beginning of a dreadful battle, in which the mutineers, numbering nearly half the survivors, were arrayed against those who still held life and law dear. The sword and bayonet did great execution while many were thrown into the sea, and the mast was cut down so that it fell upon and badly wounded many others. Dead bodies seriously impeded the combatants until they were kicked into the sea, but at length the mutineers were routed and forced to beg pardon, but before the day dawned sixty-five had met their deaths, either by suicide or in the desperate contest.

#### THE HORRORS OF CANNIBALISM.

Another day had passed and hunger became now so great that the cartouche boxes and sword belts were seized upon and with much effort partially eaten, but it did not stay the gnawing oppressions. At length, upon a suggestion, the dead bodies yet lying on the raft, rapidly decomposing under a tropical sun, were stripped and pieces of flesh cut out, upon which the living sought to prolong their fearful existence. Some succeeded in swallowing these morsels, but the stomachs of others rebelled even when fortified with copious draughts of wine. After being somewhat refreshed by the human flesh which several had eaten raw, they showed such increased strength that others were encouraged to partake also, though it set many stomachs to a violent retching.

During the fourth day some flying-fish became entangled in the crevices between the masts composing the raft, and two hundred were captured, but they were so very small that it was decided to mix portions of human flesh with the fish, that the repast might be made sufficient.



TIGERS BEFORE THEIR LAIR.



KING OF AFRICAN BEASTS.



The following night a plot was formed by some of the stronger to throw the weaker into the sea, with the belief that it would increase the chances of the former in reaching the shore. Another battle was the result, in which all the party were killed save thirty, while nearly every one of the survivors was badly wounded, and they were brought to a more direful extremity by the salt water, which greatly aggravated their wounds and excoriated their bruised and naked bodies.

The desperation of their situation grew constantly greater, as at the expiration of the seventh day of their abandonment the wine was almost exhausted, and not a dozen fish were left, while only one dead body had been reserved for food, the others having been cast into the sea. Three others died the following day, while twelve of the survivors were so nearly dead of their wounds that it was decided, rather than continue them on short allowances, with the certainty of early death before them, to curtail their sufferings by throwing them into the sea. It was a desperate alternative, but the lives of those yet able to exert themselves seemed to justify so horrible an act, and they were accordingly consigned to the deep. Among the unfortunates who thus perished was the lone woman who had shared the perils of the raft. There were now only fifteen left of the original one hundred and fifty, and these continued to subsist themselves on human flesh and the little wine that still remained, until the thirteenth day, when they were picked up by the French brig *Argus*, about forty miles from the mouth of the Senegal river. Of the fifteen thus saved, however, five died before the land was reached, so that only ten lived to tell to their country the incomparable sufferings through which they had passed.



## CHAPTER IV.

### EXPEDITIONS INTO EAST AFRICA, AND WONDERFUL SUPERSTITIONS.

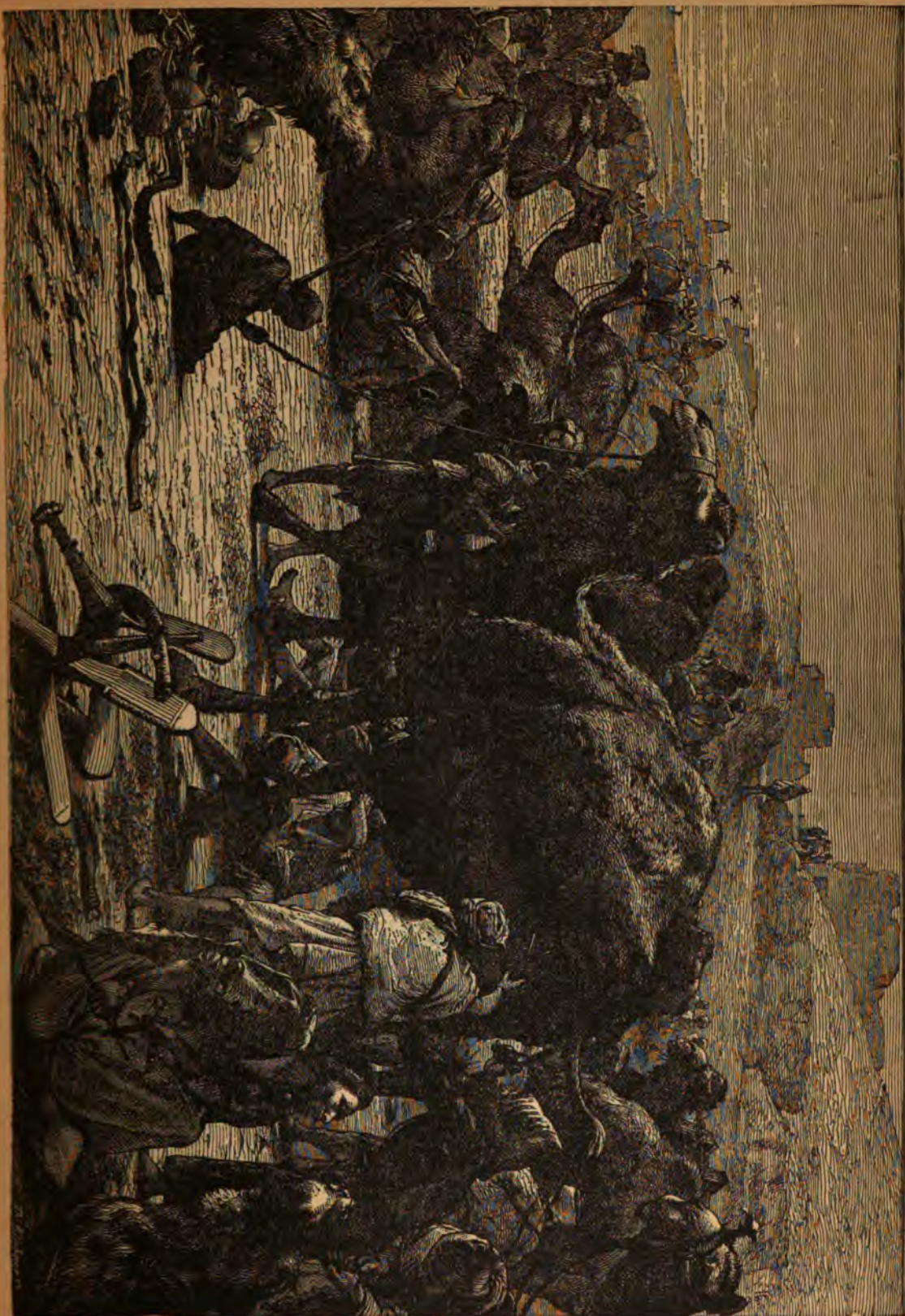


IN the foregoing pages I have given brief references to the most important expeditions that penetrated Western Africa up to the period of recent discovery, but while the largest attention was, for several centuries, directed towards extending European commerce into the Timbuctoo and Bornu regions, Eastern Africa was not entirely neglected, as we shall see.

The reputed kingdom of Prester John, lying somewhere in the east, led several travellers to attempt a passage of Central Africa, but none succeeded, though all brought back stories which they had learned of the inconceivable wealth of that wonderful potentate. Those familiar with the life of Columbus will remember when that bold navigator set sail in an effort to reach India, one of his principal objects was to discover that rich kingdom, the general belief in the mean time having located Prester John in the far East, probably Cathay (China). In the thirteenth century, Marco Polo made his famous journey to the then unknown lands of the East and believed he had discovered Prester John in the person of Ouang Khan, king of the Keraite Mongols, and high priest of his people, but nevertheless the Terror of Asia. It was the son of this great ruler who succeeded to the Tartar throne under the title of Okkoday, and afterwards assumed the dynastic title of Genghis, and overran Asia and Northern Europe about 1230-1240. Though Columbus was a believer in Marco Polo's discovery of the identity of this great ruler, and placed the kingdom which he had established somewhere in India, many facts seem to warrant the belief that the original opinion respecting Prester John was correct, viz., that he was a great Christian prince of Eastern Africa, whose kingdom is now known as Abyssinia.

Marco Polo visited Abyssinia, being the first white man who ever entered the country, and returned to the civilized world with many interesting reports concerning its king and people. He called it the Middle India of the Province of Abascia, and said it was ruled by a supreme monarch professing the Christian faith, and who had six kings subject to him, three of whom were Christians and the others followers of Mohammed. The Christians of this country he represented as literally baptized by fire, being burnt with a hot iron on the forehead, nose and each cheek, as a sign of their acceptance of the faith. It is also





MODE OF TRAVEL IN NORTHERN AFRICA.

related that St. Thomas, the apostle, preached throughout Abyssinia, and after converting the inhabitants returned to Maabar (some part of India), where he died. But there are so many unfounded stories about this apostle that this one may be dumped with the balance into the waves of skepticism. It is true, however, that the rulers of Abyssinia for several centuries have been professed Christians, many of whom bore the name of John, and who combined the office of autocrat with that of chief presbyter, by which we discover the identity of Prester John.

#### A WONDERFUL LAND.

Marco Polo also seems to have discovered Madagascar, of which he writes as follows:

"Madagascar is an island towards the south, about a thousand miles from Socotra. The people are Saracens, adoring Mohammed, and they have four sheiks, or old men, who rule the entire country. This is really one of the noblest and greatest islands in the world, being reputed 4000 miles in circuit. [It is in fact less than 3000.] In no region are so many elephants bred and their teeth sold as here and in Zanghibar [Zanzibar]. No flesh is eaten but that of camels, of which an incredible number are killed every day. . . . Many ships arrive with abundance of goods, as cloth of silk and gold, which are profitably exchanged for those of the country. Mariners, however, cannot reach the other islands lying south of this and of Zanghibar, owing to the violence of the currents running in this direction. It is such, that while vessels can come hither from Malabar in twenty days, they spend three months in returning."

It is strange how Marco Polo mistakes the facts about Madagascar, unless he procured the information thus given from people on the African mainland. Madagascar has neither elephants nor camels, nor is there any strong current running in the Mozambique Channel. The Moslem religion does not exist on the island, though there is not wanting evidence to show that the Arabs were here firmly established once, though when they abandoned the island is not known.

Though Marco Polo made no extended travels through Africa, he was upon much of the coast and learned many of the wild beliefs that appertained to the country, which are very interesting, in the light of modern wisdom, to read about.

#### ASTOUNDING STORIES ABOUT ANIMAL LIFE IN AFRICA.

Therefore, before proceeding with a history of the other expeditions which have entered east Africa since the days of Marco Polo, I will call attention to the more prominent fables which were current until little more than half a century ago concerning the animal life of the dark continent.

But the line of demarcation between fact and fiction is never very distinct, and when we come to discuss Africa the division becomes absolutely indistinguishable. One after another the superstitions connected with that country have been exploded, while old, quaint, fear-inspiring stories told hundreds of



years ago about hideous and monstrous creatures that roamed the wilds of Africa, and which everybody accepted as nothing more serious than interesting fables, have been proved by modern travellers to be actual realities.

Herodotus, who had a fancy no doubt becoming his time, tells some stories wherein the truth becomes inextricably tangled with fiction. He speaks of many dangers, in the forms of horrid monsters and satanic influences that guard the sea beyond the Pillars of Hercules, which stories have been so repeatedly told as to have rendered them no longer entertaining; but while



ALONG THE BANKS OF THE CERNÉ.

relating these fictions he declares that the Carthaginians nevertheless carried on a traffic for gold with a people beyond the Pillars, which was so managed that neither of the parties ever saw each other. As gold is not believed to exist anywhere in Africa north of the Senegal river, we are led to formulate our own opinion as to whether the Carthaginians sailed to the Gold Coast, or crossed the desert and brought the precious metal thence overland.

Hanno, to whom reference has already been made, is quite as indefinite and exaggerative as Herodotus, for in the celebrated voyage which he under-



took around Africa, with sixty vessels and probably thirty thousand persons, he seems to have met with many phenomenal occurrences and witnessed not a few most astounding sights. In the narrative which he left of his voyage—a most precious manuscript now—he says, that after passing the Pillars of Hercules [Straits of Gibraltar] he founded successively four colonies in convenient situations; then sailing three days along a desert coast, he came upon a small island called Cerne, in the vicinity of which was a lake through which flowed a large river, while near it was another stream abounding with crocodiles and hippopotami. From Cerne he sailed twelve days along the coast, upon which he



DOG-HEADED MONKEY OF SENEGAL.

saw a timid race of Ethiopians, who fled at sight of his sails. He had now reached a locality in which more surprising objects attracted his attention. In one place, he affirms, the earth was so hot as to be unbearable, while torrents of flame were seen to roll along it and rush into the sea. During the day abso-

lute quiet reigned, but at night-fall the dense forests became resonant with the sounds of musical instruments and weird human voices. Landing upon an island, they found a singular race of creatures having human shapes, but covered with a rough skin, and who leaped from rock to rock with preternatural agility. These animals were no doubt dog-headed monkeys, found quite common in the region of the Senegal river. Towards the close of this wonderful voyage Hanno declares that there appeared close to his left a mountain so lofty that it reached to the very skies, for which reason he gave to it the name, *Chariot of the Gods*, and which it was easy for the sailors to believe, as they did, that it furnished an ascent to heaven, though no man dared attempt to scale it.

## CATCHING WHALES AND PRACTISING WITCHCRAFT.

Marco Polo, having seen many real things of remarkable interest, enlivens his narratives with descriptions and superstitions that must have excited the largest wonder even in himself. Speaking of the island of Socotra, near the African coast, which he says is peopled by Christians, he writes :

"Ambergris is very plentiful, being voided from the entrails of whales, which are pursued most actively, in order to obtain this most precious article. They strike into the animal a barbed iron so firmly that it cannot be drawn out. A long line attached enables them to discover the place where the dead fish lies, and drag it to the shore, when they extract from its belly the ambergris, and from its head several casks of oil.

"I can tell you, moreover, that these Christians are the most skilful enchanters in the world. The archbishop, indeed, forbids, and even punishes this practice, but without any avail, for their ancestors, they say, followed it before them, and they will continue. For instance, if a ship is proceeding full sail with a favorable wind, they raise a contrary one, and oblige it to return. They can make it blow from any quarter they choose, and cause either a dead calm or a violent tempest. They perform many other marvellous enchantments, which it would be wrong to relate—they would excite such amazement."

## A BIRD THAT CARRIES OFF ELEPHANTS.

Carrying his descriptions to the south-east coast of Africa and Madagascar he recites yet more wonderful things, as follows :

"Now I must mention, that in those southern isles (regions) the birds called *griffons* are reported to exist, and to appear at certain seasons; yet they are not formed as we paint and describe them, half-bird, half-lion, but exactly like the eagle, only immeasurably larger. They are represented so huge and powerful as to take up the elephant and carry him high into the air, then let him drop, whereby he is at once killed, and they feed upon his carcass. It is asserted that their wings are twelve paces long, and when spread out, extend thirty paces across; they are thick in proportion. I must add, that the Khan sent messengers to obtain information about the country, and also the release of one of his subjects who had been made prisoner. They and the captive related to him many great wonders of this strange region and brought teeth of a wild boar inconceivably large: I assure you he found them to weigh fourteen pounds. You may thus judge as to the size of the boar; and indeed, some are equal to a buffalo. There are also giraffes and wild asses, and other beasts and birds wonderfully different from ours. To return to the griffon; the people of the island do not know it by that name but call it always *ruc*; but we, from their extraordinary size, certainly conclude them to be griffons."

Ramusio declares that he saw a feather of this bird which was ninety feet long and two palms in circumference, and which was carried to the great Khan of Tartary.





LAMMERGEYER, OR AFRICAN CONDOR—THE LEGENDARY ROC.



This story is derived from two sources, viz.: from the Arabian Nights Entertainments, wherein the adventures of Sinbad the sailor are related, in which this great bird figures so prominently under the name of *rukhh*, and in some editions, *ruc*; and from the fact that there is found in Southern Africa a species of condor called *lammergeyer*, so powerful of wing that it can lift a sheep, and so strong that it crushes ordinary bones with its bill. It has been frequently known, especially the Switzerland species, to seize upon a child for its prey.

The boar mentioned is evidently the *boschwerk* (*sus ethiopicus*), which has four tusks, the two largest of which are often as much as ten inches in length and half that in circumference. They do not project outwardly from the jaw but rise directly upward, and curve at the top, for the purpose, as some naturalists say, of permitting the boar to rest his head when sleeping by hanging these turned tusks over the low branch of a tree, as it never lies prostrate like others of the swine species.

Marco Polo continues his fanciful descriptions by relating some of the things which he saw on the coast of Zanghibar, presumably Zanzibar, which he says is an island about 2000 miles in circumference, quite as surprising as some others of his statements. He relates that "the people are all idolaters, have languages and a king of their own, and are subject to no other power. They are not very tall, but so broad and thick that in this respect they appear like giants, and they are likewise immensely strong, bearing as large a burden as four other men, which is really no wonder, for they eat as much as five. They are perfectly black and go naked, with exception of a cloth round the waist. Their mouth is so wide, their nose so turned up, their lips and eyes so big that they are horrible to behold, and any one meeting them in another country would believe them devils."

Again, speaking of the queer things which he saw in Abyssinia, he says: "They have parrots, beautiful and various; also monkeys and cats, of two species, with faces exactly like those of men. This Abascia [Abyssinia] contains numerous cities and castles, and is much frequented by merchants; many cloths of cotton and buckram are wrought there." In another place, writing of the kingdom of Zambri, he declares "there are men in this kingdom who have tails like dogs, larger than a palm, and who are covered with hair. They remain in the mountains, never visiting the town. There are also unicorns, with various beast and birds for hunting."

#### THE UNICORN.

One of the most singular superstitions connected with animal life in Africa was formerly entertained by all the civilized world, representing the existence of a creature minutely described by Pliny as being the size of a small horse, of the slender make of a gazelle, and furnished with a long, straight, slender horn, growing from the centre of the forehead of the male, but was wanting in the female. This animal, called the *unicorn*, was believed to be peculiar to

the mountain region of Kordofan, in Central Africa, where Mr. Rupell affirms the natives say it is quite common.

The old superstition, which Pliny seems first to have made current, represents this apocryphal beast as inhabiting the most inaccessible districts, among the most noxious of beasts and reptiles, whose aspects were as appalling as their touch was deadly. The breath of these creatures was represented as being so poisonous that all the streams wherein they drank were polluted to their very source. However, the antidotal virtues of the horn of the unicorn were so great that it had only to touch the poisoned waters to render them pure and harmless again. From this belief came the passion for searching for the unicorn to possess its wondrous horn, which the animal was supposed to frequently shed. The beast itself, though vigorously hunted, could never be captured on account of its preternatural swiftness, but the horn was occasionally found and brought both fame and fortune to the owner.

Shavings of the horn were sold at fabulous prices, in the belief that they rendered all poisons harmless. The value thus set upon it was caused by the alarming frequency, in those days, of murder through the agency of potent poisons, with which the Venetians, especially, were dangerously familiar, and used to destroy their enemies.

Many horns were indeed found, but they were the tusks of the sea-unicorn, or narwhal, which creature was then so little known that the delusion of a land unicorn continued among people of the interior for several centuries.

#### GIANTS AND DWARFS.

It is quite natural for the human mind that has not been educated in the science of natural phenomena, or schooled, to some extent at least, in the vagaries in which nature sometimes indulges, to ascribe to the preternatural those things and creatures which appear insulated or out of apparent harmony with their surroundings. Thus the cave-winds have, by common people, been thought to be the suppressed voices of caged spirits; waters percolating through rocks, the tears of an imprisoned race; thunder, the challenge or ominous threat of an enraged god; a howling dog, the portent of some calamity. And what thus appears to the eye and senses, has its counterpart in the conception of a superstitious people, or gives creation to some grotesque idea of the imagination.

In Africa, as has before been said, this struggle between fact and fiction has ever been indeterminate, since what has long been believed respecting certain animals peculiar to that country has been proved nothing but idle fable, while reports of queer creatures common to the same region, have been looked upon as base superstitions, which afterwards were discovered to be true.

All countries, and especially the uncivilized regions have, as a part of their common history, some claim to being the home of giants or dwarfs. Africa, being the most benighted, has particular interest therefore as being the last country to offer an asylum to these relegated myths. In the deep recesses of this dark land, and more commonly about the mountain region of the central



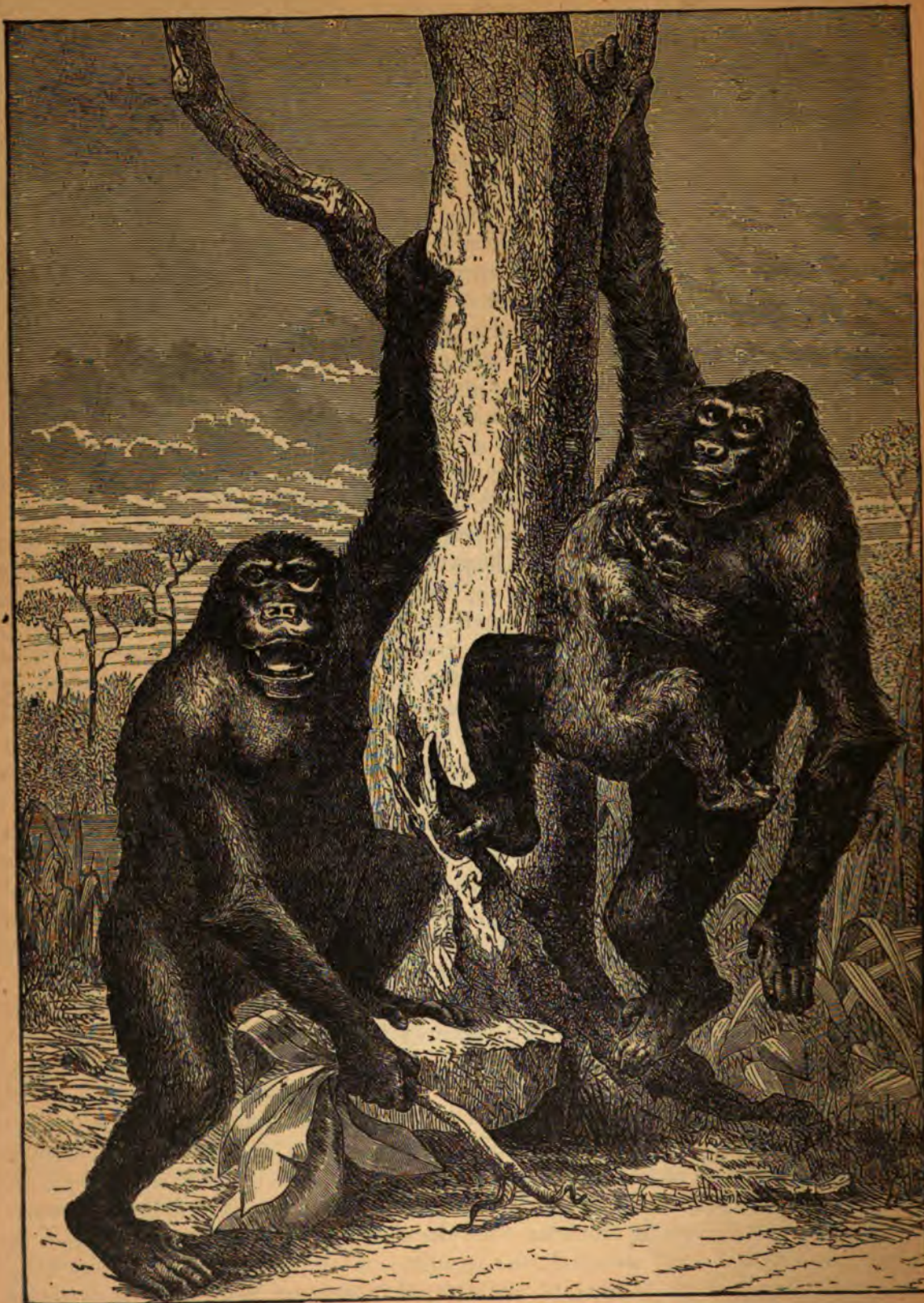
districts, it has long been reported that the *Antomoli*, or African giants, live. Few eyes have ever beheld them, because no man can make so bold as to attempt an invasion of their kingdom; besides, the limits are set by great walls of stone over which human footsteps could not clamber. And should a stout heart wander into this region, he would surely be seized by one of the giants and eaten for his temerity. This superstition is the counterpart of the nursery bugaboo in the dark closet, but many of the natives believe in the verity of these giants, and a few centuries ago many of the learned of Europe entertained it with such confidence that not a few African travellers have been deterred from attempting an approach to the mid-interior for fear of unconsciously trenching upon the giants' kingdom.

On the other hand, stories about the pigmies of Africa have been common in classical, as well as modern, literature, and yet always read as a fiction, a pretty fable to entertain children, or embellish a poem. When, wonderful to realize, the giants have dissolved into a myth, while the dwarfs have come out into the light of ethnological fact. The surprising relations of Homer, Juvenal, Ovid, Statius, Nonnius, and other old writers of verse have been proved to rest at least upon a basis of truth. Perhaps the cranes and pigmies never waged battle on the plains of Central Africa, but we now know that three or four centuries before Christ the Greeks were really aware of the existence of a people of stunted growth, pigmies if you please, inhabiting a district in Africa somewhere about the Nile's source. In this discovery are two especially notable facts, viz.: that Central Africa was not then more unknown than it is to-day. On the other hand, it is an evidence in support of the theory that hundreds, if not thousands, of years ago, the whole of Africa was open to the commerce of the world.

It was reserved for Schweinfurth, in 1869, to discover a race of African pigmies in the Akkas, since which time Krapf found the Doko, or Berikeemo dwarfs, Du Chaillu the Obongos, and Stanley captured one of the dwarfs said to live north of the Wakuma country, so that abundant evidence now exists in proof of the claim so long ago made that Africa was the land of the pigmies.

#### THE GORILLA.

Stories of woolly wild men in Africa, of their great size and fierce courage, were readily believed, as Hanno had reported having seen such creatures, but when Mr. Bowdich, the African traveller, returned to Europe with report of having himself seen an animal, which the natives called *ingheena*, as large as a man and more powerful than a dozen of the largest monkeys then known to naturalists, every one was ready to discredit him as a romancer. In 1843 a ship captain stopped on the Gaboon coast and there killed two of these animals, the bodies of which he took to Europe, where they were secured by Prof. Owens for the College of Surgeons. This was the first positive evidence received in Europe of the real existence of the gorilla. A writer (in 1844) describing these specimens and the habits of the animals, says: "The male is in good





preservation, but the flesh dropped from the bones of the female. The former is nearly five feet high, and three feet across the shoulders; his wrist is twice as thick as that of an ordinary man, and his canine teeth are enormous; his grinders show that he lives upon fruit, and probably roots, and what is singular, he has one more pair of ribs than man possesses. The natives on the shores of the Gaboon river declare that these creatures lurk among the trees, near frequented paths, in order to attack passengers, and that one blow of their hand is sufficient to destroy life. They feed much upon wild honey, and are said to build huts, but live and sleep on the outside; and, from having seen men carrying burdens, they tear down large branches of trees, or pick up tusks of elephants, which they find by chance, and shouldering them, walk about with their load till they drop from fatigue. When their young ones die the mothers carry them about, closely pressed to them, till they fall from putrefaction."

Here is a bad admixture of fact and fiction, not surprising, however, when we consider the wild stories of wild men formerly current, and which must obscure the truth for a time.

#### AFRICAN AMAZONS.

Another story long current, respecting the savage life found in Africa, was to the effect that somewhere in the remote interior was a kingdom ruled by a woman, who was represented as being the living incarnation of ferocity, and whose whole ambition was the destruction of every male on earth. She was reported to have an immense army of Amazons, who were quite as cruel as herself, and of such desperate valor and adroitness, and armed with such formidable weapons that no enemy could stand before them. Her kingdom, though never located, was of large extent and constantly increasing, for she warred perpetually with her neighbors, whom she invariably overcame. Most of the prisoners thus taken were killed and eaten, but a certain number, being always those of the greatest physical excellences, were reserved for a while to serve as temporary husbands for the Amazons, after which they too were dispatched and eaten. The female offspring thus produced were very carefully nurtured and brought up to replenish the ranks, but all the male children so born were either boiled and eaten, or placed in a mortar and triturated, and the well-ground remains afterwards dried and converted into amulets.

A hundred other frightful stories were current about impossible creatures that made their homes in the wild recesses of African jungles, and of human monsters, many supernaturally endowed, set to guard the boundaries of this forbidden and forbidding continent. It is therefore less surprising that so few efforts were made, in the early ages, to penetrate into the gruesome interior, but as the shadows of one superstition after another became dissipated by the light of investigation in other parts of the world, men, especially those of adventurous dispositions, gradually lost their fear and began to venture within this dreadful pale, until at last the Dark Continent was crossed from ocean to ocean, and the source of that wondrous river, the Nile, was at length determined.



BATTLE WITH THE AMAZONS



## CHAPTER V.

### SOME OF THE LATER TRAVELLERS IN SOUTH AND EAST AFRICA.



FOR a long while the west and north-west coasts of Africa received the undivided attention of travellers who had developed an ambition to penetrate into that country; nor did the successful voyage of da Gama around the Cape and along the eastern coast serve to deflect public attention from the rich regions about Timbuctoo and the kingdom of Bornu. It was quite two hundred and fifty years after the discovery of the eastern water-way to India before the English and Dutch made any effort to establish a colonial settlement in South Africa, nor was any attempt made to penetrate the interior of that section until Cape Town had become a thriving Dutch port.

Among the earliest, if not the first, travellers who penetrated any considerable distance into the southern regions of Africa, was a French voyageur named M. Le Vaillant, who spent the years 1780 to 1785 in an exploration of the Hottentot country, which he pretty thoroughly examined from Cape of Good Hope to Angola Bay, and the interior as far as the southern borders of the Kalakari Desert. The fact that he was the first white traveller in these parts lent great fascination to his narrative, which was published soon after his return to France, in addition to which his account of the country, its people, rivers, mountains, etc., was of great value to geographers, as well as to commerce.

The next distinguished traveller to visit South Africa was a German, named Henry Lichtenstein, who entered the country from the Cape in 1803, and remained five and one-half years in the interior. He passed through the same region, generally, that Le Vaillant had explored; but, with the circumspection of a German explorer, he noted everything more exactly, and hence gave us very much information that his predecessor had neglected. Lichtenstein was an accomplished ethnologist as well as a philologist, and he took great pains to distinguish the many Hottentot tribes, such as the Bosjesmans, or Bushmen, Kaffirs, Corans, and Namaquas, all of whom are classed under the general racial division of Hottentots. Not only did he describe these, but gave us a very excellent vocabulary of their languages, which became of the

greatest assistance to other travellers who came after him into these parts. His scientific knowledge extended also to natural history, and he was thus able to add a description of the animals and insects peculiar to those regions, and also of its flora; so that he left a printed work which has hardly been improved upon since, and still remains a classic on the subject of which it treats. Sir John Barrow, who wrote two volumes on "Travels in South Africa," and who had lived at Cape Town a short while before as Colonial Secretary, was directly instrumental in inducing Lichtenstein's visit to that section, and afterwards did much towards circulating the history of his travels.

The Rev. C. I. Latrobe, of England, representing the United Brethren denomination, was the next traveller to enter Southern Africa, by way of Cape Town, in 1815. The purpose of his visit was to seek out a location for a



CAFFRES, OF SOUTH AFRICA.

new mission somewhere in the interior, in the prosecution of which intention he travelled inland from Cape Town to the military post at the mouth of Great Fish River, following along the north side of the Zwarte mountain range. He was a close and learned observer, and printed a very interesting account of his journey, which, more than anything else, influenced the great Livingstone to become a missionary and explorer in Africa.

In 1826, Bain and Biddulph penetrated the interior as far as latitude 24°, and made many valuable discoveries, giving us the first accurate description of the Bechuana tribe, and of the animals met with in that region. They were succeeded by Archbell in 1829, who followed the same route northward to 28°, when he turned north-east and continued on to Elephant River; but he added little to what had been previously told. Andrew Steedman followed next in



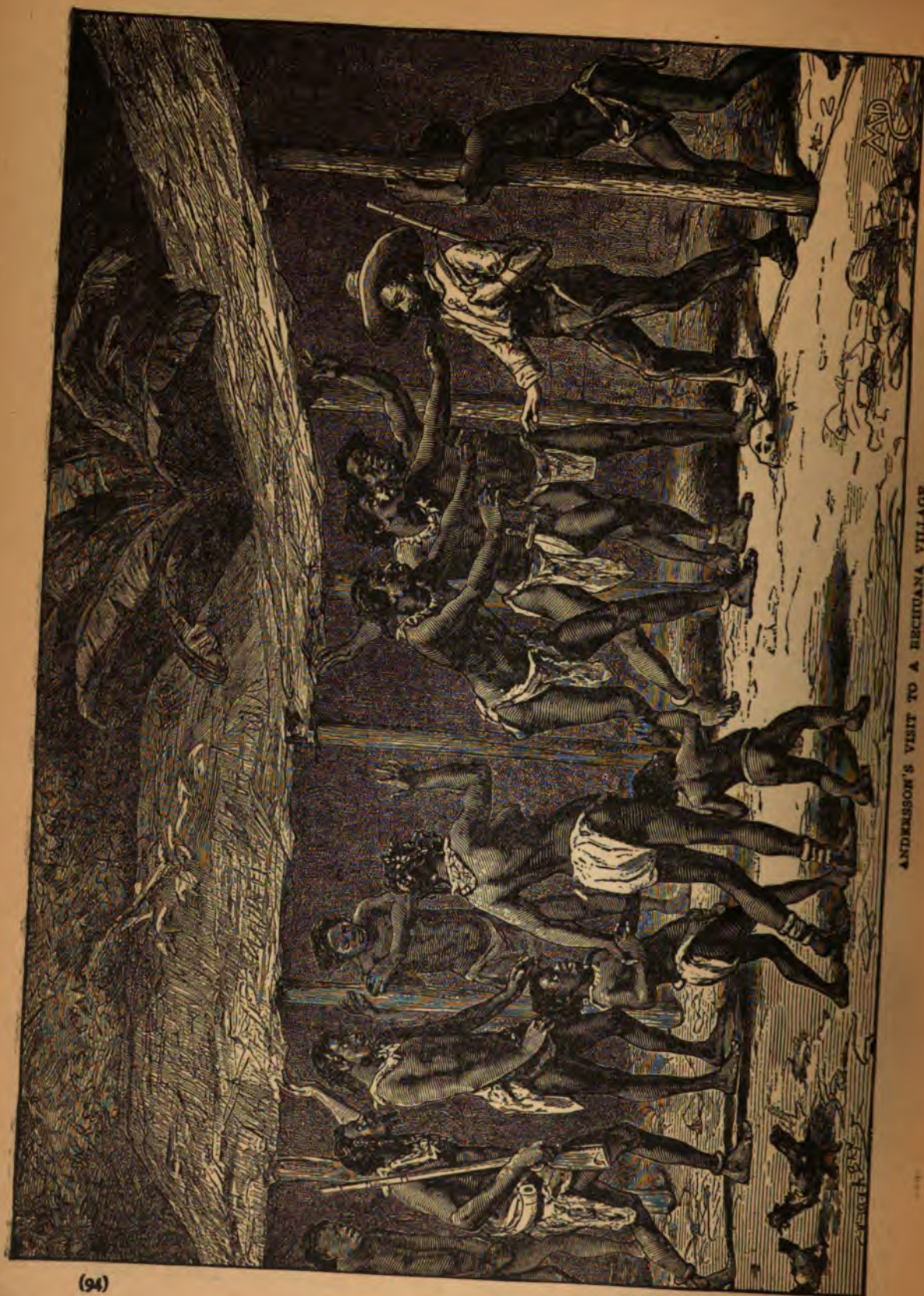
1835, but did not penetrate beyond the Zonderend River, along the banks of which he chiefly confined his investigations. Though his journey was thus restricted to a comparatively few miles from the coast, yet as a naturalist he found many animals, birds and insects, which had not before been brought to the attention of the civilized world.

#### ADVENT OF THE HUNTERS.

In 1836, W. C. Harris, an officer in the British India service, accompanied by William Richardson, of the Bombay civil service, entered Africa by way of Graham's Town, first equipping themselves admirably for a long journey by purchasing saddle horses, and twelve yoke of oxen for draft purposes. With several Hottentots for servants, the two adventurers plunged into the interior, not so much on a journey of discovery as to gratify their longing for a grand hunt. They went over the chief hunting grounds beyond the borders of the Dutch colonists, and met with many adventures of the most exciting nature. They were the first hunters who had penetrated so far into the interior, and their book on "Wild Sports of South Africa" abounds with stirring incidents connected with hunting the elephant, lion, ostrich, gnu, gemsbock, and hosts of feathered game. Gordon Cummings imitated Harris's sporting expedition, and spent the years 1843 to 1849 hunting in South Africa, from the trophies of which he sustained himself, and opened a large exhibition on his return to England.

C. J. Andersson, a Swede, in emulation of Cummings and Harris, in the company of Francis Galton, set out from a landing in Walfish Bay, in 1850, with a caravan of wagons, a drove of mules and a pack of dogs. They penetrated as far north as Lake N'gami, which lake had been discovered the year before by Livingstone, and visited by Oswell and Murray, who, like Andersson, had entered the country to hunt large game. On this trip, Mr. Andersson made several minor discoveries, and enjoyed four years of excellent shooting, so that on his return to England, after publishing his first book, called "Lake N'gami," he became very anxious to make a second journey into Africa, which he shortly afterwards had an opportunity to do.

Upon returning to the Cape in 1856, Andersson learned that an old friend, named Frederick Green, was at that time somewhere in the African interior, but was expected to return soon; consequently, he awaited his friend's arrival, in the mean time taking the position of manager of certain mines. After the lapse of two months, Mr. Green reappeared, with a record of his journey to the Lake regions to Libebe, which is some two hundred miles north-west of Lake N'gami, a totally unexplored country. After a short period of preparation, the two set out together in March, 1858, and travelled nearly one thousand miles, when they separated; but in the course of a twelvemonth they met again, and returned together to Cape Town in the spring of 1860. On this journey Mr. Andersson discovered the Okavango river, and traced its course for nearly one hundred miles. He also discovered Lake Onondova, but

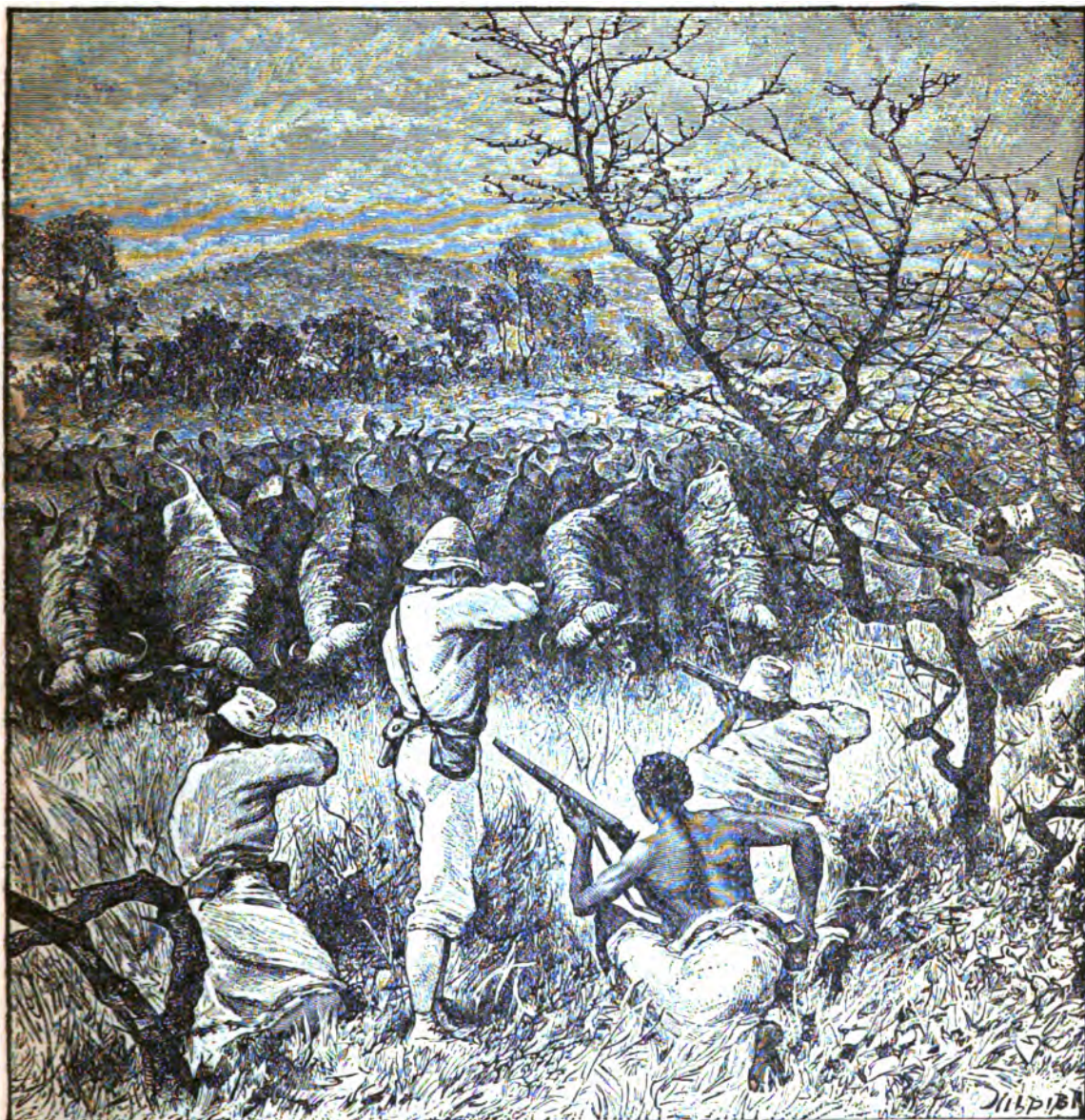


ANDERSSON'S VISIT TO A BECHUANA VILLAGE.



was unable to find the Cunene river, of which he had heard the natives frequently speak, and which was, no doubt, confounded with the Leeambye, discovered later by Livingstone.

The most important expedition that had yet entered South Africa up to this date, with one exception, was that undertaken by Thomas Baines, who



FACING A STAMPEDE OF BUFFALOES.

had been previously attached to Livingstone's expedition on the Zambesi. Mr. Baines was well equipped for an extended journey, upon which he entered from Walfish bay, on the south-west coast, May 5th, 1861, his first objective point being Otjimbingue one hundred and twenty miles directly east. He



reached this place in due season but was compelled to return immediately to Walfish (Whalefish) bay for provisions and two copper boats which the first wagons had been unable to haul on the first trip. He reached the coast May 30th, and on June 4th the return journey to Otjimbingue was begun. On July 23d, Mr. Baines was joined by Mr. John Chapman, who had been with Andersson, and together the two travelled six hundred miles to Thounce. From this point, after some delay the journey was resumed, sometimes the two taking



DR. LIVINGSTONE.

different routes, and travelling alone for weeks at a time before meeting again. Both were most enthusiastic sportsmen and spent much time hunting elephants, rhinoceri, lions, hartbeests, ostriches, quaggas, and buffaloes, from which latter they had a marvellous escape from being run down and trampled by a stampeded herd. They made a tour to the south round Lake N'gami, and after reaching the lake took the course of the Batletle river to its rise, then moving northward to Victoria Falls they explored much of the country in that region and located the course of the Zambesi. They returned to Walfish bay in August, 1862.

#### LIVINGSTONE'S DISCOVERIES.

The most distinguished of all African explorers, whose name and accomplishments are alike imperishable, was David Livingstone, who also began his explorations of that wondrous continent by entering from the south, but whose prime purpose in visiting Africa was on behalf of the London Missionary Society, and with the ambition to actively engage in missionary labor himself. Under an appointment by the Society, therefore, and almost immediately following his ordination in the Presbyterian faith, he left England in 1840 for Cape Town. While temporarily residing there he met the daughter of the



Secretary of the South African missions, Mr. Robert Moffat, and a few years later married her, who proved his cheerful companion in later journeys until she died and was buried by his own hands beside the lonely hills of Shupanga, near the Zambesi river.

Livingstone was first appointed to the mission of Kuruman, in the Bechuana country, six hundred miles north-east of Cape Town, but, remaining here only three months, he removed to Litubaruba, fifteen miles southward, where he entered upon a study of the Bechuana language. Here he tried to establish a settlement, but failed on account of a war which was then being waged between neighboring tribes. He soon after, however, established a missionary station in the valley of Mabotsa, to which he finally removed in 1843. It was while

residing here that he had his first hunting adventure, and which came near terminating his life, as he was seriously bitten in the arm by a wounded lion, from the effects of which he never fully recovered.

Livingstone remained at Mabotsa for a period of eight years, in which time he con-



MAKOLOKOS.

verted thousands of the natives and saw the little village which he had founded grow into a flourishing town, with the Christian virtues prominent in nearly all its inhabitants. About this time he was visited by two noted hunters, Oswell and Murray, who requested him to accompany them across the Kalahari desert, his company being particularly desirable because of his knowledge of the Bechuana language. The journey was made with ox teams and at the expense of the most dreadful sufferings on account of the exceeding scarcity of water, but on August 1st, 1849, the party was rewarded for all their privations by the discovery of Lake N'gami, a magnificent sheet of water about fifty miles in circumference, and the basin for many rivers, which flowing into it during the wet season inundate an immense district of country. This lake is the resort of great numbers of wild animals of the most formidable species, while its waters teem with fish.



## DISCOVERY OF THE ZAMBESI.

After spending several days upon the lake, Livingstone parted from his hunter companions, and proceeded three hundred miles further north to visit the chief of the Makolokos. Here he was kindly received, and encouraged to establish another mission, which he presided over for six months, but he found the people impervious to religious training and gave over his philanthropic



THE ZAMBESI RIVER.

undertaking, at length, that he might employ his efforts elsewhere with more goodly results, resolving, however, to return again to the Makoloko country when the conditions were more propitious. He now fortunately again met with Mr. Oswell, and the two set out on a journey further north, which brought them at length to a place called Sesheke, very near the south central



region of the continent. Here finding a pleasant country and abundant game they hunted for several days with great success. In conducting their excursions in quest of game they came upon a very large river, to which Livingstone gave the native name *Zambesi*. This is one of the largest streams in Africa, rising towards the west coast, some hundred miles from the Atlantic, and cleaving its way across the continent until its waters are discharged into the Indian Ocean.

After discovering the Zambesi Livingstone returned to Cape Town on account of the illness of his family and to send them to England, after which he proceeded again to the Makoloko country, a distance of fifteen hundred

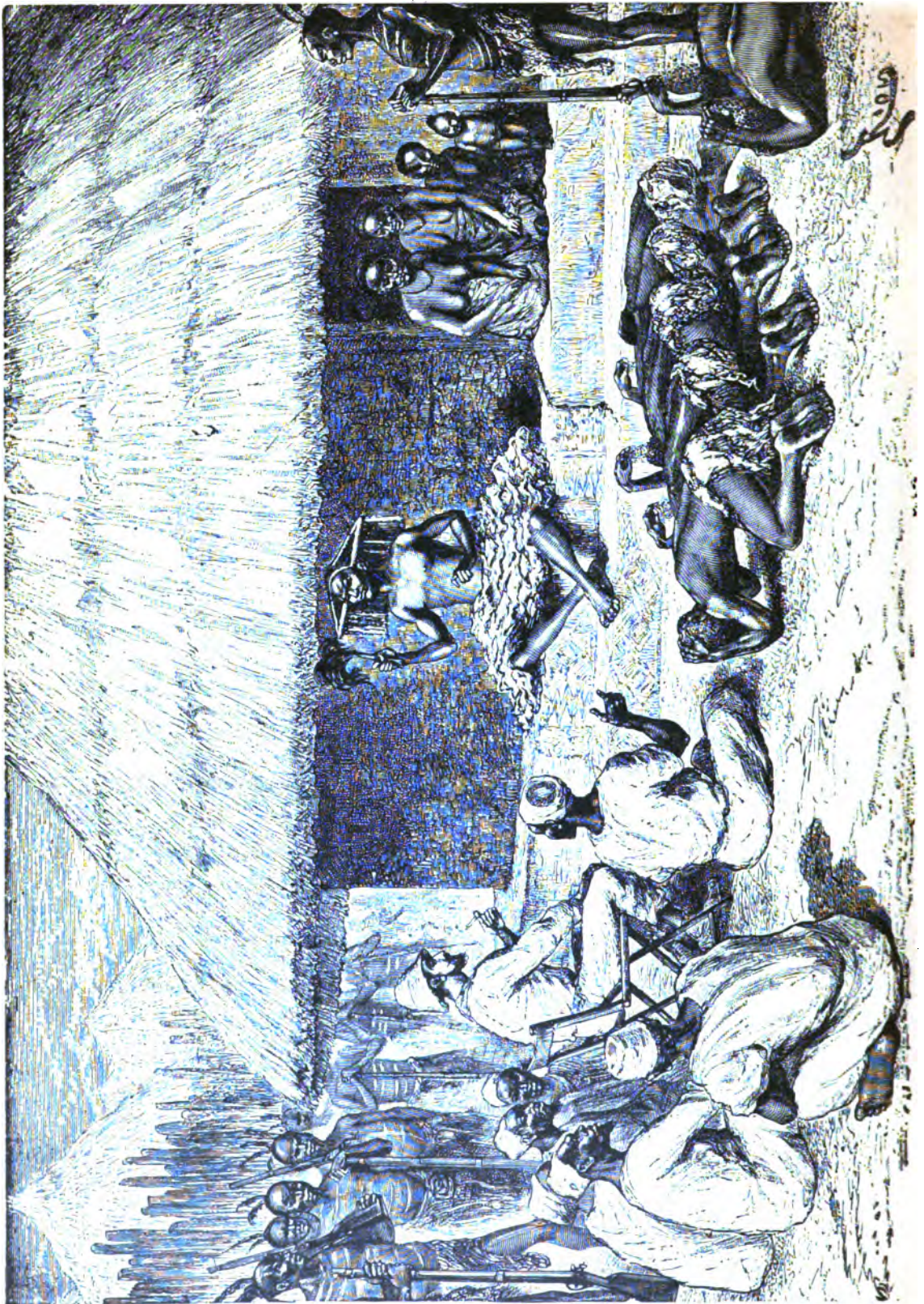


A MAKOLOKO VILLAGE.

miles. The trip was enlivened by many exciting hunts, and in due time he arrived in the country from which he had departed a year before with the humiliation that attends failure. He now found conditions more favorable to his purpose and accordingly established a missionary school which flourished greatly under his teaching and resulted in the conversion to Christianity of a great many people and all the Makoloko chiefs.

Seeing the school thus happily established, Livingstone departed, accompanied by guides furnished by the chief, for Loanda, on the Atlantic coast, hoping to make many valuable discoveries on the route; for while missionary labors interested him, his chief ambition had now been transferred to the realm





RECEPTION BY THE KING OF MAKOLOKO.



of exploration. Nor was his ambition an *ignis fatuus*, for it led him to the most substantial realities and to make several of the greatest discoveries that are known to African geography. On this journey he passed up the Leeambye river, the western part of the Zambesi, and found another considerable stream, to which he gave the name Luba; besides which valuable discoveries he gives the most interesting descriptions of the peoples whom he met on the route.

#### THE WONDERFUL VICTORIA FALLS.

Livingstone safely performed the journey, and after a stay of four months at Loanda, laid up with a fever, he attempted a passage of Africa with the view of opening a route from Loanda across the continent by way of the Zambesi river, but after great hardships he was compelled to give over the effort and to return to the Makoloko country by the same route he had travelled in going to Loanda. But though his reception was cordial, he did not tarry long with the people who had so graciously accepted him as their religious instructor, but continued on down the Leeambye until he reached Victoria Falls, beyond comparison the grandest sight in all Africa, and equalled only by our Niagara. It will avoid confusion if the reader is made to understand that the Leeba, Leeambye and Zambesi are only as many names for the same river, the western part being called by the former, the middle part by the second, and the eastern end by the best known name, the Zambesi. Livingstone was the first white man to gaze on this wonderful natural formation. The river here falls into a chasm four hundred feet deep, bounded by serpentine walls of basalt, which force the waters to flow in a zigzag direction. The water breaks into a white mass like a sheet of driven snow, and sends up columns of vapor eight hundred feet above the brink, while at the outlet is a whirlpool above which in clear weather are seen several concentric rainbows. The whole scene is indescribably grand.

From the Victoria Falls, Livingstone continued on down the Zambesi, until within three hundred miles of its mouth he came upon a Portuguese settlement, where he was so hospitably received that he tarried a few days, and on his departure eight Portuguese accompanied him down the river in canoes to Quilimane, from which place he sailed for Mauritius, August 12, 1856, on the brig *Frolic* and arrived at his destination without experiencing any difficulties, thus concluding his first expedition into Africa.



## CHAPTER VI.

### LIVINGSTONE'S LAST EXPEDITIONS AND DEATH.



WHILE travelling through Africa, during the sixteen years of his residence in that country, and especially during his explorations along the Zambesi and the central regions, Livingstone had familiarized himself with the enormity and extraordinary cruelty of the slave trade, and resolved, while trying to save the poor Africans' souls, to put forth some effort also to protect their bodies. Therefore, after a short stay at Mauritius, he took passage on an England bound vessel to make preparations for carrying his plans into execution. Upon reaching London he read several papers before the English Geographical Society, wherein he set forth the infamy of the slave trade and, incidentally, the importance of the Zambesi as a highway by which both commerce and Christianity might be carried into the interior of Africa. So favorable were the impressions created by his descriptions and suggestions that a fund was immediately raised to equip the expedition which he proposed, and which being organized, set sail March 10, 1858, for the mouth of the Zambesi. Dr. Livingstone was accompanied by his courageous wife, his brother Charles, and Dr. Kirk, superintendent of the Kew Gardens of London. He took with him an ample supply of stores and also a steam launch, in sections, in which to make an ascent of the river.

In due season the expedition arrived at Quilimane, at the mouth of the river, and after making the necessary preparations began their journey up the Zambesi. After proceeding a few miles, however, they found their course impeded by sand bars, but at the same time discovered a lateral stream, called the Kongone, easy of navigation, and up this they proceeded to the river Shire, which is another branch of the Zambesi. They followed up this latter stream several hundred miles until they entered an immense lake, to which Livingstone gave the name *Nyassa*. Here he found the slave trade flourishing to the greatest possible extent, and consequently the sufferings of the people,



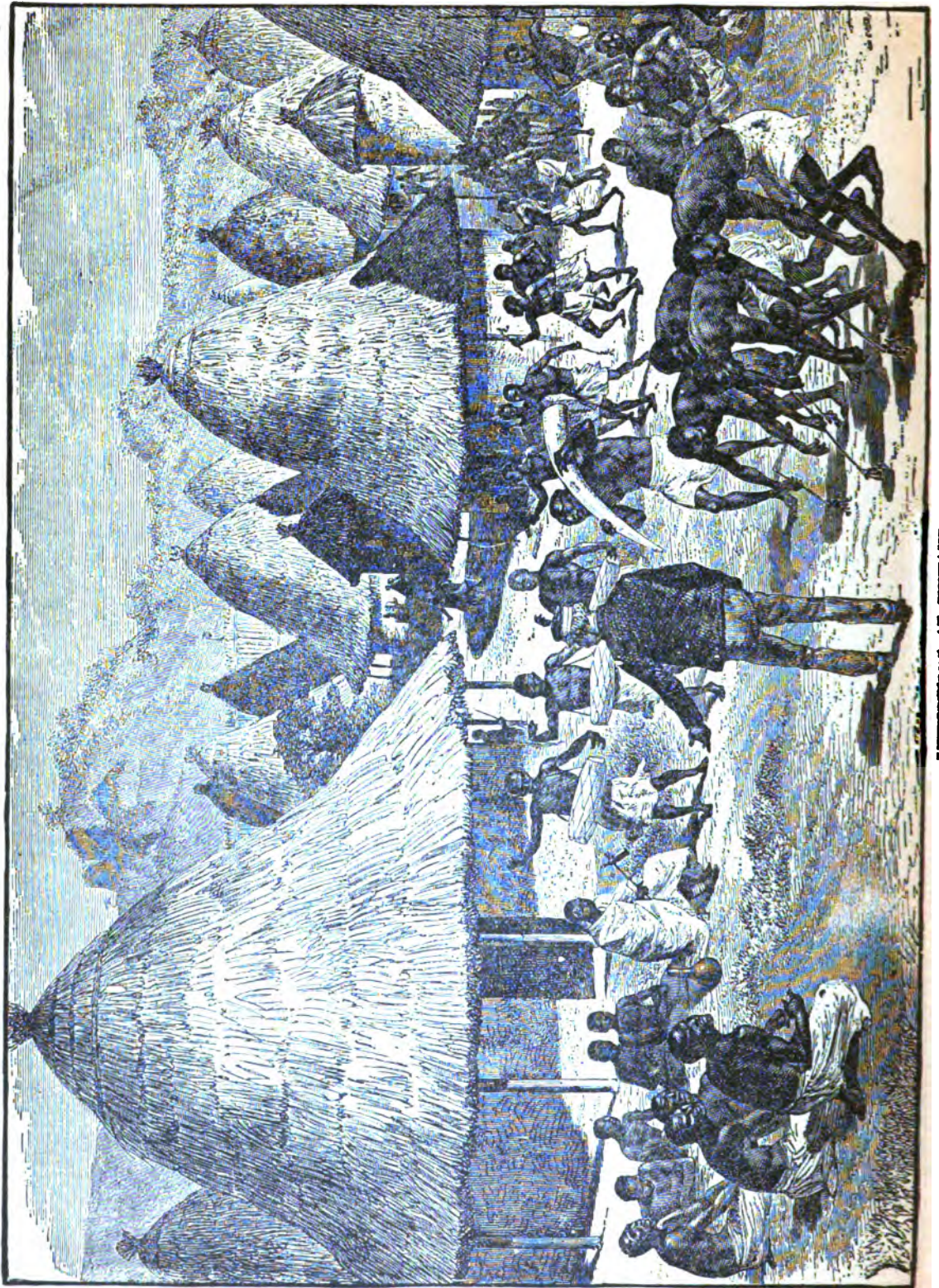
brought on by wars and inhuman cruelties, wrung the great explorer's heart with pity. Remaining in this man-cursed region several days, Livingstone again entered the Shire and descended to the Zambesi, up which he proceeded to the head of navigation. From this point the expedition took to the land



DISCOVERY OF LAKE NYASSA.

and continued on by such conveyances as their oxen and donkeys provided, several of which had been brought with them. They had passed through a wonderful game country, abounding with elephants, hippopotami, alligators,





LIVINGSTONIA AT SHUFANGA.



and wild dogs, which Livingstone hunted as a diversion and also to obtain fresh supplies of meat. They continued along the banks of the Zambesi to the river Zongwe, up which they turned their course in canoes for a distance of fifty miles and then crossed the country to the Victoria Falls.

#### FATE OF THE MABOTSA MISSION AND DEATH OF MRS. LIVINGSTONE.

Having now reached again the Makoloko country, Livingstone made anxious inquiries respecting the mission which he had established four years before at Mabotsa. To his surprise and sorrow he found that scarce a vestige of it remained. Mr. Hilmore and his wife, whom he had left in charge, had both died of fever, and the natives had abandoned all interest in the mission, so that it speedily declined and soon disappeared. Discouraged at this result, Livingstone made no attempt to renew the mission, but returned to Lake Nyassa in order to make a more thorough examination of that large body of water.

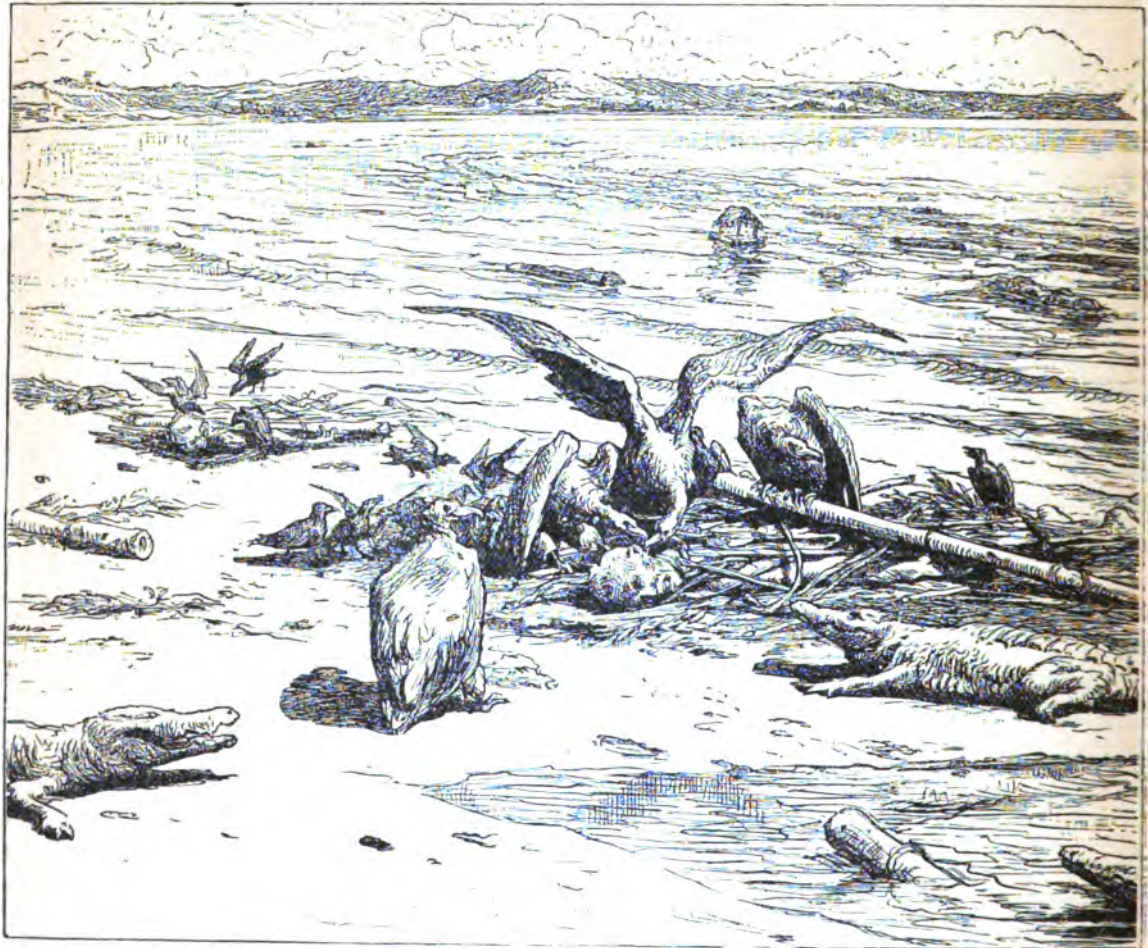
He built a large boat on the banks, in which he spent six weeks sailing on the lake to determine its extent and the country it drained. But while thus engaged a storm wrecked his vessel, which disaster was accompanied by a loss of nearly all his stores, so that he was compelled to go back to the ship *Pioneer*, which had been sent out early in 1861 with new supplies, and which was now anchored in the Rovuma river, which she was in commission to explore. On reaching the vessel fever broke out among the party and, for lack of proper medicine, it raged with great virulence and some fatality for several weeks. In the middle of April Mrs. Livingstone was prostrated, and on Sabbath evening of the 27th she died. A landing was made at Shupanga, and on the following day the body was buried beneath the wide-spreading branches of a large baobab-tree, from which pestilential region her spirit took wings and sped away to that celestial land where the sufferings of brave hearts are assuaged by a most gracious balm, and tired feet rest beside still but living waters. She thus left, in the midst of her Christian labors, the exploration of this world to continue her discoveries in that land which lies beyond the shadows.

After the death of Mrs. Livingstone, the bereaved husband became anxious to put back again into the interior, and therefore resolved to return directly to Nyassa. But before doing so he accompanied his party up the Rovuma as far as the three light-draught sail-boats could carry them, a distance of one hundred and fifty-six miles. Being unable to proceed further, they returned down the Rovuma to the Shire and then halted at Shupanga again, where the horrors of the slave-trade were most revolting, the river being sometimes choked with the dead bodies of slaves who had died of fever or were shot down in attempting to make their escape.

After a month's stay at Shupanga, a steam corvette was made ready, in which Livingstone determined to more fully explore Lake Nyassa. He therefore set out to convey it up the Rovuma to the head of navigation, and thence

overland thirty-five miles to the lake, but with all his pertinacity and almost superhuman efforts, he was unable to accomplish its portage, with the men at his command, over the hills and bluffs that intervened, so that at last he found it necessary to return the boat to the river. Though greatly disappointed in his ambition, he pushed on with eight others to the lake, which he coasted in canoes to the north end, but his purpose was not fully accomplished on account of a lack of time.

The *Pioneer* was to sail for Quilimane late in December, and he now found barely time to retrace his steps before her departure. However, by



DEAD BODIES OF SLAVES IN THE SHIRE.

forced marches, he succeeded in reaching the vessel in time, upon which he was conveyed to the Zambesi's mouth. Here they were fortunate in finding two British ships, the *Orestes* and the *Ariel*. The two corvettes, *Pioneer* and *Lady Nyassa*, were taken in tow, and the voyage to Zanzibar was begun. From this latter place, where he arrived April 30th, 1864, Livingstone proceeded to Bombay in the small launch, *Lady Nyassa*, going to India with the purpose of disposing of his small vessel. This trip of 2500 miles was made in



a boat so small that her arrival was not noticed, and she was managed by a crew of seven Africans, two boys and four Europeans, not one of the former having ever before seen the sea. Thus ended Livingstone's second expedition.

#### A SEARCH FOR THE NILE'S SOURCE.

From Bombay Livingstone returned to England, where he published his second book on the Zambesi and its tributaries, and in April, 1865, he started on a third expedition with the purpose of discovering the source of the Nile. This ambition seized upon him as a result of the publication of the journals of Speke and Grant, who had just returned from Africa, claiming that the source of that wondrous river had been found in the Victoria N'yanza Lake. Livingstone was sanguine in the belief that the true source was in a chain of lakes lying far south of the N'yanza, and this impression, gained by a pretty thorough knowledge of the topography of Central Africa, he was anxious to confirm by personal investigation. Business again took him to Bombay, where he was appointed by the Government of India to make a formal presentation of the steamer *Thule* to the Sultan of Zanzibar. He also carried commendatory letters to the Sultan, through which influence that royal dignitary gave him much assistance in preparing for his last expedition. Lake Tanganyika had been discovered in 1861, and Livingstone concluded to make Ujiji, a principal town on its east bank, the base for his supplies, and accordingly sent a large



SAID BARGASH, SULTAN OF ZANZIBAR.

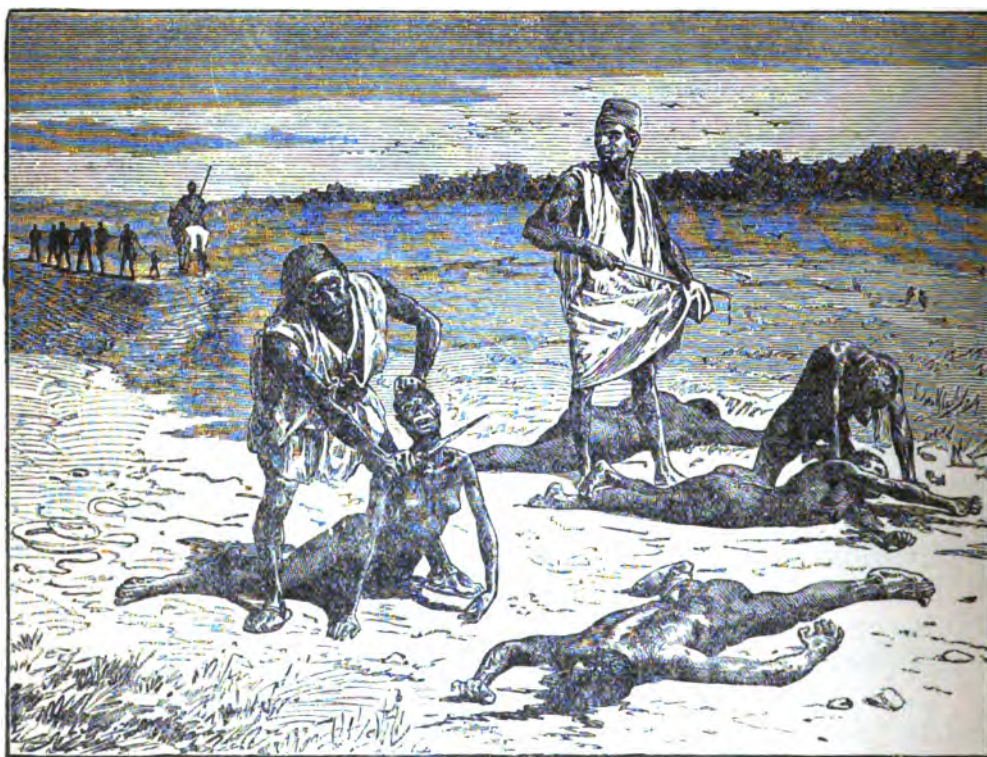
quantity of provisions and trinkets to that place, with a man to remain in charge of them until they were needed. The next day, March 19th, Livingstone left Zanzibar on the steamer *Penguin* for the Rovuma river, the mouth of which is hardly one hundred miles distant. Among the necessities of this journey were six camels, three buffaloes, two mules and four donkeys, all to be used for riding purposes, as horses perish very quickly in the region he was about to penetrate, from the poisonous bite of the tsetse fly. The animals were badly bruised on this short voyage, but their worst injuries were received in unloading them onto an India dhow, by which they were transferred to the land,

so that a rest was necessary, and the expedition did not start for the interior until April 6th, moving along the Rovuma valley.

#### THE HORRORS OF SLAVERY.

The march was continued without serious interruption, so that in June the expedition reached the region of Lake Nyassa, which they discovered by seeing so many evidences of inhuman cruelties practised on the slave parties that were met. One entry in Livingstone's journal, June 19th, reads as follows:

"We passed a woman tied by the neck to a tree, and dead. The people of the country explained that she had been unable to keep up with the other slaves in a gang, and her master was determined that she should not become the



ARABS MURDERING EXHAUSTED SLAVES.

property of any one else if she recovered after resting for a time. I may mention here that we saw others tied up in a similar manner, and one lying in a path shot or stabbed, for she was in a pool of blood. The explanation we got invariably was that the Arab who owned these victims was enraged at losing his money by the slaves becoming unable to march, and vented his spleen by murdering them. A poor little boy with *prolapsus ani* was carried yesterday by his mother many a weary mile, lying over her right shoulder—the only position he could find ease in; an infant at the breast occupied the left arm, and on her head were carried two baskets. The mother's love was seen in binding up the part when we halted, while the coarseness of low civilization was evinced in the laugh with which some black brutes looked at the sufferer."





RECEPTION OF THE ARAB'S BRIDE.



Livingstone reached the lake at the mouth of the Misinje river August 8th, having surmounted many difficulties, not the least of which was scarcity of food, from which the people of all the lake country were likewise suffering. In fact, there was a very great famine then prevailing, from which thousands had died, and their skeletons were to be seen all along the highway. Hundreds of slaves, bound by heavy yokes, were also found at frequent intervals where their inhuman captors had left them to die of starvation.

Livingstone left the Nyassa in November, and after passing through many hardships, superinduced principally by the want of food, and the desertion of two of his men with the medicine chest, he reached Lake Tanganyika March 31st, 1866. The country at which he had now arrived was very fertile, but it was in a disordered state on account of a war between a powerful chief and the Arab slave dealers, which rendered travel very dangerous. This war, however, was fortunately terminated by the chief's daughter marrying the Arab captain, the bride being brought to the Arab camp in state, riding on the back of a burly subject, and deposited with care before the door of the groom's tent. As announcement of her coming was made, the soldiers fired a salute of welcome, and the remainder of the day was given over to the wildest festivities. This ceremony was witnessed by Livingstone while he was on the south-west coast of the lake, but immediately after he proceeded unmolested to Ujiji, from which place he sent to Zanzibar for supplies and turned his steps southward again, discovering on his route several rivers, including Kalongi and Lunde. He passed through Casembe's kingdom, a ruler chiefly distinguished for his cruelty in chopping off the hands or cropping the ears of his subjects for petty offences, and often for no cause whatever. In this region he also met with cave-dwellers, the true troglodytes of Africa, who live in natural excavations at the base of the Rua Mountains, and about the shores of Lake Moero, which Livingstone discovered.

#### DISCOVERY OF LAKE BANGWEOLO.

On July 18th good fortune directed the explorer's footsteps to the shores of another great lake, next in size to Nyassa, and before unknown, to which he gave the name *Bangweolo*, always selecting such names from the vocabulary of the tribes living in the vicinity. This body of water, in addition to its great size, is also wonderful from the fact that it lies thirty-six hundred feet above sea level. This lake, the discovery of which added so much to his fame, was destined also to come prominently into notice, because near its banks the great explorer "lay down to pleasant dreams," and rested forever from his labors.

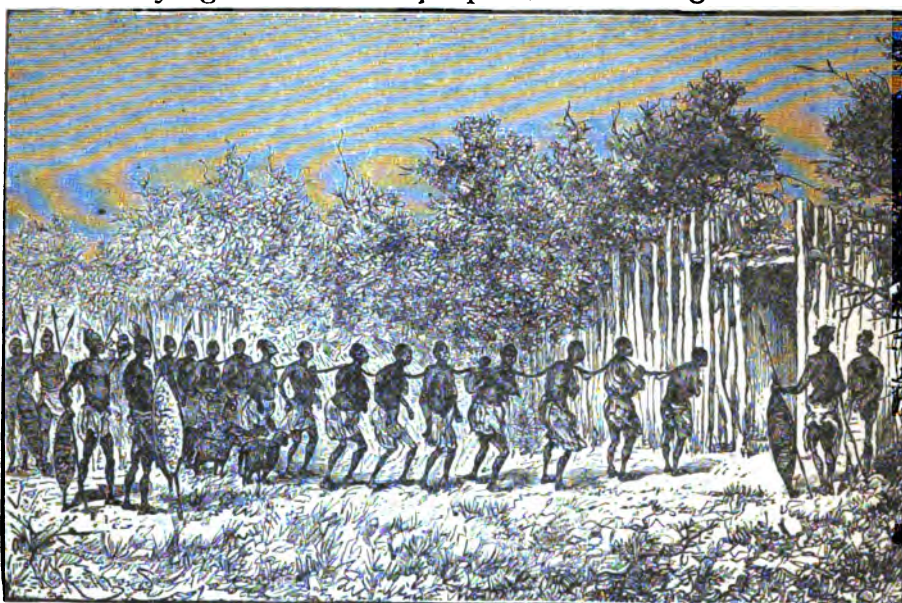
From this point, turning his steps northward, Livingstone was brought again to the borders of Casembe's kingdom, having now resolved to proceed to Ujiji for supplies, of which he stood greatly in need. But during his stay in the south another fierce war had been inaugurated between the Arabs and Mazitu tribes, in which Casembe also soon became involved. This rendered



travel so perilous that Livingstone was forced, as a measure of self-protection, to unite with an Arab party, with whom he marched, in the company also of hundreds of slaves yoked together, from his exposed position to Ujiji, which he reached March 14th, 1869.

He arrived at Ujiji in a sick and exhausted condition, and only to find that very few of the supplies that had been sent from Zanzibar had reached their destination, the greater part having been stolen by Arabs. Nevertheless, after a period of recuperation and medication, Livingstone again plunged into the unexplored regions, resolved to follow up the source of the Lualaba river, believing that this stream had a connection with Lake Tanganyika, or that it flowed into the chief reservoir of the Nile. But many things conspired to prevent the immediate carrying out of this purpose, and he again turned his steps towards

Lake Bangwe-  
olo, and thence  
into the country  
of the Many-  
ema cannibals  
to examine the  
river of which  
he had heard  
frequent men-  
tion made by  
the natives as  
running to the  
west. He at  
length reached  
the Lualaba  
river, but found  
it flowing in a



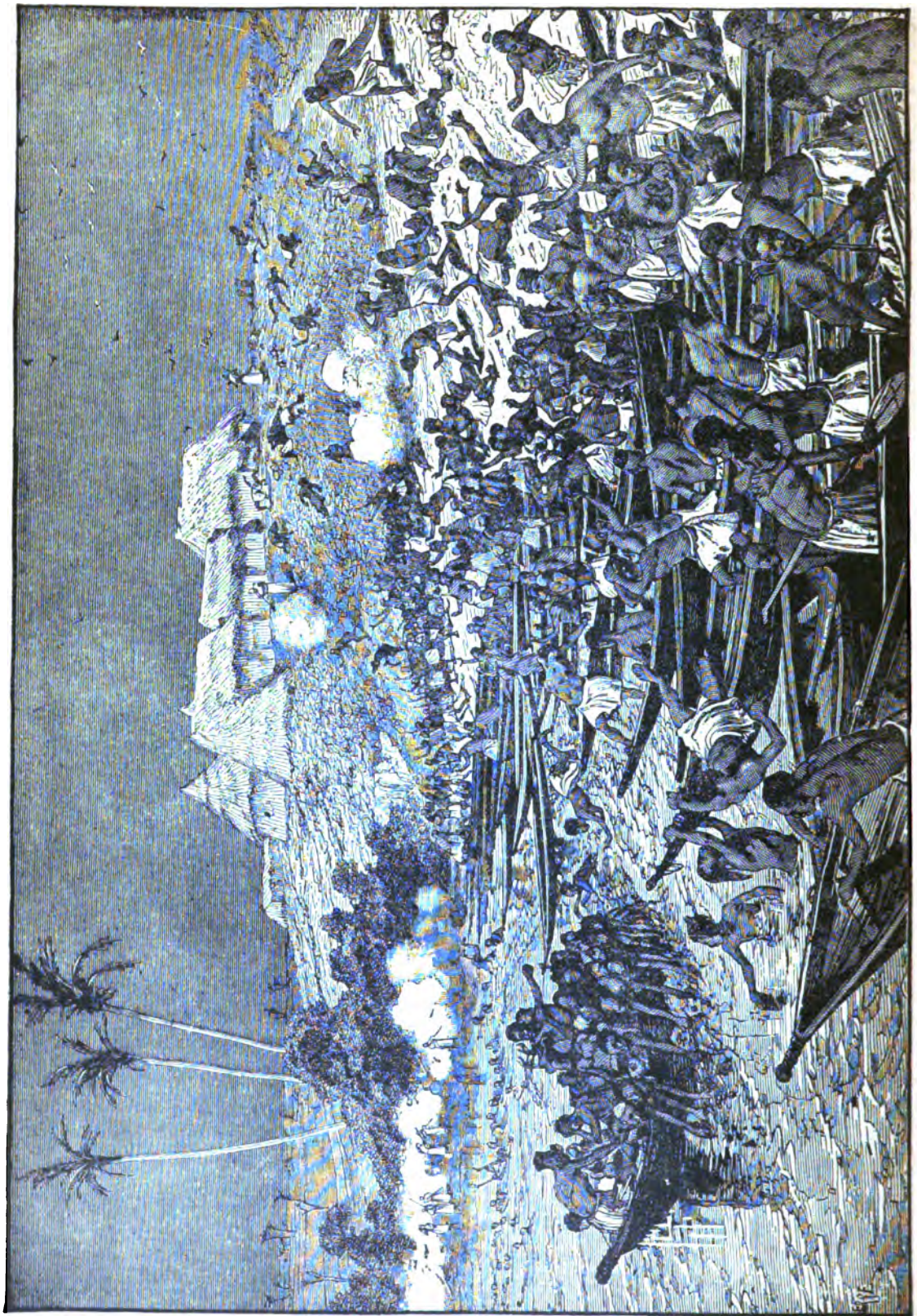
THE SLAVE GANG.

northerly direction, so that he at once perceived that it could have no connection with the lake system that he believed supplied the Nile. The river being a large one, he resolved to explore it; but when upon the point of setting out for this purpose, the Arabs swooped down upon the people, taking some captive and murdering hundreds of others, and otherwise terrorizing the whole country. Many of Livingstone's servants fled for their lives; it was impossible to get canoes or provisions, so that he was compelled to return to Ujiji, six hundred miles distant. Travelling had now become more dangerous than ever, and his return trip was one of extraordinary peril, in which he came very near, many times, losing his life.

#### MEETING WITH STANLEY.

Notwithstanding all these perils, Livingstone reached Ujiji in safety, October 23d, 1871, though so much reduced in flesh as to scarcely appear





ARABS MASSACRING MANYUMAS ON THE LUALABA.



more than a shadow of his former self. The goods which he had ordered from Zanzibar had been sent by the Sultan, but more than two-thirds were stolen on the way, so that he received such a meagre supply as to well near completely discourage him. At this juncture, when racked by mental anxieties, enfeebled by disease, discouraged by the lack of supplies, and oppressed by the cruelty, villainy, and rapacity of the Arabs, who had rendered every route insecure by their murderous outrages, a good angel of mercy came to visit him, in the guise of an American, sent out to find the long lost, the supposed dead explorer, with instructions to succor him if living, and to bring back his bones to England if dead. Two years had elapsed since any word from Livingstone had been received in England, although he had written no less than forty-three letters to friends and the Geographical Society during his first visit to Ujiji, not one of which had been delivered by the Arabs to whom they had been entrusted. Reports had been circulated of his death, and, to verify or disprove these, Stanley set out upon the search, being so fortunate as to find him November 16th, 1871.

The meeting between Stanley and Livingstone was a joyful one on both sides, as may well be imagined. After hearing all the news, reading the letters which had been brought to him, and examining the large amount of supplies which Stanley had brought, Livingstone proposed an expedition to the north end of Lake Tanganyika, in order to determine whether it poured its waters through a river outlet into Lake Albert N'yanza, which Baker had claimed was the Nile's true source. Together Stanley and Livingstone made the trip, and found the Rusizi river; but instead of being an outlet, it poured its waters into the lake, so the fact was thus determined that Tanganyika had no connection with the Victoria or Albert lakes.

#### DEATH OF LIVINGSTONE.

Upon their return from this trip, to Ujiji, Stanley tried hard to induce his newly-found friend to accompany him to England, representing the hardships which lay before him and the depleted physical condition he was in, rendering hazardous any attempts at new enterprises; but Livingstone refused, being influenced thereto by his ambition to follow up the large river which he found flowing to the north-west in the Manyuema country, and which he still believed was the Nile. This river, it was subsequently determined, was the Congo, and which Stanley afterwards named the Livingstone.

His mind having been fully resolved on this great undertaking, Livingstone accompanied Stanley as far as Unyanyembe, on the latter's return journey, and waited there the arrival of new supplies which he instructed Stanley to send him.

It was not until August 23d, 1872, that Livingstone departed from Unyanyembe on his last exploration, proceeding again in the direction of Lake Bangweolo. The season was now far advanced, and the rains had already begun to fall when he reached Casembe's territory. Soon after the country



THE MARCH THROUGH CASEMBE'S COUNTRY.



was flooded, and travel became possible only by wading through swamps and vast stretches of water, often neck-deep. This dreadful exposure brought on fresh attacks of hemorrhagic discharges, to which Livingstone had long been a sufferer at times, and their great frequency now gave him so much concern that he seems to have foreseen that the end of his earthly travels was near. Nevertheless, he continued to push forward, even when he had grown so weak



LIVINGSTONE BESET BY HOSTILE NATIVES.

that it was necessary for his servants to carry him in a square sling made for the purpose. The last entry in his journal bears the date of April 27 (1873), but he survived until the 1st of May, having been taken to a hut, where, in the early morning of that day, he was found upon his knees, resting his head and arms upon his low couch—dead.

Though in the wilds of an unexplored country, where the savage fury of untutored minds predominate, yet even here the body of this great man was







honored by the funereal pomp of an African chief, who brought his family and retinue to pay their homage, in the firing of guns, beating of drums, and the wails of a party of mourners, over the remains. After this the body was imperfectly embalmed, and, being placed upon a litter, was conveyed by the



DEATH OF LIVINGSTONE.

faithful servants over a journey of six months' length to Zanzibar, from whence it was shipped to England, and there buried, beside the greatest men of the earth, in Westminster Abbey.



## CHAPTER VII.

### DISCOVERIES IN THE CENTRAL REGIONS.



WE have seen that, in the earlier centuries, the attention of travellers was directed towards the western portions of Africa, where a great many attempts were made at exploration, chiefly in the interest of commercial companies, many of which had established profitable trade relations with the Arabs as far east as Bornoo, or Bornu. Shortly after the advent of the present century, however, explorers began entering the country from the south, most probably because of the founding of Cape Town, which became an excellent point for outfitting expeditions, and because the Dutch had now taken possession of a great extent of the south coast and established large and prosperous settlements there. But after Livingstone's journey across the continent, the tide again changed, and the place of entrance was fixed in the east, at Zanzibar, because here was the Arab headquarters for Central African traffic.

But long before da Gama had discovered a sea route to India, *via* the Cape of Good Hope, many efforts had been made to reach the Nile's source by an ascent of that river; but though some of these were made with loud declarations of accomplishment, all alike had failed. Among those of the semi-modern travellers who became seekers of the hidden source was James Bruce, a bold Scotchman, who spent the years 1768 to 1773, inclusive, in persistent endeavors to discover whence the great Nile takes its rise. He published the result of his investigations in a work of five volumes, the greater part of which he devotes, and with much learning and reason, to the history of Abyssinia and the kingdom of Sofala, which latter he regards as the Ophir whence Solomon obtained his treasures. In the second volume Mr. Bruce traces the history of the queen of Sheba, and her rich kingdom, the capital of which must, as he argues, have been in the region of Sofala; and he gives us the best of reasons for his conclusions. He describes particularly the ruins still to be found in the vicinity of Sena, and how the massive stones were joined together by strips of brass instead of cement; at the same time using most excellent argument to prove that brass was much more valuable than gold during that age. He also gives us history to support the old tradition



that the queen of Sheba (Saba) had a son by Solomon, who founded the lynasty which still endures in Abyssinia.

**THE NILE'S SOURCE NOT DETERMINED.**

Mr. Bruce is an interesting delver in forgotten lore, and his Abyssinian discoveries are of great value to history; but his claim to the discovery of the Nile's source is not defensible, nor did he ever pass over any great extent of country in making his search, seemingly having confined himself to the central regions of Abyssinia and to tracing the Blue Nile, which is an eastern branch of the main stream. He asserts, however, that both the Blue and White Nile have a common source in Lake Tzaua or Dembea, which is in about 12° north latitude and very near the centre of the present circumscribed kingdom of Abyssinia. Strangely enough, he also maintains that the Blue Nile, while describing a circular sweep, passes directly through the centre of this large lake, a conclusion which is grotesque if not ridiculous. The result, therefore, of his explorations, so far at least as it concerns the White Nile's source, is without practical value, though he did discover the true source of the Blue Nile.



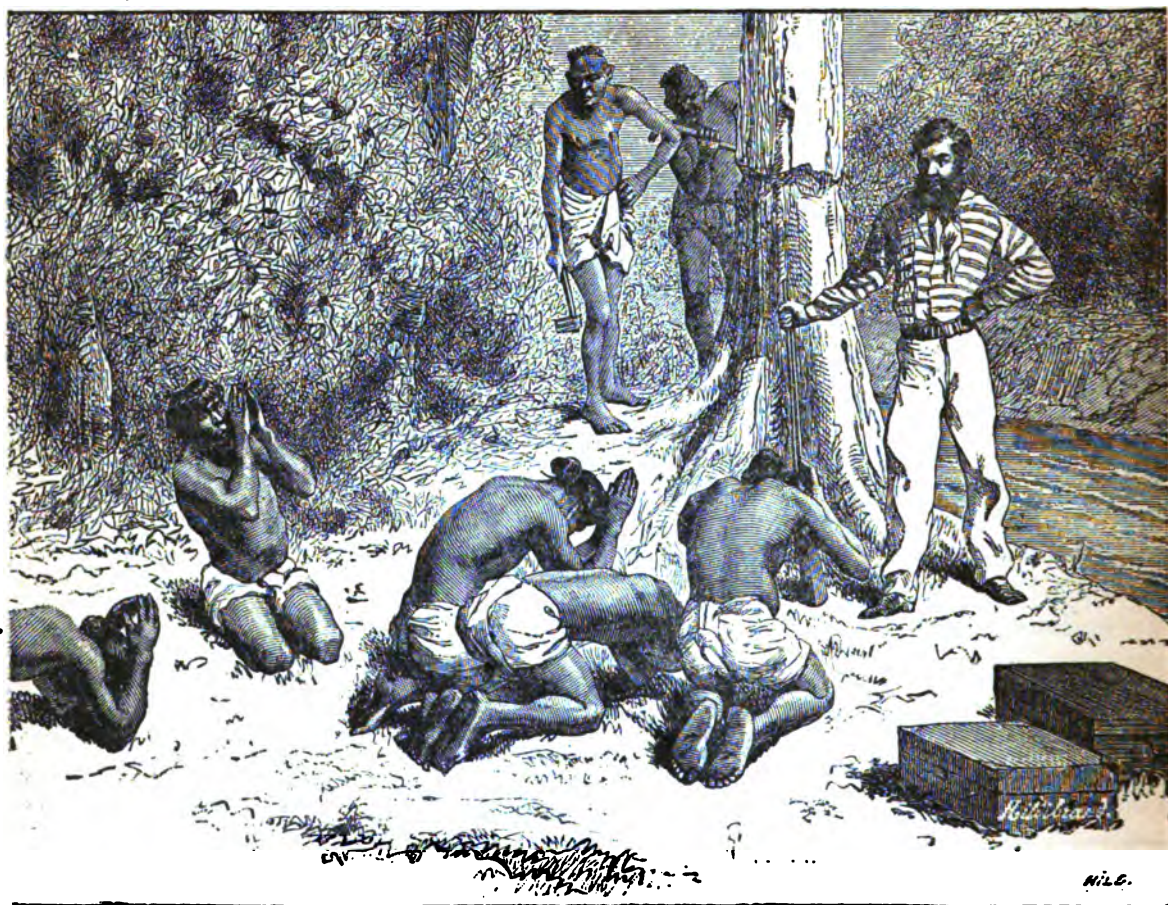
**MANNER OF DRESSING THE HAIR AMONG THE AFRICANS.**

Ferdinand Werne, a scientific German, set out in 1840 to seek the source of the White Nile, being so fortunate as to attach himself to an expedition dispatched by Mohammed Ali to open a commercial road to Central Africa. Suliman Kashef, a Circassian, who had commanded a former expedition sent out for a like purpose, was also nominated to take charge of this one. The expedition was carefully prepared for and was composed of 20,000 men, the larger part being cavalry, mounted on camels, and 4000 asses provided to bear the burdens of the infantry force. Notwithstanding the ample provision made



and great hopes of obtaining practical results, this expedition went little further up the stream than Khartoum, though Werne continued his journey to  $9\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$  north latitude, returning to his country the following year without accomplishing anything of practical value.

In 1845, John Petherick, an English traveller, went to Egypt and entered the Khedive's service as a mining engineer. In this capacity he visited many districts along the upper Nile, as he continued in the exercise of this office for several years, and until the death of Mohammed Ali, after which he became a



BRUCE AMONG THE ABYSSINIANS.

merchant at Khartoum. While doing business in that place he received the appointment of British Consul, which position he filled with great credit and no small advantage to his country. He also made a special study of the White Nile, and interested himself in obtaining all possible information respecting the river's source from traders who came to Khartoum from the central regions. He published a book on "Explorations of the White Nile to Regions of the Equator," which for some time was accepted as a work of great utility, but which, in the light of more recent discovery, is now rarely referred to.



## BURTON'S EAST AFRICA.

The most important expedition—in its results—up to this time was that undertaken by Richard F. Burton, a native of Ireland, in the year 1857, who entered Africa from the east coast. No man was ever better fitted for such a service, nor was ever an explorer sent out from whom so much was expected.

He entered the Indian army as Lieutenant in 1842, when twenty-one years of age, and being stationed in the presidency of Bombay, and having a leave of absence, he spent some time in exploring the Neilgherry hills; afterwards serving for five years in Sind, or northern Bombay district, under Sir C. J. Napier. It was during these years that he turned his attention to authorship and the study of languages, producing four very valuable works, besides acquiring the Arabic, Afghan, Persian, Hindostanee and



AFRICAN PROPHETS.

Mooltanee languages, of the last of which he published a grammar.

In 1851 Burton returned to England, and having received a year's furlough his restless disposition to see the wild regions of the earth induced him to visit Mecca and Medina, which no Christian had reached since Burckhardt, in 1814-15. Such a journey was beset with countless perils to a Christian, whose discovery would be followed by almost certain death, as the Moslems would never suffer a defilement of their sanctuaries by what they call Christian dogs.

To prevent detection, therefore, upon arriving at Alexandria, Burton assumed the guise of a wandering dervish, which his thorough knowledge of the Arabic language and customs enabled him to successfully do, so that he visited the holy cities without his true character being even suspected. The results of this journey were described in a book which he published in 1855.

In June, 1857, Burton left Zanzibar for the lake regions of Central Africa, accompanied by Capt. Speke, about whom we will learn more in subsequent pages. On returning from Africa in 1859, he came to America and made a study of the Mormon Hierarchy, published a book on the same a year later. In 1861, he was made Consul at Fernando Po, on the west coast of Africa, where he remained until 1864, writing two more books in the mean time. In this latter year he was made Consul at Santos, Brazil where he continued to write books until in 1868 he was appointed Consul to Damascus and traveled over all the Holy Land, writing more books, "Unexplored Palestine," and "Anthropological Collections in the Holy Land." In 1869 he published "Vikram and the Vampire; or, Tales of Hindu Devilry," and two years later he was made Consul at Trieste, where he prepared a new and very free translation of the Arabian Nights, which, because of the salacious suggestiveness as well as the obscene language that characterize the stories thus told, was suppressed.

It is said, and no doubt with truth, that Burton acquired no less than thirty-five languages and dialects, in all of which he conversed with fluency.

#### OFF FOR THE AFRICAN LAKES.

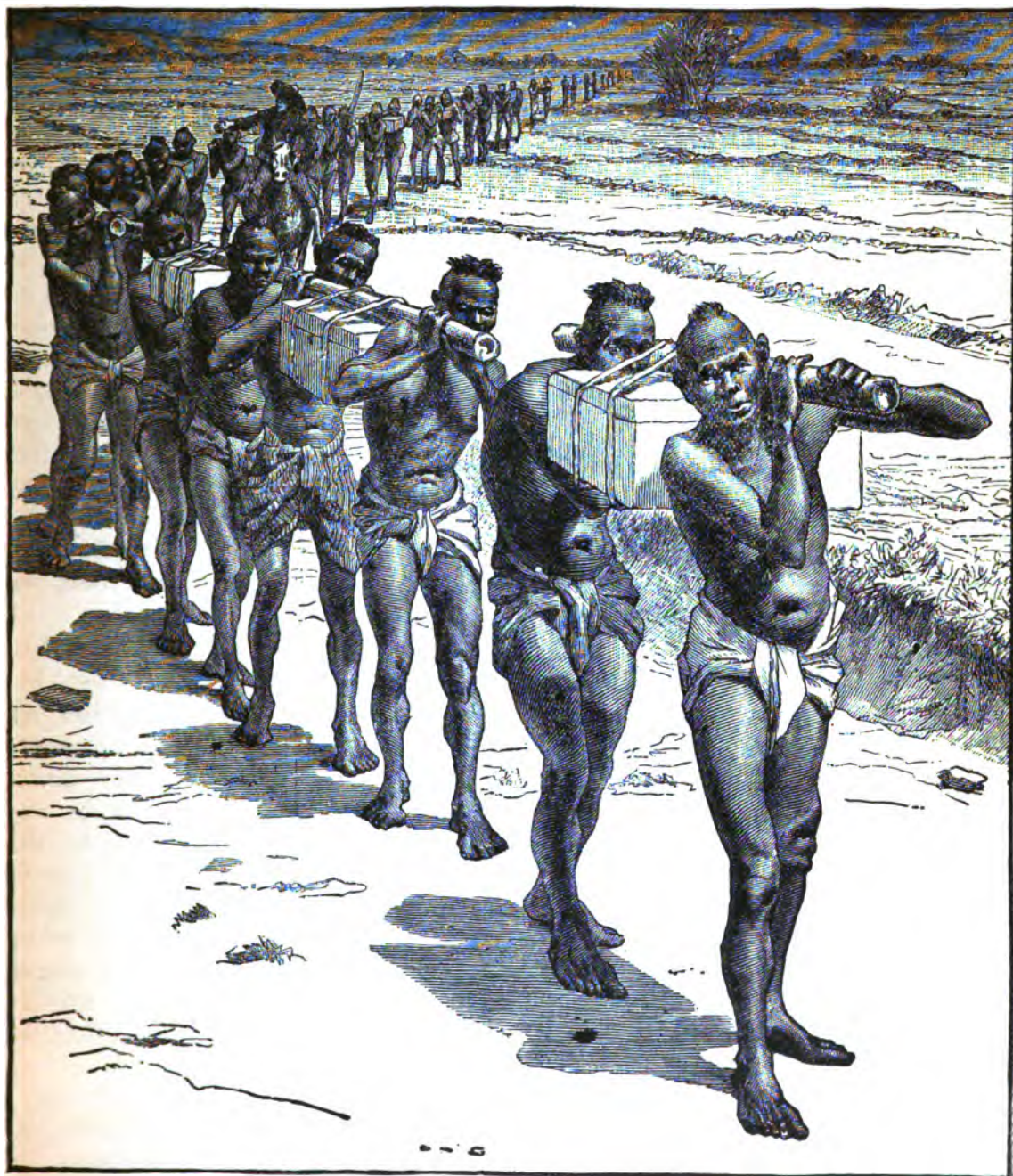
Burton organized his expedition under the patronage of the Royal Geographical Society, chiefly by the request of Sir Roderick Murchison, its president, England's great geologist, who for many years had taken the largest interest in Africa and was specially anxious to induce an exploration of all its unknown portions. Mr. Burton's prime purpose, as expressed in his application to the society, was to ascertain "the limits of the Sea of Ujiji, or Unyamwezi Lake," and secondarily, to determine the exportable produce of the interior and the ethnography of its tribes. A large lake was known to exist in the interior and upon its banks the town of Ujiji was said to be located; this much information was long before obtained from the Arabic slave hunters, but no explorer had up to this time succeeded in discovering it. To accomplish this the society advanced \$5000 to equip the expedition, and Burton, obtaining a two years' leave of absence from regimental duties, was appointed to the command.

#### IN CONTACT WITH A WIZARD.

After a very tedious delay at Zanzibar a sufficient number of porters and asses were at length obtained and the expedition, 200 strong, set out upon the march westward toward the unknown region. Very slow progress was made, because of the many obstacles that interposed, chief of which was the fear exhibited by the porters, who had knowledge of the warlike tribes through which it would be necessary to pass. The main body, under Speke, had taken up



the advance and moved ahead several miles to inspect the way, so that a junction was not formed until a march of nearly fifty miles from the coast had been made.



BURTON'S MARCH TOWARDS CENTRAL AFRICA.

As the journey increased this distance the porters and guards became less and less courageous, until arriving at Kuingani Burton saw the necessity of doing something at once to relieve their fears. Accordingly, he sent for a

*mganga*, or medicine man, whom he paid well for the utterance of an encouraging prophecy, the influence of which is invariably great among these people. This wizard appeared in due season and when Burton had collected his men to witness the ceremony the *mganga* at once began his mummery. The old man—which he proved to be—had a cloth about his head and a profusion of beads around his neck. From a bag, which contained the implements of his profession, he drew forth two gourds, one of which, a small one, was filled with snuff with which he choked his capacious nostrils till they blew with astounding resonance. The other gourd, of considerable size, contained the potential ingredients that supplied the means for provoking the future into materialization. After this receptacle was well shaken, two goat's horns were next taken from the bag. These were tied together by a mottled snake's skin which was decorated with little iron bells. With these horns he performed his incantations by directing their points towards Burton, the gaping crowd, and then himself, all the time swaying his body and uttering an unintelligible jargon, which he pretended was a language which ghosts alone could understand. Having thus performed for some time he at length gave the message he had elicited from spirits of the dead, and which was, of course, a favorable revelation as to the success of the expedition and a prediction that the porters would overcome all enemies and live to return in triumph to Zanzibar. This prophecy served an admirable purpose and sent the porters on their way with light spirits as well as with many declarations of their bravery, which, in the absence of danger, these cowardly people were always vaunting.

#### THE MURDER OF M. MAIZAN.

The pace of the party was now quickened until Kiranga Ranga was reached, where signs of hostility became apparent in the bold front presented by the natives. No open resistance was offered, however, but the porters ceased their boastings and marched along with many misgivings; three days after a new fear arose, when upon reaching an open country they found a well-palisaded village, out of which rushed a big party of warriors armed with spears and bows and poisoned arrows, and who took shelter along the hedges that lined the way, ready to begin an attack. The head man of the village was propitiated, however, and he furnished an escort to the next station, which was Madogo. Though the party was thus considerably augmented, as they came near to the village of Dege la Mhora the whole expedition was fairly thrown into confusion by a fear excited by the remembrance of a tragic incident that occurred at this place in 1845, and which made the village as much dreaded as a haunted house. It was here that M. Maizan, a learned Frenchman and pupil of the Polytechnic School, who had set out from Zanzibar to explore the lakes of Central Africa, well supplied with both provisions and instruments, was treacherously set upon and most cruelly murdered. He had been deceived into a false security by professions of friendship from the natives and upon invitation had entered the chief's hut. This sav-



age functionary became so anxious to secure the trinkets, watches and other possessions of the young Frenchman that no sooner was he within the hut than the chief provoked a quarrel and then ordered the explorer seized. The



THE MURDER OF M. MAIZAN.

unfortunate man's arms were immediately pinioned to a crosswise pole and his legs fastened to another set upright, so as to form a crucifix. Thus bound he was carried to a large calabash tree and made ready for torture. The tendons

of his arms and legs were first severed, and after mocking the sufferer for some time the chief whetted a knife before the unfortunate's eyes and then cut his throat, after which he wrenched the head from the body.

This shocking murder, though long before committed, was still fresh in the memory of these superstitious people, and they could, with the greatest difficulty, be induced to pass by the dreaded place. In fact, several deserted rather than trust themselves within the pale of the direful influence.

#### LARGE GAME AND MORE DREADED SUPERSTITION.

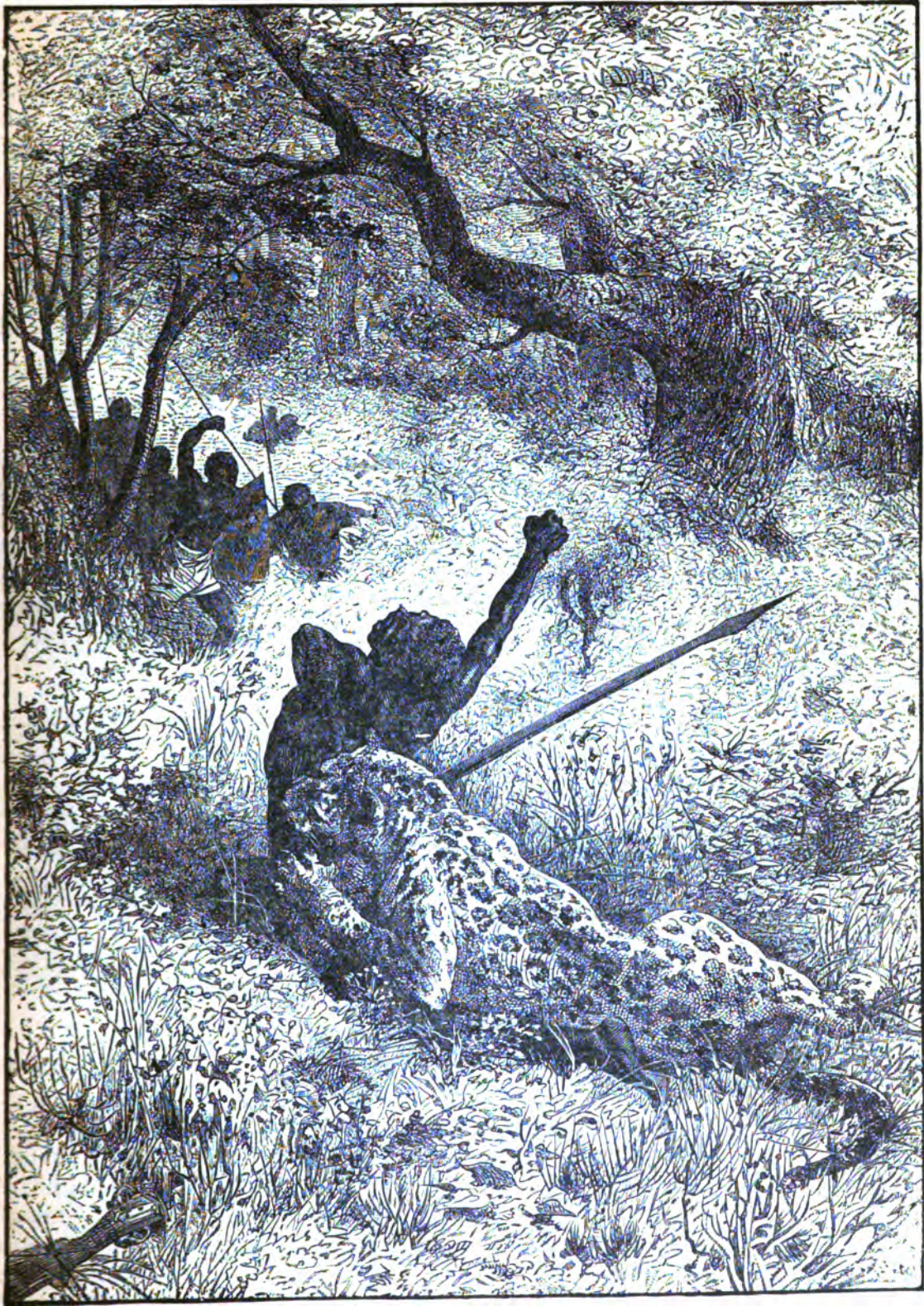
The route, for many miles, lay along the Kingani river, which abounded with hippopotami and crocodiles, for both of which the porters held a superstitious reverence, founded upon the fear which they entertained for them, and which prevented travelling by water even where the stream afforded an easy means of transportation, large canoes being readily obtainable. But the dangers which appeared to threaten from these water creatures were only a degree less than that which the porters experienced from leopards that infested every jungle, one of which seized a spear-bearer in the party and fatally bit him before his companions could frighten off the ferocious animal, so that Burton's resources were sorely tried in preventing a wholesale desertion of his men. Had not game been so plentiful and his prowess in killing rhinoceri, elephants, crocodiles, leopards, etc., so great, despite his care and persuasion, his force would have abandoned him before he had proceeded a hundred miles from the coast.

In addition to the superstitions, dread, and hostile natives that constantly threatened the expedition, there were other obstacles no less serious, in which the terrible condition of the route was most conspicuous. In numerous places the thick grass and humid vegetation, dripping till mid-day with dew, rendered the black earth greasy and slippery. In as many other places there was a deep, thick mire interlaced with tree roots through a dense jungle and forest, over barrens of stunted mimosa, and dreary savannahs cut into deep nullahs. Bogs were also frequently encountered a mile in width into which a man would sink to the knees. In occasional places, especially after heavy rains, the porters would sink in mud and water to their necks, and through which the asses would be compelled to swim, with a man holding by the head and another by the tail to prevent the animals from drowning.

#### DISCOVERY OF TANGANYIKA LAKE.

All these difficulties were overcome by persistent labor and consummate ingenuity in dealing with a savage, ignorant and intensely superstitious people, but not by a retention of the original porters, even though they were slaves. Many of these deserted and others were discharged, their places being filled by the employment of men obtained from natives along the way. At last, after a very long and perilous journey, and at the expense of almost insupportable fatigue, the expedition halted on the high hills near the west shore of Tanganyika, and on the 13th of February, 1858, Burton discovered in the





LEOPARD KILLING ONE OF BURTON'S SOLDIERS.

(187)



dim distance a thin, blue streak of water which proved to be the sought-for lake. As he passed over an intervening hill upon his sight burst the glorious vision of this magnificent sheet of water, thirty-five miles broad and three hundred and fifty miles long, an inland sea large enough for the stateliest craft and with a surrounding country so fertile that it would, under proper cultivation, yield enough to support a large nation.

On the day following this discovery Burton procured several large canoes in which he skirted the eastern shore of the lake for many miles, and in which he also visited the village of Ujiji, where he saw a large bazaar, chiefly conducted by Arabs, who had found the lake in 1840 and made of Ujiji a principal slave-mart as well as depot.

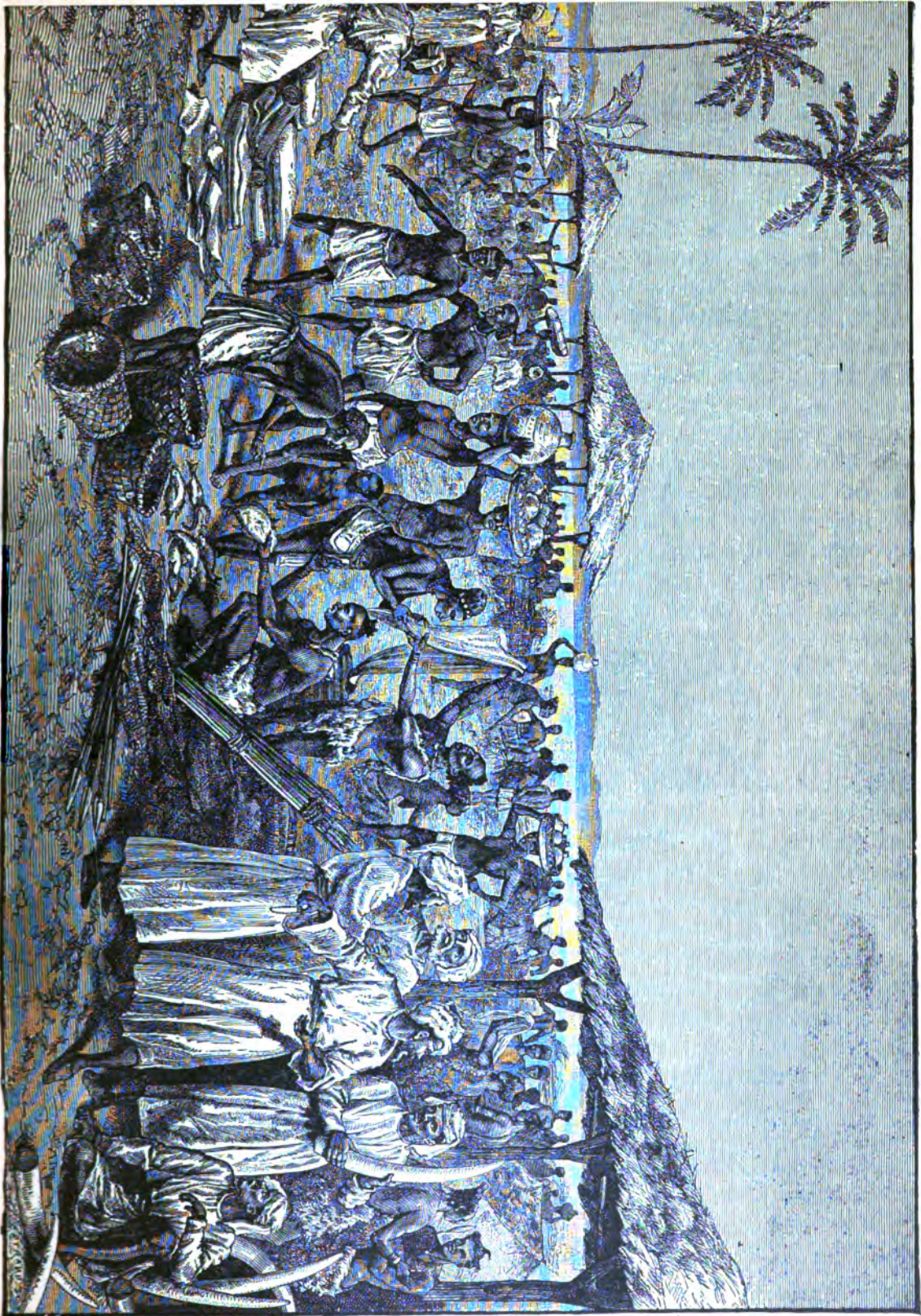
For several days, weeks in fact, Burton interested himself in the fauna as well as ethnology of the country, and reports the region at that time as



THE QUICHOBOS, OR WATER ANTELOPE.

abounding in elephants, restricted to the bamboo jungles, and hyenas and wild dogs, but other game was exceedingly scarce. In the waters of the lake were many hippopotami and crocodiles, and he notes the appearance also of water antelopes, though these were by no means plentiful. This animal is found only occasionally in any part of Africa, its numbers seeming to be quite limited, though its location is not very restricted. It is a creature of singular habits, and of such rarity as to be seldom or never seen in zoological collections. Though not infrequently found browsing like others of the antelope species, it never strays far from water, and the facility with which it swims, dives and remains under the surface indicates that water is almost as much its natural habitat as it is that of the hippopotamus.





MARKET SCENE IN UJJI.



## A WONDERFUL ISLAND.

While at Ujiji, Burton received information of a large river flowing out of Tanganyika to the north—a most improbable story—and concluding that this must be the Nile, he at once set about making preparations for circumnavigating the lake, and particularly making a circuit of its northern shores, to determine the size and course of the outflowing river that had been reported. It was more than a month, however, before he was able to obtain the necessary boats in which to make the voyage, but a dhow and several very large canoes were at length hired and the full strength of the expedition set out on this important mission. After several days' sailing and paddling, and many encounters with opposing natives along the banks, Burton espied a large island in the distance which he resolved to visit, though his guides warned him against so rash an undertaking, declaring that it was peopled by a fierce race of cannibals, who killed and ate every human being that chance or curiosity attracted to its shores. Nevertheless, Burton ordered the boats to proceed to the island, but on nearing this mysterious land he had convincing proofs of the danger encountered in making a landing, both by a positive refusal of his men to approach nearer and the appearance of a horde of yelling savages that came trooping down the shores armed for an attack. Concerning this island Burton writes:

"It is the only island near the centre of the Tanganyika—a long, narrow lump of rock, twenty or twenty-five miles long, by four or five of extreme breadth, with a high longitudinal spine, like a hog's back, falling towards the water—here shelving, there steep, on the sea-side—where it ends in abrupt cliffs, here and there broken by broad or narrow gorges. Green from head to foot, in richness and profuseness of vegetation it equals, and perhaps excels, the shores of the Tanganyika, and in parts it appears carefully cultivated. Marines dare not disembark on Ubwari (the name of this island) except at the principal places; and upon the wooded hill-sides wild men are, or are supposed to be, ever lurking in wait for human prey."

It is interesting in this connection to mention the fact that Joas de Barros, the Portuguese historian, who was governor of Guinea in 1522, describes a vast body of water in Central Africa and a large island therein, as follows: "It is a sea of such magnitude as to be capable of being navigated by many sail; and among the islands in it there is one capable of sending forth an army of 30,000 men." This reference is undoubtedly to Lake Tanganyika and the island of Ubwari, and furnishes another proof of the claim already set forth, that in the earlier centuries Central Africa was better known to the civilized world than it is to-day.

## IN CONTACT WITH THE CANNIBALS.

In skirting the shores of the lake near the north end, Burton came in contact with several tribes of cannibals, the most noteworthy, because most degraded, being the Wabembe, who are guilty of many horribly disgusting



practices. They devour, besides men, whose flesh they prefer raw, all kinds of carrion, vermin, grubs, and insects, although the lands which they occupy are really wondrously prolific even with the smallest cultivation.



FLEEING FROM THE FLAMES.

As Burton came within a few miles of the northern end of the lake he learned, greatly to his chagrin, that there was no outflowing stream, as reported, but that instead the Rusizi river debouched into the lake, as he might have most reasonably expected, especially after seeing so much of the coast, and thus knowing that the lake occupied an immense volcanic depression,

about which the hills rose everywhere fully 2000 feet. His men now became importunate for better pay, while the coast tribes demanded greater tribute, so that circumstances made it advisable for him to return, a little more than one month having been spent in making a lake journey of less than two hundred miles.

#### DISCOVERY OF THE NILE'S SOURCE.

Burton took his departure from Ujiji on the 26th of May and started back over the route he had taken from Zanzibar, but after reaching Unyanyembe he made a detour to avoid some particularly hostile tribes and also with the hope of making other discoveries. Nothing of special importance occurred to the expedition until it reached the ferocious Wavinza country, which is some two hundred miles west of Unyanyembe, where, in addition to the excitement caused by a threatened attack from the Wavinza, a fire was started on the hill-sides where a profusion of dry grasses made the whole country almost a tinder-box. A sheet of flame seemed to dash down the hill-sides with wondrous speed, throwing tongues of flames high into the air, and seizing onto the forest trees climbed to their topmost branches. Many of the porters and slave-musketeers had to flee for their lives, which they saved only by leaping into the Malagarazi river, which fortunately lay very near the route.

Before taking his departure from Ujiji, Captain Speke had obtained Burton's consent to make a journey northward, and this trip, the particulars of which are not recounted by Burton, gave to the expedition a glory and success even exceeding that which was won by the discovery of the Tanganyika lake. As the particulars will be given hereafter, it is only necessary here to say that the result of Capt. Speke's journey northward was the discovery of Lake Victoria N'yanza, the principal source of the Nile. Burton was even savagely jealous of Speke, so that in his large work entitled "The Lake Regions of Central Africa," descriptive of his journey to the Tanganyika, he never mentions the name of Speke except in an occasional foot-note, invariably referring to him as "my companion."

#### BURTON'S JEALOUSY.

When, on the 25th of August, 1858, Speke rejoined Burton and made report of his valuable discovery, the latter received him very coolly and thus ironically describes the event:

"At length my companion had been successful, his 'flying trip' had led him to the northern water, and he had found its dimensions surpassing our most sanguine expectations. We had scarcely breakfasted, however, before he announced to me the startling fact (?) that he had discovered the sources of the White Nile. In was an inspiration, perhaps: the moment he sighted the N'yanza, he felt at once no doubt but that the 'lake at his feet gave birth to that interesting river which had been the subject of so much speculation and the object of so many explorers.' The fortunate discoverer's conviction was





CAPTAIN SPEKE AND HIS BODY-GUARD.



strong; his reasons were weak—were of the category alluded to by the damsel Lucetta when justifying her penchant in favor of the 'lovely gentleman,' Sir Proteus:

" 'I have no other but a woman's reason,  
I think him so because I think him so.

"And probably his sources of the Nile grew in his mind as his Mountains of the Moon had grown under his hand."

A more ungenerous thing could not be done than the penning of such an unjust aspersion; but to make the indignity greater, Burton copies an extract from the Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society in which a Mr. Macqueen undertakes to throw discredit upon Speke's discovery. The facts are briefly these: Burton had been sent out in charge of an expedition that was expected to accomplish great results, as it did. He found the Tanganyika, and in coasting its northern end he heard of another body of water to the north-east which he had a desire to reach, but was deterred from making the attempt by reports of hostile tribes that lay between, and also by the insubordinate porters and guards that accompanied him. Finding his superior wanting in courage to undertake the journey, Capt. Speke asked permission to proceed himself with the small force that he could induce to attend him, and with true heroism he set out and succeeded in making a discovery which at once made his name famous. By this success Burton was eclipsed, and his jealousy was accordingly as insane as it was unforgiving, and prompted him to do an act of rank injustice that has greatly dimmed the lustre of his former reputation.

#### THE VALUE OF BURTON'S DISCOVERIES.

But the importance of Burton's expedition, even excepting the discovery made by Speke, was very great, for besides exploring a considerable extent of country and discovering Lake Tanganyika, much valuable information was obtained respecting the natives of Central Africa. As before stated, no one who has ever penetrated the dark continent was possibly so well adapted by education, experience, hardihood and truly wonderful acquisition of languages—in short, a philologist—for making an expedition into Africa successful, as was Burton. He accordingly furnishes us with an intensely interesting description of the several tribes between Zanzibar and Lake Tanganyika, their dialects, customs, appearance, manners, superstitions; their industries, products, implements, weapons, etc., which no subsequent traveller has improved upon. His history of the slave trade is no less interesting, though it presents some reasons for its extent and continuance, somewhat at variance with other writers. Burton believes that its total suppression is impossible, and also represents the treatment of slaves, both on the route and at Zanzibar, as being not only humane, but even indulgent. He declares that they have a license equal to free men, but which they very frequently requite by the most barbarous acts upon their masters. Says he: "The serviles at Zanzibar have played their Arab masters some



notable tricks. Many a severe lord has perished by the hand of a slave. Several have lost their eyes at the dagger's point during sleep."

Of the slaves born in captivity about Zanzibar he says: "They are treated like one of the family, because the master's comfort depends upon his slaves being contented . . . . The Arabs spoil them by a kinder usage. They seldom punish them, for fear of desertion. Yet the slave, if dissatisfied, silently leaves the house, lets himself to another master, and returns after perhaps two years' absence as if nothing had occurred. Thus he combines the advantages of freedom and slavery."

The most horrible features inseparably connected with the slave trade are those which concern female slaves. These command a higher price than males, for the reasons that they are more valuable for domestic purposes, less liable to desert, and, in shame be it said, they are valued still more highly because they can



AN ARAB SLAVE MASTER.

be put to abominable uses; for these base purposes, however, only the youthful, between the ages of ten and twenty years, are in request. In an equatorial climate females reach their maturity at about the age of thirteen, so that after twenty they begin to age rapidly, and at twenty-five they are what the French call *passé*. A century of the most active civilizing and Christianizing influence will be required to stamp out this evil practice.

On the 4th of March, 1859, Burton reached Zanzibar, and on the 22d he sailed for England, leaving to Capt. Speke a more important result in a subsequent undertaking, the accomplishment of which will form the subject matter of the next chapter.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### CAPTAIN J. H. SPEKE'S EXPLORATIONS.



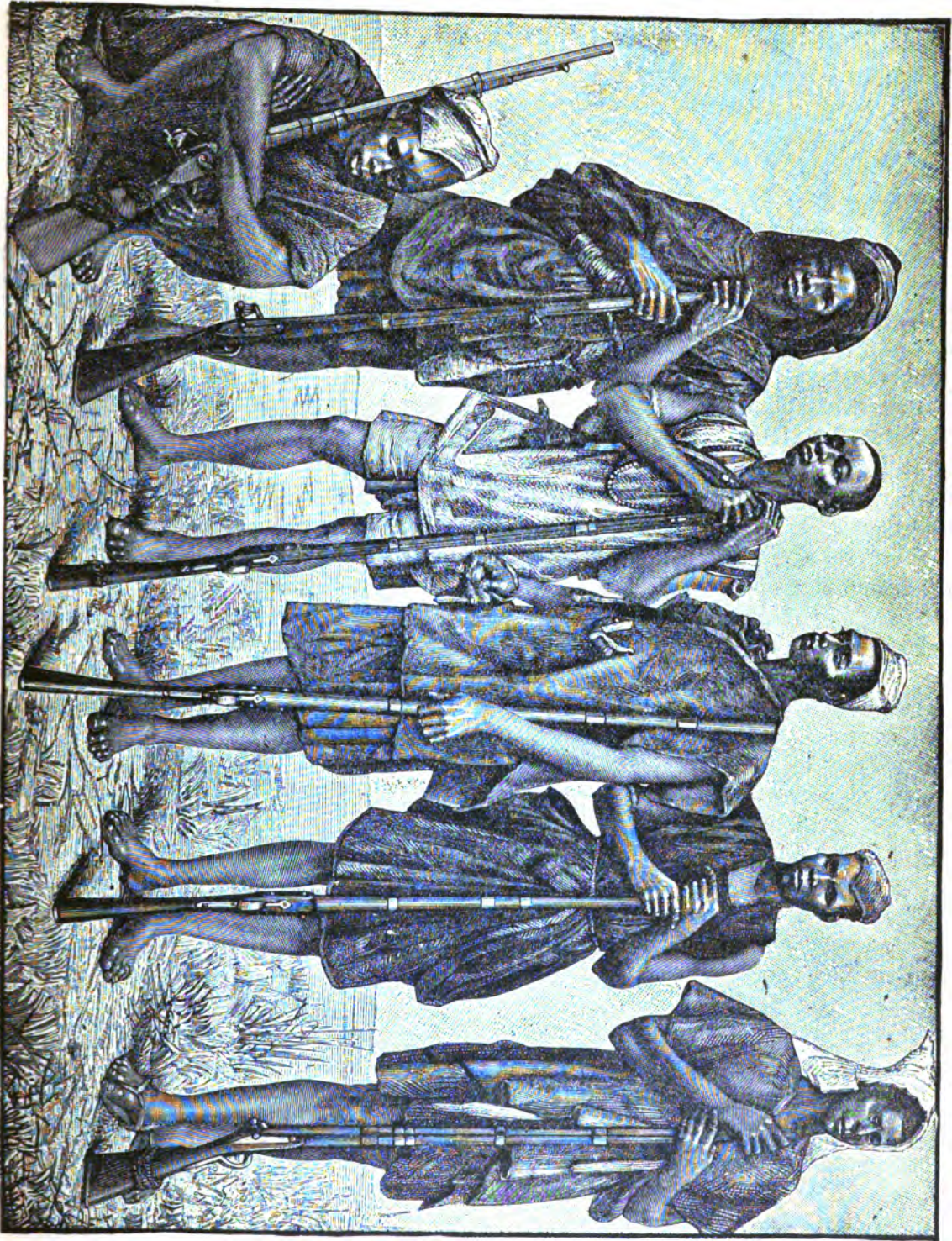
**S**CARCELY had Speke reached England, with Burton, when he began most industriously the enlistment of public sympathy, as well as the active interest of members of the Geographical Society, in behalf of his project for making a third expedition, which would definitely determine and satisfy all the world that the Victoria N'yanza Lake, which he had discovered on the 30th of July, 1858, was indeed the Nile's true source. As before mentioned, his claims to this honor had been violently disputed by Burton, who, besides throwing reflections upon his geographical astuteness (pardon the expression), had also laid against him, in several magazine articles, the charge of visionary enthusiasm. To reinstate himself in public estimation, and particularly to win the confidence of members composing the Geographical Society, Captain Speke delivered a series of lectures before that body, in which he gave a report of his surveys and his many reasons for declaring that the Nile had its source in Lake Victoria.

So well did Speke acquit himself, and so specious was the presentation of his project for making good his discovery, by showing a connection between the Nile and the lake, that a council of the Society was held, at which, by the motion of Sir Robert Murchison, it was decided to assist him in forming another expedition. A vote was accordingly taken upon the amount the Society would expend for the purpose, and \$12,000 were contributed; but nine months elapsed before the appropriation was made available. Besides this assistance, however, the Indian branch of the government aided him by a contribution of fifty artillery carbines with sword bayonets, 20,000 rounds of ammunition, all the surveying instruments that were needed, and a large assortment of articles, among them several gold watches for the Arab chiefs who had assisted him in the former expedition. Captain J. W. Grant, a brother officer in the Indian Service, who had before made a considerable exploration of Australia, asked and received permission to join the expedition, and was placed second in command to Speke. Shortly after this appointment was made, the Cape Parliament voted a further appropriation of \$1500 in aid of the expedition, so that means were thus provided for the amplest provision of everything needful to make it a success.

#### CAPTURE OF A SPANISH SLAVER.

Speke and Grant left London April 27th, 1860, and arriving at Cape Town July 4th, made a stay there of twelve days to enlist some Hottentots and





SPRUE AND GRANT SOLDIERS.

engage mules, so that it was not until August 17th that they cast anchor at Zanzibar. The latter part of the trip was enlivened by an exciting incident attending the capture of a Spanish slaver that, being laden with five hundred and forty-four newly-captured slaves, was en route for Havana. Our travellers were on board the English steam corvette *Brisk*, the officers of which, seeing the suspicious stranger, immediately put out in pursuit, and, as she was a slow sailer, soon overhauled her. Upon going on board, they found the slaves to be mostly women and children, who had been captured during war in their own country and sold to Arabs, who brought them to the coast and kept them half-starved until the slaver arrived. They were then brought off in dhows to the Spanish vessel, where for nearly a week they had been kept, while the bargaining was in progress, entirely without food. All over the slaver, but more especially below, old women, stark naked, were dying in the most loathsome atmosphere, while those that had any strength left were pulling up the hatches and tearing at the salt fish below.

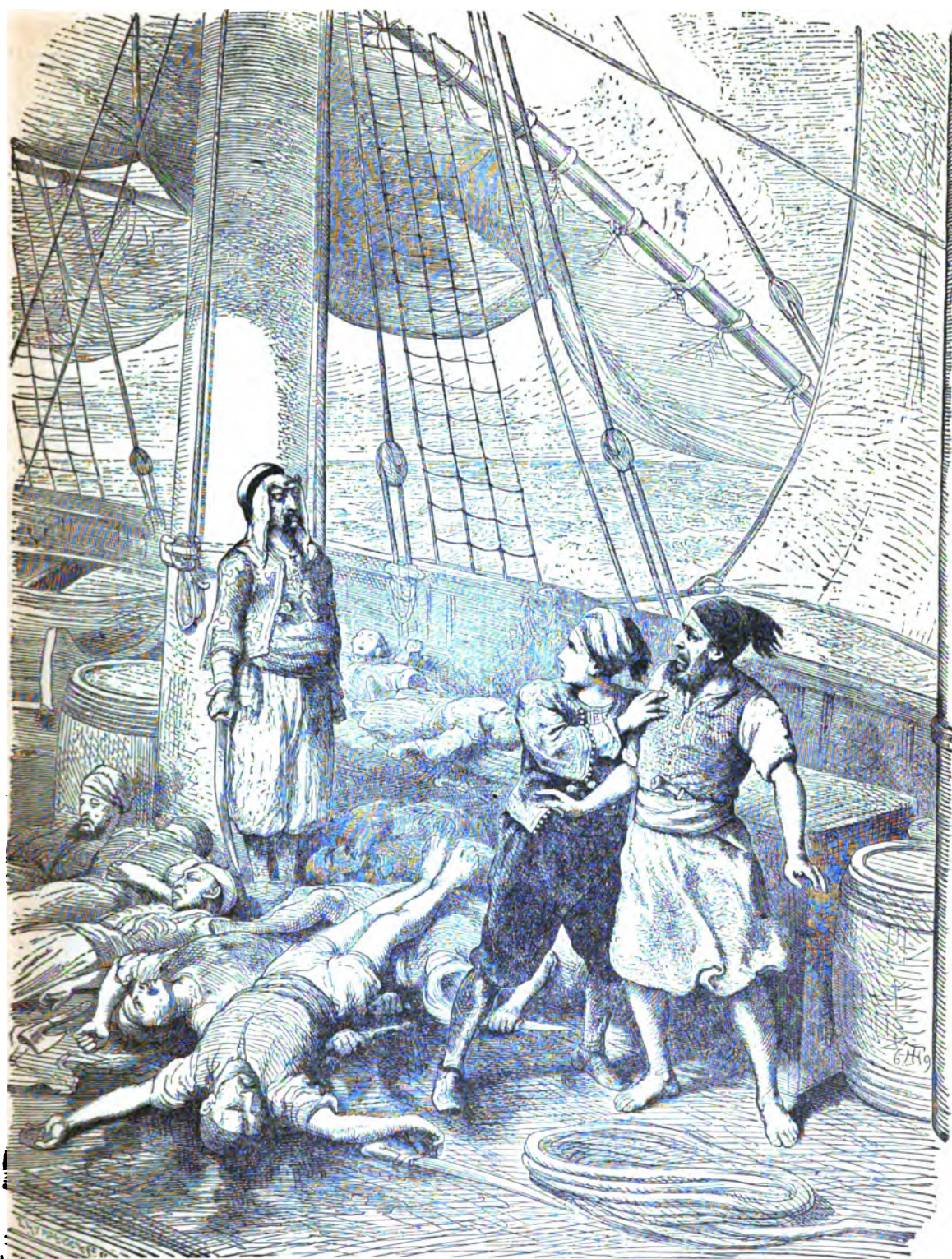
The officers of the slaver were taken as prisoners back to Zanzibar, and their miserable captives liberated. It is doubtful if they were punished, as immunity was generally given such violators of the severe law against enslavement, through Arabic and Egyptian connivance at the infamous traffic, on which account lynch law was thereafter not infrequently resorted to against those found spiriting away unfortunate Africans. Many tales are told of slavers being caught, with heavy cargoes of negroes, who were treated as pirates and massacred on the spot, the captain sometimes being killed and his head nailed to the mast, or the vessel scuttled with the crew imprisoned in the hatches, after the slaves were liberated.

On the 21st of September, Speke's expedition left Zanzibar and crossed over to Bagamoyo, from which point, after securing the necessary porters and supplies, the march was begun for Victoria N'yanza.

#### A RHINOCEROS HUNT.

Nothing of special importance occurred until the expedition had proceeded over two hundred miles, and had reached the western borders of Ugogo, at which point eight of the porters deserted, taking with them as many mules laden with stores. This untoward event caused a delay of one day, to give opportunity for pursuit of the deserters, which time Speke and Grant further improved by going upon a rhinoceros hunt, the region being a favorite haunt for that large and dangerous game. Night being the most favorable time for such an enterprise, the hunters started out at 10 P. M. for the lagoons, accompanied by a guide and two boys carrying rifles. It was midnight before a position was obtained; but scarcely had Speke halted in a desirable place on the border of a lagoon before a gigantic beast loomed up before the rising moon, making his way leisurely toward the water. Our hunter crawled after the huge game until he was within a distance of eighty yards and in full view, when, with a well-directed shot, he killed the rhinoceros in its tracks,—



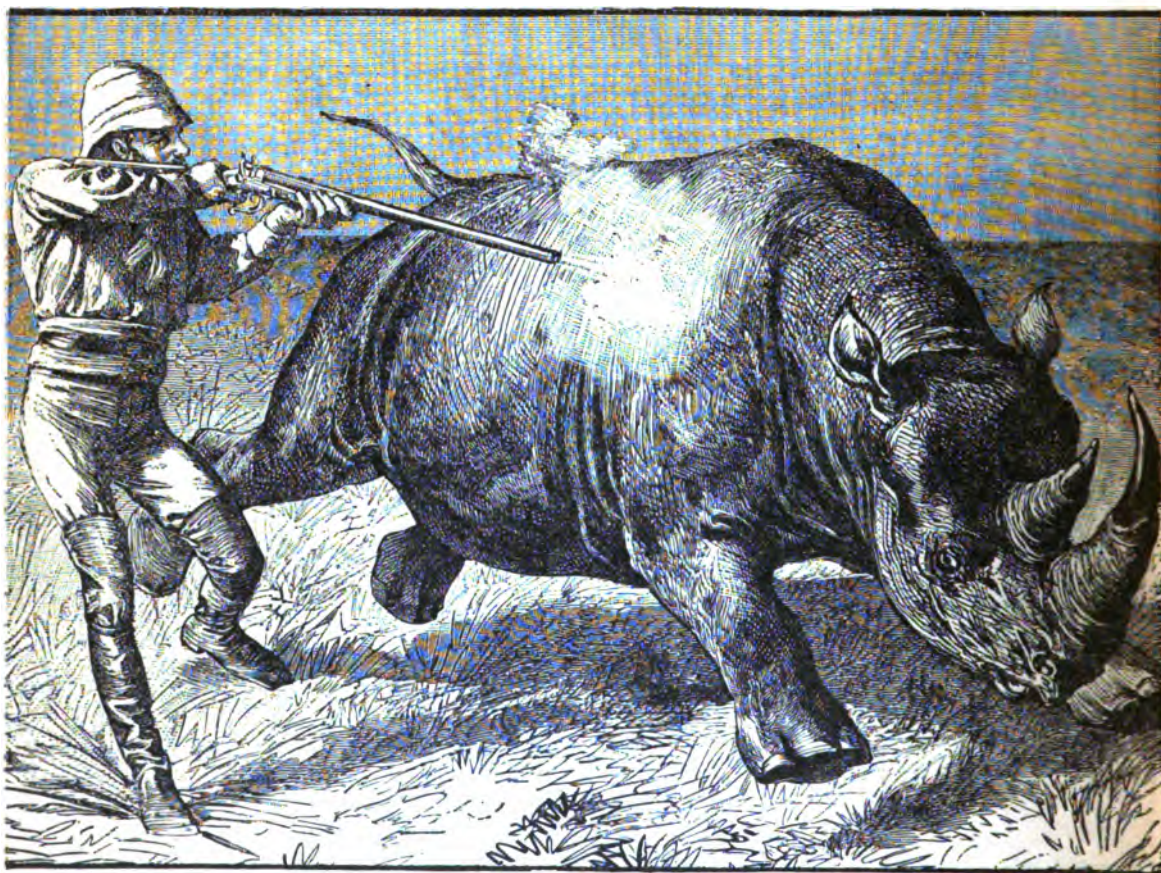


HORRIBLE EXECUTION OF A SLAVER'S CREW.



a thing which has very rarely been done, on account of the animal's great vitality and its armor-like skin, which will deflect a bullet if struck obliquely.

Two hours later Speke saw two more rhinoceri approaching, at which he obtained a shot, as they came thundering by him, but with no other apparent execution than to bring one of them around with a loud "whoof-whoof," a sound very similar to that produced by a hog when alarmed. Another shot might have been secured had not the boys who attended Speke, carrying spare rifles, taken fright and ran away for the nearest tree.



A RHINOCEROS HUNT.

This ended the night's hunt, and early the next morning the men in camp were apprised of the result and sent out to bring in the meat. Before Speke's men could reach the carcass, however, the native Wagogo had assembled about it, and were tearing out and devouring, raw, the intestines. All fell to work with knives in a contest as to who should secure the most, and a savagely disgusting scene was the result. The men disputed and wrestled in the filth of the distributed remains until not a vestige was left on the ground; their bodies being covered with blood as they bore away tripe, liver, intestines, or more substantial parts, all eating as they ran.



## A BUFFALO HUNT.

The mules that had been taken by the deserter were recovered, and the expedition started on its way again, but nearly every day thereafter others deserted, until the 7th of November another halt of several days became necessary to give time to send to a sheik some miles beyond for additional recruits. This period of waiting was employed in another hunt, in which the game sought for was buffaloes, great numbers of which roamed the deep forests and grassy plains thereabouts.

Directly after starting upon this hunt Speke came most unexpectedly upon a two-horned rhinoceros that was quietly feeding, though hardly five paces



A TOSS IN THE AIR.

distant, and before it took alarm he gave it a deadly shot. This was an auspicious beginning, though the end came nearly terminating with a double tragedy. A mile from the place where the rhinoceros was killed Speke discovered a herd of buffalo feeding in the tall grass on the borders of a dense wood. He approached so near and kept himself so well hidden from their view that he succeeded in killing four of them before they took alarm. The herd now scattered somewhat in their fright, and one, a large bull, turned and came directly towards Speke, catching one of the guides, who stood in the advance, and tossed him with a savage fury horrible to behold; a shot disposed of him, most fortunately, before he could complete his vengeance; but another



bull as madly tore after one of the gun-bearers and came fairly upon him as the nimble boy swung himself out of reach upon the bough of a tree. Circumvented by this escape, the bull bore down upon Speke, who had but a single



THE BUFFALO TURNS HUNTER.

shot left in the gun he carried, and was within a yard of the hunter before he could fire. Good fortune also attended this shot, for the bull's neck was broken by the bullet. This exceedingly narrow escape was succeeded almost instantly by a charge from yet another bull that had been wounded by Grant. Speke had just picked up a gun dropped by the nimble carrier, who now sat secure on a bough, when down upon him rushed the mad charger. Speke stepped behind a small knoll and fired at his infuriated antagonist, but without effect.

The shot, together with the heavy cloud of smoke from the discharge, confused the bull, so that, with a loud snort, he turned and made off into the woods, to the inexpressible delight of the now defenceless hunter.



## BETWEEN TWO FIRES.

On the 23d of November, Unyanyembe was reached, which Speke designates as the Land of the Moon. Up to this time the desertions had continued almost daily, until his force had been reduced to less than one-half its original strength; fifteen mules and donkeys had died, and more than one-half the property had been stolen. In addition to these losses, the travelling expenses had been extraordinary, on account of a famine which then prevailed along nearly the entire route. To add still further to his distresses, after leaving Unyanyembe, a deposed native chief, named Manua Sera, famous for his strategy and daring, and who had inaugurated a fierce war against the Arabs, obtained an interview with Speke, in which he sought to secure the active help of the explorer against his enemies. To have refused the request would have been to invite the hostility of this fierce guerilla, while to have consented would have been equally disastrous. He therefore made some specious excuses for delaying immediate action, particularly asking for time to recruit his greatly reduced force. While thus parleying, the Arabs reached the country in pursuit of Manua Sera, and these in turn requested the aid of Speke. He again made acceptable excuses, holding out, of course, the hope that he would join the Arabs when additional porters, who had already been engaged, should overtake him.

After passing Masange and Zimbili, Speke put up one night in the village of Iviri, on the northern border of Unyanyembe, and found several officers there, sent by Mkisiwa, to enforce a levy of soldiers to take the field with the Arabs of Kaze against Manua Sera; to effect which, they walked about ringing bells, and bawling out that if a certain percentage of all the inhabitants did not muster, the village chief would be seized, and their plantations confiscated. Speke's men all mutinied here for increase of ration allowances. To purchase food, he had given them all one necklace of beads each per diem since leaving Kaze, in lieu of cloth, which had heretofore been served out as currency. It was a very liberal allowance, because the Arabs never gave more than one necklace to every three men, and that, too, of inferior quality to what Speke gave. He brought them to at last by starvation, and then went on. Dipping down into a valley between two clusters of granitic hills, beautifully clothed with trees and grass, studded here and there with rich plantations, they entered the district of Usagari, and on the second day forded the Gombe Nullah again—in its upper course, called Kuale. Here Captain Speke met with a chief whose wife was an old friend, formerly a waiting-maid at Ungugu, whom he had met on a previous expedition. Her husband, the chief, was then absent, engaged in war with a neighbor, so the queen gave Speke such assistance as enabled him to avoid joining either the Arabs or Manua Sera, without inciting their hostility.

## A VISIT TO KING RUMANIKA.

The route was now northward, Speke having left the highway to Tanganyika Lake at Kaze, in the Unyanyembe country, going directly toward Victoari N'yanza (the word *nyanza* means *lake*), which he hoped to reach before the wet season had fairly set in.

In the latter part of November, 1861, considerably more than one year after leaving Zanzibar, the expedition had accomplished less than one thousand miles, being constantly harassed and delayed by opposing tribes, desertions,



NATURE IN THE JUNGLE.

famine and the wars which were waging all along the route. At length, however, the Karague country was reached, a fine region, watered and drained by the Kitangula River into the Victoria Lake. In this rich district Speke met and was entertained by King Rumanika, whom he found to be a most intelligent savage, anxious to gain all information obtainable about the world beyond his own realm. It was at this court, where Speke was graciously received,



that he saw the fatted wives of the king and his brothers, and learned of the custom, which there obtained, of forcing the royal women to drink immoderate quantities of milk until they became too corpulent even to stand upright.

Though Rumanika was an unusually sensible savage, and most kind-hearted as well as progressive, he was no less superstitious than his subjects, or other African barbarians,—perhaps his superstitions were assumed for a purpose,—for among no other people or chiefs did Speke find so many ridiculous beliefs prevalent, or where the rain-makers were so influential. Rumanika claimed to have acquired the throne by miracle, and his hold upon the crown, despite the opposition of his brother Rogero, he also pretended was through the most potential agency and assistance of a spiritual force.

With all his superstitions and pretended supernatural powers, Rumanika received Speke and Grant at his palace, in the most graceful manner, and begged of them to bestow upon him knowledge which even the spirits who attended him could not give. In every respect the explorers were treated most graciously, the best of everything that the country afforded being freely offered and all assistance requested placed at their command.

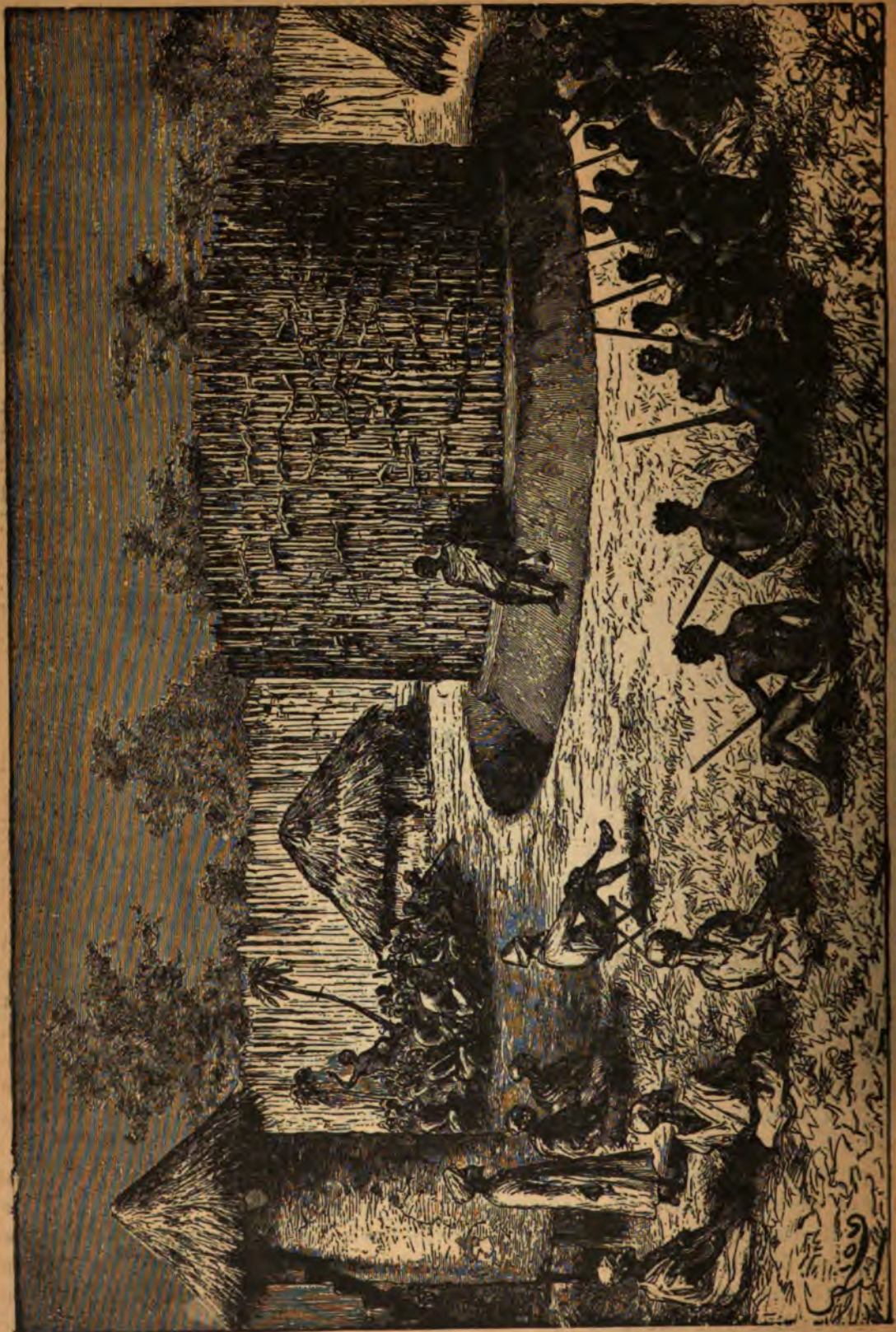
Speke and Grant had several audiences with Rumanika in his hut palace, and when at length they decided to proceed on their journey the king sent his messengers to M'tesa, King of Uganda, to apprise that monarch of an intended visit from the two explorers, begging him to receive them kindly.

#### A GRANDLY SUCCESSFUL HUNT.

On the 9th of December, before leaving the Karague country, Captain Speke, learning that the immediate district in which he was encamped abounded with rhinoceri, took two attendants and posted to the foot-hills about Little Windermere lake. Taking up a position in a thicket of acacia shrubs, he sent the men out to beat the brush toward him. In a few minutes a large male rhinoceros came lumbering through the brush until he was within a few yards of the concealed hunter, who delivered a broadside from his Blissett rifle, which sent the huge beast off in a trot toward the beaters; but after going a short distance it fell and was quickly disposed of by another shot. The natives then came running up to Speke, surprised beyond measure at what they saw, for they did not believe that a rhinoceros could be killed by shooting with a rifle. Among those who assembled to view the dead beast was a native who exhibited frightful scars on his abdomen and shoulder, which he declared were the result of a wound he had received by a rhinoceros thrusting its horn through his body.

Just at this time a cry went up from several beaters that another rhinoceros was near, concealed in a thicket. Speke at once set off to find it. He travelled as rapidly as possible along a path made by the animals, with his two gun bearers directly in the rear. Suddenly he was confronted by a full grown female, with her young one close behind, which came "whoof-whoofing" toward him. To escape and shoot at the same time, he was compelled to push to one





AFRICA BEFORE KING EDWARD VII.



side in the prickly acacias, and as the huge beast approached he fired at her head; the bullet only served to divert her course, for she received no perceptible injury. She broke away from the brush into an open, with Speke following. He fired again, but the animal kept on and took to the hills, crossed over a spur and entered another thicket. The hunter kept up the pursuit, but as he came to the head of a glen he was greatly astonished to find three more



A WAHUMA VILLAGE.

rhinoceri, all of which charged towards him. Fortunately his gun bearers were at his heels and he was thus enabled to shoot all three of the brutes; one of them dropped dead, but the other two kept on down the glen, though one had its leg broken. The wounded one was given over to the natives, but so savage were its charges that another shot was necessary before the negroes could dispatch it with their spears and arrows.



## THE COURT OF M'TESA—HORRIBLE SCENES.

The country of the Wahuma lies north-east, but adjoining that of Karague, and is bordered on the south by Lake Victoria. At the time of Speke's visit it was ruled over by a king called M'tesa, who has since died. This African monarch was the most powerful that reigned in the central regions, and though he became greatly attached to the English, and gave encouragement as well as protection to missions that were afterwards established, his cruelty and barbarity were absolutely horrifying. He exacted the most servile homage from his subjects and punished with torture and death the slightest infractions of his punctilious rules. No one was allowed to approach him except in a grovelling attitude, and in his presence a wonderful circumspection had to be observed or death was the punishment. Even his many wives were required to be no less critical in their conduct, so that executions were daily events, so common indeed that little or no attention was attracted by them. His harem was kept



M'TESA'S CRUELTY TO HIS ATTENDANTS.

replenished by the payment of fines in the form of young virgins, while fathers, to obtain the royal favor, gave their young daughters to feed the lascivious appetite of this royal beast. In case such gifts came after pre-

vious usage—the virginity being doubtful—the giver was tortured to death. And when the king became tired of any of his wives, or the number became too great for his convenience, he ordered their execution, or if enraged, he inflicted the death penalty himself. His murderous propensity is well illustrated by the incident that when Speke presented his high blackness with a rifle, the royal ruffian had it loaded and ordered his messenger to shoot a subject, merely to see, as he explained, if the gun would do what was claimed for it.

Although his savageness was almost inconceivably great, M'tesa received Speke and Grant with a favor quite as flattering as did Rumanika, and insisted on their assuming the most intimate relations with him. He went out daily with the explorers to see them shoot, in which he took an intense delight, and for a long while regarded them as magicians having the power



to perform anything that they might have a mind to do; thus he both feared and admired, which gave them immunity from his wild passions and secured a bestowal of his most generous favors.

To have the two travellers constantly near him, M'tesa ordered a splendid hut erected beside the palace, and paid the most deferential attention to their



GRANT ON HIS WAY TO UGANDA.

wants. Besides meat from his cattle, milk, fruits, etc., were ordered to be given them in the most liberal quantities; the king sent them, also, pots of fresh pombe—banana wine—every day, and personally seeing to it that such as was furnished came from his own store, which was always of considerable age, and therefore esteemed as being more palatable, as are all wines.



•During the first several weeks of Speke's stay at Uganda, Grant was sick at the court of Rumanika, and had instructions to keep such stores by him as he might presently require, but to come on to Uganda as soon as his health would permit. It was a low fever from which he suffered, and which confined him to his bed much longer than had been expected. Becoming, at length, anxious about his companion, Speke wrote to Grant imploring him to come on as soon as he felt himself able to endure the motion of a litter; upon receiving which, despite his utter prostration, Grant determined to proceed at once. Accordingly, he had his stores arranged in packs, and through Rumanika, who never relaxed his kindness, porters were engaged and the very sick man started for Uganda, being carried by two stalwart men. The journey was an extremely



A LEVEE IN UGANDA.

painful one to Grant, but he heroically continued on and at length arrived at M'tesa's capital in even a little improved condition, and his recovery was rapid thereafter.

#### SACRIFICING A CHILD.

After Grant's arrival the king decided upon holding a levee in honor of his new guest, at which the drinking of pombe and some shocking exhibitions of female nakedness constituted a principal feature, and at which the king was highly entertained by an examination of Grant's sketches. On the following day, at M'tesa's request, the two travellers were at the palace and witnessed the ceremony of the royal espousal of four virgins who had been presented at court by their sisters, who were already wives of the king. At an announcement



made by an old woman, the four candidates passed before M'tesa and sat down at the rear of the palace, whereupon the potentate crossed over to them, and going from one to another he sat down in the lap of each and bestowed upon them in succession several vigorous hugs, at the same time crossing his neck both to the left and right with that of each of the girls, after which he retired again and the four virgins assumed their positions among the three hundred other wives. On this same day Speke says he heard the lamentations of four women as they were being led from the palace to execution. The new had thus replaced the old.

A few days before the departure of Speke and Grant from M'tesa's palace, one of his officers, K'yengo, informed them that, considering the surprising events which had lately occurred at court, the king, being anxious to pry into the future, had resolved upon a very strange measure for accomplishing that end. This was the sacrifice of a child by cooking, and K'yengo was detailed to perform the barbarous ceremony, which is described as follows: The doctor places a large earthen vessel, half full of water, over a fire, and over its mouth a grating of sticks, whereon he lays a small child and a fowl side by side, and covers them over with a second large earthen vessel, just like the first, only inverted, to keep the steam in, when he sets fire below, cooks for a certain period of time, and then looks to see if his victims are still living or dead. If dead, as they usually are, the omen is considered propitious, and the king at once proceeds upon whatever enterprise he may have been contemplating.

After nearly three months spent with M'tesa, Speke and Grant prepared to leave Uganda for the Lake Victoria, an event which both the king and his visitors alike regretted, for notwithstanding his incredible cruelties to his subjects, he was really obsequious in his attentions to his distinguished guests, who hoped, through the great influence which they exerted over him, to induce him to abandon his inhuman practices. In this hope they so signally failed that on the very day of their departure one of the monster's wives passed Speke and Grant with her hands clasped at the back of her head and crying in a most pitiful manner. She was preceded by the executioner, who was not permitted to touch her. She loved to obey her king and husband, and in consequence of her loving attachment she was permitted, as a mark of distinction, to walk unattended to the place of her death.

#### ON THE BANKS OF VICTORIA LAKE.

On the 7th of July, 1862, Speke and Grant took their leave of M'tesa and his kingdom and started upon a journey to the eastward, with the hope and expectation of striking an outlet of Lake Victoria, in which anticipation they were not disappointed. The route, however, was beset by many obstacles, chief of which were hostile tribes that harassed the expedition almost constantly, though M'tesa had sent several guards with the travellers. It was therefore soon decided to divide the expedition, Grant being ordered to proceed at once to Kamrasi, a king ruling Unyoro, which was also a large and very fertile terri-

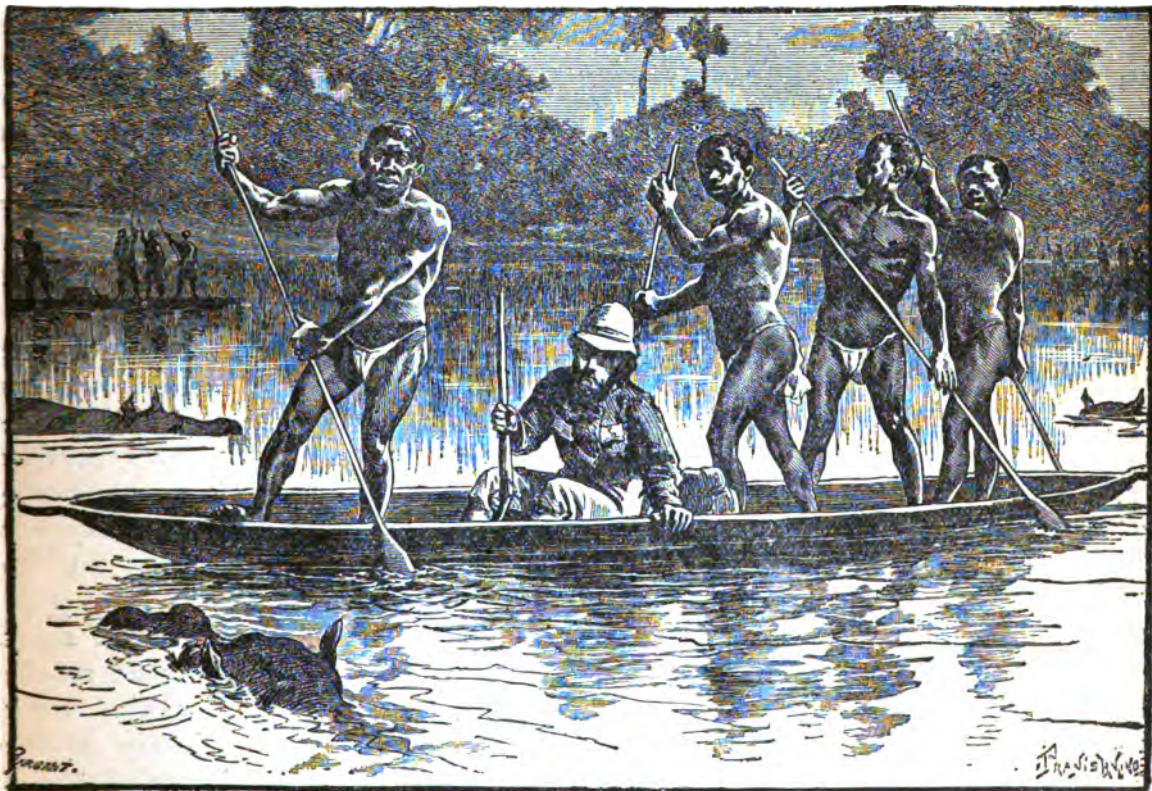




SPRUE'S BOAT CREW ALARMED.



tory, whose capital was due north of Uganda, but whose kingdom extended also south to Lake Victoria, taking in the district of Usoga, which is a dependency. Messengers had previously been sent to apprise Kamrasi of the white men's intended visit, and replies were received from the king indicating his pleasure at their coming, so that with M'tesa's commendation it was believed the Unyoro potentate would furnish the expedition with whatever assistance might be required. Grant accordingly turned west to join the high road to Kamrasi's, while Speke proceeded east to Urongani, which is on the western border of Usoga, a magnificent country abounding with large game. On the 21st he reached his destination, and to his joy found it to be situated on a large stream of quite seven hundred yards wide and flowing towards the north.



SPEKE CIRCUMNAVIGATING LAKE VICTORIA.

After a day's delay at Urongani, in the absence of boats Speke followed up the stream about fifty miles, and to his infinite delight came upon Victoria Lake at Ripon Falls, thus, upon the assumption that the river he had thus found was indeed the Nile, proving beyond a doubt that its source was in this great lake. At Ripon Falls, Speke procured several canoes, intending to have a sail along at least a portion of its shores, but a native canoe filled with warriors sounded alarm drums and soon assembled a large force to oppose the expedition, which numbered only twenty men. Speke tried to conciliate the hostiles by offers of beads, rings and cloths, but these were rejected and an



attack was made. Speke's men acted in the most cowardly manner, so that all the defence fell upon himself, but after killing three of the attacking party they withdrew, and he continued around the lake for several miles, or until indeed he considered half its circumnavigation accomplished.



THE SAVAGE TREE-DWELLERS OF UNYORO.

#### HUNTING IN USOGA.

The Usoga country abounded with such splendid game that Speke could not resist the temptation to bag a few fine specimens, so deciding to return to Urondogani, he made the trip a hunting excursion. Many elephants are usually found in this district, but the ivory hunters had passed through it a short while before Speke's visit, so that nearly all the elephants had been driven out. But several species of antelope were plentiful and many were killed, while Bombay, Speke's servant, amused himself shooting crocodiles as they lay sunning themselves on the river's bank.

After a pleasant march of ten days Speke reached Urondogani again, where he was graciously received by Chief Mlondo, who, to give his white visitor an interesting entertainment, invited him to witness the execution of four women who had just been con-

demned, assuring Speke that the event would furnish "a deal of fun." Such amusement not being relishable by civilized tastes, Speke left two days later, August 13th, for Kamrasi's palace, proceeding down the Nile in canoes which Mlondo had kindly provided. But the natives were so hostile upon reaching Kamrasi's territory, while Speke's men were so cowardly on the



water, that the river route was soon abandoned and the journey had to be made thenceforth on land.

After several days' march, it was learned that Grant had been refused admittance to Unyoro, and had therefore started back to Uganda. Speke, upon learning this bad news, hurried forward, dispatching messengers in advance until he came up with Grant and heard from his lips the reasons Kamrasi had for repulsing him. It was found, by reports from the natives, that this inhospitable reception was due to a belief that the white men were cannibals, able to eat all the subjects of Unyoro and to drink up all the waters; that Speke and Grant each carried two white dwarfs on their shoulders, sitting straddle-legs, back to back, and who upon being given the order fly off to eat the people. Other superstitions prevailed, for instance, that in this country were horned dogs, while savage men and all celibates had their habitations in the trees, so that Grant's men had reason to feel a fear for these strange creatures equal to that felt by Kamrasi for the white men.



SPEKE'S LAST CONFERENCE WITH KAMRASI.

It very fortunately happened soon after the reunion of Speke and Grant that Kidgwigia, an old friend of Kamrasi's, who had met the expedition at M'tesa's palace, learned of their inability to enter Unyoro, so he took it upon himself to act as ambassador to secure their reception by the king, in which kindly office he succeeded so admirably that the expedition marched through the country without meeting any obstacles, and they were at length permitted to approach his suspicious and superstitious highness, Kamrasi.

#### EXASPERATING ACTIONS OF THE KING.

The difficulties encountered by the explorers in reaching Kamrasi were very small as compared with the obstacles which were interposed to prevent their departure. After being permitted to come within an hour's march of the palace they were forbidden to approach nearer until the king could consult his magic horn, and through this species of divination determine if the visitors were friendly disposed. Three days were thus idly spent, but they were more



agreeable than the fourteen days that succeeded the first meeting with the king, as he proved to be a greedy, quizzical, exacting and autocratic potentate, giving his visitors nothing but pombe while demanding almost every article in the possession of Speke and Grant in return. A very large number of presents were given to allay his importunate requests, but he still cried for more, and in the hope of obtaining everything that pleased his omnivorous fancy, he refused the explorers permission to depart. After exhausting every subterfuge to gain Kamrasi's consent to proceed, Speke and Grant at length took a bold measure to frighten the obstinate king into giving them permission to take their leave, and on November 9th, 1862, they obtained canoes and



SAVING THE LIFE OF A SERVANT

drifted down the Kafue river, on which Kamrasi's palace was temporarily located. This river is also an outlet of Lake Victoria, flowing northward until it empties into the White Nile, some ten miles north of Kamrasi's palace. It was therefore Speke's ambition to follow down the river as far as navigation would permit, hoping to be thus brought to a large lake of which he had heard much as lying a hundred miles to the northwest. This

lake was called by the natives *Luta Nziga*, but which Speke thought must be a low basin, only flooded by back-water of the rising Nile.

As the expedition proceeded down the river many strange sights met their gaze; hippopotami were frequently seen, and crocodiles lined the shores, while buffaloes, antelopes, and occasionally an elephant, enlivened the scene. Floating on the surface were many islands composed of matted reeds so compactly interwoven by the action of the current that cattle could walk upon them without sinking through. The Nile here broadened out to a thousand yards in width, its banks being thickly populated with Kadi and Wanyoro people, who lived in small grass huts and were chiefly engaged in fishing by means of nets.

#### FALSE REPORT OF A RELIEF EXPEDITION.

Before leaving Kamrasi's, Speke learned, with that indefiniteness which characterized all reports made by the natives or Arabs, that the British Consul



at Khartoum, Mr. Petherick, had become somewhat alarmed for the fate of the expedition, and was then moving southward with the hope of furnishing aid, should he find the explorers in distress. This news prompted Speke to hurry forward to a meeting with the Consul, and thus relieve the anxiety that was reported. At the request of the Governor in the district of Karuma Falls, the canoes were abandoned and the expedition proceeded



BUFFALO HUNTING IN THE MADI COUNTRY.

over land, soon after coming upon the falls, which he found to be a gorge some two hundred yards wide through lofty hills, the waters being broken by large stones, but with a current not more than twenty miles an hour, as the fall was only ten feet.

On the 3d of December, at Faloro, Speke descried the outposts of an approaching caravan, which he believed to be Petherick's, but, upon meeting, found it was a party of slave and ivory hunters, under command of a very

black man, named Mohamed, who was gaily dressed in Egyptian regimentals. This Turk confirmed the report of Petherick's approach and offered Speke any assistance required, but his proffers were made for a rascally purpose, as was afterwards proved.

Speke felt certain, however, that Petherick was at Gondokoro, and, despite Mohamed's declaration to the contrary, hoping to lead him off in another direction, to a point much nearer, where he represented the Consul to be, the expedition was ordered to push on through the Madi country, direct for Gondokoro. Mohamed, seeing his ruse fail, next represented the great danger of passing through the Bari country with such a force as was then at Speke's command, and begging him to wait a few days and he would join him on the march, thus making their combined force too strong for the Bari to oppose. He thus cunningly induced Speke to remain behind and guard his stores while he made a raid upon the natives. Upon his return he still asked for further delay, until at length Speke, exasperated at the trick that had been played, resumed the march.

On the 13th of January, Speke again came in sight of the Nile at Paira, where he was overtaken by an advance body of the Turks, who pillaged the helpless villagers so remorselessly that the poor natives were left in utter destitution. To relieve their very pressing wants, Speke and Grant went upon a buffalo hunt, in which they killed several of this splendid game, and gave the flesh to the starving natives, who were most profuse with their expressions of thankfulness.

#### ARRIVAL AT GONDOKORO.

After spending two days in hunting, Speke was joined by the rear detachment of Turks, headed by Mohamed, and the entire body now moved on again, meeting with no other obstacles, though great fear was felt of the Bari, who are both numerous and courageous, and bitterly resist nearly all attempts to cross their territory. At length, on the 15th of February, 1863, the expedition marched into Gondokoro. Speke at once walked down among the shipping that lined the Nile's shore in search of Petherick, but had proceeded only a short distance when he beheld an Englishman approaching, and in glad transports they rushed toward each other. Speke's surprise was overwhelming at finding that instead of Petherick, the white man proved to be his old friend Sir Samuel Baker, who, with his wife, was then on his way also in search of the Nile's source. The two had a joyous interchange of information, and a sociable entertainment which lasted three days, at the end of which time Speke and Grant departed for home, via Alexandria, while Baker and his plucky wife continued on their journey to Central Africa.

On his return to England Speke was awarded the "founder's medal" for the discovery of the Victoria N'yanza in 1858, a gratification peculiarly great after the discredit thrown upon his claim by Burton. He did not live long to enjoy his honors, however, for on the 15th of September, 1864, he was killed by the accidental discharge of his gun while hunting on the heaths of England.



## CHAPTER IX.

### BAKER'S EXPEDITION TO THE NILE'S SOURCE.



ALMOST coincident with the departure of Speke and Grant from Zanzibar for the Victoria N'yanza, Sir Samuel White Baker set out from England with the purpose of discovering the Nile's source. Baker was almost as well qualified for such an undertaking as Burton, whom he resembled in many respects. Being a man of large private fortune, he had indulged his propensity for travel and adventure, having roamed over a great part of India and Ceylon in pursuit of tigers, elephants and other large game, of which he had killed great numbers. In addition to this preparatory course of training for rougher adventure he had familiarized himself with several tongues, and among others the Arabic language, which he acquired with great facility after reaching Berber in 1861.

Most singular fact, he selected as a companion in this perilous enterprise no other than his wife, a woman of great refinement and used all her life to the comforts and luxuries such as wealth supplied in her English home; but she was a woman of extraordinary courage and indomitable energy, and so devoted to her heroic husband that no dangers could deter her when by his side. She therefore elected to bear him company through all his perils and triumphs, and thus proved herself a second Mrs. Livingstone.

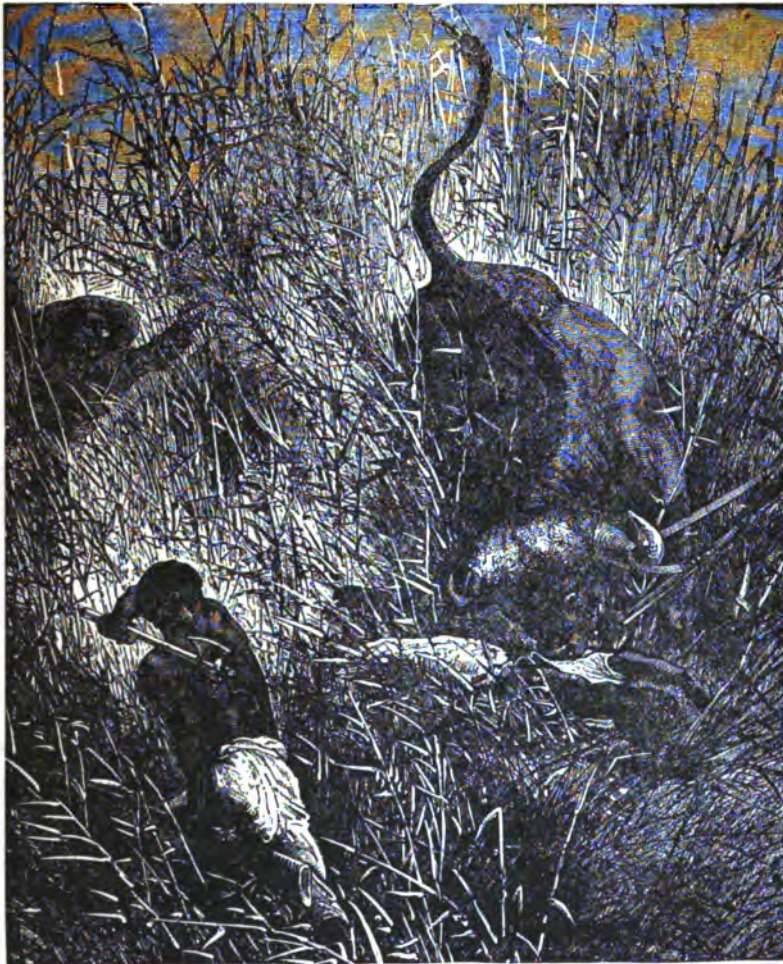
Baker's stay in Berber was prolonged far beyond his expectations, because of the difficulties met with in enlisting and organizing a necessary force of men, which indeed he did not obtain until he had reached Khartoum, so that it was December of 1862 before he finally set out upon his tropical journey in a flotilla of boats.

A few weeks after his departure from Khartoum one of his most serviceable men, a German named John Schmidt, fell ill of a fever and died directly, while a few days later one of the arms-bearers, a courageous Nubian, was killed in a buffalo hunt by one of the wounded animals tossing and goring him to death. These two fatalities, occurring so shortly after the expedition had started, gave Baker much dread, who feared that so inauspicious a beginning would result in a like evil ending, but his wife cheered him with many encouraging words, and his melancholy soon ended, the last feelings of sombre anticipations fleeing before an exciting contest that he witnessed January 15th between his men and a monster hippopotamus which they had lassoed, much to their

regret soon after, when it came near destroying the boat, and would have done so had not Baker come to the rescue and killed it.

#### THROUGH THE HAUNTS OF CROCODILES.

The boats made fair progress until within fifty miles of Gondokoro, when the river became so shallow and the reeds so numerous that it was impossible to proceed further by oar or sail, so men had to be sent out with long ropes and drag the boats through, which made a most tediously slow progress, but



BUFFALO KILLING BAKER'S ARMS-BEARER.

afforded Baker some excellent sport shooting hippopotami and crocodiles, the latter being particularly plentiful. It also gave him opportunity to converse with the natives, and to familiarize himself with their manners and customs. In this way he came in contact with the Kytch, the Aliabs and the Shir tribes, who occupy the territory bordering the Nile between Khartoum and Gondokoro.

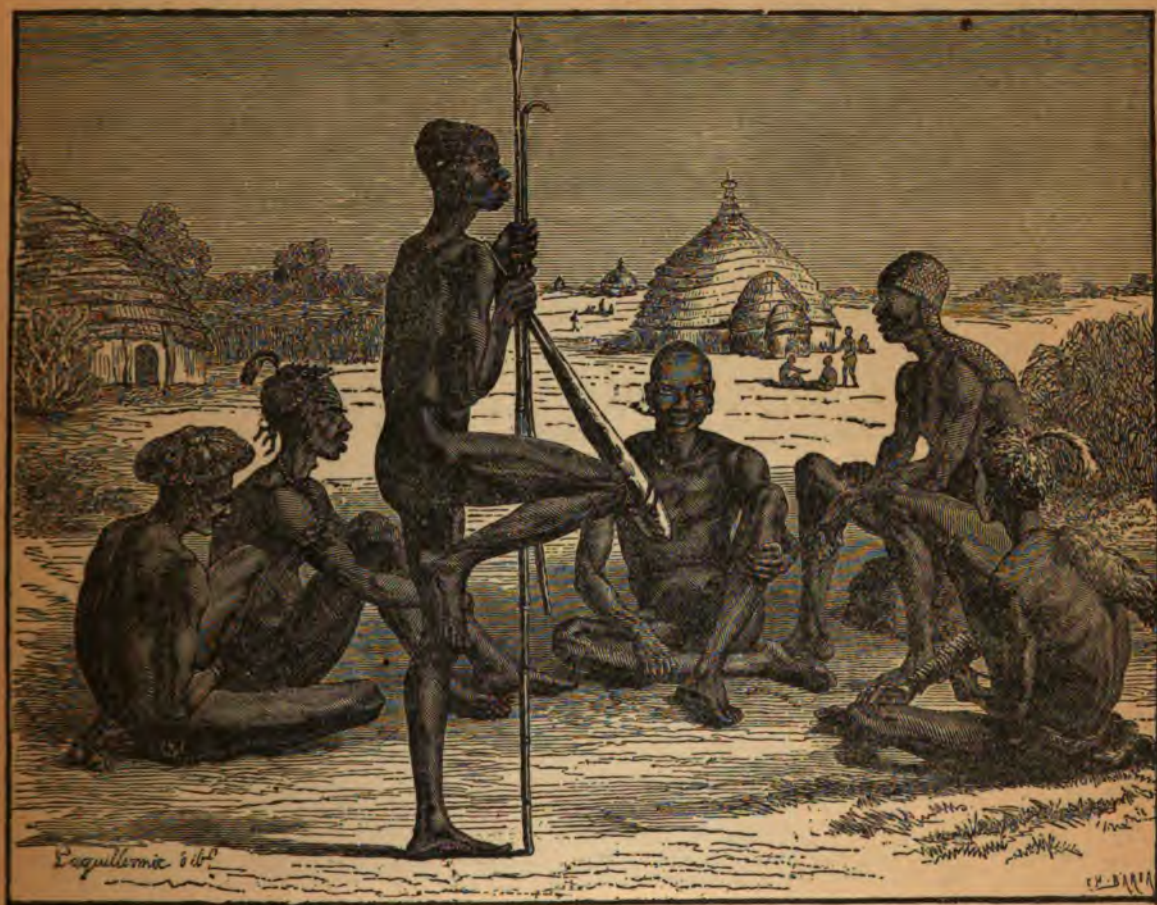
Owing to the obstacles which intervened, it was the first of February before Baker reached Gondokoro, and when at length he arrived at that miserable post his reception was most unfavorable. This place was the principal Central African station of the

slave trade, and, as might be supposed, its population was composed of the most vicious elements that characterize such an unholy traffic. There were no habitations except miserable little grass huts and the ruins of an Austrian mission, but these had to serve as shelter for Baker and his wife for a considerable while, as he awaited the return of a Turkish trader whom he hoped to accompany on the return trip to the mid interior. While waiting here his men mutinied and sought his life, but were repulsed by his courageous onslaught



upon the leader, whom he brought into subjection by a blow that laid him helpless.

Two days after this event Baker had the inexpressible joy of meeting with Grant and Speke, as already described, from whom he received maps of the country and a great deal of information of the utmost value. Mohamed, the Turkish commander who had come into Gondokoro with Speke and Grant, was the trader that Baker had been expecting, and as it required only a short while for the Turk to dispose of his ivory and slaves, he was soon ready to



A SHIR VILLAGE.

return, so that Baker made preparations for an immediate departure. But at the last moment another mutiny took place which so seriously threatened Baker's life, while the Turk showed his sympathies with the mutineers so openly, that no other alternative remained but for Baker to discharge his men and protract his stay at Gondokoro until a more favorable opportunity, and thus it was that he was delayed until another season.

Six months after this second mutinous attempt by men whom he had already paid the wages of a year's service, Baker succeeded in engaging a small force



of Latooka natives, with which he started on his land journey for the Central lake basin.

#### AN ELEPHANT HUNT.

Baker had the good fortune to win the friendship of another Turk, named Ibrahim, who had made up a cavalcade to go into the Latooka country for ivory, and by accompanying him made himself secure against the possible attacks of the hostile natives. Together they travelled over the route, a distance of one hundred miles, which it took a month to cover. Arriving at



BAKER QUIETING THE MUTINY.

length at the principal village of the Latookas, Baker had to go into camp and remain several weeks to wait the coming of some porters whom he had sent back to Gondokoro for ammunition. To utilize the time he therefore decided to go on an elephant hunt, as many signs of their presence were observable within a short distance of the village. Accordingly, with a good guide and a few servants to carry the guns, he set out, and coming to a plain covered with long rich grasses, he was suddenly startled by a rhinoceros bolting out of a copse close to his horse's head, and plunging into another before he could seize his gun. He would have followed had not his attention been called away



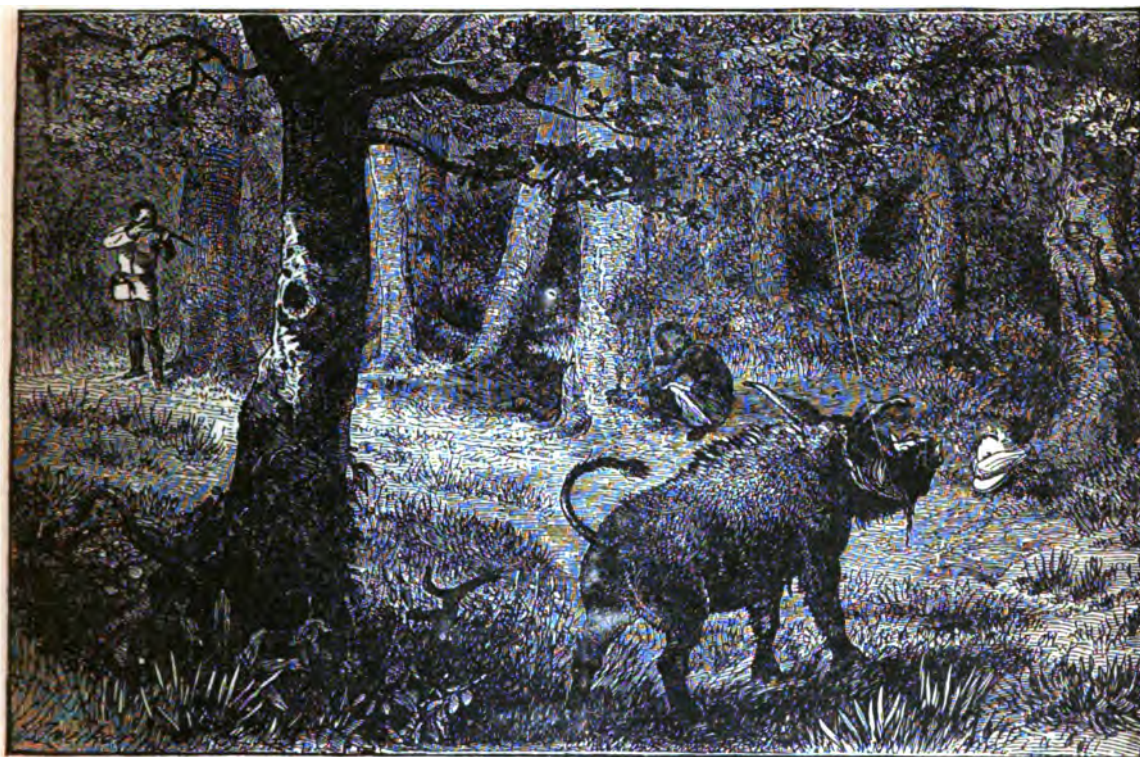
by a shout from his servants, who reported a herd of large bull elephants browsing in a forest at the edge of the plain. Stopping short to locate the herd, he was delighted to see two large bulls bearing down toward him, less than one hundred yards distant. He dismounted to get a steady shot, but the elephants saw the Latookas and, taking fright, rushed off to join the main herd, only a short distance away. Baker soon mounted and dashed towards the elephants, but his horse stepped into a buffalo hole and fell hard on his leg. He fortunately extricated himself without difficulty, and, mounting another horse, rode at full speed toward the fugitive game, which had gained considerable distance and disappeared in the wood. After a quarter of an hour of hard riding he saw an enormous bull ploughing through the brush like an immense engine, tearing down everything in his way. The country was unfavorable for the hunter, on account of buffalo holes, and though approaching within twenty yards, he was unable to get a fair shot. Away they flew over ruts and gullies until the ponderous brute was chased to another open plain, when a ball was planted in his shoulder; though badly struck, the elephant did not alter his course or speed until another shot was put close to the first one. The animal now slackened, then turned about and made straight for his assailant, screaming like an infuriated demon. Baker put spurs to his horse, having urgent business in another vicinity, and as he was not pursued more than a hundred yards, made his escape. He prepared for another attack by taking a larger gun and starting after the wounded beast, but had gone less than a dozen yards when he saw a closely packed herd of eighteen elephants coming directly toward him; but as soon as they discovered him they broke off in another direction. In the herd he noticed an uncommonly large bull that was armed with an immense and beautiful pair of tusks; this one he determined to cut out from the others, and by shouting succeeded in scattering them; he now rode for the chosen one, but the elephant, seeing himself pursued, turned and charged so determinedly upon his assailant that his escape appeared for a time impossible; fortunately, again the elephant stopped, almost at the moment that he might have caught the bold hunter, and entered a thicket where a horse could not well follow. Baker went into the woods to find the herd again, and soon came upon the one he had wounded. It was standing in a painful attitude as if upon the very point of dissolution, but the moment its fiery eyes rested upon the hunter the maddened beast charged him again; another shot brought the elephant to his knees, but he rallied quickly, and lifting his great trunk and screaming with rage, he rushed after Baker, whose horse was now badly jaded. The race this time was more exciting than before, for, instead of stopping after a short run, the elephant kept its swift pace and followed for more than a mile, all the while gradually gaining, until the distance between pursued and pursuer was not more than ten yards, while the horse was nearly ready to fall from exhaustion. The cowardly servants, who were also mounted upon horses, were so mindful of



DISGUSTING SCENE OVER AN ELEPHANT'S CARCASS.



their own safety that they made no effort to divert the attention of the elephant, but ran as swiftly and as far away as possible. Baker was almost upon the point of despair; he knew that the climax must soon be reached, which would be hastened should his horse fall. In a moment of desperation he turned his horse aside, like a hare doubling on the dogs, just in time to feel the swish of the elephant's trunk as it grazed him, but the momentum of the great brute carried him by. Seeing his enemy now running in a new direction, the elephant broke off up hill, and on the following morning was found dead in a jungle not far distant from where he had abandoned the pursuit. The huge carcass was quickly attacked by the natives and their dogs,



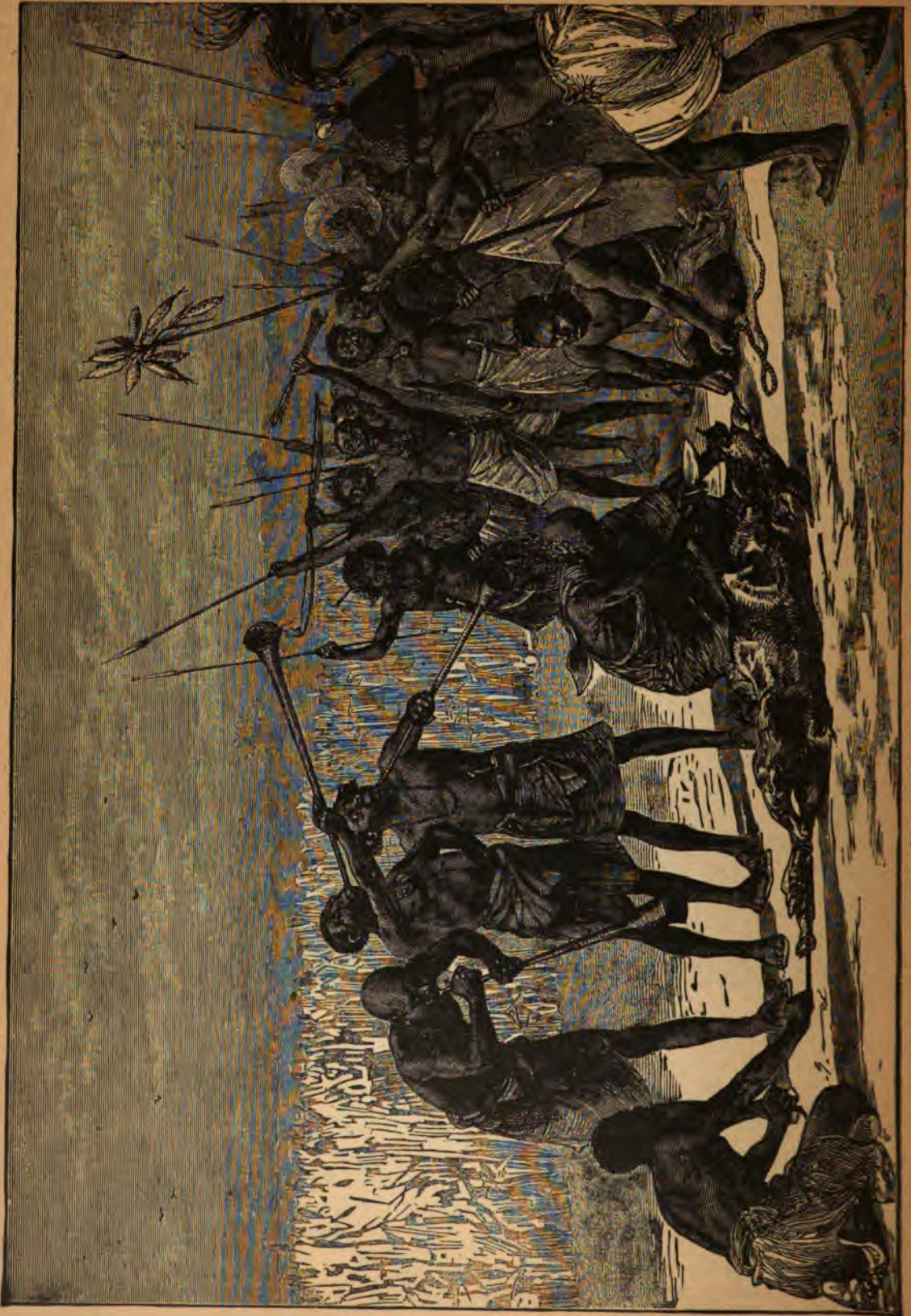
DISPATCHING A VICIOUS BOAR.

and a truly savage and disgusting scene followed as they cut into the body, and soon were waist deep in the flesh and filth.

#### DETENTION GIVES OPPORTUNITY FOR MORE HUNTING.

The rainy season was now at its height, so that, even after the receipt of additional supplies, the expedition was unable to move further than forty miles, to the Asua river, which was now so swollen as to prevent a crossing; and, after a pleasant visit to Chief Katchiba, Baker returned to Latooka to await the return of the dry season. The country was very rich and game abundant, so that the delay afforded him excellent opportunities for indulging his passion for hunting. He killed several monster elephants, and met the lordly wild boar, which also haunted this delightful region; but they were not nearly so





BAKER'S SATANIC GUARD PROVIDING A FEAST.



numerous as the elephants, though the latter were more persistently hunted by the natives, on account of the damage they did to their growing crops. On one occasion, Baker fired the grass, expecting to drive out a herd of elephants; but finding none, was about to give up the hunt, when a large wild boar and sow sprang out of a hole directly in the path, the former charging him in the most vicious manner. The first rush being avoided, the boar turned to renew the attack just as Baker, by good fortune, shot it through the brain; but he failed to bag the sow, as it made off into the grass.

It was not until the following January, 1865, that Baker made another effort to proceed southward, at which time he secured the company of Ibrahim again. They met with no further detentions, and in due time reached Karuma falls, in Kamrasi's country, where they were most hospitably received by the old king, though they were not permitted to see him at once.

#### A DEVILISH GUARD.

After Baker received permission to enter the presence of Kamrasi, he was still treated with an affected suspicion, and was unable to secure the guides and porters that he needed on the journey to the lake he had set out to find. Three weeks passed without anything being done, Kamrasi all the while promising to give what was required on the "morrow," but really only holding the expedition to give him more time for begging everything that Baker possessed. At length, being exasperated by the king's excuses, Baker took heroic measures for securing the aid needed, and obtained an escort of about fifty of the most horrible-looking natives that the imagination can conceive. They were dressed in monkey and leopard skins, with antelope horns on their heads and cows' tails dangling behind, while from their chins there were suspended the bushy ends of cows' tails sewed together.

The expedition now moved up the Kafue river, but at a slow pace, on account of the shallowness of the stream, and also because of the dangerous illness of Mrs. Baker. But after a weary march of one month from Kamrasi's palace, Baker was brought to the banks of the Luta Nziga, and thus to a glad realization of his ambitious dream. It was the lake so often spoken of in story and legend, the true source of that wondrous river, the Nile, which so many had earnestly tried to explore for more than twenty centuries, but always with disappointment. In honor of the queen's consort, Baker called the lake Albert N'yanza, by which it is now known; and upon his return to England he was knighted for the discovery, while all geographers have since made the source of the Nile the twin lakes, the Victoria and Albert N'yanza.

Baker only coasted the Albert lake for a distance of one hundred miles, and then prepared at once to return home, taking his route overland to Gondokoro instead of following down the Nile, as he should have done. The return journey occupied almost a year, so that it was September, 1866, before he reached England and made his report to the Royal Geographical Society, which immediately awarded him the Victoria medal, as it had Speke, both sharing equally the honor of discovering the Nile's source.

## CHAPTER X.

### BAKER'S EFFORTS TO SUPPRESS THE SLAVE TRADE.



LITTLE more than one year after Baker's return to England, he published a book descriptive of his travels in Africa, giving not only the results of his private expedition, but also his experience with the slave-traders, the horrors of the traffic in human beings, and his views as to the best means for its suppression. To re-enforce his observations were many letters from other African explorers, including Speke, Burton, Grant and Livingstone, in all of which the horrifying cruelties of the slave-traders were pictured in such heart-appealing aspect that the popular feeling in England was intensely excited. All the world seemed to at once demand a suppression of the inhuman practices that characterized the kidnappers who afflicted Africa with unutterable woe. The Prince of Wales threw his active sympathies with the people, and made a trip to Egypt to seek a conference with Ismail, the Khedive. An audience was obtained, at which the prince plainly told the Khedive that the infamous slave trade had to be suppressed, either by the Egyptian government or some other power, intimating that England herself would see to it that the traffic was abolished. The Khedive, though undoubtedly profiting by the nefarious trade, appeared to be in sympathy with the general desire, and promised to exert his power to effect its accomplishment. Preliminary thereto, he accordingly annexed all the Soudan, in order to bring that immense district, in which the enslavement of the natives by Turks and Arabs was most common, directly under his rule. To make his pretence the more plausible, he sent for Sir Samuel Baker, and, after a protracted interview, placed him in command of an expedition which should be dispatched to the Nile basin for the single purpose of arresting all the slave-traders found therein, and also to establish, fortify and garrison posts throughout the district that would secure protection to the natives against all further prosecution of the slave traffic.

The appointment of Baker, with almost autocratic power to enforce the severest penalties against dealers in human beings in Central Africa, was the first pronounced action ever taken by the Egyptian government in this direction, and which, with Baker's failure to effect radical results, has since been continued under General Gordon, who perished at Khartoum, and his successor, Emin Bey, who still holds the governorship of the Soudan and the equatorial regions, as will hereafter be described.





HORRORS OF THE SLAVE TRADE. RESULT OF AN ABAB RAZZIA.

## THE APPOINTMENT OF BAKER'S EXPEDITION.

The expedition fitted out by the Egyptian government under Baker's instructions was certainly most imposing, involving, as it did, an enormous expense of treasure and a large contingent of men. Among other things that had been provided with such a liberal hand, were three steamers and two life-boats, specially built in England with the view of navigating the Nile. These vessels were fitted with engines of the best construction, and were built in sections to make them easy of transport across the Nubian desert, or by places in the river not navigable.

In addition to the steamers were steam saw mills, with a boiler that weighed eight hundred pounds in one piece—all of which would have to be transported by camels for several hundred miles across the Nubian desert, and by boats and camels alternately from Alexandria to Gondokoro, a distance of about three thousand miles.

The English party accompanying the expedition consisted of Sir Samuel Baker and his courageous wife; Lieutenant Julian A. Baker, R. N.; Edward Higginbotham, civil engineer; Mr. Wood, secretary; Dr. Joseph Gedge, physician; Mr. Marcopolo, chief store-keeper and interpreter; Mr. McWilliam, chief engineer of steamers; Mr. Jarvis, chief shipwright; together with Messrs. Whitfield, Samson, Hitchman and Ramsdell. Forty-five thousand dollars were expended in stores, calculated to last the expedition for four years.

Six steamers, varying from forty to eighty horse-power, were ordered to leave Cairo in June, together with fifteen sloops and fifteen diahbeeahs—total, thirty-six vessels—to ascend the cataracts of the Nile to Khartoum, a distance by river of about one thousand four hundred and fifty miles. These vessels were to convey the whole of the merchandise.

Twenty-five vessels were ordered to be in readiness at Khartoum, together with three steamers. The Governor-General (Djiaffer Pasha) was to provide these vessels by a certain date, together with the camels and horses necessary for the land transport.

Thus, when the fleet should arrive at Khartoum from Cairo, the total force of vessels would be nine steamers and fifty-five sailing vessels, the latter averaging about fifty tons each.

The military arrangements comprised a force of one thousand six hundred and forty-five troops, including a corps of two hundred irregular cavalry and two batteries of artillery. The infantry were two regiments, supposed to be well selected. The black or Soudani regiment included many officers and men who had served for some years in Mexico with the French army under Marshal Bazaine. The Egyptian regiment turned out to be for the most part convicted felons who had been transported for various crimes from Egypt to the Soudan.

The artillery were rifled mountain guns of bronze, the barrel weighing two hundred and thirty pounds, and throwing shells of eight and a quarter pounds. The authorities at Woolwich had kindly supplied the expedition with two





EDWIN HIGGINBOTTOM.

LIEUT. COL. ABD EL-KADER.

SIR SAMUEL WHITE BAKER.

LIEUTENANT BAKER.



hundred Hale's rockets, three pounders, and fifty Snider rifles, together with fifty thousand rounds of Snider ammunition. The military force and supplies were to be massed in Khartoum ready to meet Baker on his arrival.



A CROCODILE CARVING OFF ONE OF BAKER'S MEN.

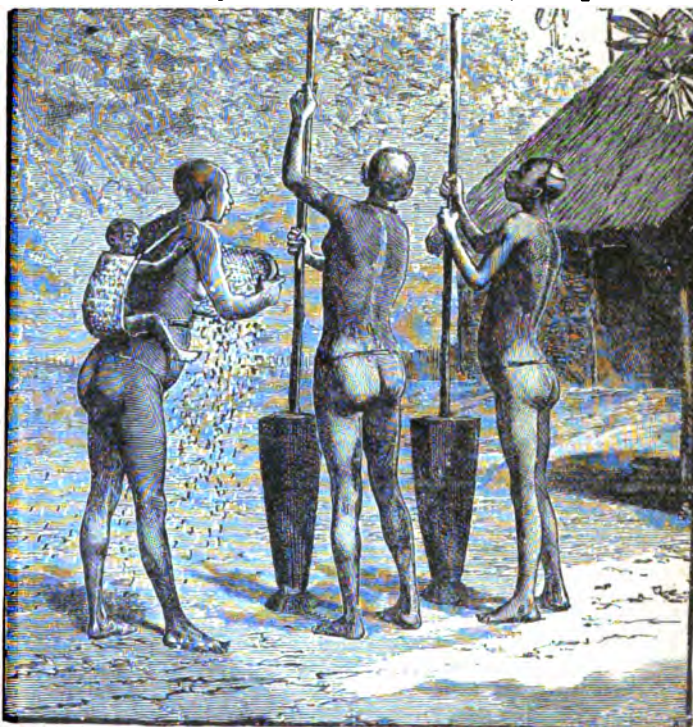
This imposing army and flotilla left Suez on August 29th, 1869, and proceeded on to Souakim, where, after a week's delay, camels were obtained to carry



the expedition across the desert, two hundred and seventy-five miles, to Berber. Reaching this place, another fleet of thirty-three vessels of fifty and sixty tons burden was built, which carried the expedition to Gondokoro, one thousand four hundred and fifty miles from Berber.

The trip to Gondokoro was full of incidents. The start was made in the latter part of February, with so many sail-boats that the Nile was covered, apparently, for miles, as boat straggled behind boat, strung out until those in front could not be seen by those in the rear.

One of the first incidents that befell the expedition was the upsetting of a canoe and the seizing of one of the men by a crocodile, which, despite the shouting and splashing of his companions, and the killing of another crocodile that had joined in the attack, carried him under the water and made away with the victim. Succeeding this tragedy a few days later, was an attack made on the flag steamer by a monster hippopotamus, which smashed her starboard paddle-wheel and cut through the iron plates of the companion boat so that it came near sinking. The boats were thus compelled to lay by for repairs, which time Baker improved by firing at the enemy, which repeatedly returned to the attack and was not finally dispatched until a dozen balls had been fired into its head.



SHILLOOK WOMEN POUNDING MAIZE.

#### SHOOTING GAME AND LIBERATING SLAVES.

The start for Gondokoro had been made at a very inopportune time, for the Nile was already falling and progress must be necessarily slow, as some of the boats drew more than four feet of water. After proceeding one-half the distance, the vegetation so obstructed the river that it was impossible to proceed further, and a retreat had to be made back to the Shillook country, and there wait until the November inundation.

The water was soon receding so rapidly that the boats had to be pulled by a thousand men across the vegetable obstructions; in fact it became almost dry-land steamboating, for every few miles the cables were run out and a long double line of men would seize them and force the boats across the barriers high and dry into water again. Mr. and Mrs. Baker whiled away the tedium



of the journey by shooting, every day killing hippopotami, crocodiles, antelopes, geese and ducks, so that an abundance of fresh meat was always available. Mrs. Baker was as keen a lover of hunting as her husband, and was almost as good a shot, while her powers of endurance and courage were phenomenal.

As the expedition approached the Shillook country, Baker was astounded to find that the Governor of Fashoda was engaged in the capture of slaves. This discovery was made by accident. Baker saw an old man seated on the bank, who had apparently escaped from some bad master and who told of his captivity and efforts to escape back to his people. The Governor of Fashoda had been pretending, for years, that he was violently opposed to slave hunting



A BARI VILLAGE.

and that no slave traders could cross his country. He was taken by surprise, and in his pens were discovered a large number of women and little children, whose village he had a few days before destroyed and taken them into captivity, after killing all but ten of the men. Baker set the poor people at liberty and reported the Governor to the Khedive for punishment.

The boats were put into harbor and a town was begun, which, in honor of Ismail's youngest son, was called Tewfikéyah. Here workshops, steam saw-mills and huts soon dotted the formerly barren ground. Boats were constructed to take the place of several that had been badly demoralized, gardens were planted and the hum of industry was heard on every side.

The Shillooks were scrupulously honest, and soon a thriving trade was



opened between the natives and members of the expedition, which continued several months and until the river had risen sufficiently to admit a departure of the boats. During this interval, Baker devoted his time in directing affairs at the station and in hunting, the country being fairly alive with large game, including ostriches, several of which wary birds he succeeded in killing. The crocodiles that infested the reed-covered shores were a constant source of danger both to men and beasts that had to approach the water, while occasionally hippopotami indulged their ferocious instincts. Baker reports that he witnessed the killing of a blind sheik by a hippopotamus while he was crossing the river with a companion in an ambatch boat. The animal arose under their frail bark and, without provocation seized both the boat and sheik in its enormous jaws and crushing them so that the boat was cut into pieces, while the poor man soon died of his wounds.

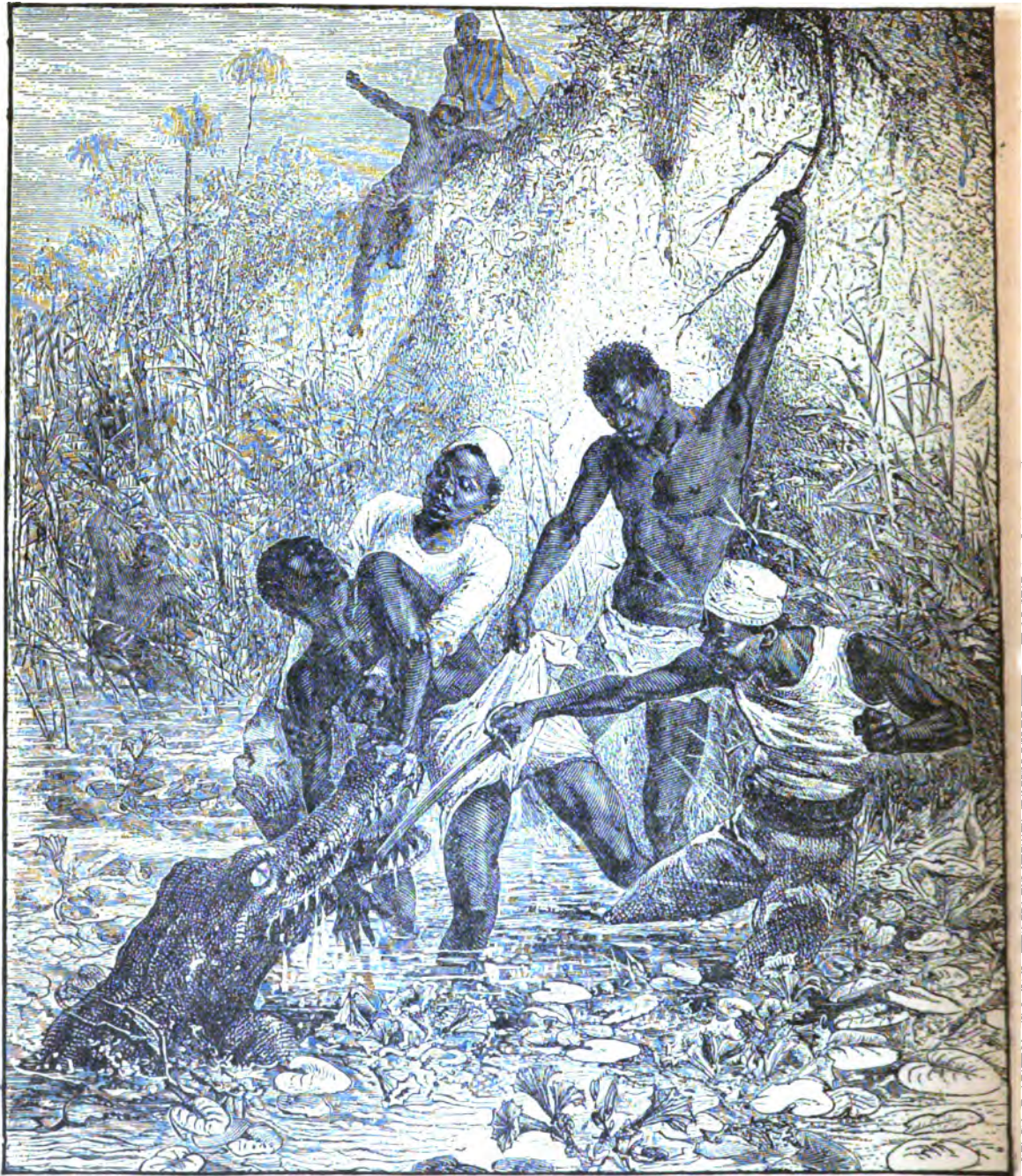
Shortly before the time fixed for his departure, a sail was reported coming down the river, which was hauled to at the station and discovered to be laden with 184 women, boys and girls, who had been captured and packed away under a quantity of corn to avoid discovery. These Baker liberated and sent the captain in irons to Cairo, while he confiscated the vessel as a slaver and took it to Khartoum.

#### A FIGHT WITH THE BARIS AND CROCODILES.

After an exceedingly hard voyage of five months and twenty-two days the expedition reached Gondokoro, which had been selected as headquarters, from which forays into the further interior might be conducted with base for supplies easily accessible. On account of the miserable huts which composed the town, substantial building had to be erected in which to store provisions and ammunition, so that a considerable time intervened before the expedition could proceed further. The Baris, who composed the native population in this region, were very hostile, and became so demonstrative in their vengeful designs that Baker was forced to move against them and to lead a night attack against their principal village twelve miles distant from Gondokoro, which resulted, of course, in the Baris' discomfiture and the capture of five hundred head of cattle.

Savages were not the only enemies which they had to contend with, for the crocodiles in the neighborhood were so numerous and ferocious that they were a source of great loss and constant danger. As the natives were so much in the habit of swimming to and fro with their cattle, these wily creatures had been always accustomed to claim a toll in the shape of a cow, calf, or nigger. Two of Abou Saood's sailors were carried off on two consecutive days. One of Baker's soldiers, while engaged with many others in the water, only hip deep, was seized by a crocodile. The man, being held by the leg below the knee, made a good fight, and thrust his fingers into the creature's eyes; his comrades at the same time assisted, and rescued him from absolute destruction; but the leg-bone was so mashed and splintered in many places that he was obliged to submit to an amputation.

One of the sailors had a narrow escape. He and many others were engaged in collecting the leaves of a species of water-convolvulus that make an



CROCODILE TEARING THE ARM OFF A SAILOR.

excellent spinach; this plant is rooted on the muddy bank, but it runs upon the surface of the water, upon which its pink blossoms are very ornamental. The sailor was stooping from the bank to gather the floating leaves, when



he was suddenly seized by the arm at the elbow-joint; his friends immediately caught him round the waist, and their united efforts prevented him from being dragged into the water. The crocodile, having tasted blood, would not quit its hold, but tugged and wrenched the arm completely off at the elbow, and went off with its prize. The unfortunate man, in excruciating agony, was brought to the camp, where it was necessary to amputate another piece slightly above the lacerated joint.

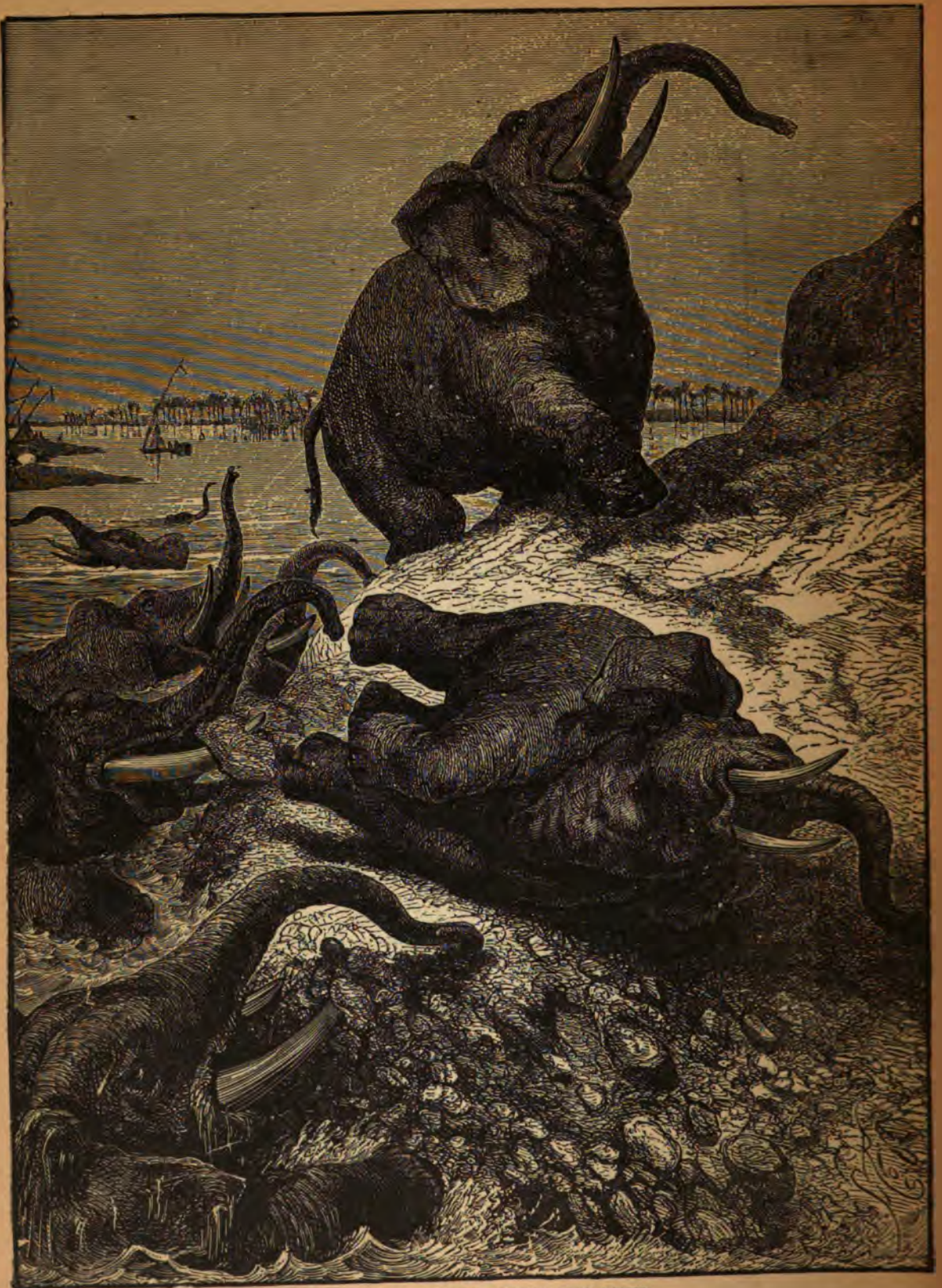
#### SHOOTING ELEPHANTS ACROSS THE RIVER.

Crocodiles furnished great sport to the hunters as a partial recompense for their savagery and destruction, but other game also demanded and received attention, for elephants became so bold at times as to invade the town and make night attacks on the stores of grain, of which they devoured great quantities.

In the middle of November Lieutenant Baker started with some troops to convey corn from a distant village, but he had proceeded only a short distance when he saw a herd of eleven bull elephants approaching from the west. Riding back quickly he informed Sir Samuel Baker, who at the time was enjoying a pipe on the poop-deck of his diahbeeah. Not being prepared for elephant-shooting, he recommended his lieutenant to return to his troops, who would be wasting their time. A half-hour afterwards the elephants approached within four hundred yards of the camp, apparently unconscious of danger. Baker could not withstand the temptation, so ordering his favorite horse saddled, he seized two Holland rifles which carried a half-pound iron lead-coated explosive shell, and started after them. Several men were ordered to gain the rear of the herd, so as to turn them should they retreat, while others flanked to drive them toward the river. The brutes at first sight took to water, and Baker dismounted to fire when they should gain the opposite bank, on an island, which was less than one hundred yards distant. When they had crossed they found an unexpected difficulty, in the precipitous bank which they were unable to scale. But they fell to with their tusks, and began tearing down the bank to an incline; and while thus engaged Baker secured several shots, which had no other effect, however, than to tumble one of them occasionally back into the water half-stunned. After a while so much of the bank was torn away that the elephants began to mount, showing their bodies completely out of water. Effective shooting now began, but when the second animal had been killed the ammunition gave out, and the hunt ended. The elephants were now butchered and the meat divided among the men, with an allowance for the Baris, who, seeing so much flesh ready for distribution, came over and sued for peace, offering to seal their friendship for a fair proportion of the meat. The peace thus purchased at so cheap a price remained inviolate all the time that Baker continued in Gondokoro.

#### OFF FOR THE ALBERT N'YANZA.

Baker's original intention had been to establish a line of fortified posts, not more than three days' march apart, between Gondokoro and Albert Lake,



SHOOTING ELEPHANTS ACROSS THE RIVER.



but his force of twelve hundred men was now reduced to five hundred. Of this number three hundred were left to guard the base of supplies at Gondokoro, so that he had only two hundred men with whom to make the advance south; nevertheless, with this small force he started, January 23, 1872, for the Albert Lake. The boats were loaded with necessary supplies, and the voyage up the river commenced. On the fourth day out they reached the first cataract, where a chief named Bedden had promised two thousand carriers to convey the boats—which were made in sections—and luggage to Lobore. But the old scoundrel had disregarded his promise, and insolently told Baker that his people had quit being slaves for the Turks and certainly would not enter the service of Christians. Travelling in Africa is always attended with the most provoking obstacles; Baker had learned this from a bitter experience, and was therefore not discouraged, though greatly angered, at Bedden's deceit and treachery. He therefore determined to establish a station here, and leave a strong guard to protect it and the boats, and then push on southward with a picked force of one hundred men.

Considerable difficulty was at first experienced in procuring guides, but when it appeared that the expedition must move without them an old rain-maker, apparently seventy years of age, visited Baker and offered to conduct him for the small compensation of a cow and what wine he could comfortably drink, a proposition that was promptly accepted. With the old rain-maker, whose name was Lokko, leading the way, the expedition moved forward without further detention until reaching Fatiko, which was one hundred and sixty-five miles from Gondokoro and the headquarters of Abou Saood, who was at the head of the slave trade of Central Africa.

#### A LIVELY DANCE OF NAKED VENUSES.

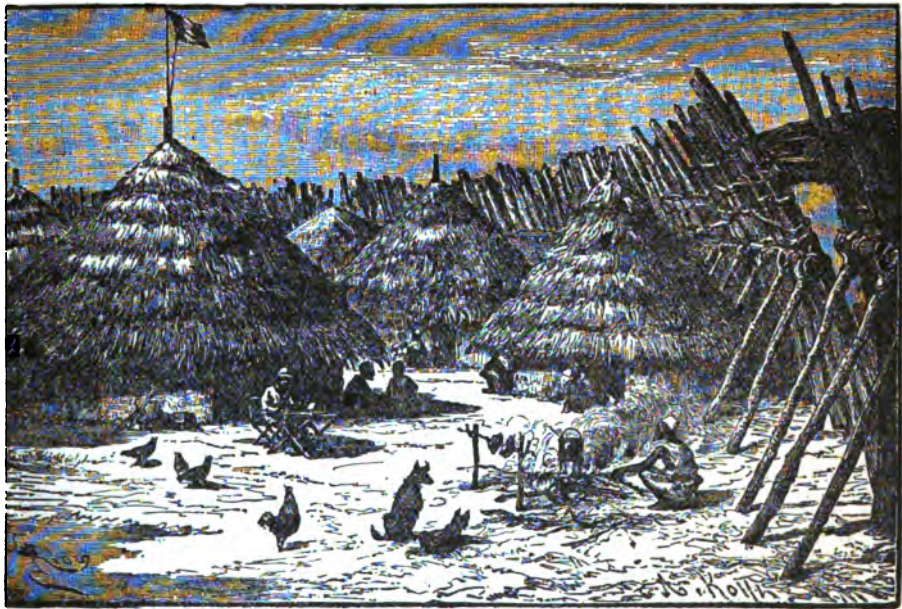
This place was reached before any knowledge of Baker's coming had been received by the old slaver, therefore he was wholly unprepared for his visitor. Baker saw active preparations going on for secreting the slaves, but it was too late. Abou Saood came out and greeted him in a most cordial manner, professing great delight at the visit. Baker, of course, knew what this hypocrisy meant, but he received the advances with a similar manifestation of friendship. At the same time, however, he desired to show the slave hunter that he had a fairly well-disciplined force, able to enforce such orders as might be necessary for the abolition of the nefarious trade which thrived at Fatiko. To do this, he had his soldiers go through certain military evolutions, scale the hill and give a sham battle. To add effect to the display, the band played several lively airs, which brought thousands of delighted natives to the scene. The band was composed of buglers, aided by cymbals, a bass drum and several small drums. This would not be regarded as a very deliciously symphonious aggregation in a civilized country, but it was irresistible to the Africans. The natives are passionately fond of music; and the safest way to travel in those wild countries is to play the cornet, if possible, without ceasing, which insures





a safe passage. A London organ-grinder would march through Central Africa followed by an admiring and enthusiastic crowd, who, if his tunes were lively, would form a dancing escort of the most untiring material.

As the troops returned to their quarters, with the band playing rather lively airs, women were observed racing down from their villages, and gathering from all directions toward the common centre. As they approached nearer, the charms of music were overpowering, and, halting for an instant, they assumed what they considered the most graceful attitudes, and then danced up to the band. In a short time the buglers could hardly blow their instruments for laughing at the extraordinary effect of the female dancers. A fantastic crowd surrounded them, and every minute added to their number. The women were entirely naked; thus the effect of a female crowd, bounding madly about as musical enthusiasts, was very extraordinary. Even the babies were brought out to dance; and these infants, strapped to their mothers' backs, and covered with pumpkin-shells, like young tortoises, were jolted about



BAKER'S CAMP AT FATIKO.

by their infatuated mothers without the slightest consideration for the weakness of their necks. As usual among all tribes in Central Africa, the old women were even more determined dancers than the young girls. Several old Venuses made themselves extremely ridiculous, as they sometimes do in civilized countries when attempting the allurements of younger days.

#### DESOLATING EFFECTS OF WAR.

Inquiry developed the fact that the country had been almost ruined by Abou Saood, who had, generally by various alliances, despoiled the people of their cattle and ivory and made slaves of nearly one-half the population. He had heard of Baker at Gondokoro, and knew the purposes of the expedition, but he had no doubt that by inciting the Baris to resist his advance and fight him constantly, he would be forced to renounce his intentions and return to Gondokoro. But the old rascal had miscalculated. The chiefs quickly tendered



their allegiance to Baker, who was thus enabled to establish a strong government under the Khedive and enforce a suspension, at least, of the slave trade.

At Fatiko he met with several messengers from Unyoro and Uganda, from whom he heard that Kamrasi had been dead more than two years, and was succeeded by his son, Kabba Rega, a man of less cupidity and of very much more intelligence, who was anxious to establish legitimate trade between his people and the whites. Other reports were to the effect that M'tesa, king of Uganda, had vastly improved through communication with the traders at Zanzibar. He had become a Mohammedan, and had built a mosque. Even his vizier said his daily prayers like a good Mussulman, and M'tesa no longer murdered his wives. If he cut the throat of either man or beast, it was now done in the name of God, and the king had become quite civilized, according to the report of the Arab envoys. He kept clerks who could correspond by letters in Arabic, and he had a regiment armed with a thousand guns, in addition to the numerous irregular forces at his command.



SCENE IN THE GAME COUNTRY OF AFRICA.

Abou Saood's power was completely broken, his slaves released, and his actions reported to the Khedive. All the neighboring chiefs made bitter complaint against the slave traders, and begged the protection which Baker had now offered. Feeling secure in the steps taken to establish good government at Fatiko, he placed a small garrison in the village and departed for Unyoro, which lay one hundred and sixty miles to the south. Enough porters were engaged to insure a rapid conveyance of the luggage, if none deserted, which was always a probability. It was in the latter part of March when the expedition left Fatiko, when spring was being ushered in and all the world seemed bursting with gladness. The country was one of extraordinary beauty, and large game could be seen in all directions. Antelopes were especially numerous, so that each day was spent by Baker in glorious sport, yielding fresh meat continually for all the men. But as the cavalcade reached the Unyoro country they found a remarkable change; spring had invested the earth with beautiful ver-



ture, and nature seemed glad, but here were the landmarks of war and desolation, burned and deserted villages, fallow fields and poverty. When Kamrasi died, he left a disputed inheritance to his two sons, Kabba Mero and Kabba Rega, who at once began a bitter struggle for the succession. Rionga, Kamrasi's brother and most bitter enemy, was still alive and as active as ever in fighting the Unyoros. Abou Saood had in the mean time espoused the cause of each in turn, as it suited his purposes best, and plundered them all. There had been incessant fighting for more than a year, during which time nearly everything in the country was destroyed, and many of the people were starving, while murder and pillage ran riot. But the famished condition of the country was not without benefit to Baker, as it enabled him to enlist a number of the natives as irregular soldiers and to form posts that would open communication with Fatiko.

#### A VISIT FROM KABBA REGA.

He halted within a short distance of Kabba Rega's palace, and sent messengers ahead to communicate with the king; but after waiting in vain several days for an invitation to enter his capital, Masindi, Baker broke camp, and after a journey of seventeen miles through the forest came upon the village, which is situated on high, undulating land, bounded on the west by a range of mountains bordering the Albert N'yanza, which is not more than fifty miles distant. He called on the king directly after his arrival, and found him sitting on a divan within a large and neatly constructed hut. He was well clad in beautifully made bark-cloth, striped with black; his person was also very neat, and his age not more than twenty years. Baker explained to him that his mission was to take possession of the country, which would thus be annexed to Egypt, and to not only free all the slaves he could find, but also to break up the slave trade and give peace and prosperity to the country. To all these reforms Kabba Rega gave his assent and promised such aid as he could command.

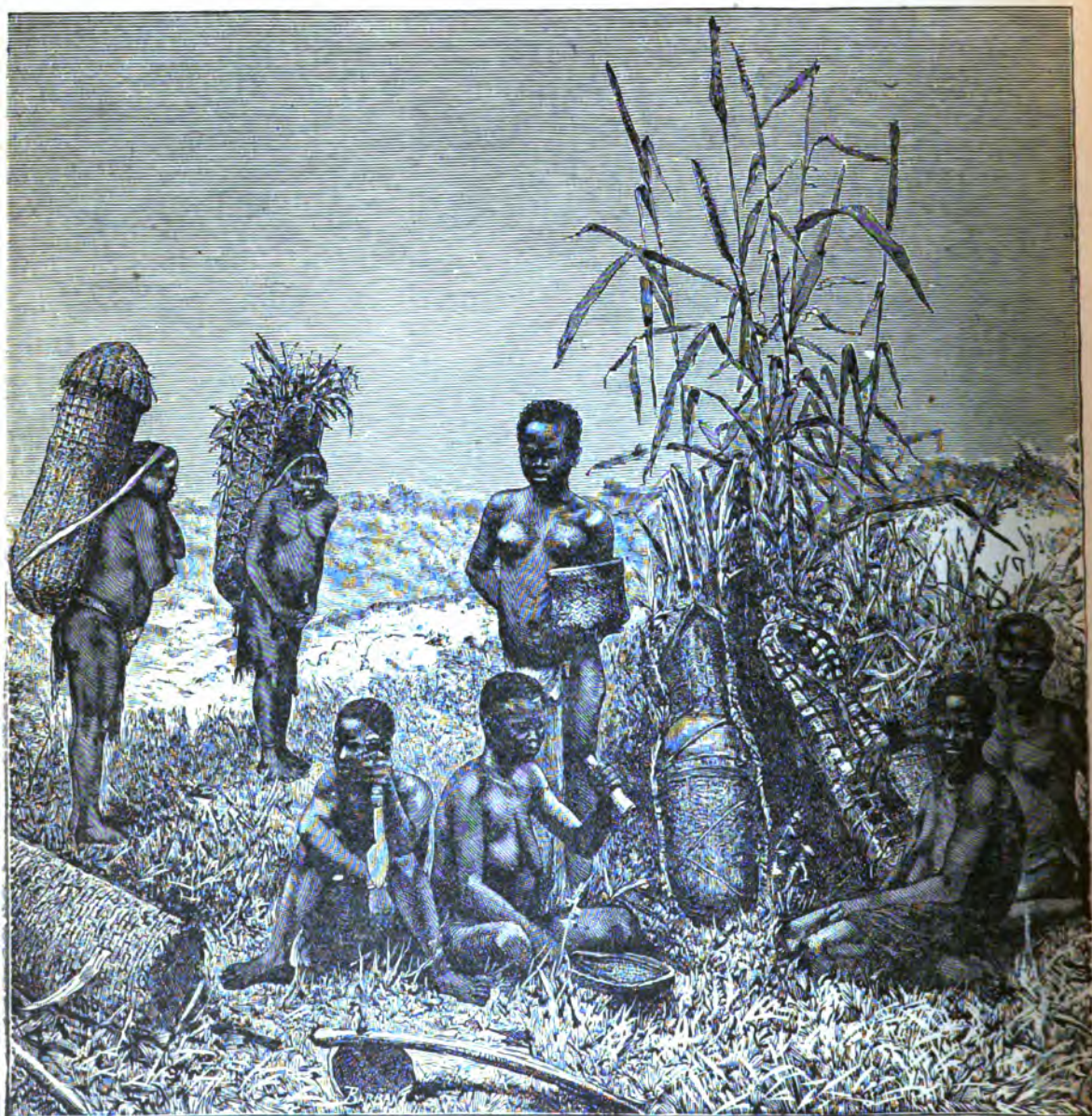


BAKER'S AUDIENCE WITH KABBA REGA.

On the following day the king returned the visit, accompanied by nearly



all his army, and was received with all the pomp that Baker could devise for such an occasion, but the interview was very unsatisfactory. The king could hardly be induced to turn the subject of conversation for a moment from complaints against his uncle Rionga, who was contending for the throne.



FARMERS OF UNYORO.

In vain was Baker's aid solicited in the war against Rionga, so that the king could not be placated even by the proffer of many presents, and after an exhibition given by Kabba Rega's buffoons the interview terminated.



## ROASTING PEOPLE OVER SLOW FIRES.

After the departure of the king, Baker engaged several of the chiefs in conversation, that he might learn more of the practices of the slave-hunters, and the general difficulties with which the government had to contend. Several of these assured him that Abou Saood's people had been in the habit of tortur-



THE FUNERAL DANCE.

ing the natives to make them reveal the places in which their corn was concealed. Throughout Unyoro there were no granaries exposed, as the country had been ravaged by civil war; thus all corn was buried in deep holes specially arranged for that purpose. When the slave-hunters sought for corn, they were

in the habit of catching the villagers and holding them down on the mouth of a large earthen water-jar, filled with glowing embers, until they were nearly roasted. If this torture did not extract the secret, they generally cut the sufferer's throat to terrify his companions, who would then divulge the position of the hidden stores to avoid a similar fate. It is difficult to conceive the brutality of these brigands, who, thus relieved from the fear of a government, exhibited their unbridled passions by every horrible crime.

Among other singular things which the chief related to Baker was a graphic account of the royal funeral that had taken place when Kamrasi was interred: When a king of Unyoro dies, the body is exposed upon a framework of green wood, like a gigantic gridiron, over a slow fire. It is thus gradually dried, until it resembles an over-roasted hare. Thus mummified, it is wrapped in new bark-cloths, and the body lies in state within a large house built specially for its reception. The sons fight for the throne. The civil war may last for years, but during this period of anarchy the late king's body lies still unburied. At length, when victory is decided in favor of one of his sons, the conqueror visits the hut in which his father's body lies in state. He approaches the corpse, and standing by its side sticks the butt end of his spear in the ground, and leaves it thus fixed near the right hand of the dead king. This is symbolical of victory.

#### BREAKING THE BONES AND BURYING VICTIMS ALIVE.

The son now ascends the throne, and the funeral of his father must be his first duty. An immense pit or trench is dug, capable of containing several hundred people. This pit is neatly lined with new bark-cloths. Several wives of the late king are seated together at the bottom, to bear upon their knees the body of their departed lord. The night previous to the funeral, the king's own regiment, or body-guard, surround many dwellings or villages, and seize the people indiscriminately as they issue from their doors in the early morning. These captives are brought to the pit's mouth. Their legs and arms are broken with clubs, and they are pushed into the pit on the top of the king's body and his wives. An immense din of drums, horns, flageolets and whistles, mingled with the yells of a frantic crowd, drown the shrieks of the sufferers, upon whom the earth is shovelled and stamped down by thousands of cruel fanatics, who dance and jump upon the loose mould so as to force it into a compact mass, through which the victims of this horrid sacrifice cannot grope their way. At length the mangled mass is buried and trodden down beneath a tumulus of earth, and all is still.

When the funeral rites over the body of Kamrasi were completed Kabba Rega ascended the throne, and succeeded to all his father's wives, with the exception of his own mother. This is the invariable custom in Unyoro. The throne is composed partly of copper and of wood. It is an exceedingly small and ancient piece of furniture that has been handed down for many generations, and is considered to be a cojoor, or talisman. There is also an ancient drum,



which is regarded with reverence as something uncanny; and the two articles are always jealously guarded by special soldiers, and are seldom used. Should the throne be lost or stolen, the authority of the king would disappear, together with the talisman, and disorder would reign throughout the country until the precious object should be restored.

#### THE VALUE OF FEMALE SLAVES.

Although Baker was not able to fully influence Kabba Rega against the iniquity of the slave traffic, he gained a conditional agreement from the king to lend his sanction to efforts for its suppression, which was purchased by the gift of a large number of presents. Baker, therefore, set about the release of all the slaves in the immediate region, which numbered about one thousand women and children. Efforts were next made to restore those stolen from

Unyoro, for the return of which Kabba Rega was particularly anxious, as they were his own subjects. It transpired that a regular traffic was maintained between the traders of Unyoro and Uganda, in which young girls were made the object of barter. In Unyoro, a plump



THE ESCAPE FROM BONDAGE.

young girl was usually sold for a first-class elephant tusk, while in Uganda they could be bought for thirteen needles or a new shirt. Thus it was that girls were purchased in Uganda and then taken to Unyoro, to be exchanged for an elephant tusk worth in England \$100 or \$150. This was termed legitimate trade, but Abou Saood took a less expensive way of securing female slaves, for he made war on the people, and putting them to rout bore away all the female prisoners as slaves, first disposing of the males by merciless massacre.

Slavery of girls was, however, encouraged by the immemorial usage of fathers invariably selling their daughters to the highest bidder, who might use them either as slaves or wives. A large family of girls was therefore a source of revenue to the father, who disposed of them in exchange for trinkets or cows, of which latter usually twelve or fifteen are paid for a fine looking young girl.

After Baker had put into execution effective plans for destroying the slave





THE FIGHT IN THE GRASS



rade in Unyoro, Kabba Rega became less friendly and began to interpose obstacles to prevent their execution. Contrary to his promises he withheld supplies, and when complaint was made he would make many apologies and renew assurances of his good intention. For several days signs of hostility became so apparent that Baker strengthened his defences, and his act in so doing exhibited his knowledge of the treacherous character of the king. One morning Kabba Rega sent five gallons of cider as a present to Baker's soldiers, with his usual professions of friendship, but after drinking the beverage fully one-half the garrison were writhing in agony, while many were unconscious from the effects of the poison that had been mixed with it. Prompt administration of remedies by Baker prevented any loss of life, but it was several days before those thus affected were fully recovered. In the mean time Baker sent messengers to the king asking for an explanation of this act of perfidy, but they were murdered, as was also Baker's adjutant, Motonse, a faithful and efficient servant. At the same time, Kabba Rega's soldiers crept through the grass at night and fired at Baker, but fortunately without effect. This was the signal for battle. Baker sounded the bugle-call and quickly had his men under arms ready for action. Setting fire to the grass and shooting rockets into the thatch-roofed houses of the natives, he sallied out, and by the light of the many fires thus kindled, his trained riflemen mowed down the natives without receiving any harm in return. The fighting continued until after midnight, when the routed natives fled in dismay, leaving their town, Masindi, the capital of Unyoro, in ruins.

#### CUTTING THEIR WAY THROUGH TO FOWEIRA.

This sudden exhibition of treachery caused an entire change in Baker's plans, for he saw that an immediate retreat was necessary to prevent starvation of his troops, as it would now be impossible to obtain supplies in that region. He accordingly decided to evacuate his quarters at Masindi and proceed by forced marches to Foweira, eighty miles to the south, where Rionga had his capital, an alliance with whom was now a necessity. The fort that he had constructed was accordingly burned and the retreat began, though not with such precipitate haste as prevented removal of all the stores. The expedition had been materially reduced by desertion until it now numbered one hundred soldiers and seventy porters, who, in addition to carrying a load of fifty pounds to the man, had to drive before them seventy-five cows to serve as food. Besides, the grass was very high, serving everywhere as an admirable ambush for lurking foes, which it concealed in great numbers.

On the second day after the march was begun, the attack that had even before been expected took place, and thereafter nearly every mile was the scene of some bloody encounter. Spears were hurled with deadly precision from the tall grass, which hid the enemy from view, so that Baker's men were at great disadvantage. But they acted most courageously, and by firing the grass often drove the enemy out and then slaughtered a great number.



(190)

RIONGA, KING OF UNVORO.



With the loss of a dozen men, Baker at length reached Foweira, which is on the bank of the Victoria Nile, where he erected a stockade and then set about building canoes in which to cross over to an island on which Rionga had his headquarters.

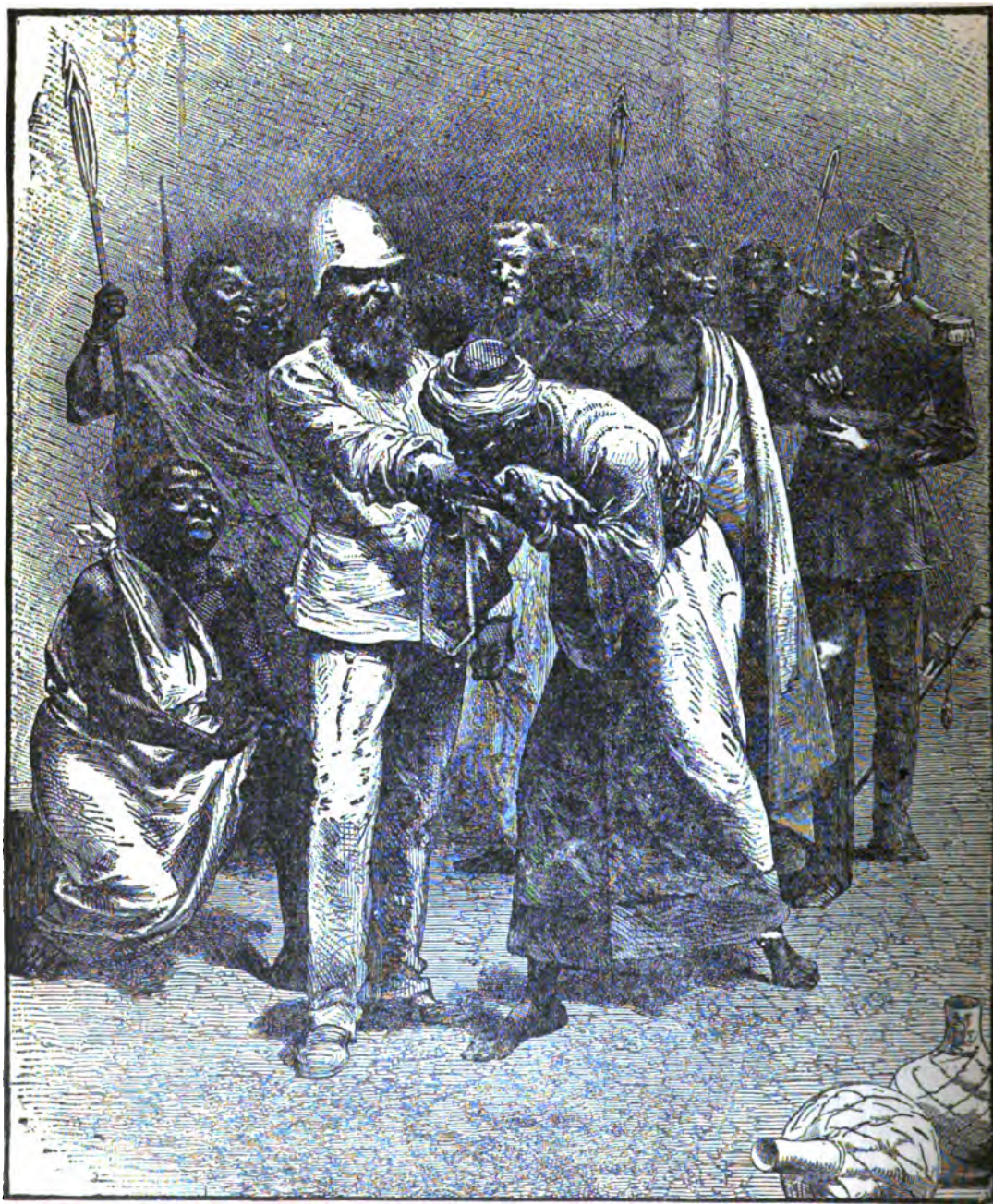
Fortunately, while these preparations were being made, messengers arrived to ascertain Baker's intentions in coming to the country. By these he sent some presents to Rionga, and explained his reasons for desiring an alliance with him. A reply soon came back, for Rionga was delighted at the prospect of an alliance with so powerful a force, and to show his friendship he sent Baker a considerable quantity of provisions, and begged him to cross over to his island, where he would receive him.

The canoes were now ready, and in them Baker and his party reached the island, where they were most hospitably received and every want provided for. Rionga met him with a frank, manly assurance of his regard, and forthwith proposed to exchange blood in order that their friendship might be irrevocably sealed. This noble chief was dressed in a beautiful cloak of gold brocade, which Baker had sent him as a present from Foweira, together with a new tarboosh and sky-blue turban, while upon his feet were well-made sandals. He was a handsome man, of about fifty, with none of the stiffness of Kam-rasi, nor the gawky bearing of Kabba Rega, but he was perfectly at his ease. With the natural politeness of a true gentleman, he thanked Baker for the handsome suit in which he was dressed, assuring him that without it he could not have appeared before him in a becoming manner, as the long-continued war of his brother and nephew against him had reduced him almost to poverty. He was well aware of Baker's repeated refusals to join in the struggle against him, and assured him that he fully appreciated his friendship. Rionga proved himself true and reliable, and has always remained the faithful ally and friend of the whites.

#### THE MAKKARIKA CANNIBALS.

Soon after his meeting with Rionga, Baker received reports that the garrison which he had left at Fatiko was in grave danger of an attack from Abou Saood, who had largely increased his force and resumed the slave trade. Baker therefore took forty of his own men and as many of Rionga's soldiers, at the head of which he marched with such celerity that he arrived at Fatiko before Abou had any intimation of his coming. The slave trader, however, seeing what punishment awaited him in case he fell into Baker's hands, assumed the offensive and made an impetuous attack; but in the savage fighting that followed Abou was routed, and half his soldiers and nearly all his officers were killed. Abou himself escaped to Fabbo, twenty-five miles east of Fatiko, where he again established himself. Here he collected a quantity of ivory, and then departed for the Makkarika country, two hundred and fifty miles distant, where he engaged a large force of these cannibals to assist the removal of the ivory and also to fight against Baker.

The cunning Abou was at no time idle, and so great was his influence throughout that region that nearly 3000 of the Makkarika cannibals enlisted under his standard, in addition to which a large body of Arab slave dealers

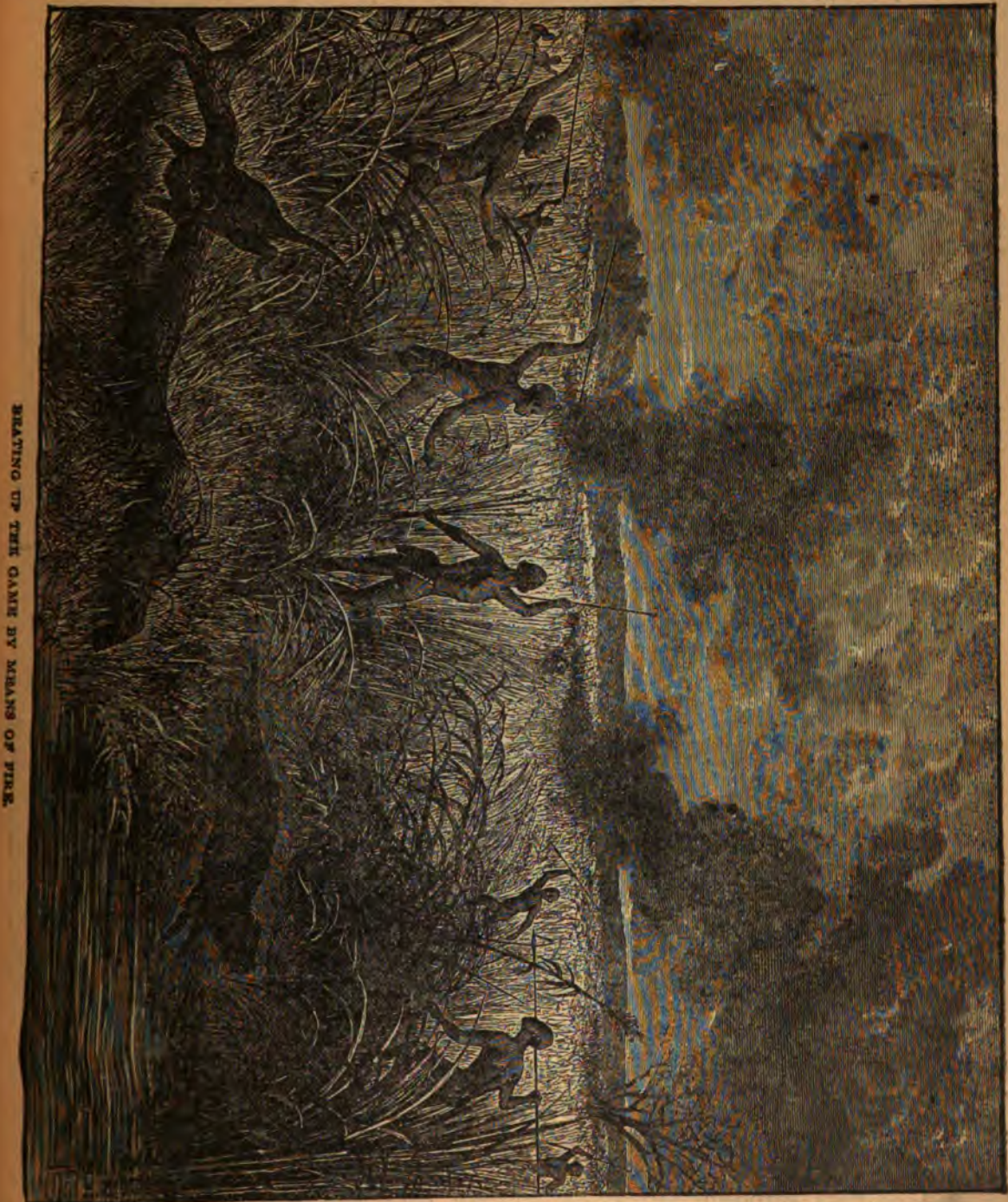


BAKER EXCHANGING BLOOD WITH RIONGA.

had arrived on the Nile who, it was expected, would lend him their aid. Horrible reports also came to Baker every day of the atrocities of the cannibals.



who were represented as devouring all the children in the Koshi (adjoining) district. Finding his position very dangerous, Baker sent his adjutant, Wat-el-



BEATING UP THE GAME BY MEANS OF FIRE.

Mek, back to Gondokoro for reinforcements, but a plague of small-pox broke out soon after in the Makkarika camp, from which eight hundred died. This, in



addition to the fear that had been excited in them by reports of Baker's magic guns, and Abou's misrepresentations, in making them porters of his ivory instead of soldiers, led to a desertion of his standard, and compelled him to again retreat into the fastnesses of the hills.

A GRAND HUNT FOR NOBLE GAME.

Abou Saood's plans had failed, and there was now comparative peace, while prospects for the future were all flattering. M'tesa had sent a messenger to Baker offering his aid to destroy Kabba Rega, while Rionga had sworn



BOARS IN THE NET.

allegiance to the Khedive, and had been made the vakeel, or ruler of the Unyoro country, so that Kabba Rega was really now only a wandering outcast, incapable of offering any serious resistance.

Baker had won the good opinion and friendship of many natives during his first journey through Africa, by joining with them in the chase and so effectively killing and sharing with them the large game. It was now the hunting season, and as arrangements were being made for the great annual



hunt, he resolved to participate with the natives, which gave them much pleasure, for they appreciated his gun, as they knew it was certain to secure for them considerable meat.

The natives, in their annual hunts, use a large net, or a number of nets, which are made fast successively to stakes so as to form a large quarter circle stretching across the country which they have previously selected to beat. They then form a circle themselves, more than a mile in diameter, facing the nets, and fire the grass to windward. In the high grass the net would be invisible until the animals, in trying to escape, would rush into it, when they were checked and speared to death by the hunters.

Everything was ready, and the men had already been stationed at regular intervals about two miles to windward, where they waited with their fire-sticks ready for the appointed signal. A shrill whistle disturbed the silence. This signal was repeated at intervals. In a few minutes after the signal a long line of separate thin pillars of smoke ascended into the blue sky, forming a band extending over about two miles of the horizon. The thin pillars rapidly thickened and became dense volumes, until at length they united and formed a long black cloud of smoke that drifted before the wind over the bright yellow surface of the high grass. The fire travelled at the rate of several miles an hour, and very soon, from an ant-hill which he had selected, Baker saw the startled game begin to move about. A rhinoceros was first to appear, but it was too far for a successful shot, and kept along an incline toward the nets; antelopes bounded by, and presently a lion and lioness leaped into view, but just as Baker was about to fire the head of a native rose in the direct line of aim. Beautiful leucotis, hartbeests, wild boars and antelopes were now running on every side, affording excellent shots, which Baker thoroughly improved until he had killed nearly a dozen of these animals without moving from the ant-hill. The natives killed many boars and antelopes, but the rhinoceros ran through the net as though it had been a cobweb, followed by a number of buffaloes and elephants.

#### THRILLING ADVENTURE WITH A LIONESS.

On December 30th, a week after the sport just described, another hunt was arranged for, which was attended with even greater excitement than the first, though the preparations were all the same. Baker had taken position on an ant-hill, and directly after the grass was fired a beautiful picture was presented, for they had surrounded an unusually large number of animals, which advanced slowly, as the pace of the fire was hardly more than two miles an hour. As Baker was firing with deadly effect upon a herd of antelopes, he saw a yellow tail rise suddenly from a water-hole not far distant, immediately followed by glimpses of an immense lion, which disappeared again in the grass, with its head in the direction of the hunter, as though approaching. Presently a rustling in the dry grass, within forty yards of his stand, apprised him that the ferocious beast was coming nearer; he had three guns with him, suited for different kinds of game, and seizing a rifle which was specially suited for lion shooting,

in another moment he caught a fair view of the animal and fired. Instead of being the one he had first seen, it proved to be a lioness; she rolled over backward and turned three convulsive somersaults, at the same time roaring furiously; she then recovered and rose as if unharmed. Baker fired again, but must have missed, for she charged at him, roaring all the while. A load of buck-shot, however, sent her back again, and she disappeared in the high grass.

The lioness could be heard groaning at a short distance, so, carefully picking his way, Baker approached near enough to get another shot, which broke her ankle joint, but again she got away. Several natives now came upon the scene, and locating the wounded beast, offered to throw their spears at her, which would result in bringing her out so that a fair shot could be secured.



ADVENTURE WITH A LIONESS.

Baker would not allow this, but fired at her as she lay partially concealed in a bottom. The reply was an immediate charge, and the enraged brute came bounding toward him with savage roars. The natives threw their spears, but missed, and some one would have been badly torn had not a shot from a smooth-bore No. 10 gun caused her to retreat again into the grass. Baker now took his large rifle and followed stealthily until he saw the lioness sitting up on her haunches like a dog. A careful aim put a bullet in the back of her neck, from which she fell over dead. She measured nine feet six inches from nose to tail extremity, and upon being cut open, they found the half of a leucotis, which had been simply divided by her teeth into two-pound lumps, which the natives seized as a particularly dainty dish.



## END OF THE EXPEDITION AND ITS RESULTS.

The country was now very generally at peace, but it was by no means subdued. The presence of a strong arm representing the government had produced a temporary effect for good, but it was plainly apparent that a withdrawal of this menace to the slave trade would be followed by an immediate revival of the infamous traffic. Baker, however, had done all that then lay in his power, seeing the hopelessness of the task he had undertaken with such a lukewarm government at his back, and he therefore decided to return to England.



ARRIVAL OF ENVOYS FROM M'TESA.

On January 15, 1873, envoys arrived from M'tesa, bringing a letter offering an army of his men to Baker, with which to destroy Kabba Rega and place Rionga on the throne, as the Egyptian representative over Unyoro. He also desired Baker to visit him, and expressed much anxiety to promote such commercial intercourse as the Khedive desired to establish. All these matters had

been arranged, for Kabba Rega had been deposed and Rionga was in full possession of Unyoro, which facts were communicated to M'tesa; with thanks for his very kind offer of assistance.

Baker had felt no little solicitude for Wat-el-Mek, whom he had sent to Gondokoro for re-enforcements, double the time he had allowed for the return having now elapsed. At length, on March 8, on the ninety-second day after their departure, he was rejoiced to see the advance-guard approaching, and forming his troops quickly, he went out to give them a military welcome. After an inspection of the men, Baker was annoyed very much by the fact that not a single head of cattle had been brought with them; a quarrel had taken place between Wat-el-Mek and Tayib Agha, the two commanding officers, a Bari village had been burned, and in a battle with the natives twenty-eight of the soldiers had been killed, their arms taken, and all the cattle captured. The ill feeling between the two officers was the cause of all their calamities.

There had been enough recruits brought from Gondokoro, however, to swell the total force to six hundred and twenty men, with which Baker strongly garrisoned Fatiko, Fabbo, and the stockade he had built opposite Rionga's island, at Foweira. Unyoro was now completely in the power of Rionga, and a route was opened from Fatiko to Zanzibar. Everything was in perfect order, so leaving Major Abdullah commandant at Fatiko, Baker gave him full instructions as to the government of Central Africa, and then departed with a small body-guard for Gondokoro, which place was reached without special incident on April 1st, 1872, the date on which his commission from the Khedive expired.

After turning over his effects to the government officers at Gondokoro, Baker secured a vessel and started for Khartoum. En route he overtook three vessels having on board seven hundred slaves, among whom the small-pox had broken out and the mortality was frightful. He hailed the slavers and was astonished to learn that the vessels belonged to Abou Saood, who had been to Cairo and so established himself in the confidence of the authorities that he could continue his nefarious traffic without fear of any unpleasant results; nor was this the only discouraging news which Baker heard, for he learned positively that ever since his departure from Gondokoro for Fatiko the slave vessels had been carrying their human cargoes directly on to Alexandria or the Red Sea, meeting with no opposition they could not easily overcome by bribery. He now saw that all his labors for a suppression of the slave trade in Central Africa had been without fruit; that the government, so far from rendering its aid to that end, had nullified its declarations and orders by refusing to punish convicted slavers, and by receiving them as worthy merchants at the Khedive's capital. Sick with disgust, he quitted Egypt and sailed for England.



## CHAPTER XI.

HENRY M. STANLEY.



AKER'S return from his first expedition into Central Africa (in 1865) and his report of valuable discoveries made, and especially his claim to having found the source of the Nile in Lake Albert N'yanza, quickened public interest in African exploration, which continued to increase under the excitement attending the conflicting reports concerning the fate of Livingstone. Long periods elapsed between letters received from that distinguished explorer, which caused the greatest anxiety. At last, after an absence of direct news for quite two years, coupled with a seemingly reliable report of Livingstone's death, James Gordon Bennett, of the *New York Herald*, resolved to send out an expedition in search of the great explorer, to find him if living or to bring back his bones if dead.

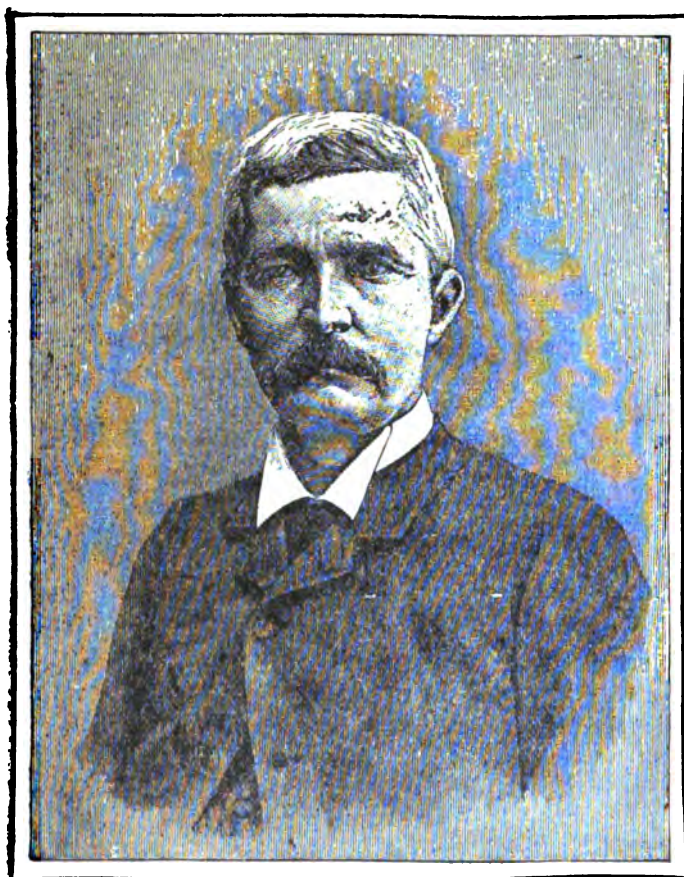
Coincident with the purpose which Bennett had thus formed was his determination to appoint Henry M. Stanley, who had at the time a roving commission as correspondent of the *Herald*, commander of the expedition. This selection was not made without a thorough knowledge of his peculiar qualifications to take charge of so important as well as dangerous undertaking, his fitness having been proved by his execution of other commissions of only secondary responsibility, where masterly abilities were absolutely necessary. A brief biographical sketch will better explain what special qualities and hardy experience he possessed.

Stanley has been regarded as an American explorer, but he is an American only by adoption, having been born in Wales, near Denbigh, in 1840. His parentage was obscure, but his real name is known to be John Rowlands, and it was under this name that at the tender age of three years he was sent to the poor-house at St. Asaph. Whether his parents were living at this time, too poor to care for him, or dead, he, himself, does not know; but in either event his patrimony was certainly that of extreme poverty. He remained at the almshouse of St. Asaph ten years, during which time he was given such advantages of schooling as the institution afforded, which is said to have been considerable. So well did he improve his opportunities that upon his own request he left the poor-house and directly after engaged as a teacher at Mold, in Flintshire; but after a year's experience, not entirely profitable, he shipped as cabin boy on a vessel bound for New Orleans. Arriving at that port he soon found employment with a merchant named Henry M. Stanley, whose name he adopted and with whom he remained until his benefactor's death, at the beginning of the civil war. Immediately after this sad event Stanley enlisted in the Confederate Army, but was directly taken prisoner. Securing a

parole he then volunteered in the United States Navy and afterwards served as ensign on the iron-clad Ticonderoga. Before the war was ended, however, he secured a discharge and became a war correspondent of the *St. Louis Democrat*, with which paper he continued for a considerable while after the war, being appointed as correspondent to accompany the Indian Peace Commission that settled the Sioux Indian troubles and located that tribe in the north-west, in 1866.

#### AT THE SCENES OF HIS EARLY BOYHOOD.

In 1867 Stanley went east and obtained an engagement with the *New York Herald* as foreign correspondent, and reported the Franco-Prussian war with



HENRY MORTON STANLEY IN 1876.

such satisfaction that he was soon after given a roving commission, and visited Syria, Persia, Egypt, and travelled through all the countries of southern Europe. After a return from Asia Minor he paid a visit to his birthplace and gave a dinner to the inmates of St. Asaph poor-house, at which he presided and made a speech of great felicity, during which he admitted that whatever success he had attained was due to the education and training received at that institution.

In the mean time, besides his travels in the far east, Stanley represented the *Herald* as correspondent with the British expedition sent to Abyssinia to obtain redress from King Theodore for outrages committed upon English subjects. A brief description of the war which followed will be interesting, as

well as germane to the general subject of this work, as it reflects, in a degree, the character of the people with whom Chinese Gordon had to deal, as will be hereafter related.

#### ENGLISH WAR WITH THEODORE.

Abyssinia, as before stated, has a history so thrilling and remarkable that it possesses all the elements of romance, even to the extent of the seemingly improbable. Being an adjoining kingdom to Egypt, like the latter



THE MURDER OF MR. FLOWDEN BY KING THEODORA.



Abyssinia is of such antiquity that its earliest civilization has not been recovered to history, being so ancient that it fades in the vast distance down the avenues of the centuries. This mold of the ages, though glittering with the glamor that legend, story and superstition impart, aroused the interest of Stanley, as it did that of Cameron, Marco Polo, Bruce, Burton, and others long before; and when England declared war against the King of Abyssinia, in 1868, it was with a heart filled with delight and expectancy that Stanley set sail for the scene of hostilities as a representative of the *Herald*.

The events which led to a declaration of war, and the tragedies therewith connected, may be briefly described as follows: Between the periods of 1831 and 1855, Abyssinia was visited by a number of explorers, who returned to their respective countries with considerable knowledge of the kingdom, and which served to increase popular interest that had first been excited by the romances about Prester John, as already explained. This public interest prompted the appointment of Walter Plowden as counsel to Abyssinia by the British Government. About this time (1848) there was an internecine war waging between the predatory followers of Lij Kasa (latterly King Theodore) and the queen dowager, who, however, was acting as regent of her infant son, Ras Ali, in the government of the Dembea district. In this war, which Kasa waged for title and rulership, he was successful, and secured, as a concession, not only the governorship of the district, but also a wife in the person of the daughter of Ras Ali of Amhara, the de-facto Governor of Central Abyssinia. His ambition, however, not being fully gratified, a year after his marriage Kasa began a war, upon some frail pretence, against his father-in-law, whom he easily drove out of office, and then following his success with a subjugation of the other chiefs, in 1855 found himself absolute master of the whole country, and was crowned king of the kings of Ethiopia, taking the new name of Theodore.

Plowden, and another Englishman, named Bell, continued to reside in Abyssinia until 1860, when they were killed, as some assert, by King Theodore himself, but others say by insurgents in an emeute that came near plunging the entire country into another war. In 1862 England appointed Capt. Cameron as Plowden's successor, who landed in due time at Massowa with presents for the king. Though Theodore was not averse to the new appointee, he desired a recognition, in the character of a representative at the English court, and accordingly sent a messenger bearing a letter containing a request for such representation to that country. England, however, treated the request with such discourtesy as to even refuse to make any reply thereto, following a precedent set by France the year previous, to which a like letter had been dispatched. Theodore was so incensed at this indignity that in November, 1863, he ordered the missionaries in the Dembea district thrown into prison; and in January following Captain Cameron and his suite were similarly seized, and, being first subjected to many barbaric tortures, were confined in the prison at Goudar, but soon after were removed to Magdala.





THE SUICIDE OF KING THEODORE.

## AN EXPEDITION TO RESCUE THE PRISONERS.

When news of this outrage reached England, the government, feeling itself culpable, sent a reply to Theodore's letter, conceding to his requests therein; but the messenger by whom it was transmitted did not deliver the reply until January, 1866, during which long interval Capt. Cameron continued to languish in close confinement. On final receipt of the letter Theodore released his prisoners, but almost immediately remanded them on account of a refusal of the English messenger to communicate a request to his government for further concessions. The Queen, being apprised of Theodore's perfidy, resolved to send an expedition to rescue her subjects. A military force was accordingly organized at Bombay, consisting of 4000 English and 8000 Sepoy troops, under command of Sir Robert Napier. This army landed at Annesley bay in January, 1868, and proceeded at once to Magdala, four hundred miles from the coast, where the prisoners were confined. Arriving before the fortress April 9th, on the following day the British were attacked by a large force of Abyssinians, whom, however, they repulsed, with a loss of 700 killed and 1200 wounded, while the English had only twenty of their number wounded. This victory was followed by the storming and burning of Magdala on the 13th, with a loss of only fifteen of the British. When the outer gate of the city fell and the English came pouring in, Theodore, fearful for his fate in the event of capture, placed the muzzle of a pistol to his mouth and blew nearly all the top of his head off, thus expiring instantly. This tragic event promptly terminated the war. The prisoners were released and restored to their country, and the army was at once sent home, leaving Abyssinia in the control of a chief of Tigre, named Kasa, who was in time deposed and the rulership assumed by Menelek, who had likewise risen from the plebeian ranks.

## STANLEY CALLED TO FIND LIVINGSTONE.

At the close of the war with Abyssinia Stanley resumed his duty as roving correspondent, and was in Spain, reporting the efforts of Don Carlos to secure the throne, when Bennett called him to take command of an expedition to go in search of Livingstone. Before proceeding upon this great undertaking he reported for his paper the opening of the Suez Canal, and visited, in the capacity of correspondent, Constantinople, Palestine, the Crimea, thence the east again, going by way of the Euphrates, Persia and India, and to Bombay, at which city he purchased supplies for the Livingstone expedition, and then sailed for Zanzibar, October 12th, 1870, which he reached after a voyage of thirty-seven days.

## THE ENLISTMENT OF AN ESCORT AND PORTERS.

Stanley was well received by the American consul at Zanzibar, who gave him a room in his own house and seemed to take delight in ministering to his needs. He had engaged one man, Wm. L. Farquhar, on the barque *Polly*, to accompany him into Africa, but, with this single exception, he had to enlist his force at Zanzibar. John Shaw, an Englishman, was found adrift in



this Arabian port, and, upon his application, was enlisted at a salary of \$300 per annum. It was desirable, however, to secure and equip an escort of twenty free blacks for the road. There were scores of such fellows offering, but they were very unreliable, and it was with no little pleasure that Stanley heard of several of Speke's "faithfuls" who would be glad to go upon another expedition. Five of these men were soon found and engaged at \$40 each per annum, and a few days later Bombay, who was Speke's head man, came to Zanzibar, and he, too, was enlisted and made captain of the black escort. Bombay succeeded in getting eighteen more free men to volunteer as "askari" (soldiers), men whom he knew would not desert and for whom he declared himself responsible. Their wages were set down at \$36 each per annum. Each soldier was provided with a flint-lock musket, powder-horn, bullet-pouch, knife and hatchet, besides enough powder and ball for two hundred rounds. Bombay, in consideration of his rank and previous faithful services to Burton, Speke and Grant, was engaged at \$80 a year, half that sum in advance, and a good muzzle-loading rifle, a pistol, a knife and a hatchet were also presented to him.

Two boats were purchased from the American consul for \$120, one of which would carry twelve men and the other half as many. These boats were stripped of their boards and tarred canvas substituted, as a much lighter material and less liable to leakage or rupture, being intended only for crossing streams and navigating rivers and lakes. Twenty donkeys were purchased, and a cart was constructed, eighteen inches wide and five feet long, to carry the narrow ammunition boxes along the goat paths.

When his purchases were all completed, Stanley found materials aggregating a weight of six tons, nearly all of which had to be carried to the centre of Africa on the shoulders of men; and for this purpose one hundred and sixty carriers had to be engaged at Bagamoyo, situated on the mainland, across from the island of Zanzibar.

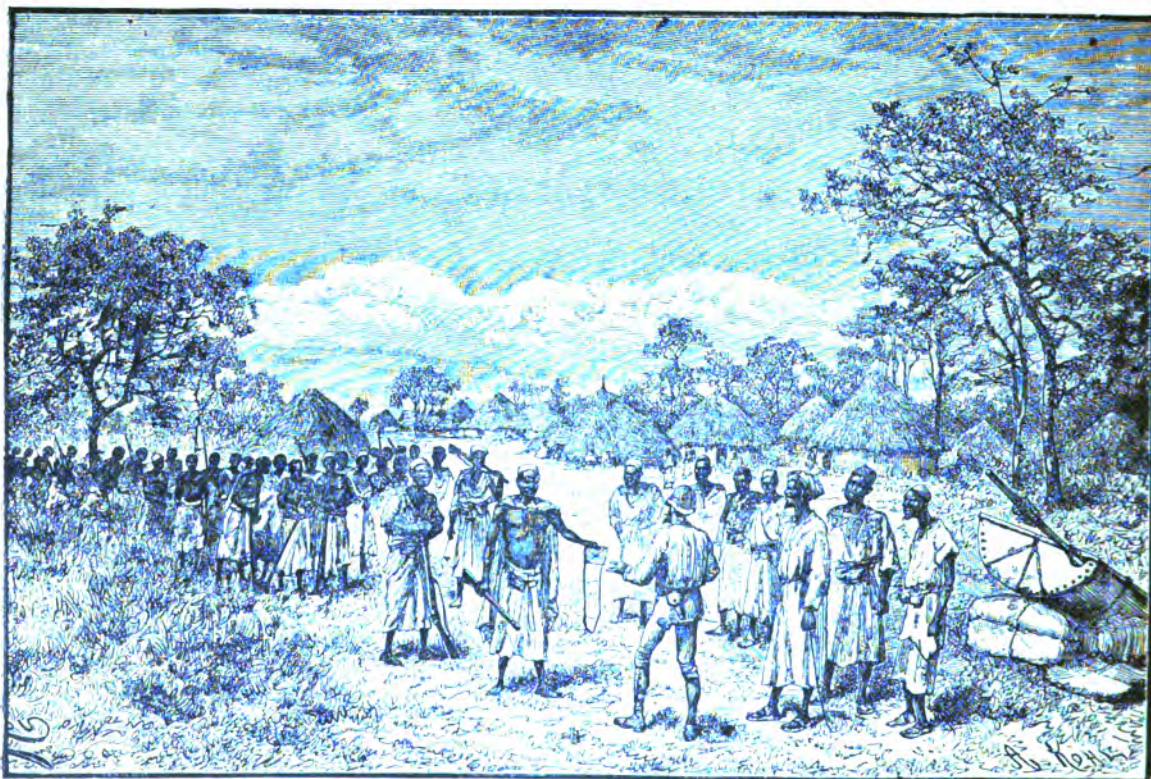
Twenty-eight days after his arrival in Zanzibar, Stanley was ready to start upon his search for Livingstone, but before departing the Sultan gave him an audience, at which royal letters were prepared by his Highness commending Stanley to the gracious favor of all Arabs whom he might meet. The Sultan also gave him a beautiful horse, and an American merchant at Zanzibar added another, a fine blooded animal worth \$500. But when everything was ready and the dhow that was to ferry the expedition to Bagamoyo was on the point of leaving, it was discovered that Farquhar and Shaw were missing; a long search finally revealed them in a beastly state of intoxication at one of the grog-shops in a quiet corner of the town, and they had to be led down to the boat.

#### THE HIPPOPOTAMI'S HAUNTS.

The expedition reached Bagamoyo on February 6th, 1871, but here most provoking delays occurred by reason of the numerous false promises made by native agents whom Stanley employed to engage carriers for him. He did not

start the first caravan until February 18th, and the fifth, or last, did not get away until March 21st. The total number, inclusive of all souls connected with the expedition, was 192. These, when together, presented an imposing appearance, headed by the American flag, which for the first time was carried into the wilds of Africa. The expedition was now on the road to Ujiji, by way of Unyanyembe.

The first trouble encountered was at the turbid Kingani river. The jungle along its right bank was threaded some distance, when a narrow sluice of black mud, not more than eight feet broad, crossed the path, and to get the animals over this it was necessary to construct a bridge by felling trees and



ENGAGING PORTERS AT BAGAMOYO.

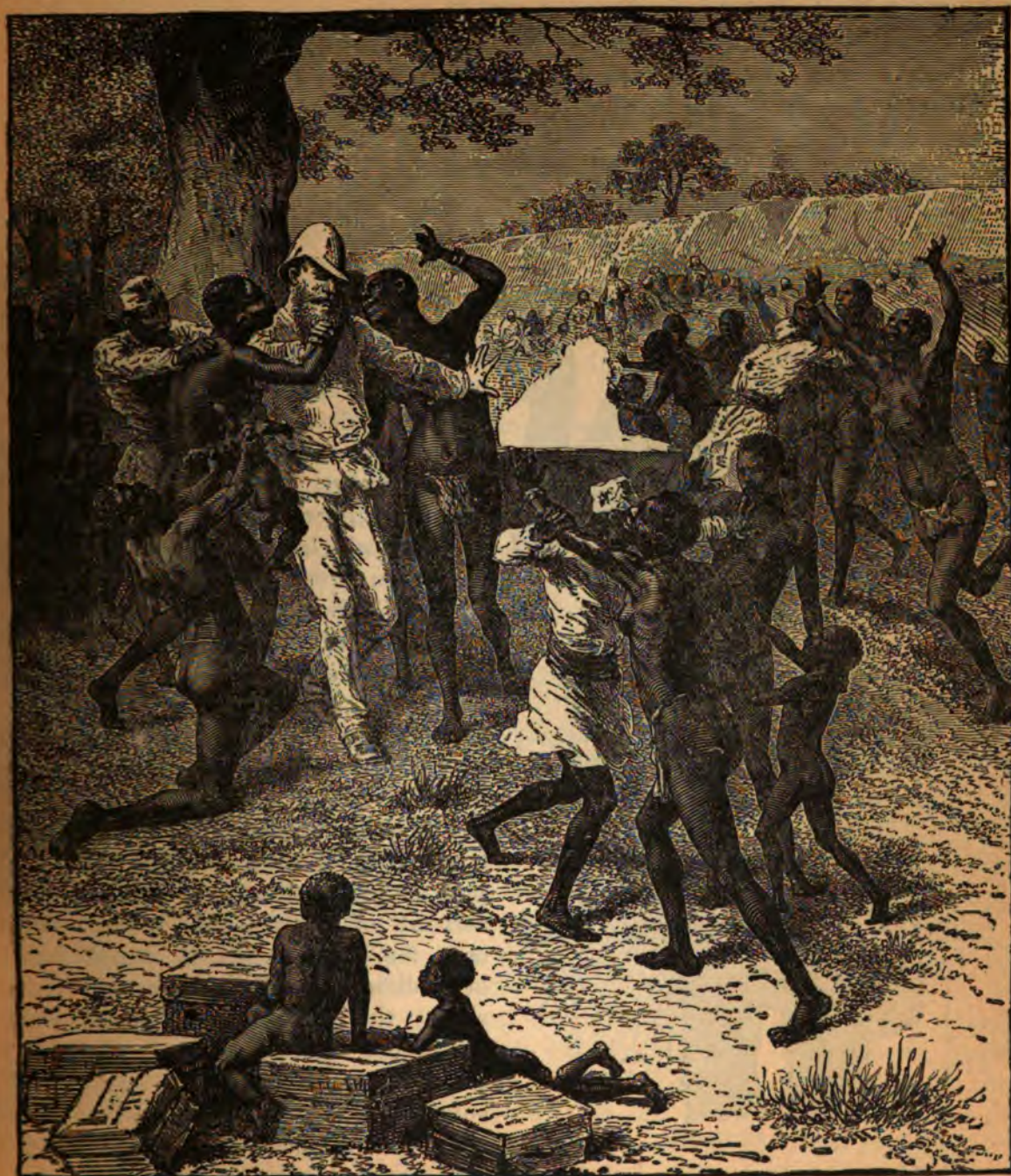
covering them with grass. Further on the river had to be crossed, which was effected, after much labor, in one frail canoe, hollowed out of an immense tree.

After the process of ferrying was fairly begun, Stanley amused himself for a while shooting at the many hippopotami that infested the stream, but as he used a No. 44 Winchester, so little execution was done that he appeared to be less amused than the huge creatures whose thick hides readily deflected the bullets that struck them.

After making a crossing of the Kingani, the expedition came to a village called Rosako, where camp was made, but peace and rest was alike disturbed by the demonstrative curiosities of the natives, especially the women, who added



impertinence to their surprise, and made most shocking exhibitions of their disgusting nakedness. The route to which the expedition had now entered upon



AFFECTIONATE CURIOSITY OF ROSAKO WOMEN.

to reach Ugogo was a new one, over which no white man had ever before passed, so that the rudeness of the natives was somewhat excusable; but Stanley



was so annoyed at length that he turned loose a watch dog which he had brought with him from Bombay, to disperse the crowds that surrounded his tent, and a most effective expedient it proved to be.

#### JUNGLES, SLAVES AND AFRICAN BEAUTIES.

From Rosako the road changed suddenly to a narrow goat-path, on account of an extremely thick jungle which covered a very large district, and at places



A BELLE OF KISEMO.

it was almost impossible for the pack-animals to move through. Numerous halts were necessary to rearrange the packs on the donkeys, which so frequently shifted by being caught by wait-a-bit thorns that extended across the way. On April 1st, the fine horse presented to Stanley by the Sultan was taken severely ill from the effects of bites of the tsetse fly, and died after a few hours of intense suffering. Fifteen hours later the other horse met with a like fate, added to which losses ten of Stanley's best men were stricken with fever, while all the porters were so nearly exhausted that it was impossible to make greater progress than five miles a day.

On the 18th of April they met a chained slave-gang, bound east. The slaves did not appear to be in the least down-hearted; on the contrary, they seemed imbued with the philosophic jollity of the happy servant of Martin Chuzzlewit. Except for their chains, it would have been difficult to discover master from slave; the physiognomic traits were alike—the mild benignity with which they regarded Stanley's party was equally visible on all faces. The chains were ponderous, they might

have held elephants captive; but as the slaves carried nothing but themselves, their weight was not insupportable.

The expedition encamped one evening at a prettily situated village, named Kisemo. The district was extremely populous, there being five villages in a



circuit of as many miles, each fortified by stakes and thorny abattis. The belles of Kisemo are famed for their extraordinary natural development, and their vanity finds expression in brass wire, which adorns their waists and ankles, while their less attractive brothers are content with such adornments as dingy cloths and split ears. A more comical picture is seldom presented than one of these highly-dressed females with the magnificent developments already noted, viewing herself in a looking-glass, or engaged in the homely and necessary task of grinding corn for herself and family. The grinding apparatus consists of two portions: one a thick pole of hard wood, about six feet long, answering for a pestle; the other, a capacious wooden mortar, three feet in height; and the swaying motion of the women in handling this pestle forms a rare and ludicrous picture.

#### TIDINGS OF LIVINGSTONE.

The fourth caravan, which had been making up for lost time by travelling ahead for several days, was come up with at the village of Muhalleh; several of the men had fallen sick, so that the caravan went into camp here to await Stanley and the medicine chest. During a two days' encampment at this village Stanley met an Arab trader, bound eastward, with a large caravan carrying three hundred elephant tusks. This good Arab, besides welcoming the new-comer with a present of rice, gave him news of Livingstone. He had met the old traveller at Ujiji, and had lived in the hut next to him for two weeks. He described him as old appearing, with long gray mustache and beard, just recovered from a severe illness, and looking very wan; when fully recovered, Livingstone said he intended to visit a country called Manyema, by way of Marungu.

#### A WALLED AND CASTELLATED AFRICAN CITY.

The march now followed the valley of the Ungerengeri until the walled city of Simbamwenni was reached. This is one of the wonderful cities of Africa. The town contains about 1000 houses, and a population of perhaps 5000. The buildings are eminently African, but are strongly constructed. The fortifications are after an Arabic-Persian model—combining Arab neatness with Persian architecture. They are stone, pierced with two rows of loop-holes for musketry. The area of the town is about half a square mile, its plan being quadrangular. Well-built towers of stone guard each corner; four gates, one facing each cardinal point, and set half-way between the several towers, permit ingress and egress for its inhabitants. The gates are closed with solid square doors, made of African teak, and carved with infinitesimally fine and complicated devices of the Arabs, from which it is supposed that the doors were made either at Zanzibar or on the coast, and conveyed to Simbamwenni plank by plank; yet as there is much communication between Bagamoyo and Simbamwenni, it is just possible that native artisans are the authors of this ornate workmanship, as several doors chiselled and carved in the same manner, though not quite so elaborately, are visible in the largest houses.

The Sultana, or ruler of this African city, was the eldest daughter of the famous Kisabengo, who was another Theodore on a small scale. Sprung from humble ancestry, he acquired distinction for his personal strength, his powers of harangue, and his amusing and versatile address, by which he gained great ascendancy over fugitive slaves, and was chosen a leader among them. Fleeing from justice, which awaited him at the hands of the Zanzibar Sultan, he arrived in Ukami, and here he commenced a career of conquest, the result of which was the acquisition of an immense tract of fertile country. On its most desir-



CITY OF SIMBAMWENNI.

able site, with the river flowing close under the wall, he built his capital and called it Simbamwenni, which means "The Lion," or the strongest city. In old age the successful robber and kidnapper changed his name of Kisabengo, which had gained such a notoriety, to Simbamwenni, after his town; and when dying, after desiring that his eldest daughter should succeed him, he bestowed the name of the town upon her also.

Stanley, after praising the country for its great beauty and marvellous fertility, says: "A railroad from Bagamoyo to Simbamwenni might be constructed with as much ease and rapidity as, and at far less cost than, the Union Pacific



Railway, whose rapid strides day by day toward completion the world heard of and admired. A residence in this part of Africa, after a thorough system of drainage had been carried out, would not be attended with any more discomfort than generally follows upon the occupation of new land. The temperature at this season during the day never exceeded eighty-five degrees Fahrenheit. The nights were pleasant—too cold without a pair of blankets for covering."

#### A BLACK SULTANA'S REVENGE.

While passing Simbamwenni, Stanley was accosted by some soldiers sent out by the Sultana to collect a tribute for the privilege of a passage. He refused to pay anything, and sent back word that he recognized no right by which such a demand should be made. He heard nothing further at that time from the bold princess.

Five miles further on, a cook belonging to the expedition was arrested for stealing. This being his fourth offence, Stanley ordered him to be flogged with a cowhide over his jacket, a punishment which was hardly as severe as the thief deserved; and in order to frighten him, Stanley told him that he must leave the camp and get back to Zanzibar the best way he could. The man, thinking the order was given in earnest, bolted off and disappeared in the jungle. Stanley knew that the man must perish if he really attempted to travel to Zanzibar, and supposing he would come back, left a donkey tied to a tree, upon which he might ride and overtake the caravan.

Directly after this incident Bombay came riding up to Stanley and reported the loss of a gun, a pistol, an American axe, a bale of cloth, and some beads; he explained that he had laid the articles down while going to a stream for water, and upon returning found them gone, stolen, he declared, by the subjects of the Sultana.

The caravan was now obliged to stop, while Stanley sent back three soldiers to recover the articles, if possible, and also to find the culprit who had run off. After a search of two days the soldiers found the donkey and missing articles in possession of two natives, whom they took to the Sultana, where they were charged with murdering the missing man. This they strongly denied, but the Sultana believed them guilty and threw them into prison to await the next caravan going to Zanzibar, whither she would send them for sentence. The Sultana next ordered the three soldiers seized and placed in chains, and also confiscated their property, and declared she would detain them until their master should return and pay her the tribute she had demanded. The unfortunate soldiers were kept in chains in the market-place, exposed to the taunts of the servile multitude, for sixteen hours, when they were discovered by a shiek who had passed Stanley five days before. This man recognized the soldiers as members of the expedition, and sought an audience with them. After hearing their story, the good-hearted shiek sought the presence of the Sultana, and informed her that she was doing very wrong—a wrong that could only terminate in blood. "The Musungu is strong," he said, "very strong; he has got two

guns which shoot forty times without stopping, carrying bullets half an hour's distance; he has got several guns which carry bullets that burst and tear a man to pieces. He could go to the top of that mountain, and could kill every man, woman and child in the town before one of your soldiers could reach the top. The road will then be stopped, Syed Burghash will march against your country, the Wadoe and Wakami will come and take revenge on what is left, and the place that your father made so strong will know the Waseguhha no more. Set free the Musungu's soldiers, give them their food, and grain for the Musungu; return the guns to the men and let them go; for the white man may even now be on his way here."



STANLEY CROSSING THE INUNDATED SAVANNAH.

These exaggerated reports of Stanley's power produced a good effect, for the soldiers were released, their arms and the donkey restored, and sufficient food was furnished to last them for four days, until they could overtake the caravan. Stanley was very much exercised over the outrage which he felt had been committed on his men, but he was now so far advanced that he could not afford to turn back and obtain satisfaction. But the runaway cook was not found, nor were any tidings of him, good or bad, ever obtained.

#### A DREADFUL SWAMP.

The expedition started again, after a delay of four days, for Ugogo, in the midst of a pitiless rain storm, which flooded the country and rendered travelling excessively difficult. They soon struck a swamp from which the malarial



evaporations rose up so rank that Shaw took sick, and the labor of driving the caravan fell entirely on Stanley. The donkeys stuck in the mire as if they were rooted to it. As fast as one was flogged from his stubborn position, prone to the depths fell another, so that the labor of extricating them was maddening, under pelting rain, assisted by such men as Bombay and Uledi, who were as much afraid of the storm as the donkeys were of the mire. Two hours of such a task enabled Stanley to drag his caravan over a savannah one mile and a half broad; but barely had he finished congratulating himself over his success before he was halted by a deep ditch, which, filled with rain-water from the inundated savannahs, had become a considerable stream, breast-deep, flowing swiftly into the Makata. Donkeys had to be unloaded, led through a torrent, and loaded again on the other bank—an operation which consumed a full hour.

On the following day another part of the swamp was reached, which was five miles across and from one to four feet deep; this was the sorest march made by the expedition, and so serious were its effects that two of the carriers (and the dog) died, also twelve of the donkeys, and Stanley was brought to the brink of the grave from fever and acute dysentery.

On May 4th they ascended a gentle slope to a village named Reheuneko, where a halt of four days was made, to rest and recover from the effects of the fever with which all were suffering. It was a delightful place, most fortuitously reached, for another day in the swamps would have, no doubt, destroyed the expedition.

Farquhar, who had charge of the fourth caravan, had preceded Stanley two days, but he sent back word to Reheuneko that all but one of his donkeys had died and his provisions were almost exhausted. Upon learning this Stanley pushed on to Lake Ugombo, where he met Farquhar and found him in a most pitiable condition, his feet and limbs being swollen to frightful proportions from elephantiasis, which made it almost impossible to move about even in his tent. But this affliction was largely the result of his inordinate dissipation, while the exhaustion of his supplies was likewise attributable to his neglect of duty, due to drunkenness. Shaw was no more reliable, and to his worthlessness he added insolence, which Stanley was finally compelled to rebuke by knocking him down. Smarting under this punishment and humiliation, on the following night he attempted to assassinate Stanley, the bullet from his rifle passing through the pillow on which Stanley was resting his head. Being unable, as well as indisposed, to move further, Farquhar, at his request, was left at a village in the Ugogo country, with plenty of supplies and in charge of a kind old man.

#### AN IMPOSING ENTRANCE INTO UGOGO.

Stanley now marched on to Chungo, where he joined a trading party of Arabs going west, and twelve new carriers were engaged, so that the entire force was increased to four hundred souls, with flags, horns, drums, guns, etc.



MARCHING INTO UGOGO.



making a most formidable caravan for Central Africa. They were now only thirty miles from Ugogo.

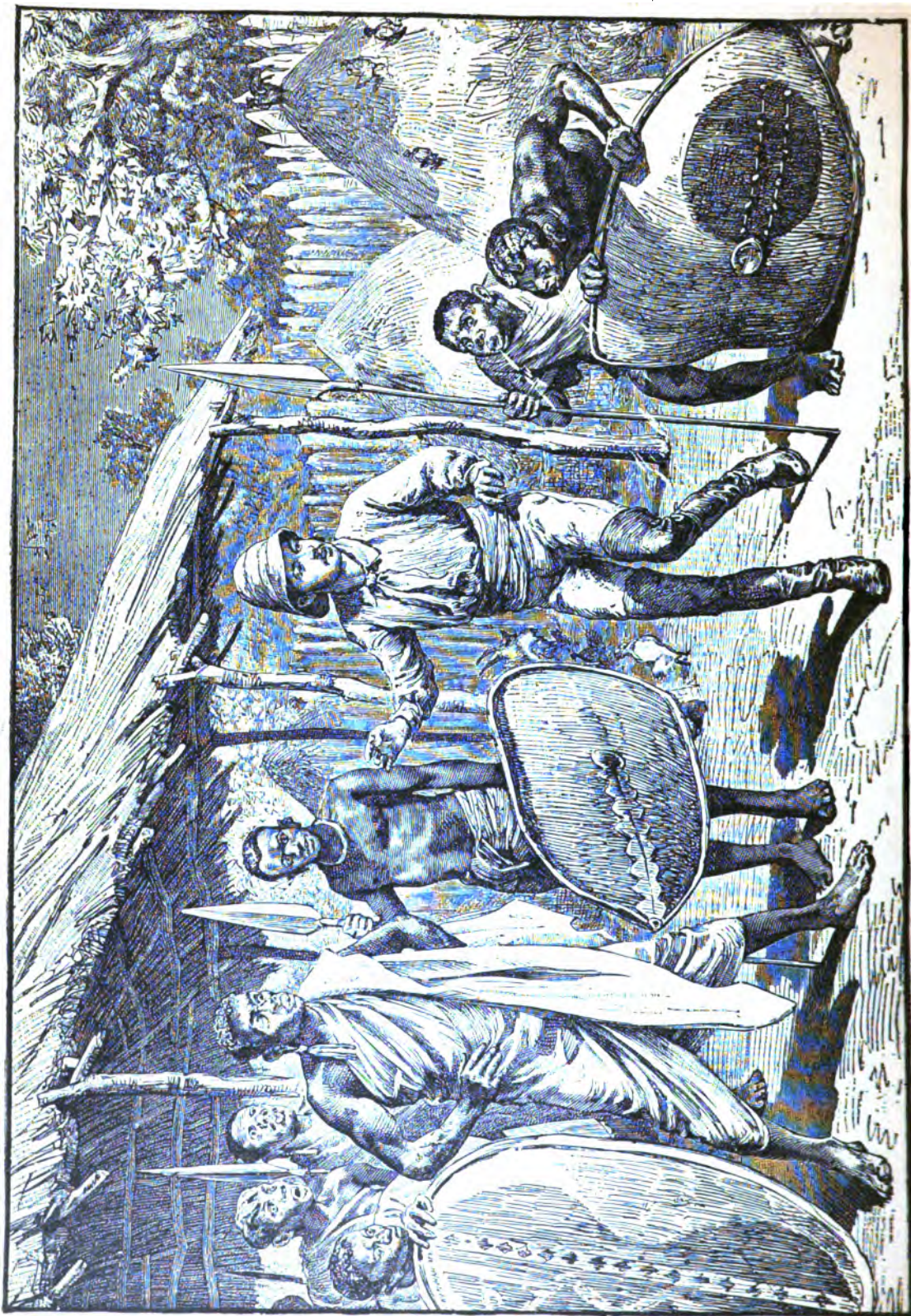
The entrance into Ugogo was the very counterpart of a circus parade; Stanley rode at the head, and as he came in sight of the village its swarming inhabitants rushed out to meet him, shouting with all the strength of their lungs. The whole village was soon before, abreast and behind his heels, lullalooing and shouting in the most excited manner; for Stanley was the first white man they had ever seen. From one village to another, which are in immediate succession and called Ugogo, the crowd kept gathering, until a furious mob of naked men, women and children, their bodies ornately tattooed, pressed upon the white man. "Hitherto," says Stanley, "I had compared myself to a merchant of Bagdad, travelling among the Kurds of Kurdistan, selling his wares of Damascus silk, kefiyehs, etc.; but now I was compelled to lower my standard, and thought myself not much better than the monkey in the zoological collection at Central Park, whose funny antics elicit such bursts of laughter from young New Yorkers. One of my soldiers requested them to lessen their vociferous noise; but the evil-minded race ordered him to shut up, as a thing unworthy to speak to the Wagogo! When I imploringly turned to the Arabs for counsel in this strait, old Sheik Thani, always worldly wise, said, 'Heed them not; they are dogs who bite besides barking.'"

A camp was made, and negotiations with the natives soon began. The quantity and variety of provisions produced in the country was positively astonishing, proving Ugogo to be one of the very richest districts of all Africa. The natives brought and sold milk, both sour and sweet, honey, beans, Indian corn, a variety of peas, peanuts, bean-nuts, pumpkins, watermelons, musk-melons, cucumbers, and many other kinds of vegetables. But the great Sultan of Mvumi, or ruler of Ugogo, was a most extortionate old relic of Arabic cupidity and autocracy, and compelled Stanley to pay a large tribute of cloth and beads for the privilege of crossing his country.

#### APPLICATION OF THE WHIP.

As the expedition continued its march, each village was emptied of its inhabitants, who ran along staring at the Musungu (white man) and frequently committing insolent acts, until Stanley's patience with them became quite exhausted. He writes: "Hitherto, those we had met had contented themselves with staring and shouting; but these outstepped all bounds, and my growing anger at their excessive insolence vented itself in gripping the rowdiest of them by the neck, and before he could recover from his astonishment administering a sound thrashing with my dog-whip, which he little relished. This proceeding educed from the tribe of starers all their native power of vituperation and abuse, in expressing which they were peculiar. Approaching in manner to angry tom-cats, they jerked their words with something of a splitting hiss and a half bark, and spitting at my legs. The ejaculation, as near as I can spell it phonetically, was 'hahcht,' uttered in a shrill crescendo tone.





IMPUDENT CURIOSITY OF THE WAGOOO.



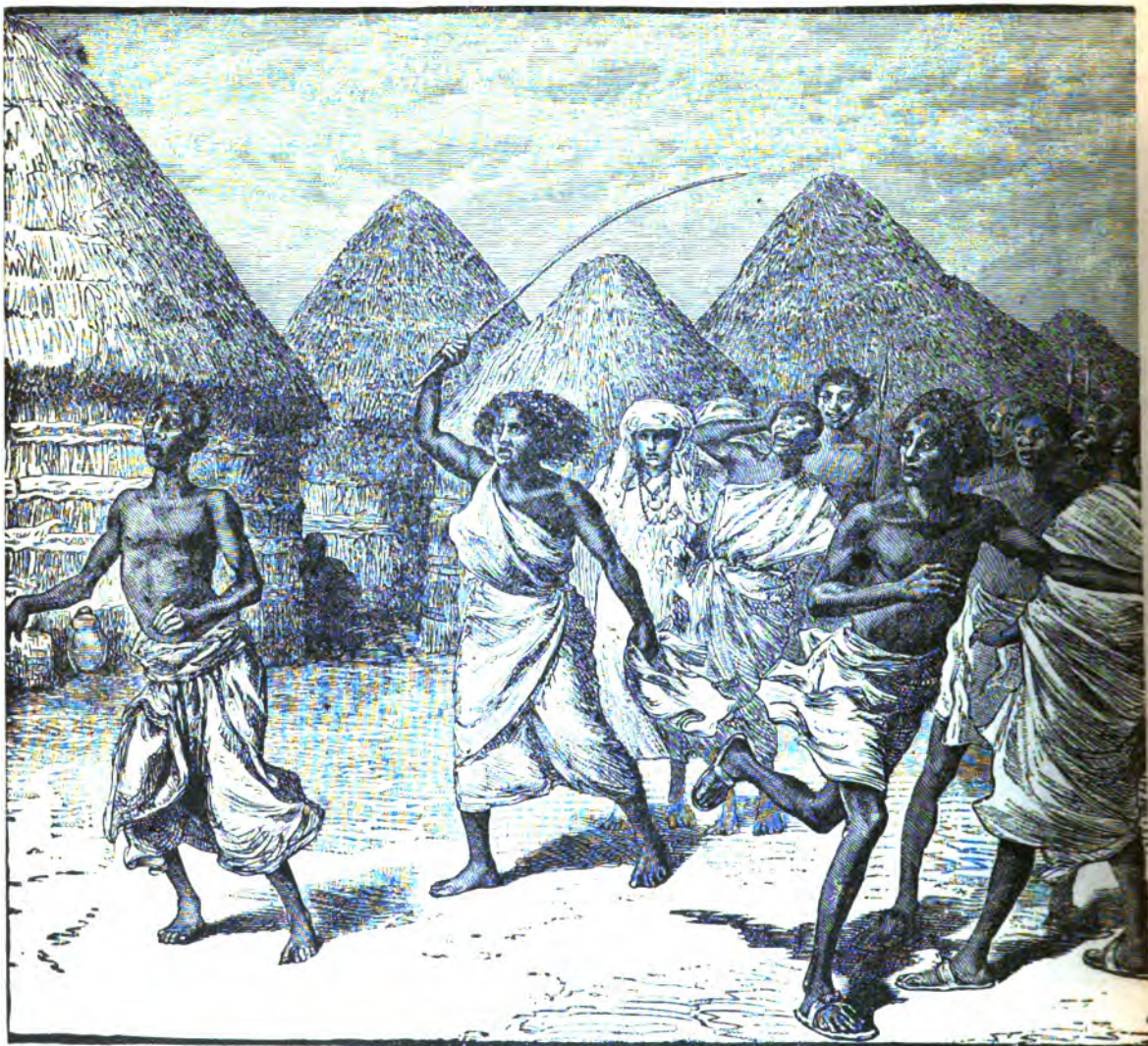
They paced backward and forward, asking themselves, 'Are the Wagogo to be beaten like this by Musungu? A Mgogo is a Mgwana (a free man); he is not used to be beaten—hahcht!' But whenever I made a motion, flourishing my whip toward them, these mighty braggarts found it convenient to move to respectful distances from the irritated Musungu."

A march of three days brought the expedition to the Wahumba district, which is small, comprising only a few villages, and these not numerous inhabited; but the people are none the less remarkable. They live in cone huts plastered with cow-dung, and shaped like the Tartar tents of Turkestan. The men are remarkably well formed and handsome, having clean limbs and the most exquisite features. Athletics from their youth, they intermarry and keep the race pure. The women are as handsome as the men, and have a clear ebony skin of an inky hue. Their ornaments consist of spiral rings of brass, pendant from the ears, brass ring collars about their necks, and a spiral cincture of brass around the loins, used as an ornament and also to keep the goat-skins folded about their persons in place; these skins depend from the shoulder and shade one-half the bosom.

#### A MOMENT OF DREAD.

The village of Mukondoku, on the borders of Ugogo, is a large place, containing perhaps three thousand people. They flocked to see the wonderful man whose face was white, who wore the most remarkable things on his person, and possessed the most surprising weapons; guns which "bum-bummed" as fast as you could count on your fingers. They formed such a mob of howling savages that Stanley for an instant thought there was something besides mere curiosity which caused such commotion and attracted such numbers to the roadside. Halting, he asked what was the matter, and what they wanted, and why they made such a noise? One burly rascal, taking his words for a declaration of hostilities, promptly drew his bow, but in an instant Stanley's faithful Winchester, with thirteen shots in the magazine, was ready and at the shoulder, but he waited to see the arrow fly before pouring the leaden messengers of death into the crowd. They vanished as quickly as they had come, leaving the burly Thersites, and two or three irresolute fellows of his tribe, standing within pistol range. Such a sudden dispersion of the mob which, but a moment before, was overwhelming in numbers, caused Stanley to lower his rifle, and to indulge in a hearty laugh at the disgraceful flight of the men-destroyers. The Arabs, who were as much alarmed at their boisterous obtrusiveness, now came up to patch a truce, in which they succeeded to everybody's satisfaction. A few words of explanation and the mob came back in greater numbers than before, and the savage who had been the cause of the momentary disturbance was obliged to retire abashed before the pressure of public opinion. A chief now came up, whom Stanley afterward learned was the second man to Swaruru, the Sultan, and lectured the people upon their treatment of the "White Stranger." "Know ye not, Wagogo," shouted he, "that this Musungu is a Sultan

(mtemi—a most high title). He has not come to Ugogo like the Wakonongo (Arabs), to trade in ivory, but to see us and give presents. Why do you molest him and his people? Let them pass in peace. If you wish to see him, draw near, but do not mock him. The first of you who creates a disturbance, let him beware; our great mtemi shall know how you treat his friends." He there-



THE CHIEF TEACHING HIS SUBJECTS MANNERS.

upon seized a long stick and laid about him so vigorously that the crowd was driven into the huts and did not offer any further annoyances.

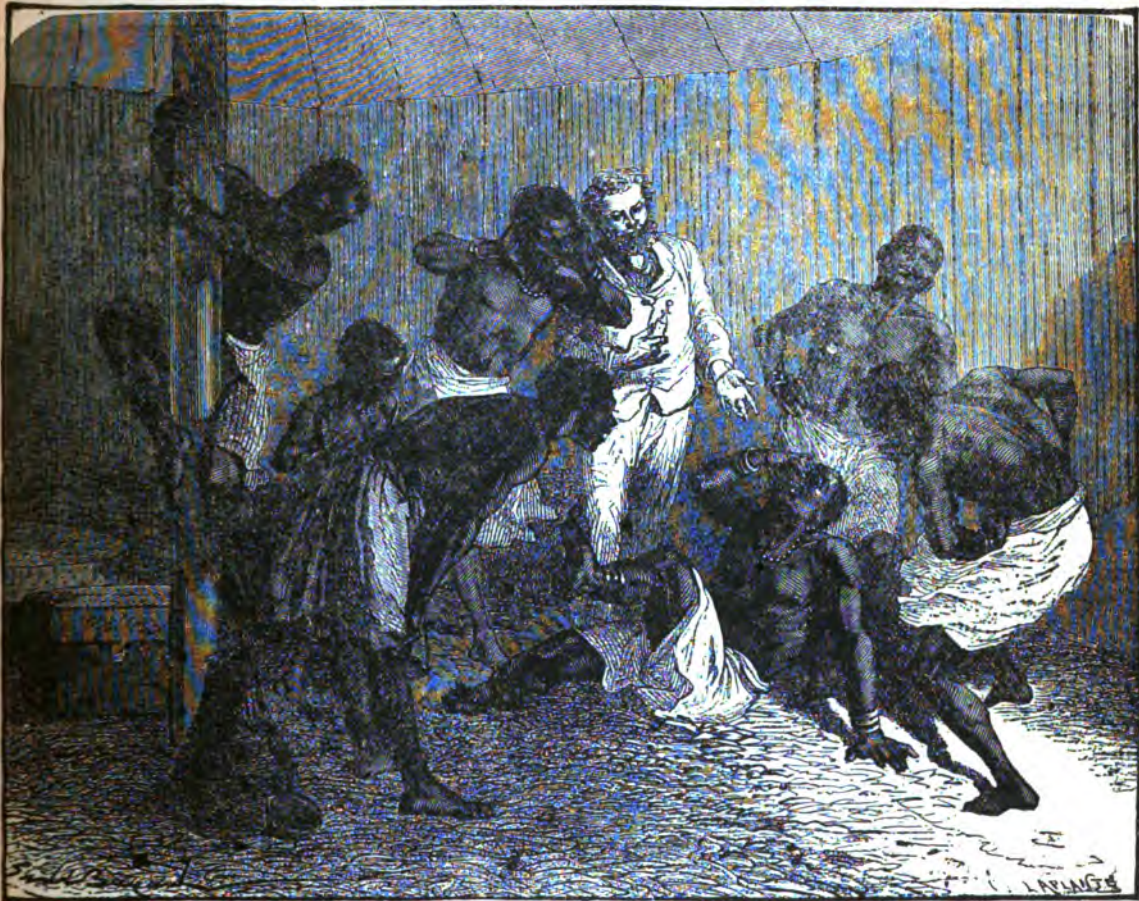
ARRIVAL AT UNYANYEMBE.

The march, after the foregoing incident, was uninterrupted, until the caravan reached Unyanyembe, which is situated on an undulating plain, surrounded by most picturesque scenery, and lies nearly five hundred miles, by the route, or three hundred as the crow flies, from Zanzibar. As will be remembered, the



last caravan left Bagamoyo March 21, 1871; they arrived in Unyanyembe on the 22d of June, having been three months on the way. Considering the character of the country traversed and obstacles met with, this average of five miles per day was an uncommonly good one.

The Arab governor of Unyanyembe, Sayd bin Salim, received Stanley in a most hospitable manner and with delightful courtesy, which did not relapse during the three months that he was compelled, by sickness and a war which was at the time being prosecuted by a native chief named Mirambo against the



ONLY A WHIFF OF AMMONIA.

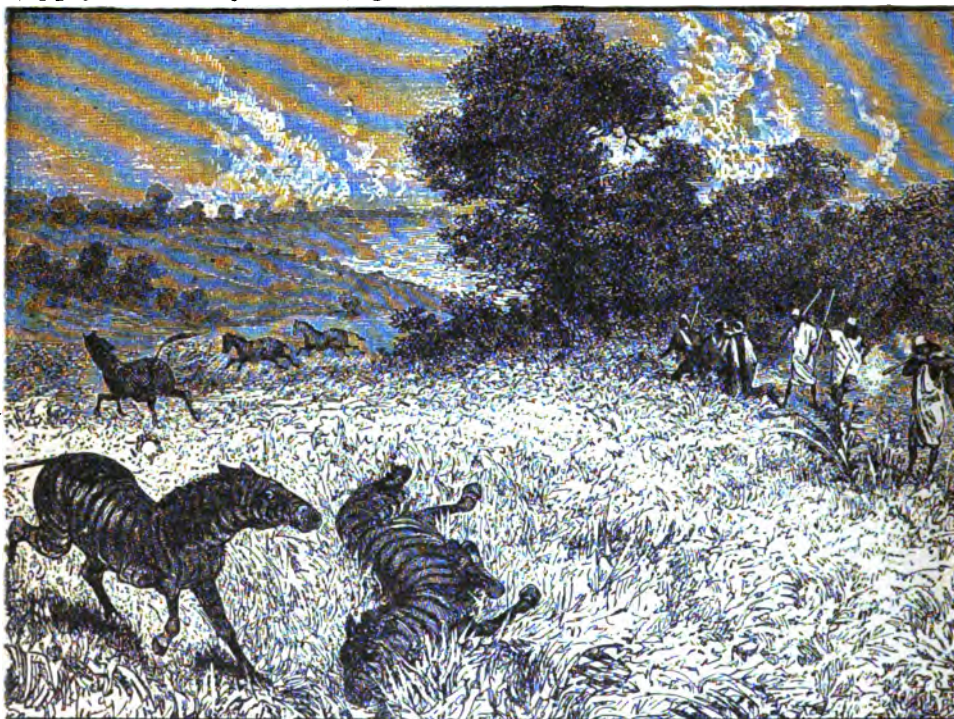
Arabs, to remain in Unyanyembe. This interval also gave Stanley time to reorganize a new force, of which he stood greatly in need, because of the insubordination of a large part of his original escort.

The public highway to Ujiji was rendered very dangerous to travellers by Mirambo's soldiers, who were in ambush in many places along the route watching for Arab troops and caravans, so that Stanley very prudently decided to proceed by a long circuit to the south-west, which, though it presented many difficulties, was at least secure. Accordingly, on the 20th of September, the expedition set forward again, but not without many interruptions. Shaw became



a victim to hypochondria, and so totally unfitted for travel that at his entreaties he was sent back to Unyanyembe, where a few weeks later he died.

The route taken by Stanley led through Ugunda, a well fortified city of three thousand people, and an elevated, healthy and highly productive country in which he expected supplies would be easily obtained. But the general fear of Mirambo made it difficult to open negotiations with the natives, and but for the diplomacy of Bombay, the expedition would have suffered from a scarcity of food. This cunning and most serviceable lieutenant finally gained the ear of the Manyara chief, and by the presentation of a quantity of royal cloths and brass secured not only the chief's confidence, but a liberal supply of honey, fowls, goats and vegetables. This confidence soon assumed



A GLORIOUS HUNT.

the air of familiarity by the chief and his principal men entering Stanley's tent, where their curiosity was regaled by a dose of strong brandy and a whiff of ammonia. They complained of the terrible strength of the white man's pombe and the chief

tumbled over backwards when he took a deep inhalation of the ammonia, to the very great amusement of all present.

#### A LAND WITH GAME ABOUNDING.

A day's march from Manyara brought the expedition to the Gambe river, along the banks of which were thousands of buffaloes, giraffes, hartbeests, zebras, elands, springboks, guinea fowls, floricans and other animals and birds. The temptation to take a hunt was irresistible, and Stanley went out for a day's sport, during which he killed two buffaloes, two wild boars, three hartbeests, one zebra, one pallah, eight guinea fowls, three floricans, and two large fish-eagles, off which the expedition feasted for two days. Instead, however, of the feast putting everybody in good humor, an opposite effect seemed to have



been produced, for when Stanley ordered a resumption of the march he was met by an obstinate refusal, and a mutiny, of which Bombay was the leader. Prompt and vigorous measures, however, served to quell it with no other resort to force than a punch of one of the leaders with a gun and threat to shoot the others.

Confidence returned after the subsidence of the mutineers, and Bombay came forward to embrace Stanley and swear perpetual allegiance. The country too was now much improved, and as Lake Tanganyika was less than one hundred miles distant, the spirits of every one appeared to suddenly rise at the pleasing prospects before them. On the 22d of October, Stanley went into camp on a clear stream of water called the Mtambu, at which lions, leopards and wild boars came to quench their thirst, and about which elephants and rhinoceri were very numerous. When driving the donkeys and goats down to water a black leopard leaped out of the adjacent jungle and fastened on the neck of a



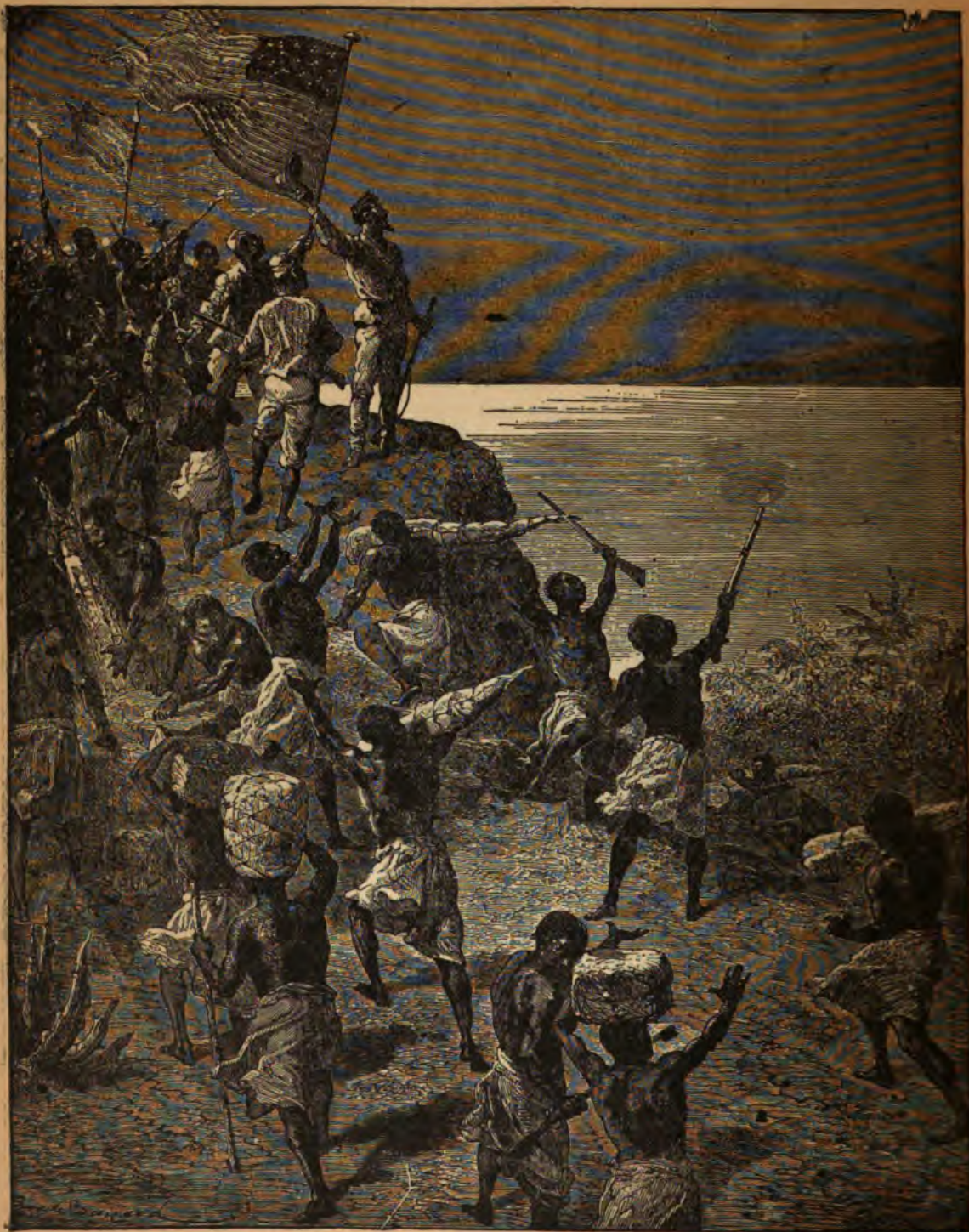
A BOAR! A BOAR!

donkey. The surprise was so great that the men broke in precipitate retreat, leaving their herds to the mercies of whatever ravenous animal might wish to satisfy its hunger. The poor donkey stood his ground, however, and set up such a deafening braying that the leopard was more frightened than the men, and leaving its perch on the donkey's neck retreated into the thicket, nor did any of the wild animals, so plentiful thereabouts, show themselves to any member of the expedition. The braying donkey had cleared the country.

#### MONKEYS, A SAVAGE BOAR AND RAVENOUS CROCODILE.

A few miles beyond the Mtambu Stanley went to hunt in the beautiful park-like country, but found nothing for some time, until, when on the point of returning to the caravan, his attention was arrested by a troop of monkeys that had been startled in the high branches of a tall tree by the strange appearance, to them, of a white man. They chattered in the most boisterous manner and performed the most ludicrous acts, which afforded Stanley consid-







erable amusement until his gun-bearer, Kalulu, shouted, "A boar! a boar!" Immediately Stanley turned from the monkeys and saw, within a few yards of him, a reddish-brown wild boar that stood champing and showing its murderous looking tusks. Recovering his self-possession, he advanced within forty yards of the beast, and fired at his fore-shoulder. The boar made a furious bound, and then stood with his bristles erected and his tufted tail curved over his back. Another shot was planted in his chest, and ploughed its way entirely through his body; but instead of falling, the boar charged at Stanley, and received another bullet through the body, whereupon it dropped; but as Stanley stooped to cut its throat, it sprang up and darted off into the jungle.

Two days after this incident, November 2d, the expedition reached the Malagazazi river, which was considerably swollen by recent rains. There was no other means of crossing the donkeys than by swimming them over, while the men walked across on a large fallen tree, holding to the lariats. In making the passage one of the donkeys was seized by a monster crocodile, and despite its braying and struggling and the shouts of the men as they pulled on the rope to which it was fast, the poor creature was drawn under and carried away, to be devoured.

The following day Stanley met a party of Waguphas, who lived in a district south-west of Lake Tanganyika, from whom he learned the welcome news that they had just come from Ujiji, where they saw a white man who had marched from a far country, and being deserted by his carriers had come into Ujiji in a sick and greatly enfeebled condition.

#### THE FINDING OF LIVINGSTONE.

This news stimulated Stanley to put forth every effort to reach Ujiji at the earliest possible moment, as he felt certain that the white man was no other than Livingstone, and he was much concerned lest the great explorer might leave Ujiji before his arrival. Special rewards were offered the carriers if they would make more rapid progress, but the march was soon interrupted by a warlike chief who appeared with eighty warriors demanding a heavy toll for permission to pass his territory. As his stores were already very low, and there were several other chiefs between him and Ujiji, Stanley decided to make a circuit in order to avoid the toll routes, even though his arrival at Ujiji would be considerably delayed. Accordingly, a wide detour was made by following elephant paths in the jungle, selecting night as the most favorable time for journeying, because more likely to avoid discovery. By this means a safe passage was made, and on the 16th of November he entered Ujiji, having made the trip from Bagamoyo in one year and a month from the time of starting.

The entrance into the post was made amid the beating of drums, firing of guns and waving of flags, so great a noise being thus made that, weak as he was, Livingstone came out of his quarters to discover the cause. The servants of Livingstone preceded him to the place of tumult, and from these Stanley learned that the object of his search was near by; directly after Livingstone

himself came up, to whom Stanley addressed the first words—"Dr. Livingstone, I presume."

The joy of this meeting was inexpressible, and hence no attempt was made by either to measure his thankfulness in words. It was like the reunion of the prodigal son and his father, who feasted upon the fatted calf in order to place the stomach in harmony with the spirit, for after the first greeting Stanley and Livingstone at once indulged themselves at a rich repast with champagne accompaniment, a few bottles of which Stanley had brought with him in anticipation of just such an occasion.

#### CHALLENGED BY AN ELEPHANT.

In a previous chapter I have described what followed the meeting between Stanley and Livingstone, how the two conducted a joint expedition to the northern end of Lake Tanganyika, and on returning how they departed for Unyanyembe together. In this journey only one incident of interest is mentioned, which may be thus briefly related.

They had travelled several days, and after camping one afternoon, Stanley thought he would endeavor to procure some meat, which the interesting region where they then were seemed to promise. He sallied out with his little Winchester along the banks of the river eastward. After travelling for an hour or two, the prospect getting more picturesque and lovely, he went up a ravine which looked very promising. Unsuccessful, he strode up the bank, and to his astonishment found himself directly in front of an elephant, who had his large broad ears held out like studding sails—the colossal monster, the incarnation of might of the African world.

Kalulu, who was with his master, shouted, "Tembo! tembo! bana yango! Lo! an elephant! an elephant, my master!" for the young black rascal had fled as soon as he saw the awful colossus in such close vicinage. Recovering from his astonishment, Stanley thought it prudent to retire also—especially with a pea-shooter loaded with treacherous sawdust cartridges in his hand. As he looked behind he saw the elephant waving his trunk, as much as to say, "Good-bye, young fellow, it is lucky for you that you went in time, for I was going to pound you to a jelly."

They rested at Unyanyembe until March 18th, when Stanley divided his goods with the Doctor and set out on a hurried march for Zanzibar, where it was arranged that he should enlist a new company and send them back to Livingstone, with such additional supplies and goods as he needed. It was a sad farewell. A strong mutual attachment had sprung up between the two men, alone in the wilderness of Central Africa, and when the time came they found it hard to separate. Stanley was going home to the comforts and pleasures of civilization, while his friend would again plunge into the dark forests in search of that *ignis fatuus*, the source of the Nile. They walked together along the homeward route for some distance; then Livingstone stopped and held out his hand. The time to part had come. Words stuck fast in the throats



STANLEY'S MEETING WITH LIVINGSTONE.





of each during that silent, earnest grip of the hands. Livingstone turned his face to the west, and walked slowly back toward Unyanyembe, and descending a gentle slope he disappeared forever from the civilized world, while Stanley thoughtfully and sorrowfully turned his face to the east.

HOME AGAIN, AND HONORED BY THE QUEEN.

The return march to Zanzibar was accomplished in much less time than it took to complete the outward journey, and without special incident, as there was now no danger of mutiny or dissatisfaction. The expedition left Ujiji on the 26th of December, 1871, and marched into Bagamoyo on the 7th of May, thus making the return trip in less than five months.



STANLEY AND LIVINGSTONE ON THE SHORE OF TANGANYIKA.

The news of Stanley's return and the success of his expedition was immediately sent to all parts of the world, where the telegraph reaches, and Europe and America stood with outstretched hands waiting for his presence to load him with honor. The English were at first jealous of his success, because he was an American, but this feeling soon changed to admiration. He arrived in England late in July, and read on account of his expedition before the British Association at Brighton, August 16th. This report was immediately published, and being read by the Queen, as a testimonial of her appreciation of his services she sent him a gold snuff-box set with diamonds, and a month later he was honored with a banquet furnished by the Royal Geographical Society.



## CHAPTER XII.

### BURIAL OF LIVINGSTONE, AND STANLEY'S EXPEDITION.



HONORS rested lightly on the head of Stanley, for even while feasts and favors of a hundred kinds were being tendered him by his admirers, he put them all aside to respond to a call from the *Herald* for his services again, which took him at once to West Africa to report the Ashantee war. On his return to England again, in April, 1874, he learned of the death of Livingstone, and that his body was then *en route* to London for burial in Westminster Abbey. The news fell like a pall over all England, but upon none was the effect more depressing, perhaps, than on Stanley, who appreciated to the fullest extent the ambition and philanthropic motives that had actuated Livingstone in giving twenty-six years of his life to exploration in the interest of civilization, and who had used his best efforts for the amelioration of the debased but inhumanely wronged savages of Africa.

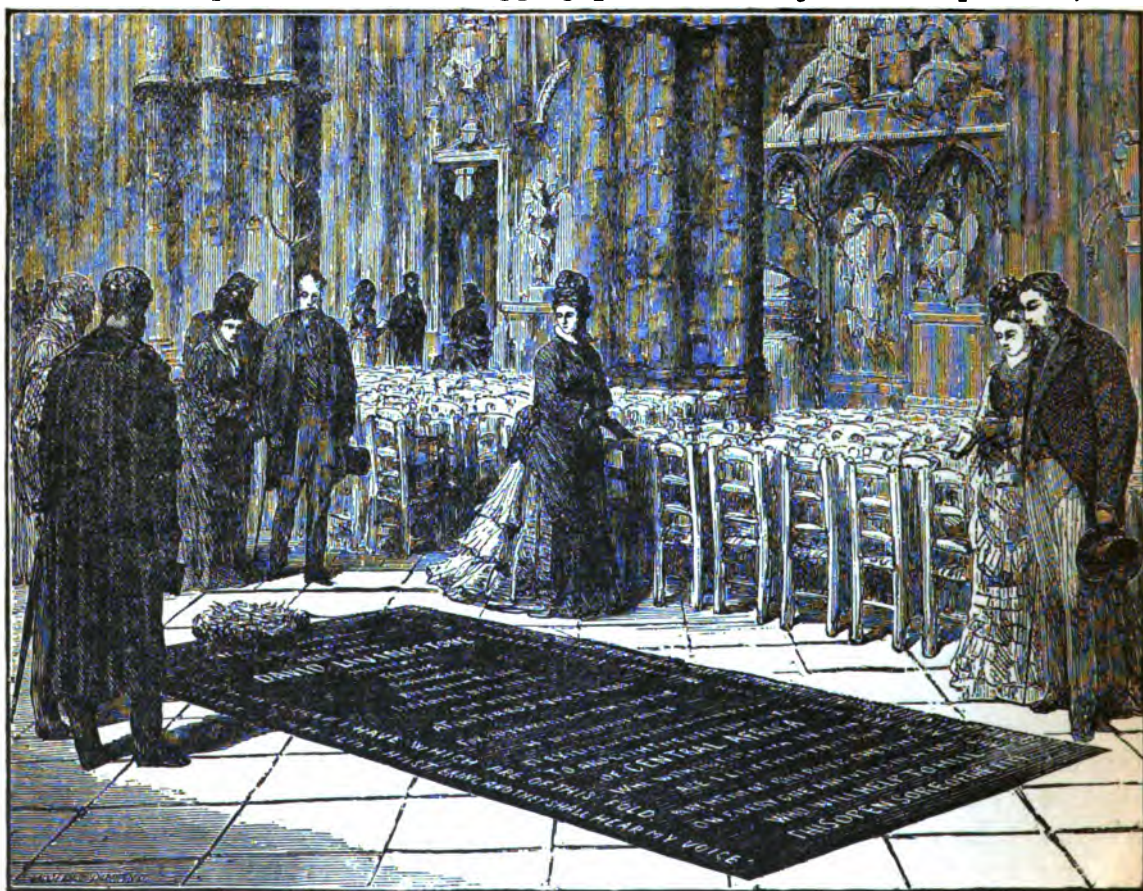
When the distinguished dead arrived in England, funeral arrangements were made to give to the burial a pomp equal to that bestowed on a dead king, and Stanley was selected as one of the pall-bearers. When the body was lowered into the grave, besides kings, queens, and the great potentates and master minds who have lent fame and lustre to England, Stanley turned away in a reflective mood, thinking of the energy, self-denial, aspirations and accomplishments of the great Livingstone, and how his life had suddenly terminated when the allurements of hope for ambition attained seemed most seductive. In this mood he conceived the idea of taking up the work which the beloved explorer had thus laid down, and with like aspirations pursue it to such an end as God would give him to accomplish.

Shortly after Livingstone's funeral Stanley was a caller at the office of the *London Daily Telegraph*, where, engaging in conversation with the proprietors, the subject of African exploration was introduced, in which Stanley expressed some opinions regarding the lake regions of that continent that excited so much interest in the proprietors of the paper that they asked him how he would like to attempt a completion of the labors left unfinished by Livingstone. The question immediately aroused him to a pitch of enthusiasm, and he exhibited such an intense desire to enter upon the undertaking that arrangements were directly made by the *Telegraph* and *New York Herald* to jointly equip an

expedition, and place Stanley at the head with a commission to explore the lake regions of Africa, to complete the discoveries of Burton, Speke, Grant and Baker; and, incidentally, to determine the true sources of the Nile, and the Lualaba, or Livingstone, rivers.

#### EQUIPMENT OF THE EXPEDITION.

The preliminaries having been agreed upon, he was not long in making his preparations. Applications poured in upon him from the adventure-loving spirits of Europe and America, begging permission to join the expedition; but



LIVINGSTONE'S GRAVE IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

he chose only three young Englishmen, John and Edward Pocock, and Frederick Barker. In the matter of dogs, however, he was more liberal, for he selected four, a mastiff, retriever, bull-terrier, and a bull dog.

There was no lack of money at his disposal, and he was thereby enabled to equip his expedition with everything that he might by any possibility require; and when he set sail on the 15th of August, 1874, for Zanzibar, he was better prepared for the work before him than any previous expedition. He arrived at Zanzibar on the 21st of September, and on November 12th, more than two hundred porters having been engaged, the expedition set sail for Bagamoyo.



When ready to start for the interior, the expedition comprised three hundred and fifty-six persons, among whom were thirty-six women, and when they marched out of Bagamoyo, on the 17th of November, they formed a line half a mile in length. Among the heaviest articles was a boat, named *Lady Alice*, forty feet long, six feet beam, and thirty inches deep. It was made in twelve sections, and afterward cut into as many more, to facilitate its transportation.

Stanley's experience, obtained on his previous expedition, was of such service to him that he pushed forward with great rapidity, being detained at few places, because he knew the character of the people along the route and had learned



STANLEY'S DOGS IN THE VILLAGE OF KAGEHYI.

how to avoid oppressive tolls without exciting their open hostility. The first serious misfortune that befell the expedition was in the death of Edwark Pocock, on the 17th of January, 1875, who succumbed to a virulent attack of typhus fever, after a very short illness.

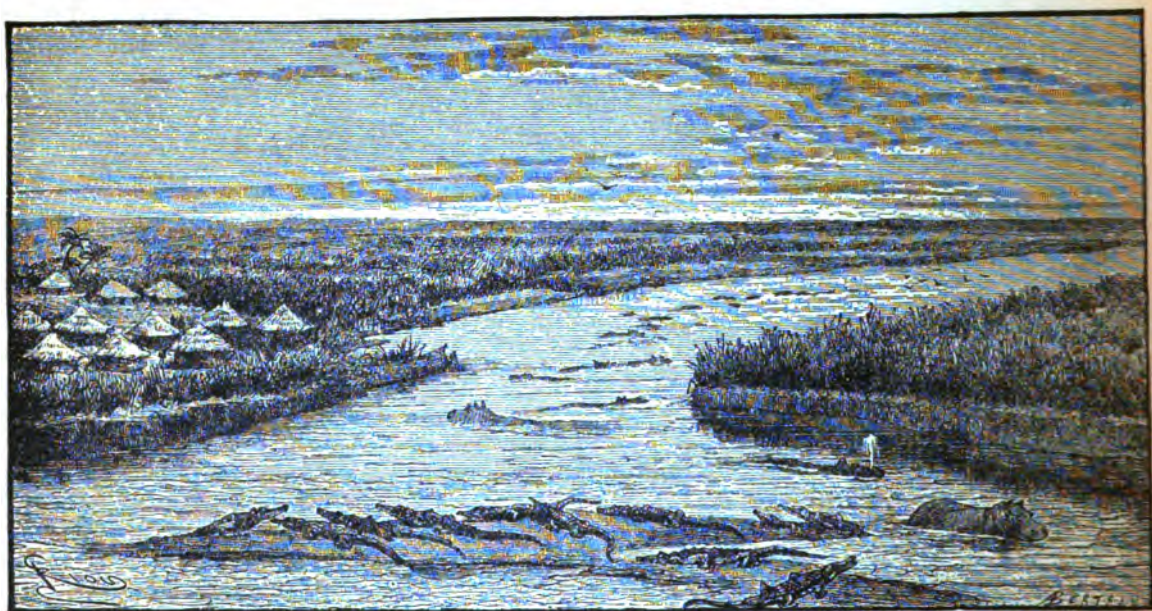
#### CIRCUMNAVIGATING LAKE VICTORIA.

The expedition followed the route first taken by Stanley, until midway between Bagamoyo and Ujiji, when it took a due north course and continued in this direction until the south shore of Lake Victoria was reached, February 28th, at a village called Kagehyi. Here Stanley found provisions in great



abundance, but they were purchasable only at extortionate prices, which he was compelled to submit to, as the friendship of Prince Kaduma, who ruled that territory, was indispensable to Stanley's purposes.

But the great cost of living in the district made it necessary to move as quickly as possible, so that on the second day after their arrival Stanley launched the *Lady Alice* and prepared for a circumnavigation of the lake. Kaduma endeavored to dissuade Stanley from his purpose, by declaring that the lake was so large that it would take years to cross it, while along its northern shores lived tribes so ferocious that no stranger dared approach them; some of these people were gifted with tails; others trained enormous and fierce dogs, while others preferred human flesh to all other kinds of meat. These superstitious fears had such an effect upon Stanley's men, that when he called for volun-



VILLAGE OF IGUSA.

teers to accompany him on the voyage, not a single one came forward. Persuasion being of no avail, he was compelled to conscript ten of the young guides enlisted at Bagamoyo, who were boatmen, and on the 8th of March the lake voyage was begun. Five miles from Kagehyi they came to the village of Igusa, where, by offers of large rewards, a fisherman named Saramba, who had been much on the lake, was engaged as guide.

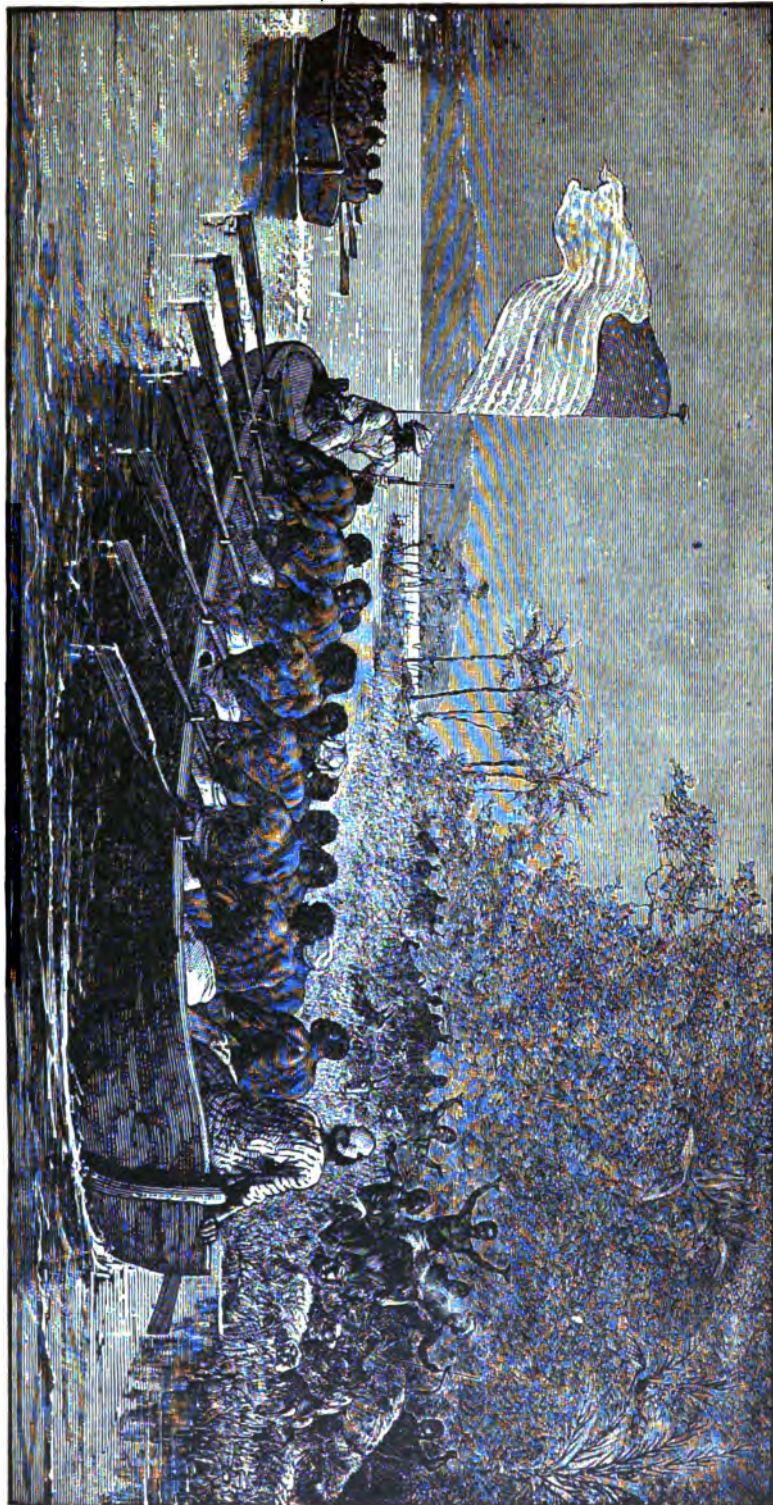
Interesting sights engaged the attention of the navigators. Hippopotami and crocodiles were almost plentiful enough to dispute the passage, and many were shot, without the party being attacked in return, as is often the case. On the 21st of March they landed on a beautiful little island, which, besides its verdure and inviting shades, contained a remarkable natural bridge of basaltic rock, which formed an irregular arch more than twenty feet in length, under



which there was great depth of water and which permitted the *Lady Alice* to pass. Another island near by was distinguished as possessing a grotto which might be likened unto that in which Calypso, the enchantress, lived.

LOOK OUT FOR AN  
ATTACK.

Nothing up to this time had occurred to mar the pleasure of this most delightful voyage, although the shores were densely populated, with villages in almost unbroken continuity, and the people anxious to receive the white man, who had been heralded in advance. At length, however, upon reaching a bay that was bordered by a plain on one side and a promontory on another, in the north-east corner of the lake, Stanley met with a less friendly people, in pronounced contrast with others who spoke the Usoga language, whom he had met five hours before, and who, though naked, had much kindness of heart, and offered him supplies of sheep and vege-



STANLEY CIRCUMNAVIGATING LAKE VICTORIA.

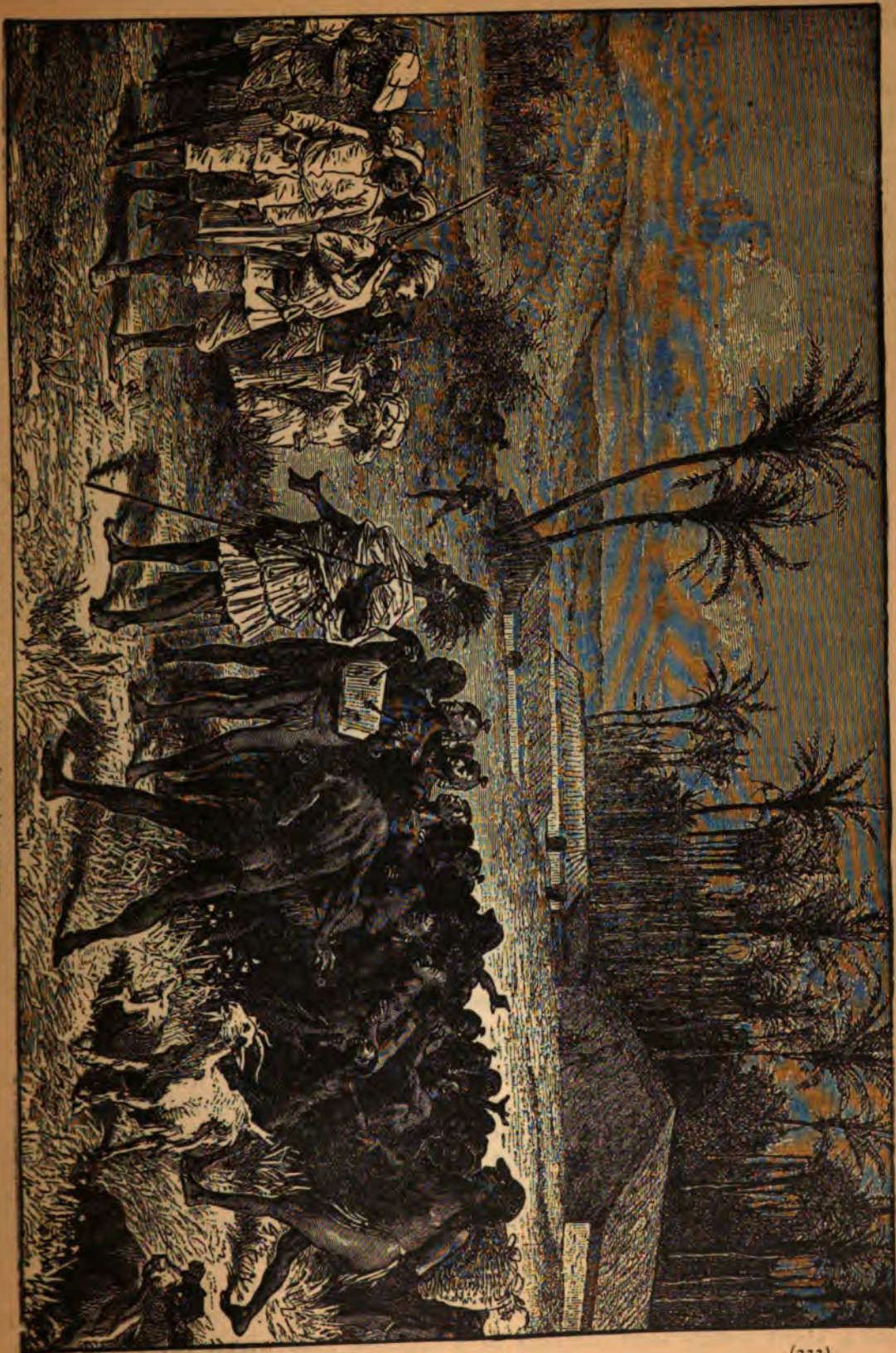
tables in exchange for beads. After leaving these generous and peaceable natives a heavy storm compelled the navigators to put into a cove for safety. Scarcely had they come to anchor when canoes filled with warriors shot out from the bank and began making menaces with lances and bows. Finding that their challenges brought no demonstrations of resistance, they came nearer until one of the canoes, containing some fifty half-drunken savages, came alongside and was lashed to the *Lady Alice*. They at once seized upon many articles in the boat, and when their attempt to pillage was resisted they seized their spears, sang bacchanalian songs and began to fling stones, one of which came so dangerously near Stanley's head that he seized his revolver and discharged it rapidly into the water, correctly surmising that this would thoroughly alarm the natives. At the sound they beat a hasty retreat and offered no further molestation. A few days later, however, Stanley was hailed by some natives on shore, responding to which his crew was basely attacked with stones and the steersman badly wounded. Hundreds flocked about the boat and began rifling the bales of goods, to protect which Stanley fired his pistol over their heads. This caused the savages some alarm, but after running off a few yards they returned apparently in greater numbers and with most hostile intent. Stanley was therefore compelled, in self-defence, to fire upon them with his large rifle, unfortunately killing a half dozen, which put the remainder to flight.

#### A MESSENGER FROM KING M'TESA.

No further adventure was met with, and on the 2d of April the navigators arrived at the village of Kerudo, where they were received with the greatest hospitality. It was the intention to send messengers from this point to apprise M'tesa, King of Uganda, of Stanley's coming, but on the following morning six beautiful canoes, filled with men dressed in white, were seen approaching, which indicated that some news from the royal household was about to be communicated. On their arrival it was found that the canoes contained the king's messenger Magassa, and his escort of one hundred and eighty-two men, who had been dispatched with an invitation to the white man to visit the monarch of Uganda. This messenger was gorgeously arrayed for the important occasion; he wore a bead-worked head-dress, above which long white cock's feathers waved, and a snowy white and long-haired goat-skin, intertwined with a crimson robe, depending from his shoulders, completed his costume. Approaching Stanley, he delivered his message thus:

"The Kabaka sends me with many salaams to you. He is in great hopes that you will visit him, and has encamped at Uşavara, that he may be near the lake when you come. He does not know from what land you have come, but I have a swift messenger with a canoe who will not stop until he gives all the news to the Kabaka. His mother dreamed a dream a few nights ago, and in her dream she saw a white man on this lake in a boat coming this way, and the next morning she told the Kabaka, and, lo! you have come. Give me your





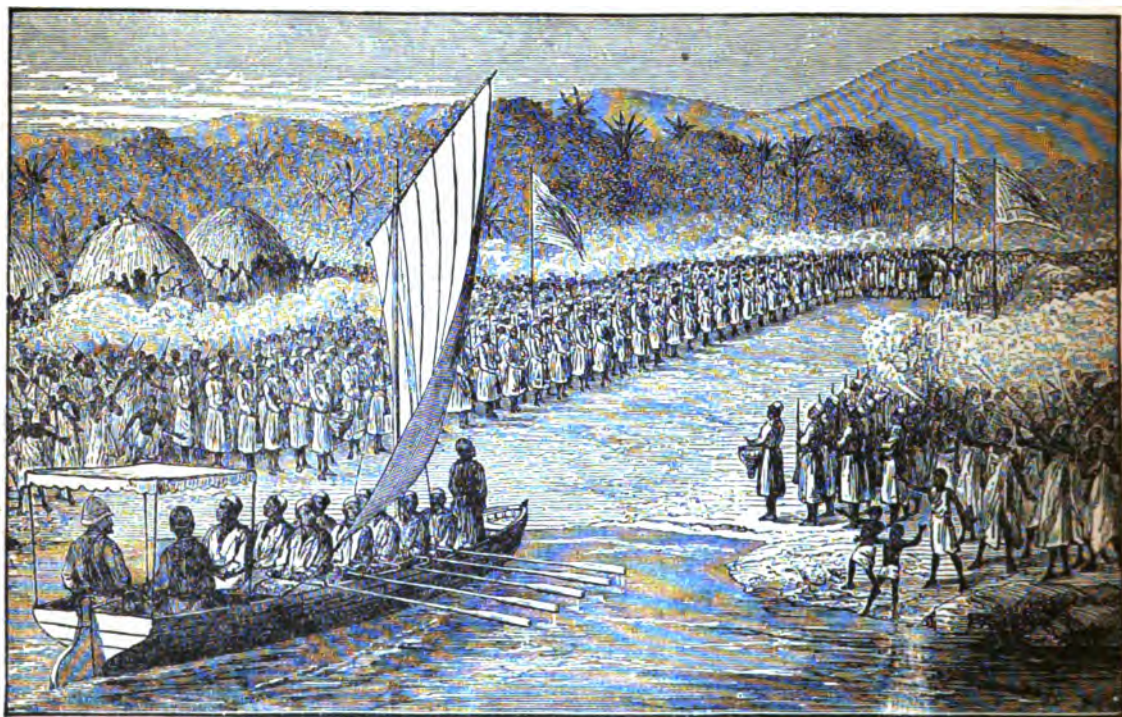
MAGASSA INVITING STANLEY TO M'YESA'S COURT.



answer, that I may send the messenger. Twiyanzi-yanzi-yanzi!" (Thanks, thanks, thanks.)

By Magassa's request Stanley remained another day at Kerudo, to give time for more ample preparation at the court to receive him, as the king had not supposed that a realization of the queen's dream was so near at hand.

On the following day Magassa, in his superb canoe, led the way, with Stanley following. When about two miles from Usavara, they saw what they estimated to be thousands of people arranging themselves in order on a gently rising ground. When about a mile from the shore, Magassa gave the order to signal the advance upon it with fire-arms, and was at once obeyed by a dozen



RECEPTION OF STANLEY BY M'TESA.

musketeers. Half a mile off Stanley saw that the people on the shore had formed themselves into two dense lines, at the ends of which stood several finely dressed men, arrayed in crimson and black and snowy white. As they neared the beach, volleys of musketry burst out from the long lines. Magassa's canoes steered outward to right and left, while two hundred or three hundred heavily loaded guns announced to all around that the white man—whom M'tesa's mother had dreamed about—had landed. Numerous kettle and brass drums sounded a noisy welcome, and flags, banners and bannerets waved, and the people gave a great shout. Very much amazed at all this ceremonious and pompous greeting, Stanley strode up toward the great standard, near which stood a short young man, dressed in a crimson robe which covered an immacu-



lately white dress of bleached cotton, before whom Magassa, who had hurried ashore, kneeled reverently, and turning to the visitor, begged him to understand that this short young man was the *Katekiro* (Prime Minister).

WELCOME TO UGANDA, AND RECEPTION BY THE KING.

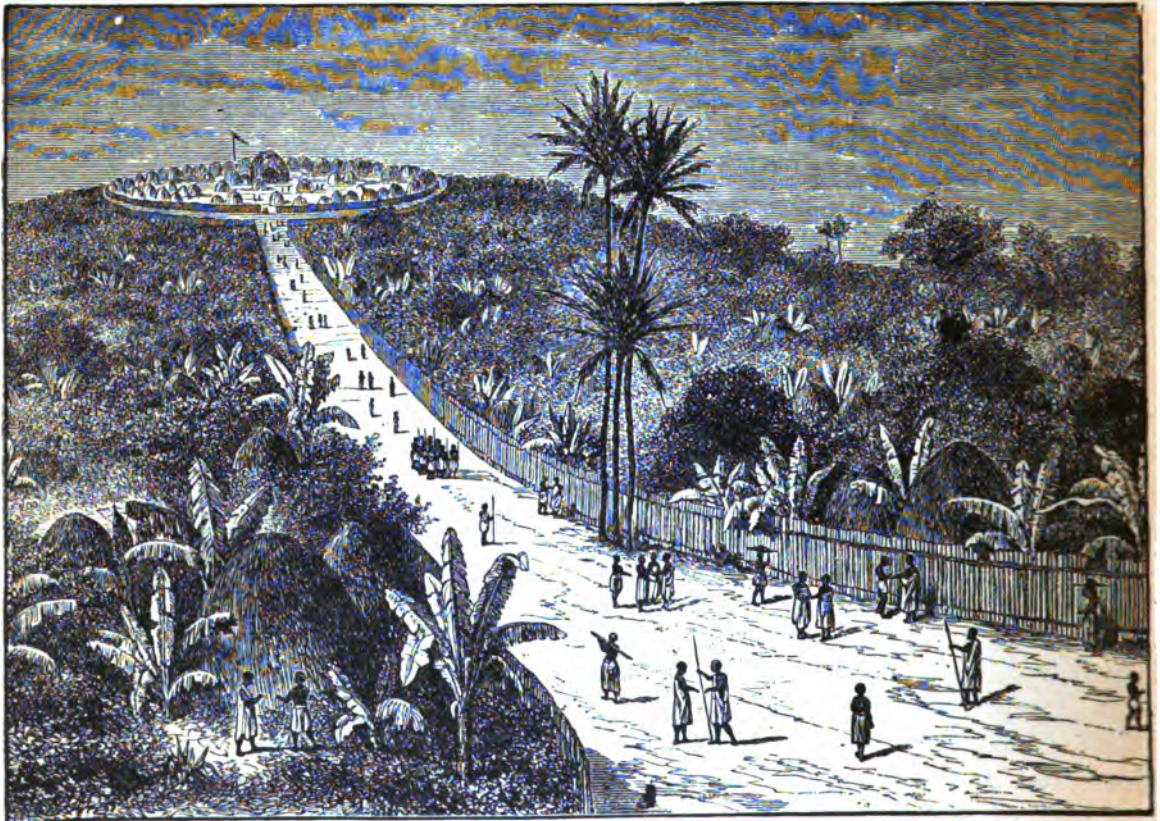
A dozen well-dressed officers came forward, and grasping Stanley's hand, welcomed him to Uganda. By these he was conducted to a court-yard, surrounded by a circle of grass-thatched huts, in the midst of which was a larger house where he was invited to make his quarters. He was soon besieged by all manner of questions concerning the earth, air, and the heavens, which he apparently answered to the satisfaction of the natives, for they went immediately to the king (M'tesa) and told him the white man knew everything. At this his Majesty rubbed his hands as though he had just come into possession of a treasure, and sent fourteen fat oxen, sixteen goats and sheep, a hundred bunches of bananas, three dozen fowls, four wooden jars of milk, four baskets of sweet potatoes, fifty ears of green Indian corn, a basket of rice, twenty fresh eggs, and ten pots of maramba wine. Kauta, M'tesa's steward or butler, at the head of the drovers and bearers of these various provisions, fell on his knees before Stanley and said:

"The Kabaka (king) sends salaams unto his friend who has travelled so far to see him. The Kabaka cannot see the face of his friend until he has eaten and is satisfied. The Kabaka has sent his slave with these few things to his friend that he may eat, and at the ninth hour, after his friend has rested, the Kabaka will send and call for him to appear at the burzah. I have spoken. Twiyanzi-yanzi-yanzi!"

The appointed time approached, and Stanley was prepared for the memorable hour when he should meet the foremost man of Equatorial Africa. Two of the king's pages came to announce that everything was ready. Forthwith issued from the court-yard five of the boat's crew on each side of Stanley, armed with Snider rifles. They reached a short broad street, at the end of which was a hut. Here the Kabaka was seated, while a multitude of chiefs, wakungu (generals) and watongoleh (colonels), ranked from the throne in two opposing kneeling or seated lines, the ends being closed in by drummers, guards, executioners, pages, etc. As they approached the nearest group it opened, and the drummers beat mighty sounds. The Great King of Equatorial Africa arose and advanced, at which all the kneeling and seated lines stood up—generals, colonels, chiefs, cooks, butlers, pages, executioners, etc.

M'tesa took a deliberate view of Stanley, as if studying him, while the compliment was reciprocated, since the latter was no less interested in the king. After the audience Stanley repaired to his hut and wrote the following: "As I had read Speke's book for the sake of its geographical information, I retained but a dim remembrance of his description of his life in Uganda. If I remember rightly, Speke described a youthful prince, vain and heartless, a wholesale

murderer and tyrant, one who delighted in fat women. Doubtless he described what he saw, but it is far from being the state of things now. M'tesa has impressed me as being an intelligent and distinguished prince, who, if aided in time by virtuous philanthropists, will do more for Central Africa than fifty years of gospel teaching, unaided by such authority, can do. I think I see in him the light that shall lighten the darkness of this benighted region; a prince well worthy the most hearty sympathies that Europe can give him. In this man I see the possible fruition of Livingstone's hopes, for with his aid the civilization of Equatorial Africa becomes feasible. I remember the ardor and



M'TESA'S CAPITAL, AND PALACE.

love which animated Livingstone when he spoke of Sekeletu; had he seen M'tesa, his ardor and love had been for him tenfold, and his pen and tongue would have been employed in calling all good men to assist him."

#### THE SAVAGERY OF M'TESA.

Stanley's opinion of M'tesa was undoubtedly correct at the time, though it represents that monarch as having undergone a most remarkable change, losing his savagery by an adoption of the Moslem faith under the religious instruction of Muley bin Salim, who, though a slave trader, was a devotee to Islamism. This change must have been quite sudden, as, less than two years



before Stanley's visit Colonel Long, an attache of General Gordon, thought on horseback from Gondokoro to the Uganda capital, and a week reconciled by M'tesa had served to impress the colonel with the belief that he was savagely cruel man on earth. Long relates that the king practised water and, ceivable iniquity, and murdered both men and women—his wives, servants. Then soldiers—for apparently the delight which their groans gave him. spears

But that the effects of conversion to Mohammedanism were most beneficial to M'tesa cannot be disputed, though no other traveller than Stanley had the opportunity of visiting him after his adoption of the faith. It was not long after Stanley's visit, however, that the king died, and whatever good influence he exerted as a convert was buried with him, for his subjects have since exhibited all their former savageness, as subsequent expeditions have proved.

Among other entertainments which M'tesa provided for the amusement of his guest was a sham naval battle between forty splendid canoes, each having a crew of thirty men, in which the most admirable manœuvring and skilful throwing of spears was witnessed. At the conclusion of the battle, in which several persons were injured, M'tesa showed that he had not lost his interest in firearms since Speke's visit, for he sent several of his servants out in search of hippopotami and crocodiles, anxious to see Stanley display his skill in shooting such large creatures. A crocodile was soon discovered, and the king, taking Stanley, ran quickly to the place where it was reported lying on a log, calling his women to come and see the white man shoot. The crocodile was found lying in an exposed position, and Stanley fired his Reilly rifle, carrying a three-ounce ball, with such precision that the reptile's head was half severed, which drew many rounds of applause from the king and his escort.

#### A BLOODY FIGHT WITH NATIVES.

Stanley spent a week with M'tesa in a truly enjoyable way, being shown the greatest deference, and even condescending to a discussion of the relative merits of Islamism and Christianity, and, out of respect for his guest, the king professed conversion from his former faith to the latter, but with what sincerity may not be told.

When at last, against many requests to protract his visit, Stanley determined to resume the circumnavigation of the lake, M'tesa supplied him with thirty canoes and a large force of men under the leadership of Magassa; but this fellow, who had been promoted, proved to be an obstinate, lazy, and most unreliable officer, whom Stanley had to frequently scold and threaten, and finally to send back to Uganda. The escort of thirty canoes, therefore, did not accompany him more than fifty miles, when he was left alone again to complete the exploration of the lake.

Nothing occurred to arrest their progress until the 28th of April, when hunger induced them to steer for an island in quest of food. When fifty yards from shore, a great number of natives rushed down the slopes, uttering fierce

murderer and  
what he saw,  
impressed me  
time by time  
years of  
in him  
prince  
L



STANLEY ATTACKED BY SAVAGE ISLANDERS.



ejaculations and war cries. As this was a common circumstance, Stanley thought but little of it, having no doubt that the natives would be speedily reconciled by the payment of a few yards of cloth and strings of beads.

As the boat came near the shore, several natives rushed into the water and, seizing it, dragged it about twenty yards over the rocky beach, high and dry. Then ensued an indescribable scene; a thousand black devils, armed with bows, spears and knotty war-clubs, swarmed around the boat, with threatening gestures, and yelling like demons. Stanley arose to confront them, with a revolver in each



ALONG THE SHORES OF LAKE VICTORIA.

hand, but his guides restrained him, as any resistance would have only invited a massacre. At length an old man, who was leader of the warlike host, was somewhat placated by a liberal present of beads and cloth, and through his influence the crowd was drawn off a little way for council. Stanley seized this opportunity to effect his escape; he ordered his men to push the boat again into the water with all possible speed. This scheme succeeded so well that the boat was out in the lake before the natives could reach the water. A fight now took place that was very lively for a time. Stanley fired his Reilly rifle four times and killed five men. A shot-gun loaded with buck-shot was brought to

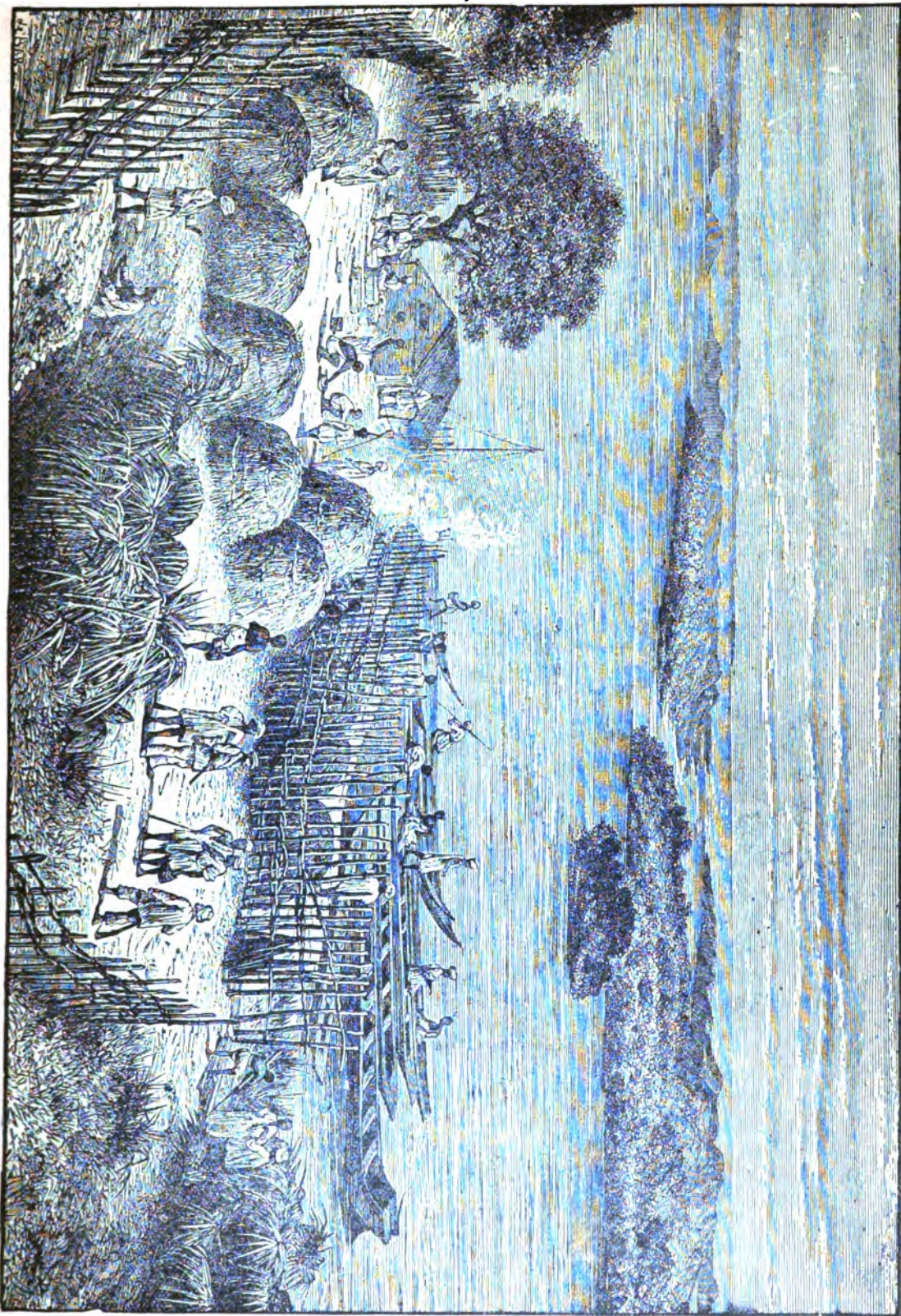
bear on them next, by which several more were slain. This served to stop their attempts to reach the boat by wading, but others quickly manned a half-dozen canoes and shot out from shore to continue the battle. Two of these canoes Stanley sank with the shell-bullets from his Reilly gun. In the midst of the fight two monster hippopotami were observed advancing with wide-open mouths upon the *Lady Alice*, their anger having no doubt been excited by the booming of firearms. Stanley shot one through the brain when it was hardly more than a yard distant, and so badly wounded the other that it sank and retreated. The result of these two shots seemed to produce a panic among the natives, for they immediately relinquished the attack and the canoes were put back to shore with great energy. It was a narrow escape.

At the end of fifty-seven days the circumnavigation of Victoria N'yanza was completed, the distance being 1000 miles. As the boat came in sight of the camp at Kagehyi, a joyful shout was sent up, and when they landed Stanley was raised upon the shoulders of several men and carried triumphantly around the camp, while salutes were fired from all the muskets. This joyful return was sadly marred, however, by news of the death of Frederick Barker, who had died twelve days before. Six other members of the expedition had also fallen victims to dysentery.

#### A SEANCE WITH KING LUKONGEH.

Stanley had intended, after circumnavigating the lake, to return to his camp, and there securing other canoes move his expedition back to Uganda and thence to Lake Albert. Magassa's desertion, with the canoes furnished by M'tesa, left Stanley in an ill condition for resuming the journey, as canoes were not procurable at Kagehyi. The chief of the village, however, told him that canoes might be had of Lukongeh, king of Ukerewe, whose capital was fifty miles distant. On May 29th, Stanley set out to visit Lukongeh, whose palace he reached after a two days' journey, but found the king indulging in one of his royal drunks, so that three days passed before an audience could be had. When the old sot at length got on his legs and was in a semi-condition of sensibility, Stanley showed him a quantity of presents, consisting of rugs, blankets, cloths, beads, wire and copper ornaments, which he had brought to his majesty. These delightful things touched the king's heart, and in his exuberance he promised to furnish Stanley with all the canoes needed. But before suffering his visitor to go, he asked a thousand questions and begged for such wisdom as would give him power over the elements; and especially to renew the virility of his youth, which he had wasted in husbandly duty to more than a hundred wives. When Stanley confessed his inability to grant such requests, the king thought the refusal was due to his fears of not getting the canoes, and felt certain that Stanley would give him everything asked for on his return. He then endeavored to prove his own importance by declaring to Stanley his power to produce rain or drought at will, and that he made the most dutiable servants of hippopotami and crocodiles, the latter being frequently employed to steal women and bring them to him from across the water.





STANLEY'S CAMP AT KAGEHVI.



## FLAMES SENT TO DEVOUR THEM.

On the 7th of June, Stanley secured the loan of twenty-seven canoes from Lukongeh, and 216 men as an escort, with whom he returned to his camp, and on the 20th he dismissed the escort and embarked his regular force of 150 men, women and children in the canoes for Uganda. He led this flotilla in the *Lady Alice*, which was well loaded with fifteen persons and the ammunition.

Upon reaching the island where he had been attacked, Stanley put in for provisions, considering himself secure now against attack, but the people were still defiant, and being so numerous they surrounded him, and though afraid to attack at close quarters they harassed and prevented a resumption of the journey. He was thus besieged for several days and until the fortunate arrival of Magassa, who had been sent out by M'tesa with 300 men in search of him, for a purpose which will soon be explained. With this augmentation of his force Stanley started again, but being compelled to pass through a narrows, where the points of land came within fifty yards of each other, the natives laid in wait there to give him battle. As the canoes approached the passage, arrows, stones and spears began to fly, which were answered by a fusillade of firearms that killed hundreds of the fierce natives and sent the rest flying with a fear that the white man had sent flames to devour them.

The expedition reached M'tesa's on the 23d of August, and the king received Stanley in his council chamber with great ceremony and many evidences of friendship. Stanley took this occasion to inform him of the object of his visit, which was to procure guides and an escort to conduct him to Lake Albert. M'tesa replied that he was now engaged in a war with the rebellious people of Wavuma, who refused to pay their tribute, harassed the coast of Chagwe and abducted his people, "selling them afterward for a few bunches of bananas," and that it was not customary in Uganda to permit strangers to proceed on their journeys while the Kabaka (king) was engaged in war; but as soon as peace should be obtained he would send a chief with an army to give him safe conduct by the shortest route to the lake. Being assured that the war would not last long, Stanley resolved to stay and witness it as a novelty, and take advantage of the time to acquire information about the country and its people.

## MOVEMENT OF M'TESA'S GREAT ARMY.

M'tesa had resolved to open hostilities with his enemies, and to this end, on the 27th of August, he struck camp and began his march towards Nakaranga, which was a point of land lying within seven hundred yards of the island of Ingira, which was the encampment and stronghold of the Wavuma. As the Wasoga, another powerful tribe, was in alliance with the Wavuma, M'tesa expected to engage both, whose combined armies would probably number 100,000 men. To meet these he therefore raised a force of 150,000 fighting men, to which must be added 100,000 women and children, who invariably accompany their husbands and fathers to battle. Thus M'tesa's camp must have numbered





M'TESA'S ARMY ON THE MARCH.



quite 250,000 souls, being much greater than the Federal army that invested Richmond. Stanley had the pleasure of reviewing this immense force as it was put in motion towards the battle-ground. He describes the officers and troops in the following graphic style:

"The advance-guard had departed too early for me to see them, but, curious to see the main body of this great army pass, I stationed myself at an early hour at the extreme limit of the camp. First, with his legion, came Mkwenda, who guards the frontier between the Katonga valley and Willimiesi against the Wanyoro. He is a stout, burly young man, brave as a lion, having much experience of wars, and cunning and adroit in their conduct, accomplished with the spear, and possessing, besides, other excellent fighting qualities. I noticed that the Waganda chiefs, though Moslemized, clung to their war-paint and national charms, for each warrior, as he passed by on the trot, was most villanously bedaubed with ochre and pipe-clay. The force under the command of Mkwenda might be roughly numbered at 30,000 warriors and camp-followers, and though the path was a mere goat-track, the rush of this legion on the half-trot soon crushed out a broad avenue.

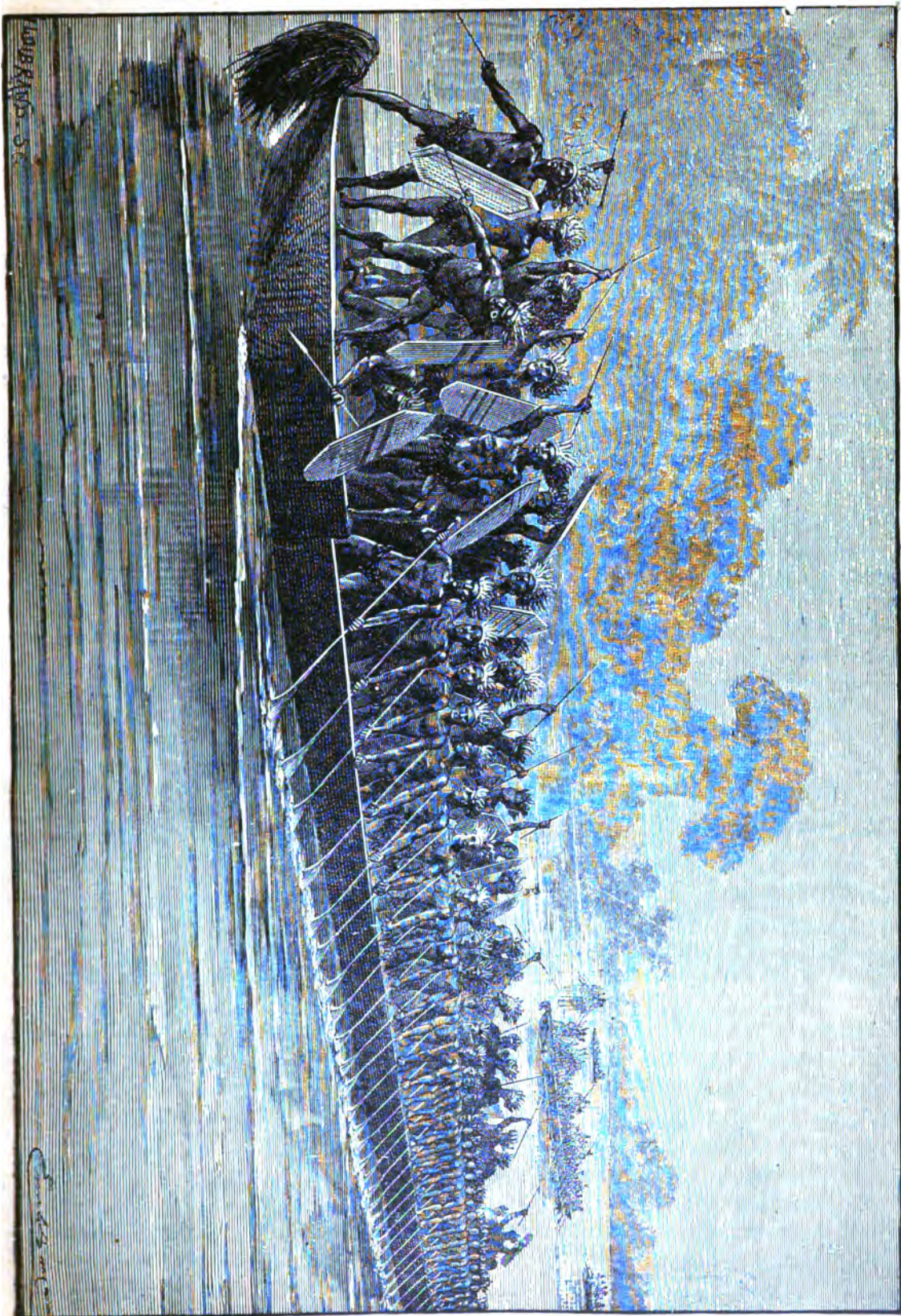
"The old general, Kangau, who defends the country between Willimiesi and the Victoria Nile, came next with his following, their banners flying, drums beating and pipes playing, he and his warriors stripped for action, their bodies and faces bedaubed with white, black and ochreous war-paint.

"Next came a rush of about 2000 chosen warriors, all tall men, expert with spear and shield, lithe of body and nimble of foot, shouting as they trotted past their war-cry of 'Kavya, kavya' (the two last syllables of M'tesa's title when young—Mukavya, 'king'), and rattling their spears. Behind them, at a quick march, came the musket-armed body-guard of the Emperor, about two hundred in front, a hundred on either side of the road, enclosing M'tesa and his Katekiro, and two hundred bringing up the rear, with their drums beating, pipes playing and standards flying, and forming quite an imposing and warlike procession.

"M'tesa marched on foot, bare-headed, and clad in a dress of blue check cloth, with a black belt of English make round his waist, and—like the Roman Emperors, who, when returning in triumph, painted their faces a deep vermillion—his face dyed a bright red. The Katekiro preceded him, and wore a dark gray cashmere coat. I think this arrangement was made to deceive any assassin who might be lurking in the bushes. If this was the case, the precaution seemed wholly unnecessary, as the march was so quick that nothing but a gun would have been effective, and the Wavuma and Wasoga have no such weapons.

"After M'tesa's body-guard had passed by, chief after chief, legion after legion followed, each distinguished to the native ear by its different and peculiar drum-beat. They came on at an extraordinary pace, more like warriors hurrying up into action than on the march; but it is their custom, I am told, to move always at a trot when on an enterprise of a warlike nature."





LIBRARY - 36

W'ZMA'S WAS CANOE.



## A NAVAL BATTLE.

The native African is always a braggart but seldom a fighter; thus it happens that preparation for battle involves a great deal of noise and display, while the fight that possibly follows is so tame as to be practically uninteresting. M'tesa had only 300 canoes and these were manned by landsmen, who knew so little about boating as to make them objects of ridicule as they tottered and spun round in a vain effort to propel themselves forward. As they got out into the lake the Wavuma met them, and in the engagement that ensued M'tesa's navy was badly defeated and thirty of his canoes captured, but there were few casualties. This, however, so discouraged M'tesa that he determined to trust his troops to the water no more. His next efforts were



NAVAL BATTLE BETWEEN THE WAGANDA AND WAVUMA TRIBE.

Directed towards building a causeway of trees and stones over the 500 yards which separated the island from the mainland. But after 130 yards were filled, the soldiers became tired and work ceased. M'tesa now gave over his hostile intentions for the time being in order to amuse himself in various ways with Stanley, and to listen to an expounding of Christianity by his guest.

When, finally, M'tesa grew weary of theological dispute, he resolved to renew hostilities as a fresh divertisement, and on the 14th of September he ordered forty canoes to cross over to the island, or within hailing distance, to feel the enemy, while with the rest of his army he took up a position on a high point from whence a view of the lake was obtainable. This time he adopted the very wise precaution, so to speak, of bringing into action the services of a



large number of his medicine men or wizards, who, armed with gourds filled with pebbles, took upon themselves the duty of creating such a din as would frighten away all evil; but it strangely happened that their noise must have had a contrary effect. In addition to the tumult thus raised, these priests brought also their charms, which they laid at M'tesa's feet, followed by the witches or priestesses, who also made their oblations, and then offered their fetiches to the king. These charms consisted of dried lizards, pieces of hide, nails of dead people, claws of animals, beaks of birds, compounds of deadly herbs borne in ornamented vessels, and wooden fetiches.

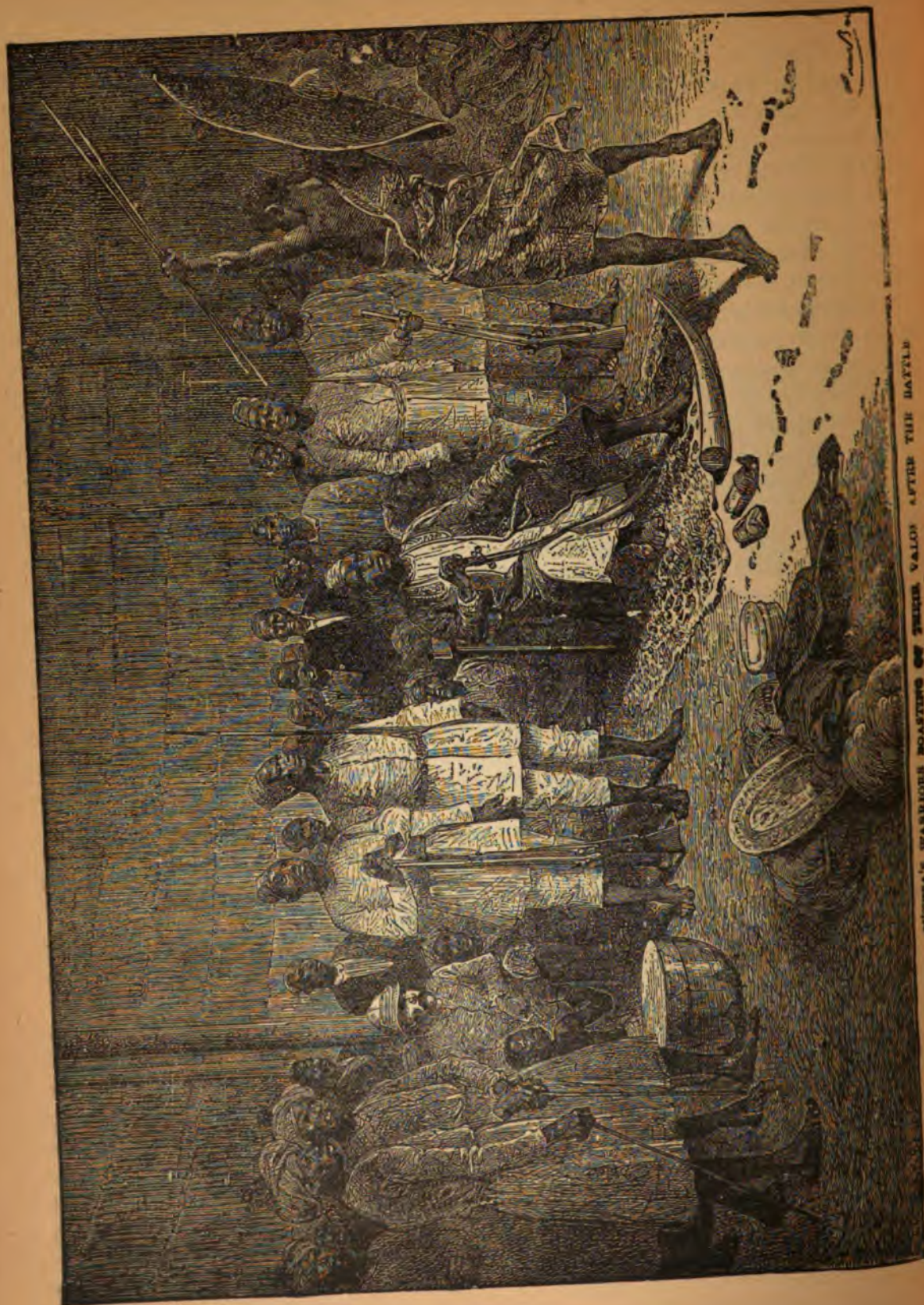
When all had thus been made ready, the forty canoes crossed over to the island, where they were met by the Wavuma, who chased them back to Nakaranga Point. At this, 230 more canoes, laden with M'tesa's soldiers, started to the succor of their retreating friends, and these were in turn met by 192 canoes bearing the Wavumas. A great battle now seemed imminent, but M'tesa's navy again retreated to a point where they were re-enforced by the entire army, and where four small cannons had been planted.

The cowardice of his men, whose numbers greatly exceeded those of the Wavuma, so incensed M'tesa that he was in a towering passion, in which he threatened all who should again exhibit such pusillanimity with the punishment of a slow fire. Under this dreadful threat, on the 18th the fight was renewed by the advance of 230 canoes, in two of which howitzers were carried. But the Wavuma were undeterred, and moved resolutely to the centre of the intervening space in the lake and began a fusillade with spears and arrows. The howitzers, however, proved a surprise, for when these opened fire the Wavuma became panic stricken and precipitately retreated, but did not make good their escape until ten of their canoes were destroyed and several of the occupants were killed.

This small victory obtained, M'tesa's men did not attempt a pursuit of the enemy, but forthwith returned to the shore to receive the king's congratulations.

#### STANLEY'S DREADFUL WAR-BOAT.

Though the Wavuma were thus once beaten, they were unsubdued, and the war promised to continue indefinitely unless some decisive means were adopted to give it an effectual ending, and this Stanley resolved to suggest. On the 5th of October, the explorer therefore sought an interview with M'tesa at which he proposed the building of a dreadful war-boat that would carry consternation among his enemies, and bring them quickly to terms. The idea gave M'tesa the greatest delight, who was distressed over the prospect of having to abandon the undertaking of conquering the Wavuma. He therefore gave Stanley a detail of 2000 men, as requested, who were put to work felling trees and poles, from which the bark was peeled and twisted into ropes. He next took three canoes, each seventy feet in length and six and one-half feet in breadth, which he lashed together with a space of four feet between them, to give room to work the paddles. Around the outer edges of these canoes he



THE WARRIORS BOATING OF THEIR VALOR AFTER THE BATTLE



built a wicker work some five feet in height and so thick as to be impervious to spears. When the boat was made ready, it was manned by 214 soldiers, who paddled it across the channel without exposing themselves to view, so that when the Wavuma saw it approaching, their superstitious natures led them to believe it to be some great monster, or a wonderful craft moved by supernatural force.

To increase the delusion and prey the greater on their fears, Stanley caused a proclamation to be made to the Wavuma that, unless they immediately surrendered, their whole island would be blown to pieces. The effect of this direful threat was intensified by the disastrous consequences following the firing of the howitzers, and thus terror stricken the Wavuma surrendered unconditionally, which they announced by sending a canoe and fifty men with the tribute demanded.

#### STANLEY LEAVES FOR THE MUTA NZIGA LAKE.

The war having thus fortunately terminated for M'tesa, Stanley besought his permission to leave Uganda, and to furnish the escort that had been promised. The king showed his gratitude by sending at once for his leading general, Sambuzi, whom he ordered to muster a thousand men to serve as an escort to the expedition. Thus favored, Stanley resumed his march November 2d, with a total force of 2800 souls, but a week later, at the intimation of an attack from the Kings of Uzimba and Unyampaka, a large part of the escort deserted, including General Sambuzi, who was a typical African boaster and coward. Without further accident Stanley reached Kafurro, February 28th, 1875, where he remained a month the guest of the good old King Rumanika, in whose country he had some splendid sport shooting rhinoceri.

On the 20th of April following, upon arriving at Seromo, Stanley learned that the great bandit king, Mirambo, was in the neighborhood and desired an audience with the white man. At this news that portion of the escort sent by M'tesa, which had remained loyal, were so frightened that the utmost efforts of Stanley hardly availed to prevent their desertion, but fortunately a second and very friendly message followed fast on the first, which had the good effect of disarming their fears.

In response to Mirambo's message desiring to establish friendly relations with Stanley, a reply was sent in equally assuring terms, and on the following day the renowned bandit and Napoleonic general appeared before Stanley's tent and was cordially bidden to enter. A very pleasant interview followed, which ended in a return of the visit by Stanley, at which the ceremony of blood-brotherhood was performed.

On the 27th of May the expedition reached Ujiji, having failed to discover the Muta Nziga, but skirted the shore of Lake Tanganyika from the point where the Rusizi river enters it to that station without meeting with any serious obstacle.



MIRAMBO THE GREAT AFRICAN CHIEF.



## AMONG THE CANNIBALS.

Stanley had expected many packets and letters from home on his arrival at Ujiji, to which point he had ordered his mail forwarded upon leaving Zanzibar seventeen months before, but his hopes were destroyed, for not a single message was found awaiting him.

This disappointment made him the more anxious to prosecute the great work he had set his heart upon and return to England as soon as possible. He accordingly had the *Lady Alice* launched again in the waters of Lake Tanganyika, determined to accomplish its circumnavigation, with the view of discovering its outlet, if it had any. This enterprise was accomplished without special incident in fifty-one days, and resulted in an exposition of the fact that it had no outlet proper, all streams with which it had any connection being inlets, though there was evidence that in former years the Lualaba, or Congo river, furnished an outlet to the lake and drained its waters into the Atlantic.

On returning to Ujiji again, Stanley found Frank Pocock, who had been left in charge of a part of the expedition during his absence, pale and haggard from a long spell of fever, five of the Wagwara soldiers had died of small-pox, and six others were down with the dreadful scourge, which was also decimating the population of the town. Stanley was stricken with fever the day after his arrival, but was again on his feet at the end of five days. He now decided to cross the lake and push westward as quickly as possible, and so announced to his men. This created a panic among them, for they fully believed that if they went among the Manyuema cannibals they would be roasted and eaten. Thirty-eight had already deserted during his absence, and many of the others now threatened to do likewise. As a precaution against further desertions, he had those whom he suspected of being untrustworthy arrested and put into a large hut, where they were guarded until he was ready to depart.

Everything at last being ready, they crossed the lake on the 25th of August, and after a necessary halt of a few days to rest and organize, the expedition pushed westward through the wilderness toward the Manyuema country, for the purpose of exploring the great river flowing to the northwest, through that region, and from which Livingstone had been driven back by the war between the Arabs and natives previous to his meeting with Stanley. The Manyuema nation is composed of a number of tribes, varying greatly in disposition and general appearance. Some are handsome and intelligent, others are filthy, ugly and degraded; but, with a few exceptions, all are mild and gentle in disposition, although universally addicted to cannibalism.

## CANNIBALS, DWARFS AND BOA CONSTRICTORS.

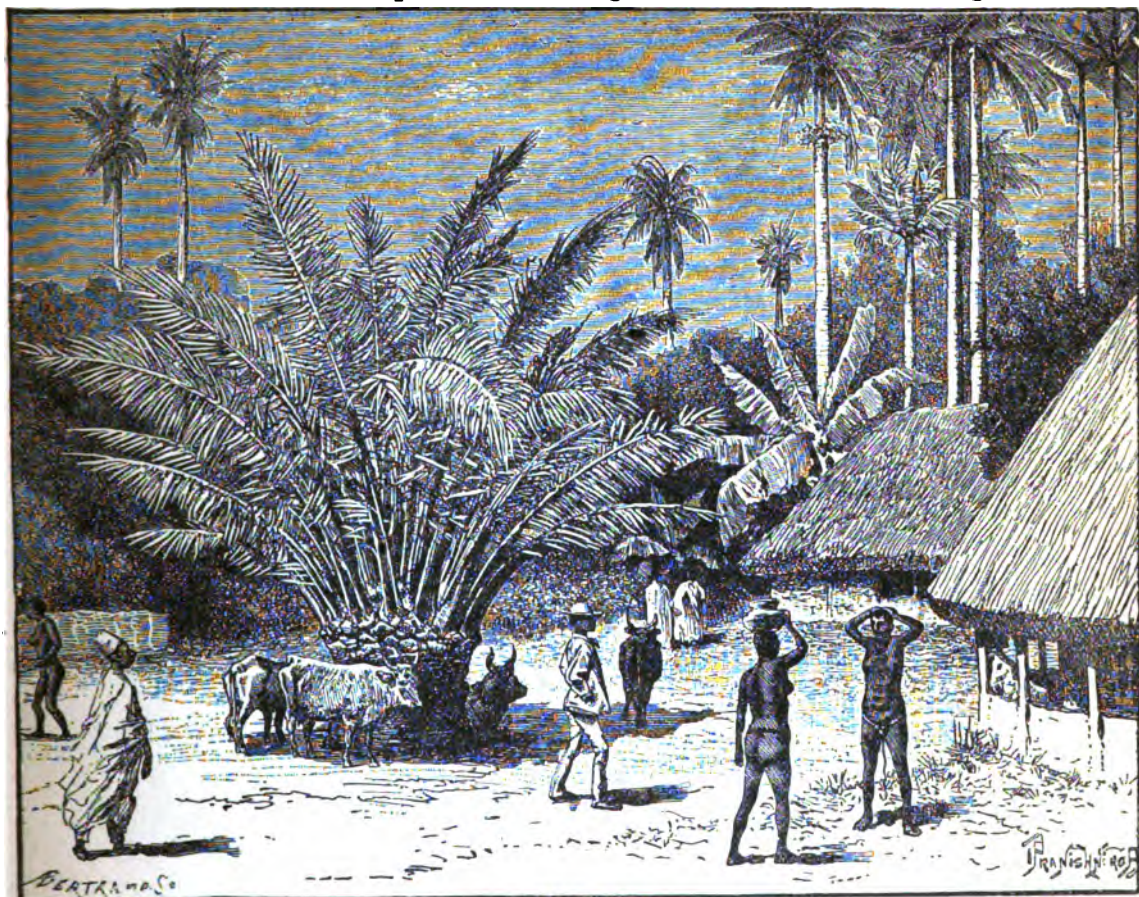
Having made a pretty thorough exploration of the central lake region, and determined positively that the Nile had no connection with Lake Tanganyika, Stanley decided to take up the work that Livingstone had left unfinished and follow the Lualaba, or Livingstone, river to its outlet, correctly surmising, as will be seen, that its waters debouched into the Atlantic. The many names



THE BRIDE OF THE NILE.



by which this river has been known, first as the Shire, then the Congo, next the Lualaba, and finally the Livingstone, indicates how confused was the idea as to its source and course; a confusion which arose because of the net-work of rivers that traverse the central region west of Lake Tanganyika, and which had up to this time remained unexplored. Livingstone had tried to follow down the Lualaba, but his inability to procure canoes, on account of war between the Manyemas and Arabs, even though he had saved many of the natives from massacre, compelled him to give over the undertaking for a time

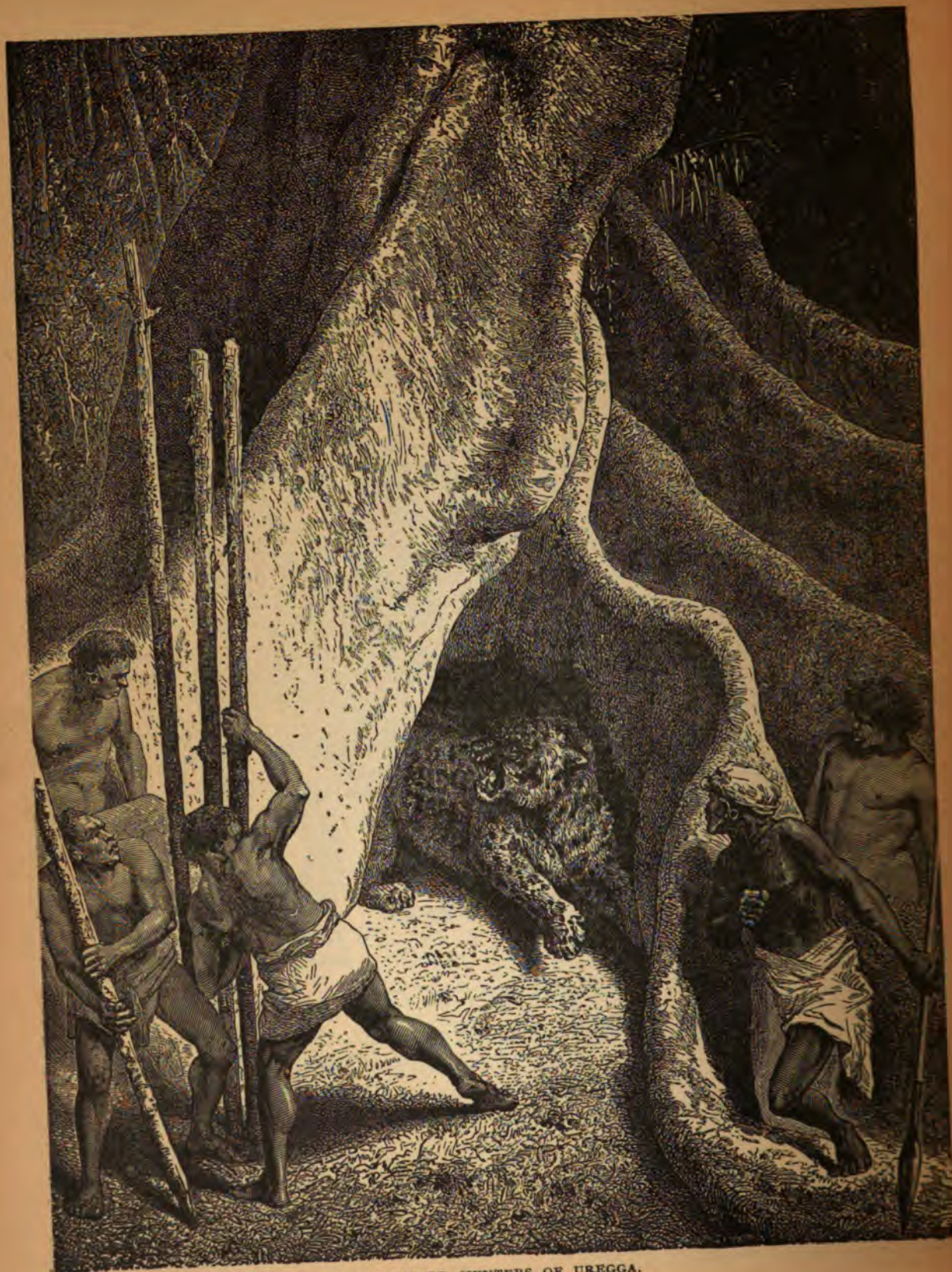


VILLAGE OF MWANA MAMBO.

and return to Ujiji, where Stanley found him. It was on the second expedition undertaken for a like purpose that Livingstone died, thus leaving the question of the source, course and outlet of the Lualaba still undetermined.

Stanley continued his march westward until the middle of October, when he arrived at M'Kwanga, which is only eight miles from the confluence of the Luama and Lualaba rivers. While here encamped he learned of the presence of a large party of Arabs at a village called Mwana Mambo, eighteen miles distant, which he decided to join at once. A meeting occurred on the following day, at which Stanley was received most cordially by the commander of the





LEOPARD HUNTERS OF UREGGA.



Arab force, Tipo Tib. This ivory dealer had considerable knowledge of the country, gained in frequent journeys through it, besides a large force of soldiers and porters; hence his services were of the greatest importance to Stanley, who was fearful that his present small force would be unable to make a passage through the wild region it was necessary to cross.

In the interview which followed their meeting, Tipo Tib told Stanley that the "great river"—Lualaba—flowed directly towards the north until it emptied into the sea, and that its shores were covered with dense woods, which were inhabited by the most ferocious savages, reptiles and animals. He also declared that he had made one trip through this dangerous region, in one part of which his party found ivory so plentiful that a tusk might be purchased for a single cowrie shell. But while the trade in ivory appeared most promising of enormous profit, his party was not permitted to leave the country with their stores. The Wakuma, a large race, were very hostile, but to their enmity was added the implacable vengeance of a race of dwarfs, whose territory bordered that of the Wakuma. These little incarnate devils descended upon the Arabs at night, and with their poisoned arrows fought so courageously that the Arabs were forced to retreat with the greatest precipitation, and in the flight all save thirty of the party were killed.

But there were other evils besides savage cannibals, which the Wakuma and dwarfs were represented to be, for Tipo Tib declared that in the adjoining country of Uregga the dense woods harbored thousands of boa constrictors which, suspended from tree-branches, watched for the passing underneath of men and antelopes, which these reptilian monsters greedily devoured. In these same woods were also the greatest number of leopards, which, emboldened by hunger and the fear they inspired in the natives, committed the most appalling ravages among the people. The sokos, a species of chimpanzee, were also numerous and attacked men without provocation, biting off their fingers and otherwise maiming them. Tipo Tib averred that travelling on the river was but little less dangerous than on land because of the great number of wicked falls that it was necessary to pass over, and which resulted in the drowning of nearly every one who attempted their passage.

#### THE STRANGE PEOPLE OF UREGGA.

After a lengthy interview with Tipo Tib, a contract was drawn up between them by which Stanley agreed to pay the Arab \$5000 for an escort of 140 guns and 70 spearmen a distance of sixty marches of four hours each, which would be equivalent to nearly 500 miles. This force added to his own would furnish him with such protection as was needed.

The expedition now marched to Nyangwe, where another section of the Arab party was encamped; Tipo Tib's party consisted of 700 persons when united. Nyangwe is a village of 300 huts and nearly 2000 people; it is a great market for slaves, and is the westernmost Arab trading station on the road from the east. As the village is situated on the Lualaba river, Stanley here launched





his boat, the *Lady Alice*, to make soundings. He found the river studded with large islands, and its mean depth, taken in thirty-six soundings, was eighteen feet nine inches, while its breadth was from 4000 to 5000 yards, making it one of the greatest rivers of the earth.

After five days' marching through dense, almost impenetrable forests, where they were compelled to hew their way with axes step by step, they came to the country of Uregga, and halted to rest. The inhabitants of this country live as secluded in their dark forests as the chimpanzees; but they provide themselves with comforts unknown to other African tribes. Their houses, in the villages, are all connected together in one block, from 50 to 300 yards in length, and are covered with a kind of pitch. They furnish their homes with many luxuries known to civilization, such as cane settees, beautifully covered stools, sociable benches, exquisitely carved spoons, etc. The women of Uregga wear only aprons four inches square, of bark or grass cloth, fastened by cords of palm fibre. The men wear skins of civet, or monkey, in front and rear, the tails downward. It may have been from a hasty glance of a rapidly disappearing form of one of these people in the wild woods that native travellers in the lake regions felt persuaded that they had seen "men with tails."

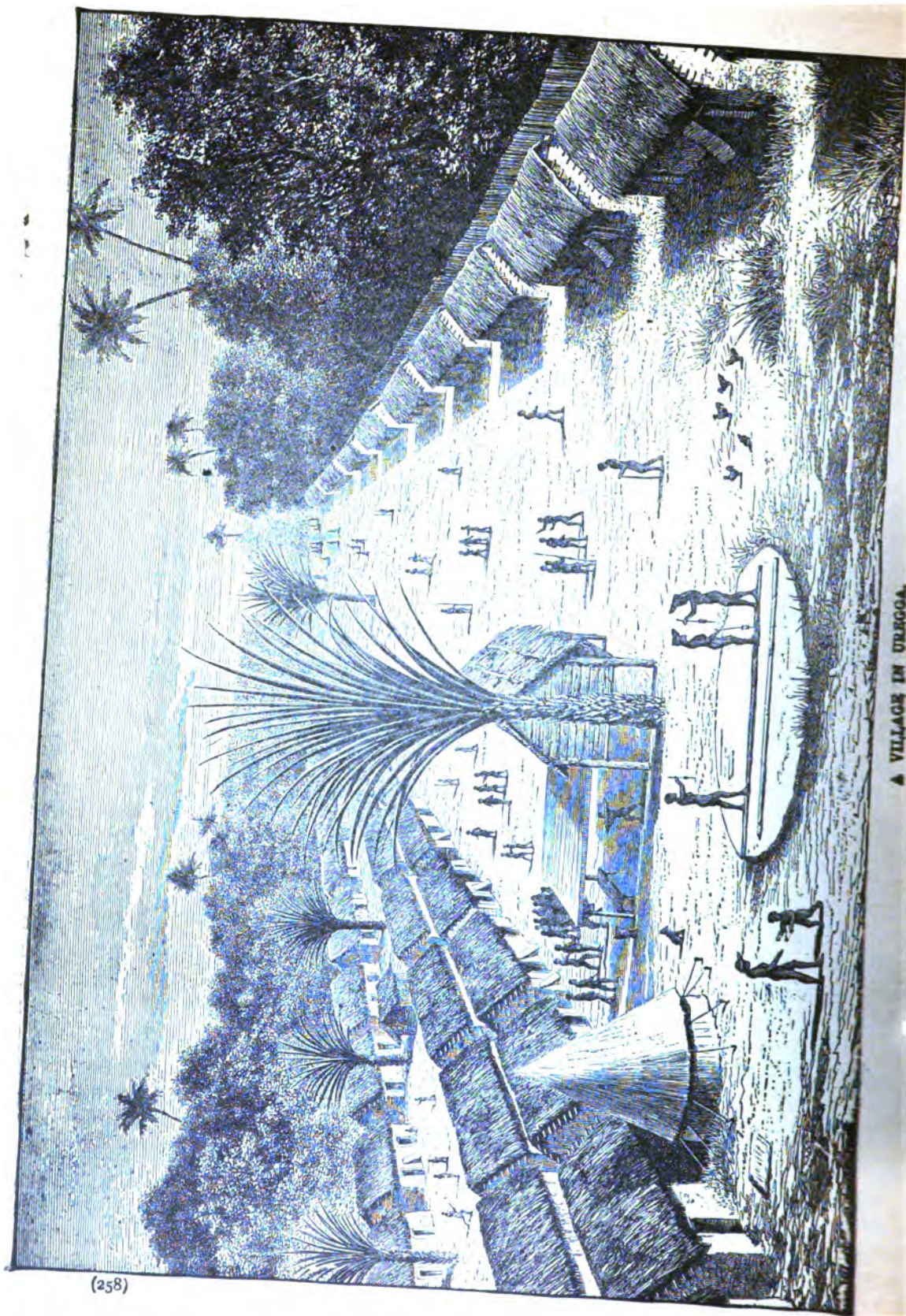
In one of these villages, called Kampunzee, Stanley was much astonished to see two rows of what appeared to be human skulls, and upon counting them found there were 186. He asked the chief of the village the meaning of these gruesome trophies, but a direct answer was avoided by a pretence that the skulls were those of sokos captured in the hunt. Stanley was none the less satisfied that they were human, but to prove the matter more thoroughly he brought several to England on his return and had them examined by Prof. Huxley, who not only pronounced them to be human skulls, but found on nearly all the marks of a hatchet that had been driven into the head while the victim was alive.

Five miles beyond Kampunzee the expedition came again to the Lualaba, at which point Stanley renamed the river the Livingstone, by which it has since been called. Here he made arrangements to cross the stream, and after launching the *Lady Alice* he called on the natives of the opposite shore for their assistance with canoes. After an offer of many presents the canoes were furnished, but the moment the expedition had made a crossing the natives attacked it with great vigor, but were driven off without loss.

#### HORRIBLE EVIDENCES OF CANNIBALISM.

Having passed to the south shore of the Livingstone the exploring party was now in the Ukusee country, among savages whose lives were apparently devoted to slaughter, and whose choice meat was human flesh. Each village street was ornamented with two rows of bleached trophies of eaten humanity, forming a ghastly imitation of shell decorations along the paths of our parks and gardens.

The obstacles to land travel had been so great, while the dangers from



A VILLAGE IN URUGUAY.



ambushing parties seemed to be increasing, that Stanley decided to take to the river and follow it down to its outlet, regardless of Tipo Tib's warning against the many falls that must be passed. After much difficulty and the payment of a large sum in presents, the required number of canoes was procured, in which the expedition embarked.

On November 26th they reached the village of Nakanpemba, which pre-



FIGHTING THEIR WAY THROUGH THE CANNIBALS.

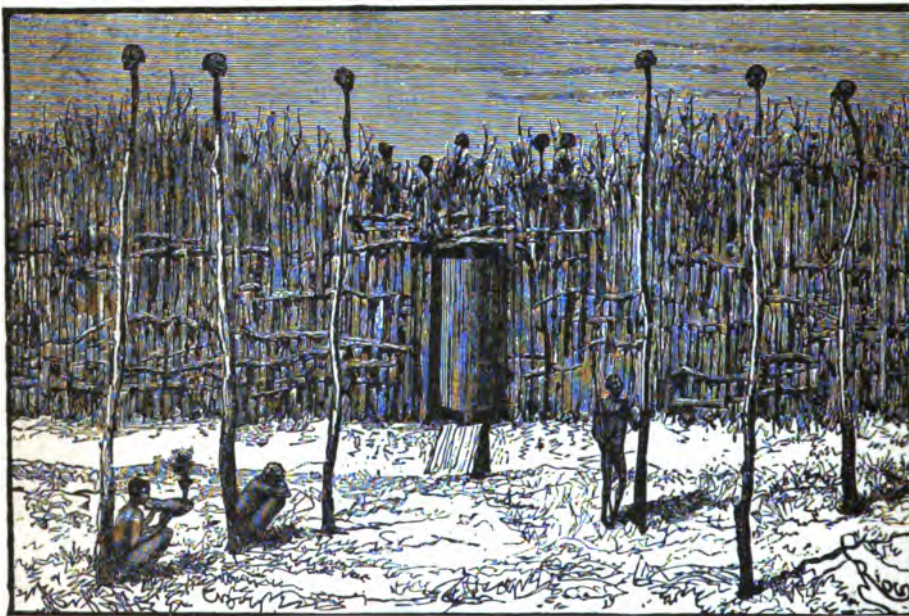
sented the usual horrible picture of streets lined with human skulls, the dreadful relics of many a barbarous feast. Throughout this region the evidences of cannibalism were so numerous that human flesh must have been a common dish at every table.



Tipo Tib's story about the many dangerous rapids that made navigation of the Livingstone river so perilous was soon found to be true. As the expedition went on down the river, the first fifty miles were hardly covered before they came to a rock shoal over which the water dashed in a mad and impetuous manner, rendering passage impossible. It was therefore necessary to land and carry the canoes and *Lady Alice* around the treacherous place, which involved, besides great delay, the most exhausting labors.

#### A DWARF CAPTURED.

While engaged in a portage of the boats, some of the men discovered a savage little man concealed in some bushes near by, who being armed with bow and poisoned arrows had evidently contemplated making an attack, single handed,



STREET IN A CANNIBAL VILLAGE.

upon those whom he conceived to be invaders of his country. He was captured and brought to Stanley, who first examining the arrows, the points of which were carefully rolled in leaves, found them emitting an odor very like that exhaled by cantharides. Sus-

pecting them to be poisoned, he made a motion as if to inoculate the little pigmy with the substance on the arrow points; at this the little fellow cried out in great fear, and shouted "Mabi! mabi!" (Bad, bad) so vociferously as to prove conclusively that Stanley's suspicions were correct.

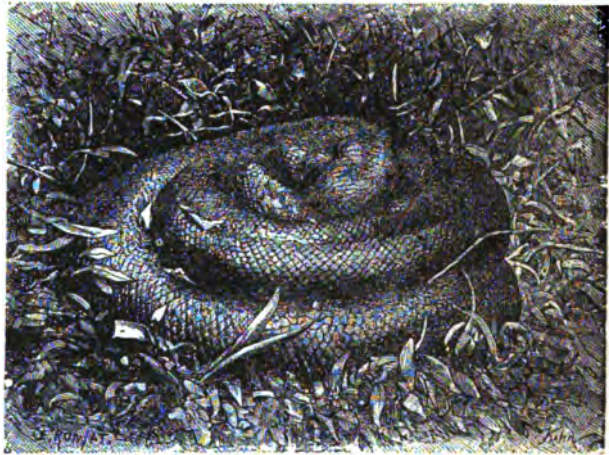
This strange creature stood, when measured, four feet six-and-a-half inches in height, and proved to be fully a head taller than the average of his people. His head was large, his face decked with a scraggy fringe of whiskers, and his complexion light chocolate. He was exceedingly bow-legged and thin-shanked, and was altogether a hideous looking fiend and ugly little savage brute, and as to intelligence very little above the beasts of the forest. Stanley retained him as a prisoner and guide for several days, but finally dismissed him and sent him home with a handful of beads and shells and some bead necklaces. He had expected to be eaten, according to the custom of his country, and though



his captors shook hands with him at parting, and smiled, and patted him on the shoulder, the dwarf could not comprehend why he had not furnished a feast for his captors, and evidently did not feel safe until he had plunged out of sight in his native woods.

On the 26th of December, Tipo Tib and his Arabs bade farewell to Stanley, and started on their return. They had not fully kept their contract, but their excessive fear of the cannibals and the dwarfs was having a bad effect on Stanley's men, and he decided to let them go; so, after a grand banquet in the wilderness, they shook hands and parted. At this time Stanley was not sure whether the stream that he was following would empty into the Niger or the Congo, as everything in advance of him was unknown and doubtful; but he determined to proceed and let the future take care of itself. His force now consisted of one hundred and forty-nine persons, in twenty-three boats, and on the departure of the Arabs, they embarked and commenced their long and dangerous drift toward the unknown.

Standing up in his boat, Stanley surveyed his people. How few they appeared to dare the region of fable and darkness! They were nearly all sobbing. They were leaning forward, bowed, as it seemed, with grief and heavy hearts. He spoke to them words of encouragement; told them of their past brave deeds, and exhorted them to be men. But it was with wan smiles that they responded to his words, and feebly they paddled down the dark-brown current. Poor fellows! Many of them were indeed going into the land of the Unknown.



REPTILE KING OF THE JUNGLE.

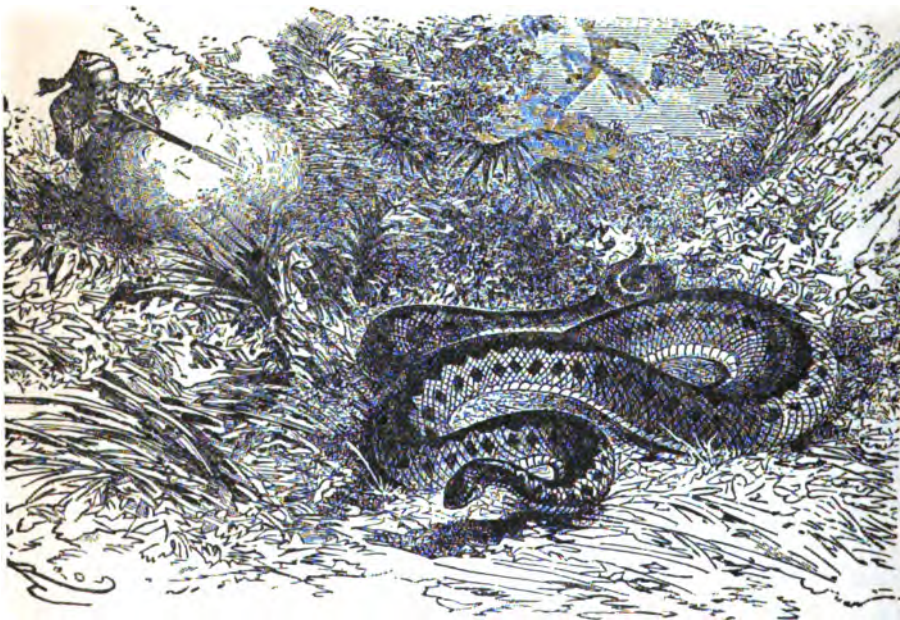
#### IN THE TOILS OF A BOA-CONSTRUCTOR.

As the expedition proceeded on the voyage after the parting with Tipo Tib, the river gradually widened until its breadth was about one mile, and its shores became more populous with the most savage cannibals, who time and again attacked the voyagers. The cry went up from both shores, "Meat! meat! we shall have meat!" followed by the pushing out of canoes manned by savages who seemed to think those who composed the expedition would fall an easy prey. To protect himself against the fury of these demons, who resented all overtures for peace, Stanley was compelled to fight them, and in an almost continuous battle of many days hundreds of the cannibals were slain, and in a few instances their canoes and shields appropriated.

It was not until January 19th, 1876, that Stanley passed by the last tribe of cannibals, and came to a greater falls than any theretofore passed, to which

he gave the name of Stanley Falls. Just below these was a village called Balobo, where he met a very kind old king named Chumberi, who relieved the very pressing needs of the expedition with a good supply of provisions, and also furnished Stanley with an escort of forty-five men to accompany him the next fifty miles down the river and pilot the expedition through some treacherous rapids.

Soon after going into camp after the first day's march from Balobo, everybody was thrown into a state of nervous excitement by the terrible shrieks of a boy, and upon rushing to the spot from whence the alarm came Stanley was horrified to see a huge python uncoil itself from the body of one of the black boys of the expedition and glide off quickly into the jungle. In the darkness the boy had mistaken the snake for one of his companions, as it reared its



KILLING A BOA.

horrid head to the height of a man, and he approached so near that it seized him in its dreadful folds. His screams and the rush of men to his assistance so alarmed the reptile that it released its hold and fled. In half an hour the python, or

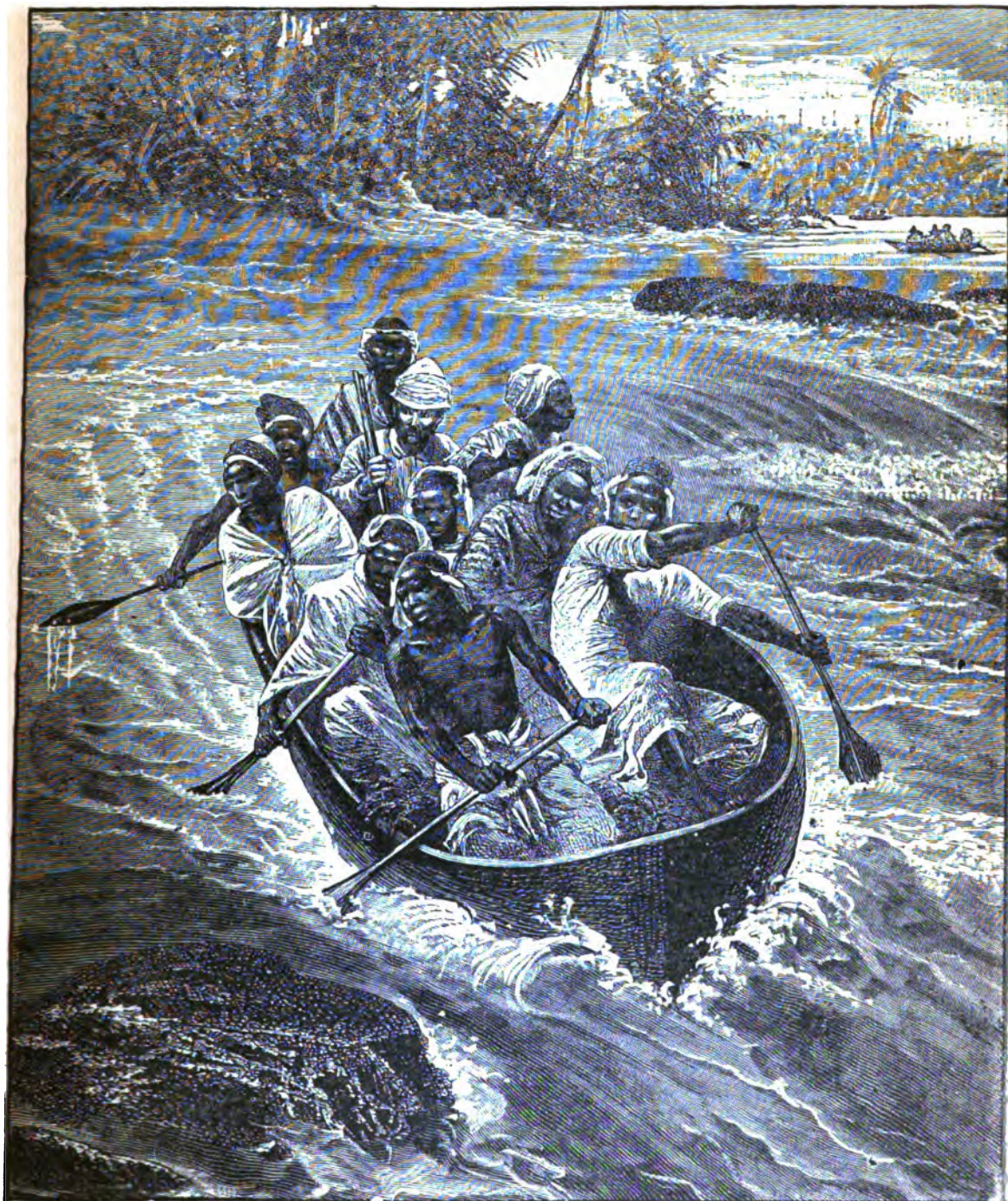
another one, was discovered, in a different part of the camp, about to embrace a woman in its folds; but this time, after tremendous excitement, the monster was dispatched. It measured only thirteen feet six inches in length, and fifteen inches around the thickest part of the body.

#### THE DROWNING OF KALULU AND FRANK POCOCK.

Nothing further befell the expedition until the 13th of March, when the first cataract in Livingstone Falls was encountered, and thereafter for the period of one month there was a succession of disasters, as there was a succession of cataracts. Instead of carrying the boats around this dangerous place in the river, as had been done at so many other places of like character, an attempt was made to ride the cataracts, by which it was hoped that much valuable time would be gained. But the wisdom of this undertaking is doubtful in the light of the fatal results



that followed. On the 28th, one of the large canoes, carrying Kalulu, Stanley's body servant, and five others, was swept over one of the cataracts, and all the



SHOOTING THE CATARACTS

occupants were drowned. A similar disaster occurred on the 3d of June at Masassa whirlpool, where Frank Pocock, with eight oarsmen, attempted to drive

the rapids, but they were drawn into a whirlpool, and down deep under the seething waters. In this disaster Pocock lost his life, though he was an expert swimmer, but all the other occupants of the boat contrived to reach the shore and were saved. This dreadful misfortune to one whom he esteemed so highly, and upon whom he had placed so much responsibility, gave Stanley the keenest anguish, and left him entirely inconsolable. His reflections were of the gloomiest character, since of the three brave boys who had sailed with him from England to win laurels of discovery in a strange land, not one was now left, but all were sleeping for eternity in the wilds of the Dark Continent, where the tears of sorrowing friends could never moisten their rude beds. What would the mothers say, when he returned to receive the praises of his grateful patrons and the plaudits of admirers, and they learned that their noble sons had made the greater sacrifice, but upon whom no joyous blessings now could fall, not even that of a mother's tear.

The repeated calamities of the expedition had by this time so discouraged the people that it was with the greatest effort Stanley could induce them to proceed. They seemed to think they were going to certain destruction, and became languid, sullen and despondent. On the 20th of June thirty-one of them deserted in a body, but returned a few days afterwards, having met with anything but a friendly reception from the natives. Stanley's great leadership now manifested itself in keeping his people together, quieting their complaints, and infusing enough energy and determination into their wasted bodies to induce them to push on to the ocean. Famine stared them in the face, and he knew that nothing but a persevering, persistent, impetuous advance toward the sea could save them.

#### A STARVING EXPEDITION.

About the middle of July the expedition reached Ngoyo, where they found a naked but friendly people, who supplied the famishing travellers with a great variety of vegetables and some fish. Besides which kindness the Ngoyo chief assisted Stanley in conveying his boats around some dangerous falls and otherwise attesting his friendship, for which he was rewarded with a liberal supply of presents.

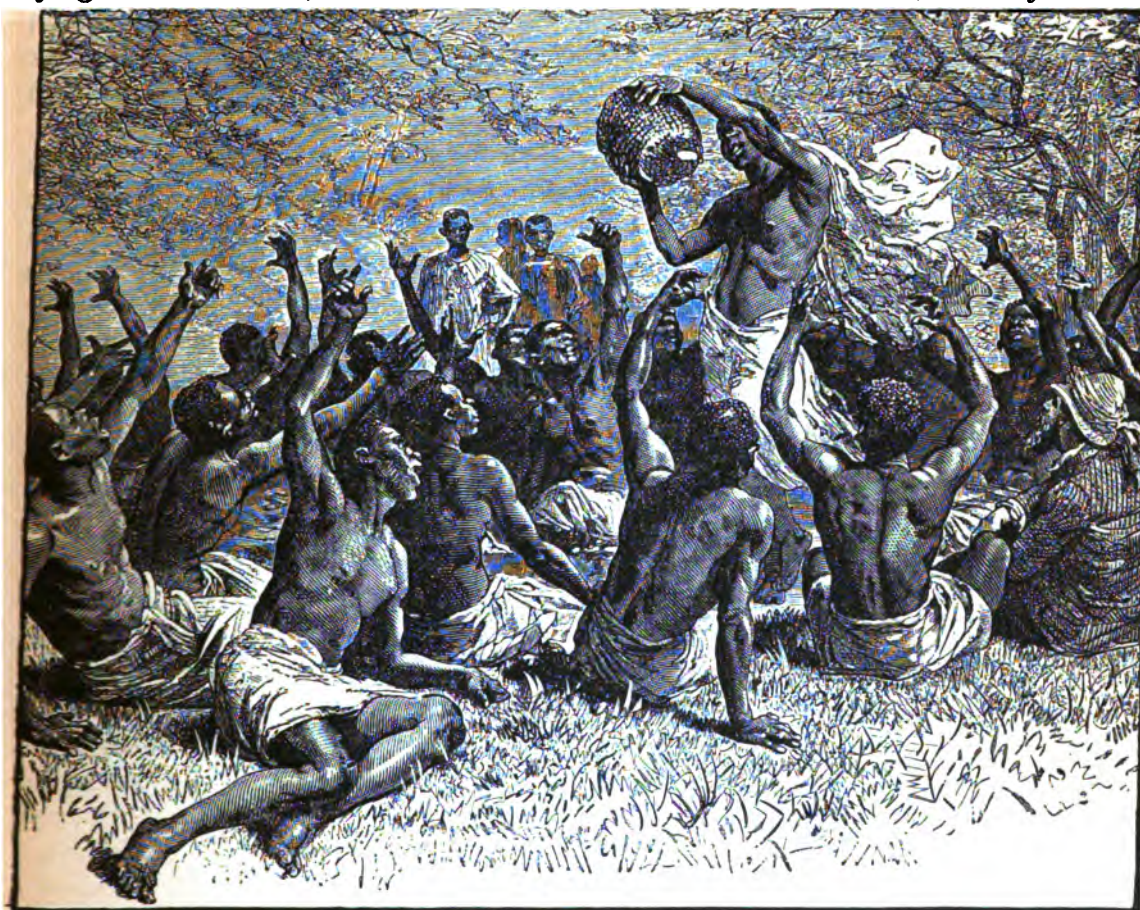
On the 31st of July, 1877, having explored the river to Isangila Falls, and proved that it was the Congo, Stanley decided to leave the water and proceed overland by a direct route to Embomma, a Portuguese settlement on the coast, and only a few days' march distant. The delight of the people at this announcement manifested itself in loud and fervid exclamations of gratitude.

But the sufferings of the expedition, even with the glad promise of reaching a Portuguese settlement soon, were not yet ended, nor indeed had their most desperate straits been passed. Forty of the men were sick of dysentery, ulcers and scurvy, and the list became greater each day as their exhaustion increased. When at length they reached the coast, it was at a point where the most imbruted natives had formed a small settlement, and from whom they



were unable to obtain any food whatever. Weak from their long fast, the expedition continued on until, three days later, Nsanda was reached, where a stop was made with the hope of obtaining some provisions. The chief came out to Stanley's camp and asked at once for rum, but as all that had been brought from Zanzibar had long before been exhausted, Stanley was unable to grant the chief's request. At this the old savage became angry, and refused to supply the starving men with any kind of food whatever.

The situation was now critical in the extreme, as his men were literally dying of starvation; and as a last recourse to secure relief, Stanley wrote a



STANLEY'S STARVING PEOPLE.

letter in English, French and Spanish, addressed to the people of Embomma, describing his condition and asking relief. This letter was dispatched by three of his best men, and on the following day, August 4th, it was placed in the hands of Mr. John W. Harrison, representing an English firm, who immediately sent a large amount of provisions, by a score of carriers, to the suffering expedition, and thus saved them from dying of starvation within a day's march of the journey's end.

On the 9th of August Stanley marched into Embomma, where he was

most graciously received by Mr. Harrison and the Portuguese population, who, as a mark of honor, gave him a magnificent banquet on the following evening.

After enjoying the generous hospitality of these people for two days, Stanley was ready to depart, but he first strolled down to the river, on the banks of which Embomma is situated, to take a farewell look at its broad and placid waters. "Glancing at the mighty river on whose brown bosom we had endured so much," said he, "I saw it approach, awed and humbled, the threshold of the watery immensity, to whose immeasurable volume and illimitable expanse, awful as had been its power and terrible as had been its fury, its flood was but a drop. And I felt my heart suffused with purest gratitude to Him whose hand had protected us, and who had enabled us to pierce the Dark Continent from east to west, and to trace its mightiest river to its Ocean bourne."

Stanley proceeded with his company on a steamer to Kabinda, and thence to Loanda, where his sick and suffering people were received into the Portuguese hospital, and remained until September 27th, five of them dying in the mean time. From Loanda the expedition sailed to Cape Town, and thence back to Zanzibar, where the people were paid off and discharged. Stanley started for England December 13th, 1877, and upon his arrival in London was received with distinguished honors, such as he well deserved. He had fairly won the English heart as well as the heartiest praise of his own country. He had proved himself, next to Livingstone, the greatest explorer that ever penetrated Africa.

#### STANLEY'S THIRD EXPEDITION.

The return of Stanley after so long an absence, and when nearly all the civilized world believed him dead, was the signal for renewed applause among his admirers, and the bestowal of praise and honors by the Geographical Society of England. But not only was he the recipient of social, and even royal, favors, as public evidences of appreciation for his heroism and incomparable wisdom in dealing with the savage races of Africa, but a gainful interest was excited by his discoveries, and commercial bodies almost immediately sought to make them profitable. Stanley's report on the fertility of the Congo region, and the navigableness of the Congo river, thus offering facile communication with the interior, which is inconceivably rich in valuable woods, gums, ivory, gold, etc., prompted the formation of a company to open trade with that promising region.

Portugal, as stated in an early part of this book, held possession, for centuries, of the lower Congo, their district extending inland about one hundred miles; but their trade was of no consequence fifty miles from the coast, and so little had this profited them that they seemed to set no value on the trade of the interior or its possibilities. Within a few months after Stanley's return, therefore, "The International Association" took steps to profit by his discoveries.

This Association was the result of an assembling in 1876, at Brussels, of the principal geographical societies of Europe and America, in response to an





CUTTING A PASSAGE AROUND THE CATARACTS.



invitation from Leopold II., King of Belgium. The intention was to extend the civilizing influences of Christianity through Central Africa, and the opening up of trade over all available routes, whether by land or river.

King Leopold sent a letter to Stanley inviting him to attend upon His Majesty, to which the explorer at once responded, and the interview that followed resulted in the organization of another expedition under the command of Stanley, and in the interest of the International Congo Association.

The Association, which had assumed, with consent of the powers, a national character, adopted as their ensign a blue flag with a golden star in the centre, and this Stanley bore as the emblem of his authority to negotiate with the native tribes for exclusive privileges.

#### UP THE CONGO.

On returning from his second expedition in Africa, and following down the Congo, it will be remembered that Stanley left the river some fifty miles from its mouth, and marched overland to the coast at Embomma. He had not, therefore, followed down the river to its mouth. On his return expedition to the Congo in 1878, therefore, he landed his company of 250 men at Banana Point, the river's mouth, and in launches he commenced an ascent of that famous stream to note particularly to what extent it was navigable, and to learn the prospects for opening a profitable trade with the 40,000,000 people believed to reside in the Congo basin. The results of his undertaking, which was attended by few adventures, may be briefly summed up as follows: He found the river navigable for crafts drawing fifteen feet to Vivi, a distance of 115 miles. At this point cataracts begin, seven of which occur in the next 200 miles, around or over which it would be impossible for any crafts to pass except by the digging of canals. After this interval of interruption the river widens at Stanley pool, where Stanley founded the station of Leopoldville. Along this route, and to a distance of four hundred miles from the river's mouth, he established twenty-two stations, over which he raised the flag of the Association, and thus opened a secure way for both trade and missionaries, and in which region slavery is prohibited.

The great difficulties encountered by Stanley in this expedition was in making a passage around the cataracts, to accomplish which it was necessary for him to draw his boats sometimes for miles overland, and to cut a way through the dense wood, involving an incredible amount of labor. In one place the hills rose so high and abruptly above the cataracts that the only means of effecting a passage round them was by digging and blasting out an angle at the base, a work that required several months to perform. When he reached the stream above the cataracts his astonishment was as great as it was discouraging to find that M. De Brazza had preceded him, and by a treaty with the tribes had secured exclusive privileges to the French government for trade on the south shore of the river, and claimed a protectorate over an area of thirty-five thousand square miles of territory, over which he had indeed raised the French flag.





WONDERFUL BRIDGE ACROSS GORDON BENNETT RIVER.



Stanley was first apprised of the treaty made between De Brazza and theONGO tribes on his arrival at Gordon Bennett river, where it joins the Congo. While being hospitably entertained by two chiefs, Gampa and Babnjali, he was visited by a colored sergeant named Malamine, dressed in uniform, and accompanied by two negro sailors from the Gaboon. Hearing of Stanley's presence in the country, they visited him, bearing the French colors, and after a polite greeting presented him with two papers. One of these was a copy of



DE BRAZZA CONCLUDING A TREATY WITH THE NATIVES.

the treaty, and the other a request, signed by De Brazza, to show hospitality to any white person found within the protectorate.

#### DIFFICULTIES PRECIPITATED BY THE TREATY.

Stanley, while doubting the validity of the treaty, had no disposition to come in conflict with De Brazza, and therefore asked Malamine if there were any objections to crossing the Gordon Bennett river, and being answered in the negative, he passed over to the other side by means of a bridge made of vines,



STANLEY'S INTERVIEW WITH GAKANDORO





and which exhibited both the engineering skill and wondrous ingenuity of a remarkable tribe. He halted at Mfwa, and there held an interview with chief Ingra at a grand meeting arranged for the purpose, and at which he obtained permission to erect houses for a station, which privilege was immediately ratified by the principal chief of the district, Gamankono. But Malamine followed Stanley, and the effects of his presence was soon felt in a refusal of the natives



MALAMINE RECEIVING ORDERS FROM DR BRAZZA.

to sell any food to Stanley's party. This inhospitable act was through the influence of Malamine, who prejudiced the natives, by circulating scandalous reports about Stanley. Gamankono was a very old man and in a state of ill health besides, so that however kindly his real disposition was, he could not go among his people to personally discredit the stories which Malamine was industriously circulating, so Stanley returned to Mfwa. On the way, however,



he was beset by hostile natives, who threatened to attack his party, and would have done so but for the timely interposition of the son of a chief named Gaucien, who, with sixty musketeers, had been sent to bring Stanley to the south bank of the river, where he was promised protection. While thus resting at a native village on the south bank, Stanley was visited by Gaucien himself, representing King Makoko, who came to discuss the benefits likely to accrue from a settlement of terms with the International Association. Stanley, however, told him that he could entertain no proposals because the territory had been bartered to De Brazza. At this Gaucien became furious with rage, and with vehement declaration and demonstration denied that any such treaty had been made, and boldly asseverated that if even King Makoko himself should make any compact towards selling territory, he would be sacrificed to the vengeance of his people.

The disputes occasioned by the treaty with De Brazza were so bitter that the whole country was thrown into distraction, rendering it next to impossible to make any binding settlements with the natives, who now viewed all strangers with suspicion, if not hostility. Stanley therefore concluded to return to England with the fruits of his accomplishments. By establishing so many stations and exploring the Congo, he had opened a route to Central Africa and made it possible to extend a profitable commerce between Europe and the people of the Congo region. Besides this, he discovered Lake Mantumba, a considerable body of water, and explored the river Malundu, known on the maps as Ikelembu, for a distance of one hundred miles. He found it to be a stream about the size of the Arkansas river, and deep enough for any fresh-water craft. His further acquaintance with the country, thus acquired, led him to estimate the population of the Congo basin at forty-nine millions. Throughout this populous district, gems, rubber, ivory, woods of great value, fruits, etc., could be exchanged most profitably for articles of European manufacture, and all the people were anxious for the establishment of trade relations. Stanley's report, on his return to England in 1882, was therefore very flattering, and has led to great rivalry between the English, Dutch, French, Portuguese and Germans, all of which nations have kept agents in the Congo region ever since. This rivalry resulted in the establishment of the Congo Free State, and the country is open to all nations and will be speedily settled up. Already lines of steamers have been established on the river, and a railroad is projected, in fact being built, from Banana Point to Leopoldville, which will furnish transportation to millions of immigrants into Central Africa within the next ten years.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### CHINESE GORDON.



GENERAL CHARLES GORDON, whose fame encompasses the world, was the successor of Sir Samuel Baker as Pasha in the service of the Porte, sent to the Soudan in 1874 to suppress the slave trade and bring into subjection to Egyptian sovereignty the rebellious provinces in Ethiopia.

No man has had a more remarkable career, none so distinguished, when we consider the many different flags he fought under and the diversified commands that he held. His life was like a twelfth century romance, reflecting the glamor of the crusading and chivalric ages; he was a Peter the Hermit in pious devotion, a Lancelot in skill, a Barbarossa in impetuous courage. But though he was one of the gods of war, if the metaphor be not too florid, he was in quiet scenes a babe of peace, and thus within him were those warring elements that, like hot and cold currents of air coming together to produce a cyclone, swept him into the most furious actions and left upon his brow the marks of heroic struggle. While nature seems to have made him a great military leader, endowing him with Napoleonic sagacity and almost unexampled courage, yet his heart was so gentle that it might well have served the most pious nun. And with woman's sweetest sympathy there was joined the greatest charity, devotion, loyalty, and all the holy attributes that belong to a truly generous nature. Though he was a very thunderbolt in battle, and was as anxious on the eve of action as a war-horse that is held under curb when he hears the rattle of musketry, yet the martial spirit that moved him to valorous deeds found satisfaction in execution, and was, enigmatic as it may appear, intensely displeased with every effort made to invest him with the mark of honor. He had no thirst for distinction, being as insensible to fame as the most rigid ascetic of olden times, and for wealth he had no desire whatever. Thus, when he was offered the princely salary of \$50,000 per annum by the Khedive he refused it, but accepted \$10,000, and more than two-thirds of this sum he gave away in charity to the impoverished people of the Soudan, whom he was sent to subdue and govern. And when he returned to England, from China, with a few hundred pounds that he had earned in such hard service, he expended it all in founding a school for poor boys in London. But with all this, he was adapted to command and to lead in battle, as we shall see.



We are not surprised to learn that Gordon was descended from a family of warriors, of heroes; that his great-grandfather was a Highland soldier who distinguished himself at Preston-Pans, and that his kinsmen were in the forefront under the banner of the Pretender. And his grandfather fought on the bloody field of Culloden, but the service he performed, alas! is not recorded. From Scotland the grandfather came to America, where he was soon after killed in an accident; but he left many sons, some of whom fought at Minorca, and at the siege of Louisburgh, and others perished with Wolfe on the Plains of Abraham. The father, Henry William, born 1786, was a member of the Royal Artillery, and last of his generation. He married Elizabeth Enderby, of Blackheath, by whom he had five sons and six daughters. Three of the sons entered the army, the youngest of whom, born in



GENERAL CHARLES GORDON.

1830, was our hero, whose career, I regret, space permits me to only briefly sketch.

#### IN THE CRIMEA AND BESSARABIA.

Gordon was sent to Balaklava to serve in the Crimean war, reaching his destination January 1st, 1855. His first service was as a subaltern in the trenches, but a month later he was assigned to the engineer corps and placed in charge of the construction of new batteries in advance of the trenches. There is little history obtainable from which to learn all the real services he performed before Sebastopol, but that he displayed his characteristic heroism is evidenced

by the fact that he was decorated with the Legion of Honor after the fall of that great stronghold.

In May, following the close of the Crimean war, Gordon was appointed assistant commissioner, and sent to join Major Stanton in Bessarabia, where he helped to mark the new boundaries between Russia, Turkey and Roumania, a service in which he was engaged for eleven months. In April, 1857, he assisted in the delimitation of the boundary of Asia, and was thus for the first time brought into contact with uncivilized tribes, and especially familiarized himself with the Kurds. This experience with Asiatic people aroused in him a desire to visit China, which he had the opportunity of gratifying in July, 1860. On his arrival at Hong-Kong he learned of the capture of the Taku forts, and shortly after of the massacre of several distinguished Englishmen who had first been taken prisoners by the forces under Sankolinsin. This was one of the first inhuman acts committed by the Chinese in their resistance to the English, who had sent a fleet to effect an opening of the ports of China. In consequence of this massacre, the allies marched on Peking in October and invested the city. In this engagement Gordon took a leading part, and was present at the sacking and burning of the Summer Palace, which followed the capture of the city, October 12th. Thereafter he served as commander of the royal engineers, his duties taking him far into the interior, and to places which white men had never before visited.

#### A GREAT CHINESE PROPHET.

After the effectual opening, by treaty, of the Chinese ports, Gordon still remained in the country, and circumstances arose directly which placed him in command of Chinese troops sent to suppress the Taiping rebellion.

The events which led to this uprising against the government are not wholly unlike those which led to the war in the Soudan, as will be hereafter seen. During the Opium war of 1842, when firearms were first introduced into China, a native schoolmaster, named Hung-tsue-schuen, of Taiping, announced himself as called by the gods to overthrow the Manchoo race and to take possession of the Dragon throne. He described many revelations made to him by the spirits, and succeeded in enlisting the active assistance of 20,000 converts to his pretensions, who spread the new dispensation with the greatest persistency and at the expense of the largest self-denial. Growing stronger in numbers, they at length, while ostensibly travelling about the country on a proselyting tour, began breaking idols and effacing Confucian texts from schools and temples. Hung now claimed that he was the Heavenly King, the Emperor of the Great Peace; and having defeated the mandarins in his first collision with them, his forces so greatly augmented that, with the legions at his command, he began a devastation of the country.

Hung's success gave color to his heavenly commissioned pretensions, while affording at the time a ripe opportunity for piracy and all manner of lawlessness. He marched at last upon Nanking, which speedily capitulated to his





SOLDIERS OF THE IMPERIAL ARMY.

enormous army, and in this city he established himself as the Heavenly King, and there he continued in the usurpation of the sovereign prerogative until 1860. He had avoided any connection with the war between England and the government, pretending that he was attempting to establish the Christian religion in the country, hoping thereby for English and French interference in his behalf. But when this hoped-for aid was finally denied, he became insolent, and in 1860 threatened Shanghai and all the consular ports.

#### THE EVER-VICTORIOUS ARMY.

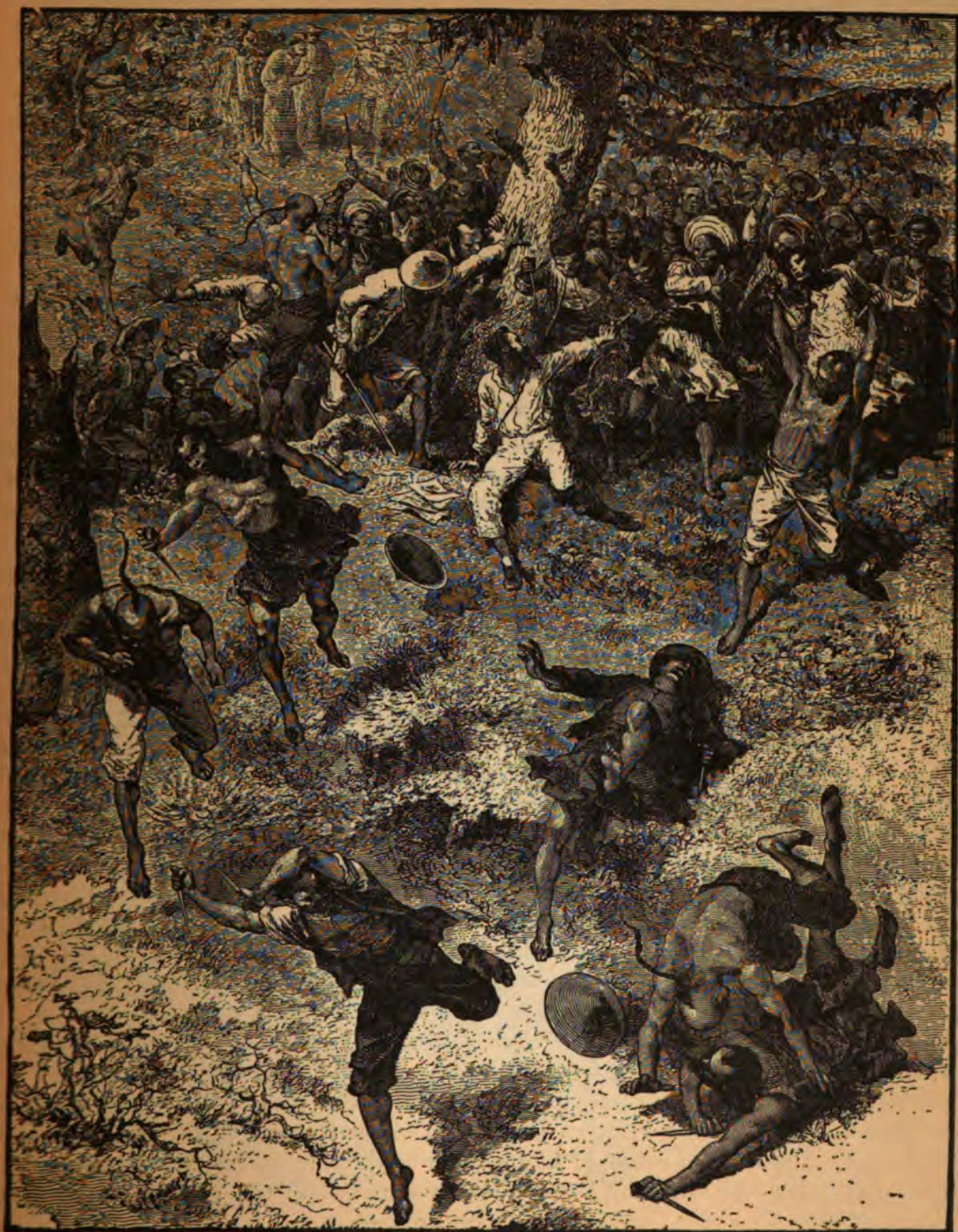
The English and French had been applied to for assistance by both the Taiping rebels and the Imperialists, but they wisely abstained from taking sides, though holding themselves ready to protect the commerce of the ports, and foreigners who had entered the country to trade. The mandarins of Shanghai, therefore, became so alarmed for themselves and their interests, which were so alarmingly menaced by the rebels, that they commissioned two Americans who happened to be in Shanghai at the time, named Ward and Burgevine, both of whom were adventurers, the former having served under Walker in Nicaragua, giving them authority to raise a contingent for the defence of the city. In addition to this they were offered a large reward for the capture of a strategic place called Sung-Kiang, twenty miles from Shanghai, which was in the hands of the rebels. The two Americans raised a force of 100 men, chiefly sailors, who, being well armed, made an assault on the place at night, but were repulsed with a loss of half their number. Not discouraged by this disaster, but gaining a knowledge of the temper and power of their adversaries, the Americans increased their force by the addition of several thousand Imperialists, with which they again threw themselves against the fortifications of the rebels, and this time succeeded not only in gaining an entrance to Sung-Kiang, but in massacring a large number of the rebels and putting the rest to flight.

The success that had attended their enterprise prompted Ward to name his force the "Ever-Victorious Army," a title which seems to have been fortunately bestowed, since its lists of victories so largely increased that Ward, as generalissimo, continued to act on the aggressive and pursued the rebels until checked and turned back by a new army, under one of the Taiping leaders, that had marched down from the interior to assist in the intended attack on Shanghai. Ward's army was thus forced back into Sung-Kiang, where it was invested by a large force, while another rebel contingent marched on Shanghai, committing every conceivable depredation on the way.

#### THE ATTACK ON SHANGHAI.

The army of the rebels, headed by the fanatic who had styled himself the Faithful and the Heavenly King, rushed down with an impetuous dash upon Shanghai, crying for vengeance against the government, and particularly against "the foreign dogs," who were supposed to be operating with the Imperialists. Mutual interests now forced the allies to fly to the protection of





TAIPING REBELS COMMITTING ATROCITIES ON THE WAY TO SHANGHAI.

the city, which if taken would certainly be looted and burned. The French and English accordingly joined the Imperialists, and on August 18th, 1860, they met with heroic resolution the shock of the rebel charge. A desperate battle followed, in which the so-called Heavenly King was repulsed, but not entirely beaten. Rallying his forces on the following day, the rebel king returned to the charge, when the desperate fighting which distinguished the preceding day was repeated. But this time the results were more decisive, for the rebels were dispersed with great slaughter and driven by the pursuing allies until they had to retire to Soochow.

After a short period of inactivity at Soochow, the Heavenly King went to Nanking, from which point, in October, he sent forth four immense armies to attack the Imperialists along the Yangtze river, in a district of some four hundred miles. The ports along this river had been opened up to foreign trade by the Peking treaty, so that the British Naval Commander, Sir James Hope, ascended the river with his fleet, and, obtaining an interview with the rebel king, obtained from him a promise not to interfere in any way with the trade of that river, and also not to make any demonstration on Shanghai for the period of one year, both of which promises were faithfully fulfilled.

But the year 1861 was full of disasters to the Heavenly King, who in trying to capture Hankow was driven from that metropolis back again into the neighborhood of Shanghai. The rebel king now notified Sir James Hope that upon the expiration of the year's truce he would move upon Shanghai, which, despite the warnings given him in reply, he proceeded to do in January, 1862.

The allied forces—French and British—resolved to defend the city and also to form a junction with Ward, who was still at Sung-Kiang, with a force of 1000 well-drilled Chinese soldiers. The result of this alliance was the rout of the rebels again, who were driven to Ning-po. The fighting continued, however, but in September, Ward was killed in a skirmish, and was succeeded in command of the Ever-Victorious Army by Burgevine, who, however, was cashiered for looting the local Chinese treasury of Shanghai, in January following.

Up to this time the two American adventurers had been in practical command of the allies, but with their disappearance the British Government was formally applied to for a new commander. This step was rendered the more necessary by a refusal of the British and French to lend any aid towards a suppression of the rebellion, more than to guard the frontier within thirty miles of Shanghai, where the foreign interest was entitled to protection.

The request for a new commander of the Ever-Victorious Army was conveyed to general Staveley, who referred the matter to the Horse Guards, but in turn it was sent back to him for action. The result was the selection of Gordon, who was soon after given the title of General, and was raised to the post of Mandarin.

#### THE DEFEAT OF HOLLAND.

Before taking active command of the army, Gordon asked for a month's time, to be spent by him in an examination of the surrounding country. During



DEATH OF WANG AT THE HANDS OF THE REBELS.





this preparatory work, fitting him the better, by giving him a knowledge of the topography of the region through which he was soon to inaugurate a vigorously aggressive campaign, for the work he was about to undertake, Gordon suffered a Captain Holland, of the Marine Light Infantry, to take temporary command. Holland, hoping to gain at once a reputation for skilful generalship, collected a force of 7500 men with which he attacked the walled city of Taitsan, the attack resulting in his inglorious defeat and the loss of all his cannons and ammunition. This victory greatly elated the rebels, while correspondingly depressing the Imperialists, and produced such a reaction that Gordon hastened to take command of the now demoralized army, before one-half his month's leave had expired.

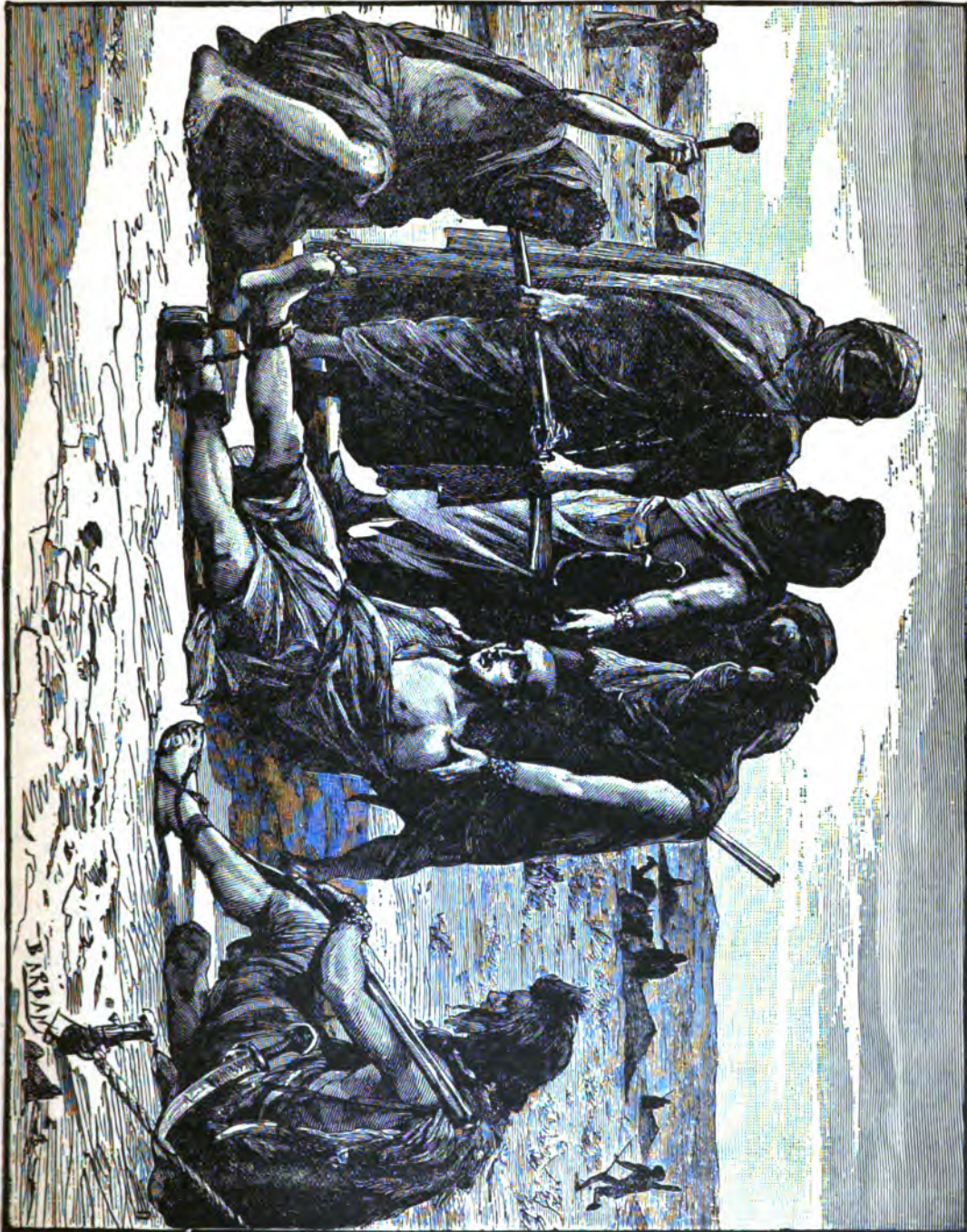
Gordon found it necessary to reorganize his army, and after infusing it with some of his own indomitable courage, he led it, though only 1000 strong, in an attack on the rebel stronghold at Fushan, on the Yangtze river. This place he bombarded until it was evacuated, and then without halting he marched on Chanzfu, inland some ten miles, which he relieved, to the intense delight of the citizens, who had been surrounded for several weeks by the rebels and until starvation was threatening.

#### THE SIEGE OF TAITSAN, AND HORRIBLE TORTURES.

With this success, which brought to his aid the confidence of the Imperialists, Gordon was able to make the amplest provision for his army in the way of providing pay and effective arms for his soldiers. He now had a well equipped army of 3000 men, with which he determined to lay siege to Taitsan, although it was garrisoned by a force of 10,000 rebels, among whom were many English, French and American renegades. His first act was to cut the line of communication between Taitsan and Quinsan and Soochow, and then to move a line of breastworks towards the city. His approaches were gradual but constant until within one hundred yards of the walls, when he opened a tremendous fire on the battlements, silencing the guns of the enemy and permitting him to bridge the moat that surrounded the walls with gun boats that had moved up the river to his aid. In two hours after the attack opened a breach was made in the walls, but at dreadful expense, for now the battlements were remounted, from which a storm of leaden hail poured down upon the assailants. Twice the Imperialists were repulsed, but cheered on by their heroic commander, they charged again to the breach and at length were swept through and over the walls by the impetuous ranks that closed up from behind. The city was taken by this irresistible assault, and several thousands of the rebels made prisoners. Among these were seven special offenders whom the Mandarins decreed should suffer the penalty of a slow and torturous death. Gordon had no sympathy with the manner of punishment that the Imperialists, according to all Chinese customs, inflicted upon their enemies, but his influence, great as it was, could not prevent it. The seven unfortunates, who had themselves inflicted a similar torture upon Imperialist prisoners who had fallen into their



hands, were taken to a place near Waikong, and were there tied up by their arms and legs and exposed to public view five hours before decapitation. To increase



PREPARING A PRISONER FOR TORTURE.

the torture, while thus hanging, arrows were forced through their bodies in various places, and a large piece of flesh was cut out of the right arm of each victim,





GORDON FIGHTING HIS WAY UP THE YANGTZE RIVER AND GRAND CANAL.



so that when they were finally brought before the executioner they were so far exhausted as to be insensible to their last but more merciful punishment.

After the brilliant victory at Taitan, Gordon's name became a household word in China, and he appeared to them as the matchless, the unconquerable, the Ever-Victorious Englishman. With this reputation he was able at length to force the Mandarins to treat their prisoners of war with more humane consideration, so that tortures like those described were not repeated.

Gordon's next effort was the reduction of the great fortifications around Quinsan and capture of the city, which he accomplished in a three days' attack, in which the enemy lost 5000 men, while his own fatalities numbered only two killed and five drowned.

After garrisoning this large city and most valuable strategical point he continued his victorious march towards Soochow, the capital of the empire, and the most important city on the grand canal. In this place was the flower of the Taiping army with a force estimated at 30,000. Although he now had at his command hardly 10,000 men, and the city which he had resolved to invest was the best fortified of all the cities of the kingdom, yet he seemed to have the utmost reliance in his ability to effect its capture. Accordingly, he sent two of his small gunboats up the canal, which with little opposition captured the canal outposts of the place. He then, with his main army, swept around to the eastward and planted his siege guns against the other outposts. Simultaneously with the beginning of a bombardment of the outer posts he made an assault upon Leeku, which soon capitulated, and with its fall followed that of Wauti, which completed the investment of Soochow.

#### A HELLISH NIGHT.

The most serious obstacles were yet to be met, for though the outposts had been reduced and the siege fairly begun, the strength of the main fortifications was yet to be determined, as well as the resolution of the defenders. Eleven days of investment had given neither side any advantage, when Gordon determined to make a night attack, which he did by assaulting the north-east angle at one o'clock in the morning. An advance was made on the outer stockade, which progressed favorably until the advance guard had clambered upon the breastworks. All had been still up to this time, when suddenly hell itself seemed to open and from its sulphurous bowels gushed out a sheet of flame that gave to creation such murderous missiles as grape-shot and bullets. It was an awful moment, in which the riot of death held high carnival, against which even Gordon himself could not make the magic wand which he was supposed to carry effective. But though he could not stem the tide, he fell back gracefully on its current, and with his shattered contingent rushed back to the guns that thundered both death and applause. Though repulsed, with serious loss, Gordon had given blow for blow, and when morning broke there was a row of dead men on either side of the broken walls.

Even though the rebels had beaten back their enemies, they felt that a



AFTER THE BATTLE.



capitulation of the city was only a question of time, and so general was their fears of disaster attending the result of further defence, that several of the Taiping generals became anxious not only to surrender, but they actually sent a proposal to Gordon to come over to the Imperialists, with several thousands of their men. In order to accomplish this proposed desertion, they requested Gordon to make an attack on the east gate, by which the deserters would be able to separate from the other rebels, and thus escape from the main body without a knowledge of their intention being discovered.

In pursuance of the proposal received, Gordon brought his siege guns again into action on the point indicated, and opened such a tremendous fire that the stockades were soon reduced and many large breaches made in the walls; but an entrance to the city was not yet open, and more desperate fighting would be necessary before reaching the inner walls.

An interview was arranged between several of the rebel generals and Gordon, at which the former promised to abstain from action during the next assault if they were guaranteed immunity from harm by the Imperialists upon the city's capitulation. This agreement was received with favor, the more so because Gordon's available force was now only 5500 men, and the inner wall of the city was protected by a deep moat of appalling width. To demonstrate their sincerity, the deserting generals even arranged to surrender one of the gates of the city, but in this promise Gordon did not place the greatest confidence, though by way of enforcing compliance he put on a bold front, and declared that if it were not done he would not be responsible for the conduct of his soldiers.

#### MURDER OF THE DESERTING GENERALS.

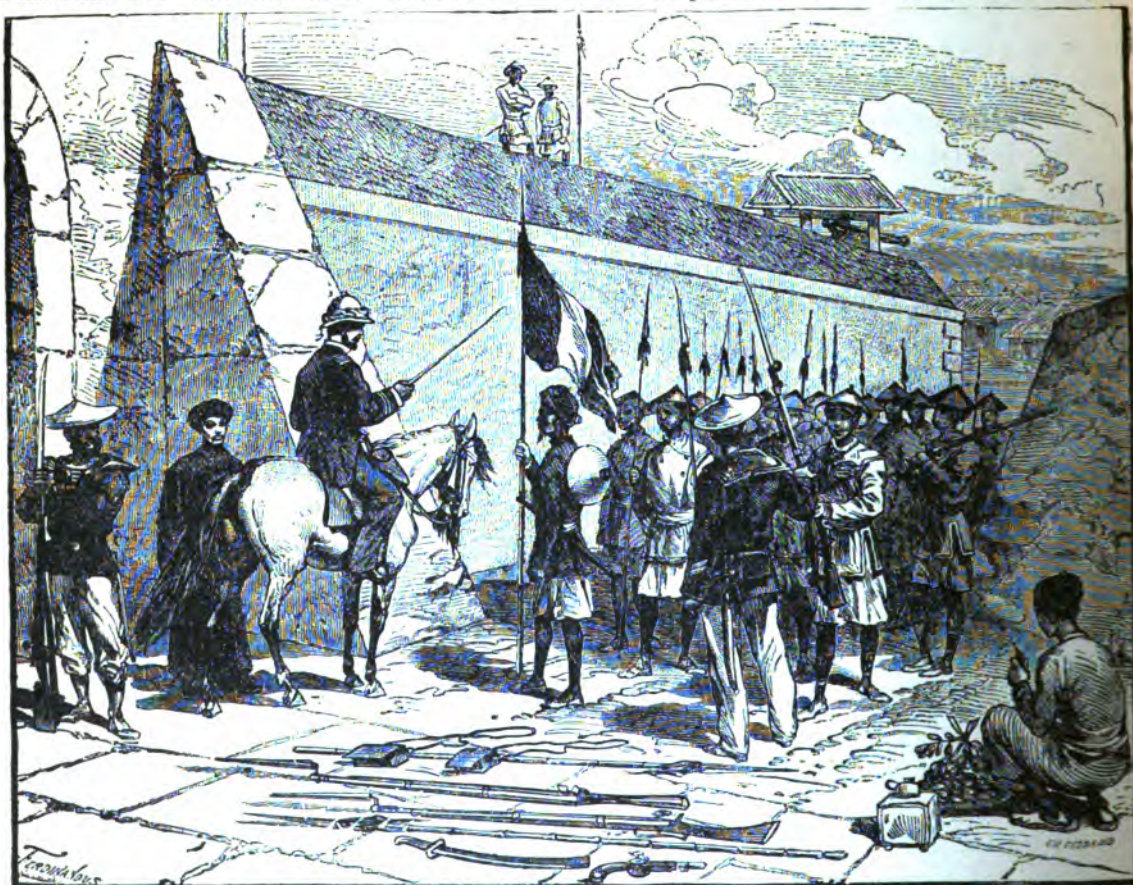
On the following day the attack was renewed, but so little resistance was offered that Gordon made no stop until he entered the city and set the Imperial flag on the walls. He found the place in the wildest confusion, which was doubly confounded by the looting soldiers and the high-leaping flames that shot up from hundreds of burning buildings. By heroic resolution Gordon finally restrained the rapacity of his soldiers and gradually restored order, but when he came to make inquiries about the deserters to whom he had promised protection he found that they had all been murdered, and that too by order of General Ching, of the Imperialist force, who was present with Gordon when the promise of immunity was made. This act of treachery, in which his own honor was deeply involved, so sensibly affected Gordon that he burst into tears. But grief was almost immediately followed by a spirit of vengeance, which he vowed against the perpetrators of this most damnable act. Gordon therefore armed himself, and went in quest of Ching, whom he determined to kill and thus compel an atonement for the crime. His anger was also likewise directed against Li, who was governor of the province, and was present at the interview with the deserters, adding his approval of the protection thus promised, but who assisted in the execution. Gordon sought for these two high officers in every quarter of the

city, and even called upon his army to aid in locating them, but they had learned of the outraged General's intentions and made good their escape.

Being unable to bring Ching and Li to a summary justice, Gordon felt that the only course open to him now was in resigning command of the army, feeling that further service with such barbarians would be the lending of an active support to their inhuman, treacherous and villainous policies.

#### REWARDED BY THE EMPEROR.

Two months of inactivity now intervened, with Gordon's resolution to abandon the service still unshaken. The Emperor, however, had the good

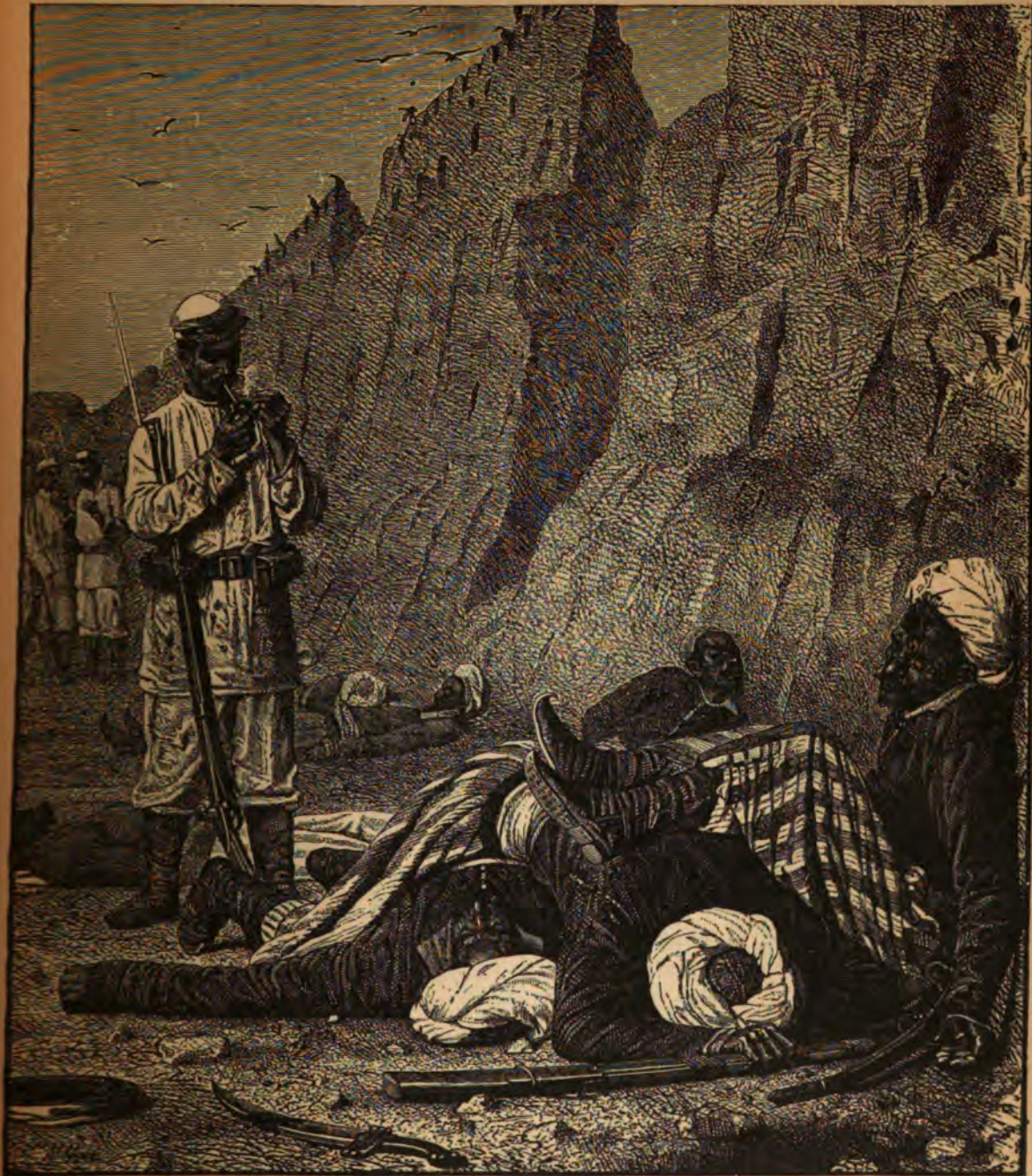


GORDON'S AUDIENCE WITH THE TAIPING REBELS.

judgment to appreciate the value of his services, and not only sent him a medal of the highest honor, but also ten thousand taels (fifteen thousand dollars) as a special compliment to his heroism and military genius displayed at the siege of Soochow. The former Gordon received with manifestations of pleasure, but the latter he rejected as being, in his mind, too intimately connected with the perfidious acts of Ching and Li. Gradually, however, his anger subsided under the assurances that the country would not regard him as having any sympathy with the murderers, and especially under the Emperor's kindly offices, who



even communicated to the Queen of England the noble services for which he had become indebted to her distinguished subject. Added to all these persua-



EXECUTION OF THE DESERTING GENERALS.

sive, as well as mollifying influences, Gordon was brought to consider the great work which he had undertaken, and which was more than two-thirds accom-

plished when Soochow fell. To relinquish what had been gained would lose to him the honor so gloriously won, so that a keen appreciation of the situation, which came only after more mature consideration, at length led him to resume command of the Ever-Victorious Army and renew hostilities against the rebels.

On the 19th of February, 1864, Gordon quitted Quinsan with a force of nearly ten thousand, and marched against the rebel strongholds in the mid-interior, where he must depend for supplies almost wholly on such forage as he could obtain. He had not proceeded many miles towards Yesing before he discovered that the country had been ravaged by the rebels to such an extent that millions of people had been left in a starving state. Indeed at one village he found the inhabitants not only without shelter, but so reduced by lack of food that the survivors were feeding off the bodies of the dead. But the desperate poverty of the people was at least one advantage to Gordon, for it made them anxious to join the Imperialists, both for revenge against the rebels and to relieve their indescribable distress. Thousands accordingly signed their allegiance to the Emperor, and though generally without arms, gave Gordon considerable assistance.

#### THE STORMING OF KINTANG.

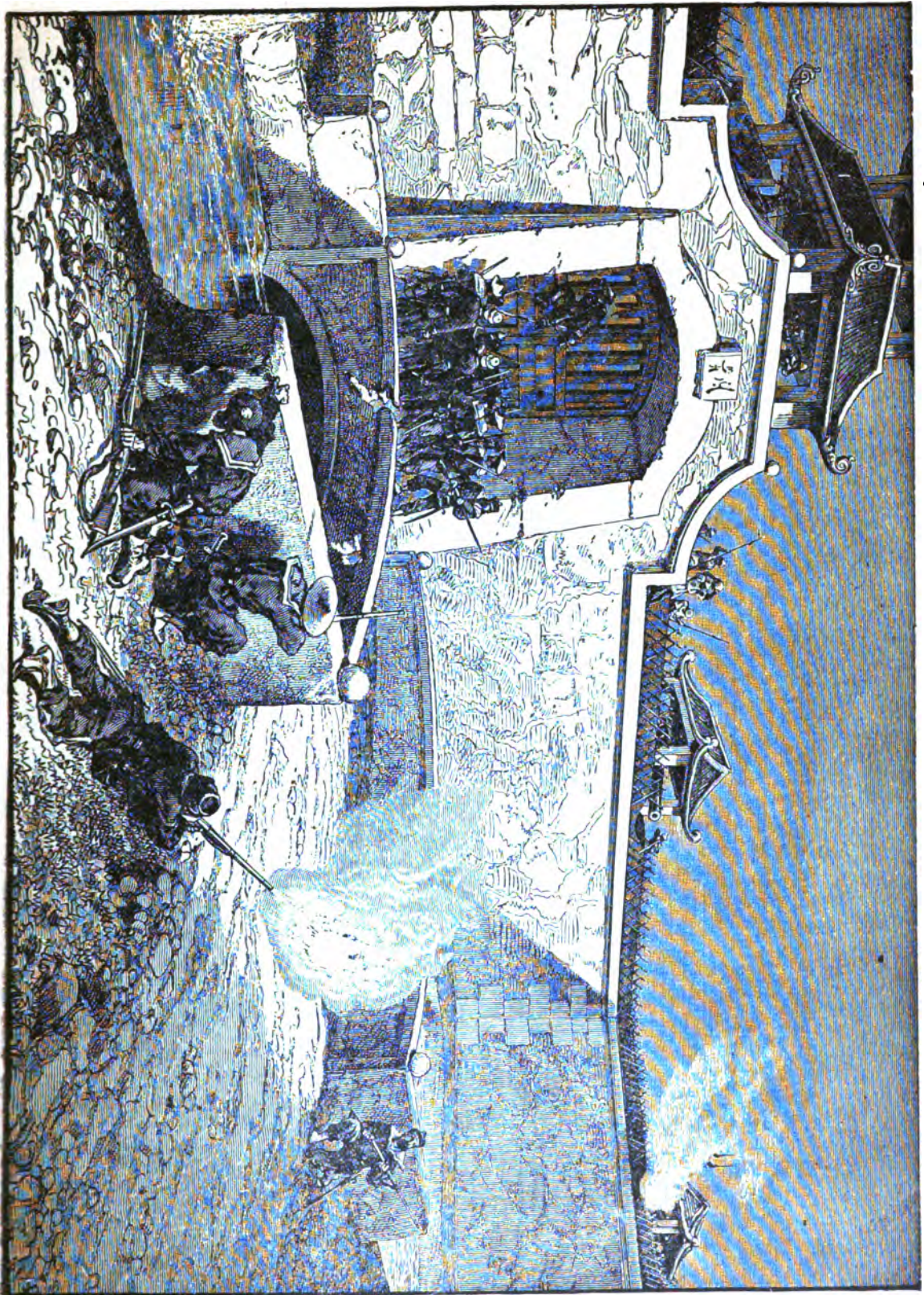
On March 1st the Imperialists entered Yesing, and four days later Liyang also capitulated. After a rest of only two days, Gordon again resumed the march and soon threw his army against the great city and stronghold of Kintang. Here the rebels made a desperate resistance, beating back three terrific assaults of the Imperialists, in the second of which Gordon was badly wounded in the leg, and in the last the Ever-Victorious Army, deprived of its heroic commander, was beaten and forced to retreat back to Liyang.

Gordon was badly hurt, but his restlessness and indomitable courage would not suffer him to keep his couch for more than a week, and with his leg in a swollen, feverish and still bleeding condition, he again headed his little army and at once began driving the rebels from village to village and into their capital strongholds. The country through which his operations had to be made was one vast desolation, with starvation on every side, and cannibalism a necessity at almost every home. To subsist his army was possible only by beating the enemy from place to place and capturing their supplies. He was therefore forced to conduct his movements with the utmost rapidity, and keep constantly on the enemy's flank, or at their heels.

#### BLOWING UP THE GATES.

Gordon finally drove the rebels into Waissoo, which he captured after a brief assault, then marched on to Chanchu-fu, which was held by twenty thousand of the Taipings, who were commanded by Hu-Wang, one of the bravest and most desperate men in all China. This place was invested, but it held out for several days and repulsed the assaults made against it until the Imperialists began to believe its walls impregnable. Communication was established with several of the rebels who, like those in Soochow, expressed a wish to desert,



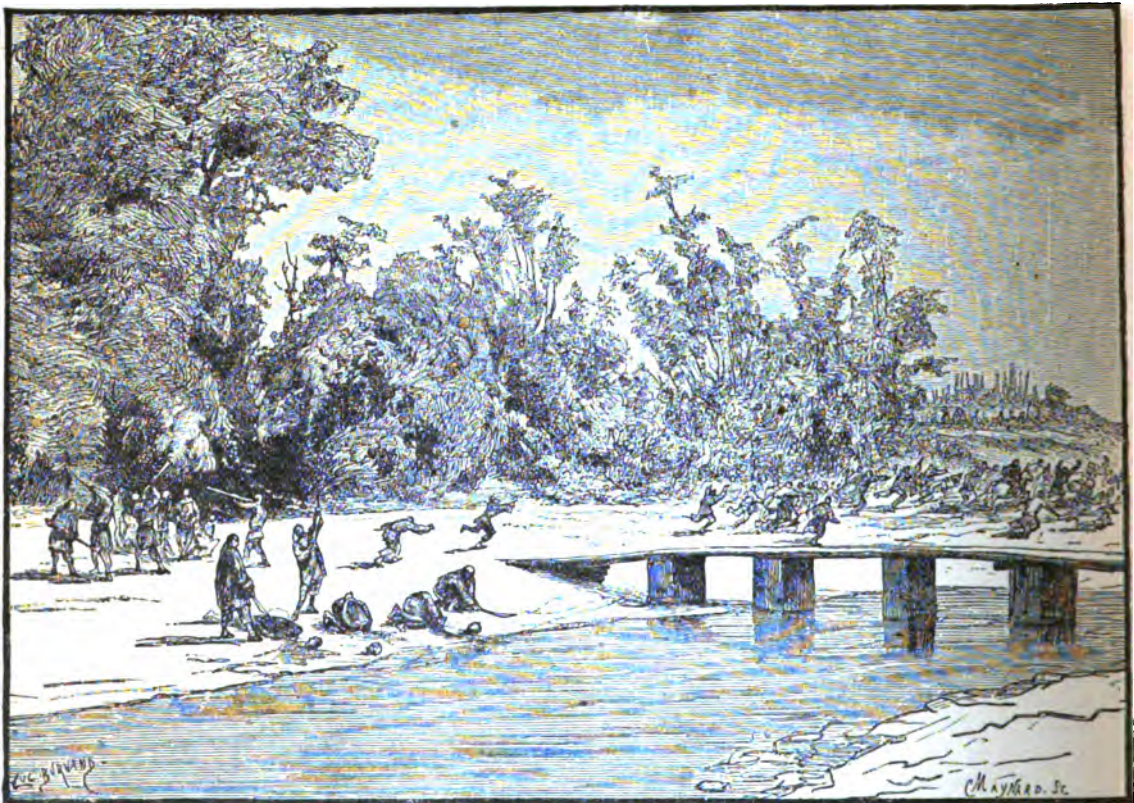


STORMING OF KINTANG.



and this, through Gordon's strategy, led to an exposure of the north gate, which was blown down and gave entrance to the Imperialists, who swarmed upon the rebels and, killing thousands, took other thousands prisoners, many of whom, including Hu-Wang, were beheaded.

About this time an order was received from the British Crown withdrawing permission, given two years before, for English officers to take service under the Chinese Government. Had it come a month earlier the rebels might have ultimately gained control of the government, but with the fall of Chanchu-fu there was not enough vitality left for the dying snake of rebellion to wag its



BEHEADING THE PRISONERS.

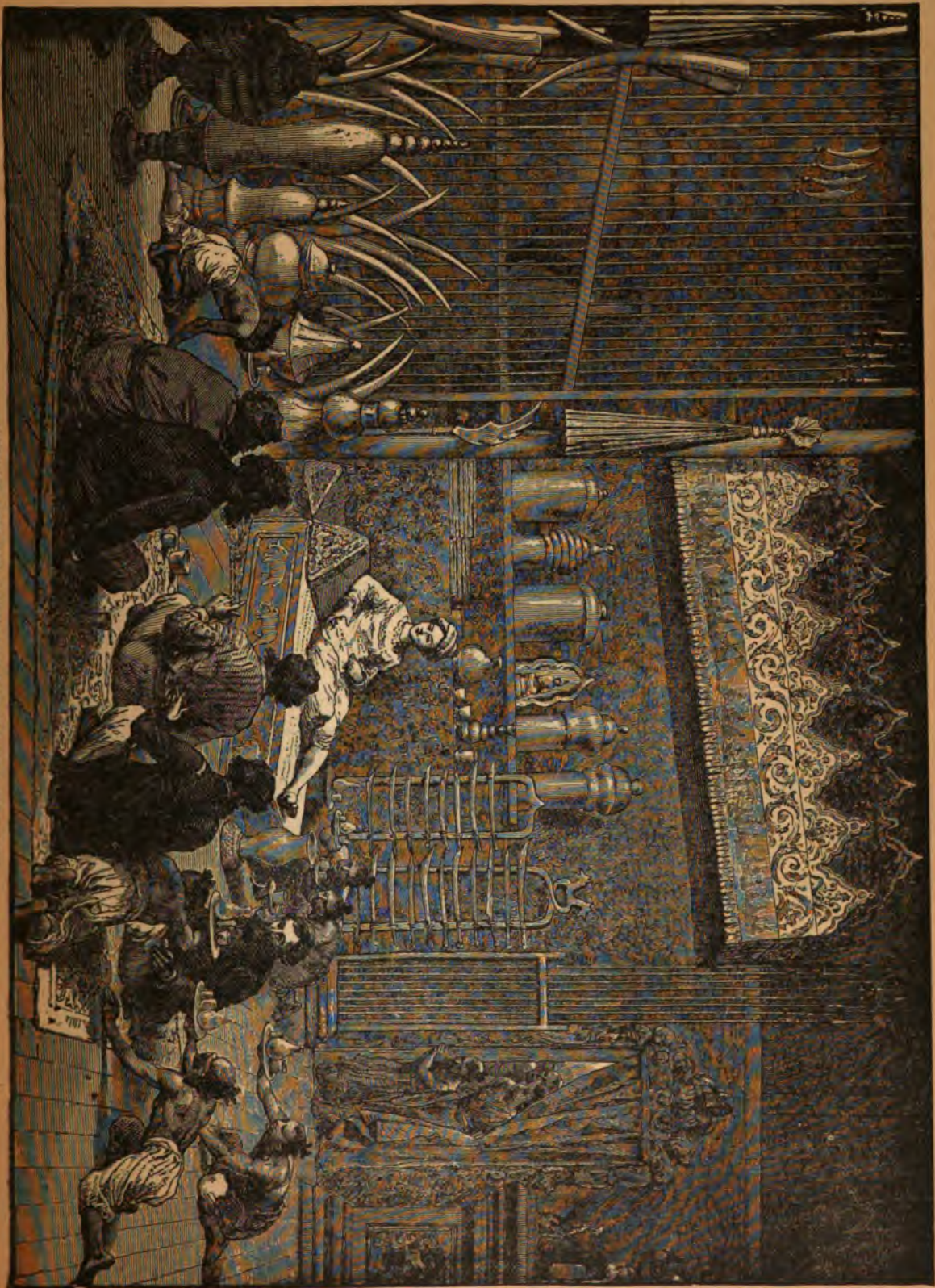
tail any longer. It now fell to pieces with astonishing rapidity, those who had thus far held out being anxious to surrender in order to escape the punishment that would follow capture.

#### TRAGIC END OF THE FALSE PROPHET.

Nanking was now the only stronghold in the hands of the rebels, and this city was invested and on the eve of surrender when Gordon dismissed his army, as being no longer needful to the government, and retired to Shanghai. Here he was received with demonstrations of homage by the merchants of that place, who made him some splendid presentations, notwithstanding it was well known with what reluctance he accepted any substantial favors. In addition



GORDON AND HIS GENERALS BEFORE THE EMPEROR.



to this the Emperor presented him with an address embodying an acknowledgment of his distinguished services, and invested him with the rank of Ti-Tu (the Yellow Jacket), the highest within the power of that potentate to bestow.

On the fall of Nanking, which occurred a few days after the dismissal of Gordon's army, the great Hung, once a village school-teacher and later the Heavenly King, the so-called vicegerent of God, the head of the Taiping rebellion, committed suicide by shooting himself through the head. This was his miserable end, but he deserved a more tragic fate. No other human being has been charged with perpetrating such cruelties as he. Prisoners who fell into his hands—so they were not foreigners—were put to inconceivably horrible tortures; flaying alive was the more common method he employed, but as the humor possessed him he broke the bones, crushed the flesh, drove spikes into the body, and burned and harrowed his victims. His last act, preceding that of his own taking off, was the hanging of all his wives, nearly one hundred in number. Thus lived and perished the great false prophet of China, so horrifying in his every aspect, so inhuman in character, that the tragedy of his ending had the one good effect of destroying the hope of any succeeding fanatic bound by his abominable creed.





## CHAPTER XIV.

### IN THE KHEDIVE'S SERVICE.



PEACE having been restored in China, and foreign trade relieved from the incubus of a rebellion that had so long paralyzed it, Gordon felt that his next duty was to his own country. Accordingly, in January, 1865, he sailed for home, and on his arrival there he was met by the acclamations of his countrymen, who hailed him as one of England's greatest heroes. In the same year he received the appointment of commanding Royal Engineer at Gravesend, where he remained six years superintending the construction of the Thames defences. In 1871 he was made a member of the European Commission of the Danube, and spent eighteen months engineering improvements at the mouth of that river.

In 1873 the Ashantees became very troublesome and were planning an attack on Cape Coast Castle, and otherwise seriously interfering with British trade on the coast of West Africa. A general request was almost immediately voiced by the press that Gordon should be appointed to take command of the forces it had been decided to send against the Ashantees; but while the popular demand was being urged there was a request for his services in a new field, where energy, adroitness and courage such as his were particularly necessary.

Sir Samuel Baker had returned from the Soudan, as already described, but though partially successful in establishing Egyptian sovereignty in the Soudan, much yet remained to be done, and that too immediately, or else all of Baker's work would be speedily lost, leaving the Soudan in more chaotic condition than before. In 1873 Gordon left Galatz, where he had been serving as vice-counsel of the Danubian Commission, and at the solicitation of Nubar Pasha in the year following entered the Egyptian service. The Khedive proposed to give him \$50,000 per annum for his services, but he refused to accept more than \$10,000, the sum which he was then receiving from his own government.

#### THE INSINCERITY OF THE KHEDIVE.

Baker had succeeded in bringing all the tribes of northern Africa—south as far as the central lake basin, and west to Lake Tchad—under Egyptian rule, but his efforts at suppressing the infamous slave trade in that large district had proved futile, principally because of the open countenance lent to the trade by the Egyptian government, which issued licenses to the slave traders and fostered their horrible traffic. But there was such a cry from all civilized countries for its suppression that the Khedive was forced to assume a position

antagonistic to its continuance, and to carry out the idea that he sincerely desired a removal of this blot upon his rule, he employed Baker, as governor of Ismalia, to suppress it. When Baker returned, discouraged by the lukewarmness, if not direct conniving of the Khedive, Gordon was engaged to continue this shameful mask of philanthropy.

He had been in Cairo only a short while before he discovered signs of insincerity in the Khedive's motives, for in writing home he says: "I think I can see the true motive of this expedition, and believe it to be a sham to catch the attention of the English people."

But though Gordon discovered, through the thin veneering of feigned sympathy for the poor blacks of Africa, a desire to secretly perpetuate the slave



GORDON'S INFANTRY ESCORT.

trade, his own sympathies were so excited that even without the Khedive's co-operation he still hoped to be able to relieve some of the untold miseries which followed an open and unrestricted license of slave abduction and trading.

#### OFF FOR CENTRAL AFRICA.

Early in February, 1874, Gordon left Cairo for Suakim, with a long retinue of servants, 220 troops, and a staff consisting of Romulus Gessi, an Italian, Mr. Kemp, a distinguished military engineer, two brothers named Linant, Mr. Russell, Mr. Anson, Colonel Chaille Long, an American, and Abou Saood, an ex-slave dealer who had given Baker so much trouble.



The party reached Suakim February 25th, and a fortnight later they crossed the desert to Berber, where the following assignments were made: Gessi and Anson were first sent to open communication with the natives in the region of the Bahr Gazelle, whose friendship was essential to the purposes in view, and among whom it was desirable to learn the workings of the slave-trade. Kemp and Russell were dispatched to the falls below Gondokoro, to learn if the Nile was navigable at that season around them. The Linants undertook the more responsible duty of visiting the several tribes that are to be met with along the route, with the intent of establishing friendly relations with them.



GORDON REVIEWING HIS TROOPS AT KHARTOUM.

Colonel Long was at once given charge of the district of Gondokoro, which placed him in command of a section of country extending to Lake Victoria. Abou Saood, though known to be very treacherous, was most serviceable to the expedition in affording information about the country and people, which he knew so well, and in being chief interpreter between Gordon and the natives.

The expedition departed from Berber after a short stay and proceeded on to Khartoum, only three days' sail distant, where upon his arrival he issued the following proclamation:

"By reason of the authority of the Governor of the Provinces of the



Equatorial Lakes, with which His Highness, the Khedive, has invested me, and the irregularities which until now have been committed, it is henceforth decreed:

"1. That the traffic in ivory is the monopoly of the Government.

"2. No person may enter these Provinces without a permit from the Governor-General of the Soudan, such permit being available only after it shall have received the indorsement of competent authority at Gondokoro or elsewhere.

"3. No person may recruit or organize armed bands within these Provinces.



SCENE ALONG THE NILE.

"4. The importation of firearms and gunpowder is prohibited.

"5. Whosoever shall disobey this decree will be punished with all the rigor of the military law.

"GORDON."

#### ADVENTURES ALONG THE NILE.

March 22d Gordon set sail for Gondokoro, accompanied by Abou Saood, while his staff set out on their respective assignments, but on this same day one of the Linant brothers died of fever, which sad event served to cast a deep gloom, approaching to despondency, upon all the party. However, Gordon proceeded, fortified by his resolution to perform the duties entrusted to him. As his vessel passed slowly up the river he began to grow interested in the



strange sights and sounds that greeted his ears. Along the banks were rows of stately and statuesque whale-headed storks, cranes and beautiful egrets.



A SPORTIVE HIPPOPOTAMUS.

From these singular specimens of the feathered life with which the banks abounded his surprised eyes wandered along the shores that were animated

with grotesque reptiles, huge crocodiles basking themselves, or clumsily wading through the mud and clambering over each other. Soon there broke upon his vision other yet more startling specimens of Nilotic life; gigantic amphibians that brought a realization of the leviathan of Scriptures. Crossing the river, or rustling the reeds along the banks and breaking down large swaths of grass under their ponderous tread, were giant hippopotami, the lords of this wondrous river.

His interest in these moving scenes of animated nature had heretofore been that of a spectator, exciting in him a more reverential admiration for the works of One who had thus diversified the world with such surprising creations; but his revery and wonder were suddenly disturbed by the unexpected uprising of a hippopotamus, whose great head struck the bottom of a small boat in tow of his vessel, and in which several sheep were being transported to provide meat for the expedition. The force of the impact was such that the boat was lifted several feet sheer of the water, and the sheep were thrown from both sides into the river, no doubt more astonished at the rudeness than was Gordon. It was now time for a demonstration of active interest in the moving scenes of nature, and thus while men were sent at once to recover the sheep, Gordon seized his rifle and opened fire on the beast that had so discomfited his pious reflections.

April 2d the district occupied by the Dinka tribe was reached, and several of these naked wizard worshippers were seen, but it was with the greatest difficulty that a chief could be induced to come on board even to receive a splendid present of beads. Two days later, however, several others were met that made themselves most offensively familiar, their misery no doubt serving to make them less timid.

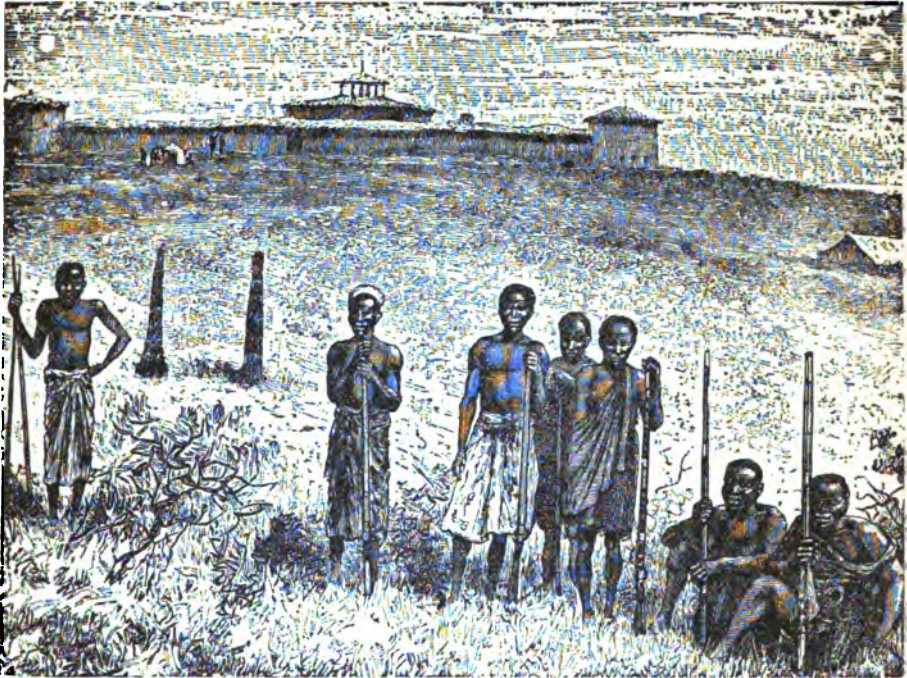
#### THE MAN-HUNTERS OF FASHODA.

Gordon reached Gondokoro April 16th, and was met by those at the mission with songs and dances, but most of the people gave him sullen looks, which indicated their unfriendliness to his purpose. Here the old slave-traders ruled supreme, while their acts of rapine had rendered the country insecure even within half a mile of the town. Thus Gordon was in danger from two sources, his intentions as yet being unknown to the people that he had been sent to protect.

But despite the danger of his surroundings he set fearlessly to work to win the confidence of the blacks, and by first sending them presents of beads, rings and cloths, and following this by giving supplies of grain to those most sorely pressed by hunger, he soon came to be known as a friend to the oppressed. He had not been many days in Gondokoro before it became too apparent that the Arabs in the place were operating as much in the interest of the Government as in their own. They were detected in stealing cattle from the natives and in kidnapping and making slaves of the owners; and then sharing their booty with officers very close to the Khedive. Directly after making his first



discovery of this kind, by accident he gained possession of a letter from some man-hunters of Fashoda, announcing to their correspondent their success in capturing 2000 head of cattle and half that number of negroes, which were then on the way to Gondokoro, en route for Cairo. He waited his opportunity, and on the arrival of these spoils at Gondokoro a few days later, Gordon confiscated the cattle and liberated the slaves. As the latter were now far from their homes, several of them were taken into his own service, and the rest, such as desired to do so, were allowed to depart. This act, which was followed by the imprisonment of the chief slavers, had a great influence among the natives favorable to the purpose of his appointment. Henceforth he was nowhere so secure as when among the tribes, who manifested their affection by touching his hands and even kissing his clothing. He established another station on the Sobat river, where he remained two months, doing many acts of kindness to the natives, but on returning to Gondokoro he found the garrison in a deplorable state and his officers engaged in an intrigue against him.



Two of his men, Raouf Bey and Abou Saood, were ready to rise in rebellion, and so insubordinate that he was forced to make an example of the latter by dismissing him and reporting his intrigue to the Khedive.

THE FORT AT GONDOKORO.

Getting rid of Abou Saood, Gordon reinstated Raouf Bey, upon his promise of future good behavior, and then went about establishing new stations, which he founded at Sobat, Bohr, Lado, Rageef, Fatiko, Duffili and Makrake, which latter post was on the frontier of the Niam-Niam country. Up to this time he had made his expedition more than self-sustaining through reprisals from the slave dealers and collections of license from the ivory dealers.

#### OPENING A ROUTE TO THE LAKE REGIONS.

Col. Long had been sent to visit the great Uganda king, M'tesa, and his reception by that potentate was so cordial, and so encouraging for friendly and



profitable relations, that in 1875 Gordon decided to open a route to that country and plant the Egyptian flag on the shores of Lakes Victoria and Albert. His first act in the accomplishment of this object was in forming a junction between Gondokoro and Foweira by establishing a chain of fortified posts between the two, only a day's journey apart. He also wished to open a route to Mombaz Bay, 250 miles south of Zanzibar, from which it would be easier to reach the central region from the coast than up the Nile via Khartoum. To enable him to carry out his wishes he asked the Khedive to send a steamer with 150 men



COLONEL LONG'S RECEPTION BY THE KING OF UGANDA.

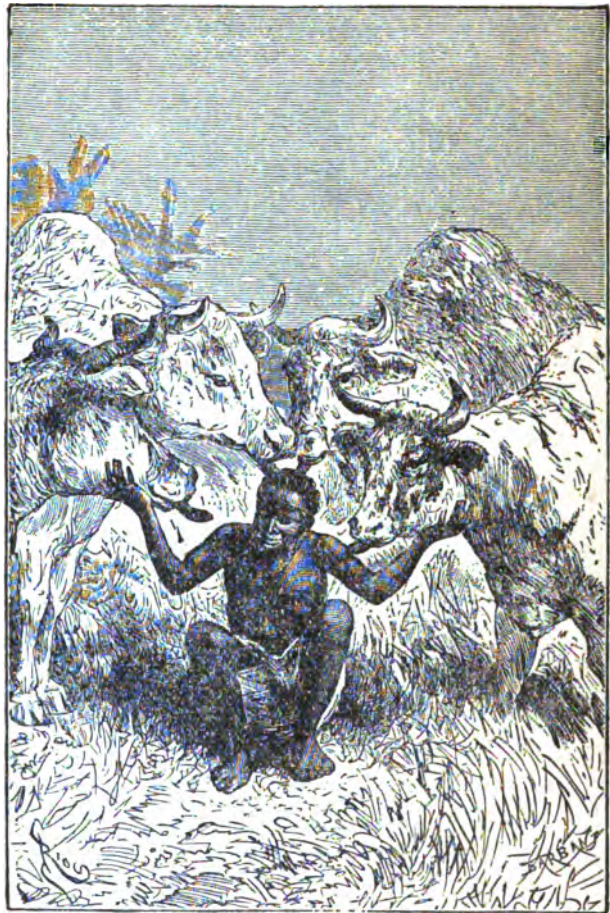
to Mombaz Bay and there found a station, and then order the men to push on to M'tesa's country. Hoping that his request would be granted, Gordon started up the west bank of the Nile to Duffili, 800 miles almost due south of Khartoum. Scarcely had he departed, however, when news reached him from Foweira, 100 miles south of Duffili, that Kabba Rega, King of Unyoro, was planning an attack against the ex-slave dealers who were now in the Khedive's service in that section. This report, soon after confirmed, determined Gordon to move against



Kabba Rega with the purpose of wresting Unyoro from him and giving it to Rionga, who it will be remembered gave Baker such valuable assistance, and was appointed his Va'keel in 1872. But almost at the moment of making this resolve, Gordon learned that the station of Rageef was in danger from a threatened attack by a chief named Bedden. To save this post, therefore, Gordon made a rapid march to Rageef, and as the most effectual means for breaking the power of this hostile chief he decided to raid his cattle pens. This new plan of warfare was successfully accomplished, and the chief's submission was immediately afterwards secure by a return to him of twenty cows which Gordon had thus captured. The importance of such a move against the Soudanese will more clearly appear when the fact is understood that all the pastoral tribes of Africa set a higher value upon their cattle than upon any of their other possessions; indeed, they regard them with an affection greater than that which they feel for one another. A chief could more resignedly bear the loss of his wife, children, and liberty itself, than the capture of a single head of his herds. This singular estimation and attachment is therefore often taken advantage of by travellers who are brought into hostile contact with the natives, and particularly by Arab slave-dealers, who steal cattle and return them again upon the surrender to them of so many slaves.

#### SHOOTING HIPPOPOTAMI.

After the successful cattle sortie near Rageef, Gordon was compelled to defer his journey to Duffili for a time, to await a rise in the Nile that would enable him to bring his boats up from Khartoum and over the Duffili rapids. During this short period of military inactivity he amused himself, and at the same time supplied meat for his soldiers, by shooting hippopotami, with which the river abounded. Not being an enthusiastic sportsman he did not commit wanton destruction of these animals, and therefore has left us accounts of very few hunting adventures, all his energies and desires being inseparably connected with an effort to suppress slave trading.

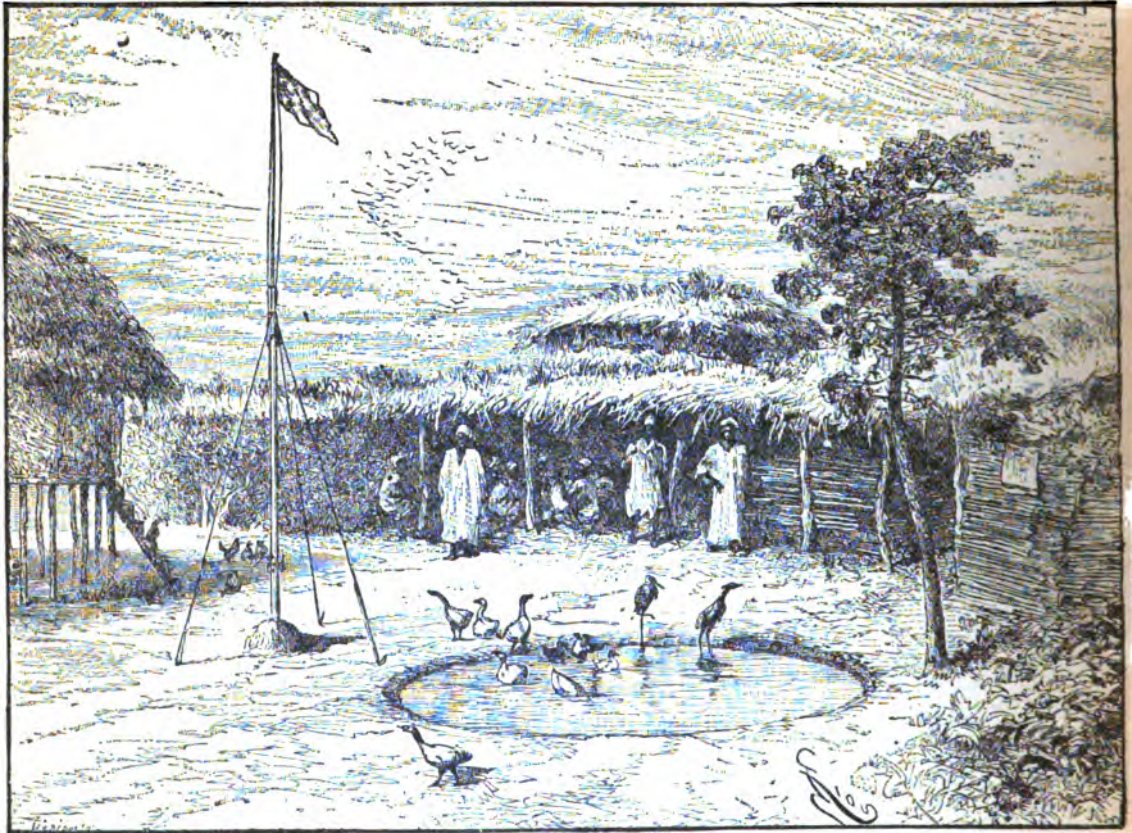


THE SOUDANESE'S LOVE.



From Rageef Gordon went north to Lado, from which post he proceeded to Kervi with one hundred soldiers, and there founded another station, but remained only a short while when a report of the river's rise reached him and he started again for Duffili. The trip up the river was an extremely slow and laborious one, owing to the fact that heavy boats, called *nuggars*, had to be used, which were especially built to withstand the charges of hippopotami.

To add to the other difficulties and harassments that afflicted him on the journey to Duffili, Gordon had to contend with treacherous Arabs, who composed his soldiery, and with hostile tribes that constantly hovered near, ready



THE STATION AT DUFFILI.

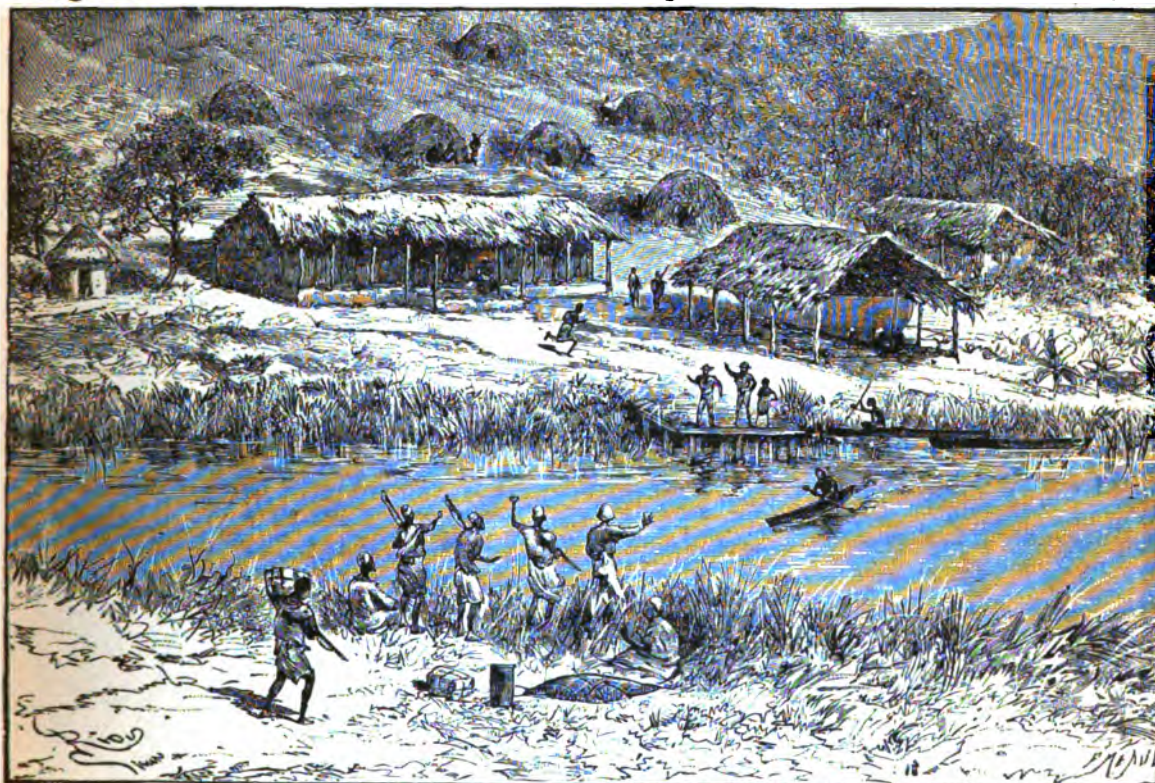
to strike him at every opportunity. In making his camp at night he was forced to guard against assault by setting up posts four feet in height and stringing telegraph wires along the top so as to stop any rush that might be made upon his camp at night. To have entrusted himself to Arab pickets would have been most imprudent, because at no time could they be depended upon, hence he was compelled to practically protect himself by cunning expedients, such as have been described.

#### THE KILLING OF LINANT.

The further he proceeded southward the more hostile became the tribes, while his situation grew constantly more dangerous. At no time was his force



adequate—well armed though they were—to contend with the swarming tribes in open battle, hence he avoided a conflict by every possible means. The wizards were howling their incantations and curses, shaking their magic gourds, and sending their curses upon the invaders, which greatly encouraged the naturally cowardly natives who drew so threateningly near that Gordon was forced to throw a bullet among them occasionally. While thus fighting in a desultory manner, Gordon was joined by Linant, who had come down with a party of twenty-five from the station of Makade. With this increase in his force he sent thirty of his men across the river, hoping to find his steamer along the east channel, but on their landing the natives rushed down upon



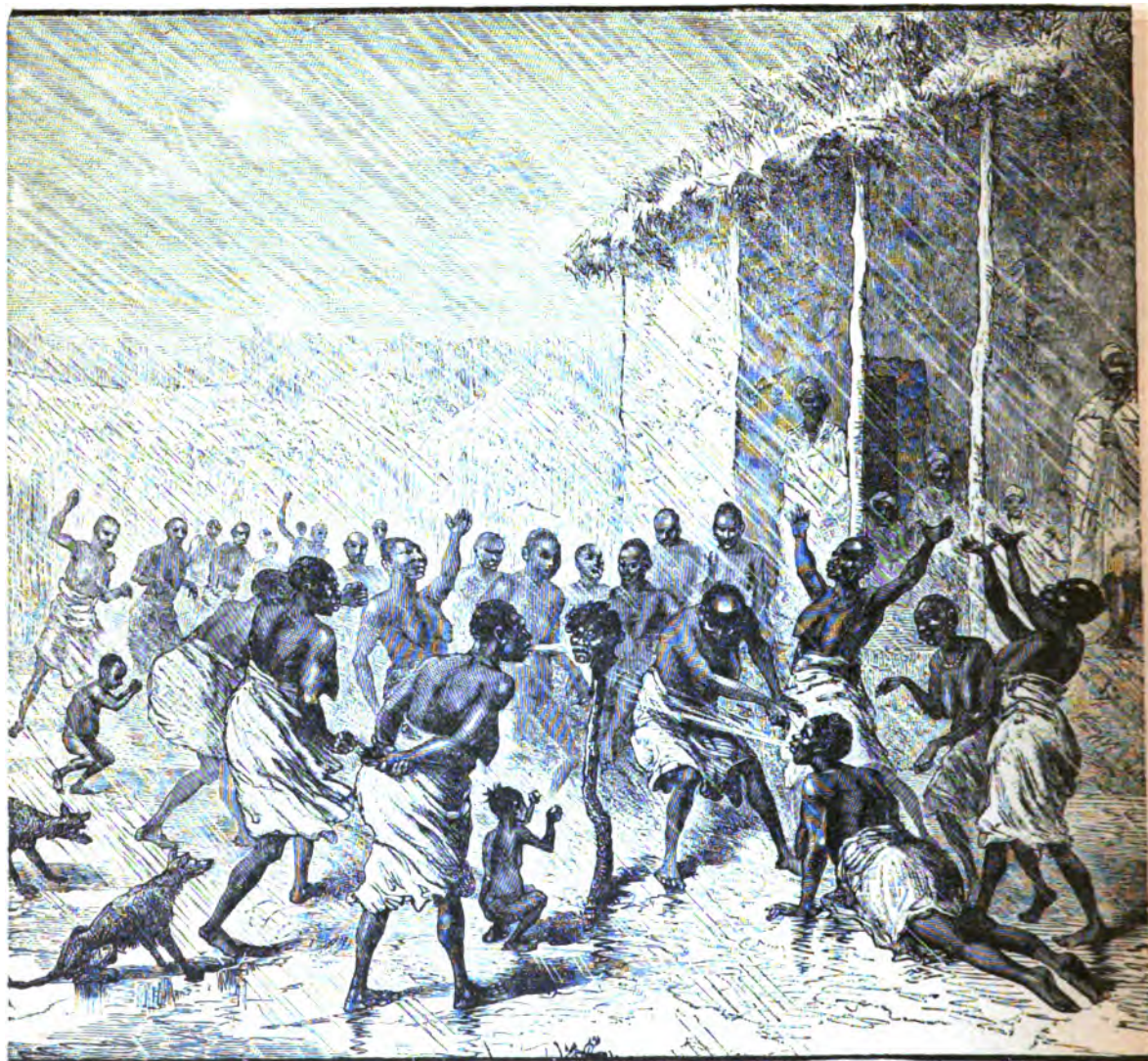
HARASSMENTS ALONG THE NILE.

them. The cowardly Arabs were immediately panic stricken, and Gordon had to cross over to their assistance. He was attacked in turn, but meeting the enemy with a galling fire, they fell back precipitately. But though repulsed the natives continued their harassments, crawling through the grass on their bellies, and discharging their arrows and lances with fatal effect, and then darting back into the high grass like so many rats.

Linant, who was a brave fellow, seeing that a much longer continuance of this unequal fighting might result disastrously, requested permission of his chief to recross the river and make reprisal on the enemy by burning their villages and stampeding their cattle. Receiving permission, on the 25th of



August Linant took thirty-six soldiers, two officers and three regulars, with which force he entered upon the hazardous enterprise of invading the villages. About midday Gordon saw Linant on a hill beyond the river, being able to distinguish him, through a spy glass, by a red shirt which he wore and which Gordon had lent him. Late in the afternoon firing was heard and several



OFFERING INDIGNITIES TO THE HEAD OF LINANT.

natives were seen running towards the river, while in another place Gordon saw one of his own party gesticulating wildly, evidently in the greatest excitement, and he sent a canoe to bring him across. When the fugitive, which he proved to be, had landed, he explained to Gordon how Linant and his whole party had been killed, he alone escaping, a story which was soon after verified, except that four of the party, instead of only one, had escaped. Partly



out of revenge for this loss of his able and courageous Lieutenant, Gordon fired at an old wizard who stood on the apex of a hill exciting his people to another attack, and had the satisfaction of seeing him fall forward on his face, dead. This proved to be a piece of great fortune to Gordon, for, with the death of their supposed invulnerable prophet, the natives fled, leaving the General to continue his journey. But he had not received full satisfaction, and resolved on further punishing the hostiles, which he was soon after able to do through the arrival of the Governor of Fatiko with five hundred men. With this large force Gordon attacked the villages and, drawing the natives out, captured 200 cows and 1500 sheep, besides the chief's daughter. At this unlooked-for attack the enemy were scattered, but they reassembled, and putting the heads of the Linant party, which they had killed, on poles, set them up and offered them many indignities, the head of Linant receiving their principal attention, into the face of which they spat and then cursed it. But they were again dispersed by a second attack, and were seen no more.

#### AN INSULT FROM THE KHEDIVE.

Gordon finally reached Duffili and camped between two high hills, but he was unable to bring up either the steamer or nuggars, as the Fola Falls were found to be impassable for two miles. However, he consoled himself with the proof he had obtained that the river was navigable at certain seasons of the year, and that he had now formed a line of stations, besides subduing the natives, so that the route was open and connection might be kept up between Khartoum and this mid-African post. Owing to the unhealthy location of Duffili, Gordon had to change his camp to Fashelie, a high point nine miles distant, where he found and captured a gang of Dongola slave dealers, which he sent to Khartoum in irons. Scarcely had the prisoners departed when Gordon received an irritating letter from the Khedive, so full of complaints that he prepared three messages in reply, informing His Majesty that he would be in Cairo by April, and begging that his successor might be immediately appointed. Before sending them, however, another letter came from the Khedive, couched in the most respectful language and so commendatory in spirit that Gordon reconsidered his determination to resign, and resolved to continue the prosecution of the work he had been commissioned to perform.

#### KING KABBA REGA DETHRONED.

Gordon remained in the vicinity of Duffili until 1876, when he moved on to Fatiko and thence to Foweira, proceeding thence with the purpose of making a descent on Kabba Rega, who was at Mrooli. Three days after his arrival at Foweira he was joined by Rionga, a truly kingly-appearing savage, and together they moved upon Mrooli; but their approach was heralded in advance, and with the discretion born of cowardice Kabba Rega took to his heels, but carried his fetiches with him, and took refuge at Masindi. The throne and capital having been thus abandoned, Rionga was duly enthroned as king; but he betrayed so

much fear of Kabba Rega, who was still near, that Gordon sent up another Unyoro chief to Masindi, investing him also with the royal prerogative, which gave great offence to Rionga, though he was soon pacified. Seeing the country



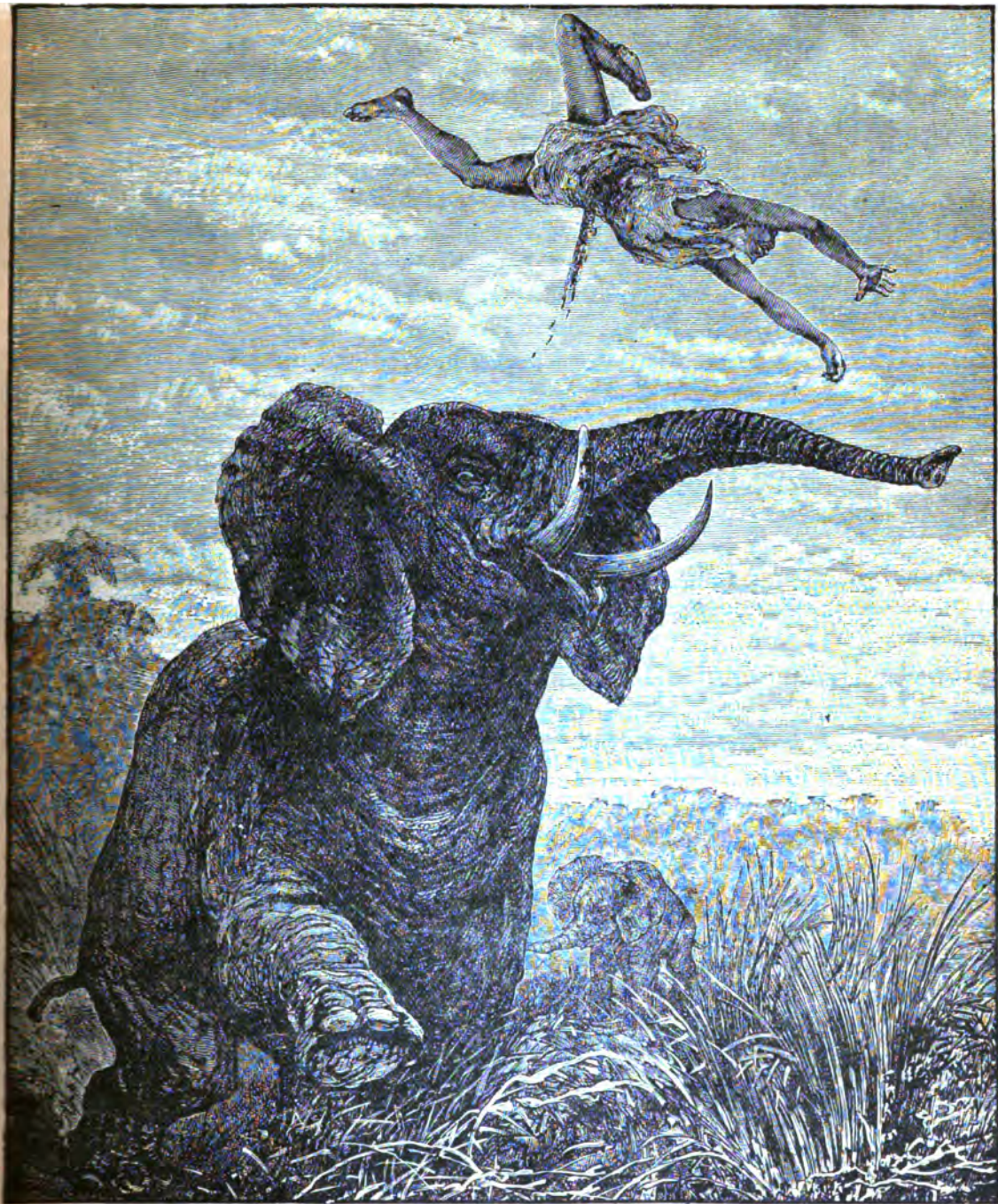
KABBA REGA'S FETICHES.

thus effectually in the power of Rionga, Kabba Rega's chiefs came in and acknowledged their submission, so that peace was restored.

Events had been favorable to his purposes thus far in the year, so that Gordon had time to carry out his resolution to explore Lake Victoria and plant the Egyptian flag on its shores. Accompanied by Gessi, his Italian lieutenant,



he started with two boats for Magungo and the lakes. Reaching the shores, he hoisted the flag, and then sent Gessi to circumnavigate the Victoria,



TOSSED TO HIS DEATH

which he accomplished in nine days, finding it to be 140 miles long and 50 miles wide.

## STAMPEDED BY ELEPHANTS.

From Lake Victoria Gordon proceeded to Lado, at which place he met with a singular adventure. Elephants about this district were very numerous, and on the outskirts of Lado was a cut in the high bank which enabled the servants to reach the river to draw water, and frequent travel made the place a very inviting approach for elephants coming across from the other side in the night time.

The killing of a villager in the neighborhood, a short while before, in which a wounded elephant pursued and overtook the man and tossed him on high to his death, had served to give the natives great uneasiness, so that the least intimation of the approach of a herd threw them into a state of consternation. A few nights after Gordon had encamped at the place, on his present visit, the alarm was sounded that three elephants were crossing the river, and making their way towards the cut in the bank. The camp was set immediately in a bustle, and if the natives had been depended upon the elephants might have pursued their most riotous intent unmolested; but Gordon's well-armed sentries manifested sufficient courage to stand their ground, and as Gordon rushed out of his tent to the attack a volley was fired at the elephants just as they reached the shore. While none of the animals were killed, they were driven back to the other bank, to the intense relief of the village occupants, and little less satisfaction to Gordon, who remarks: "You see, if they landed and got frightened they would break down my house in a moment, and do a deal of damage."

Gordon continued his operations in the region of Lake Victoria, passing from one station that he had established to another, always encouraging the post, until the expiration of his commission, October the 6th, when he returned to Khartoum, thence to Cairo, where he reported to the Khedive, after which he proceeded directly to London.





## CHAPTER XV.

### GORDON'S SECOND EXPEDITION IN THE SOUDAN.

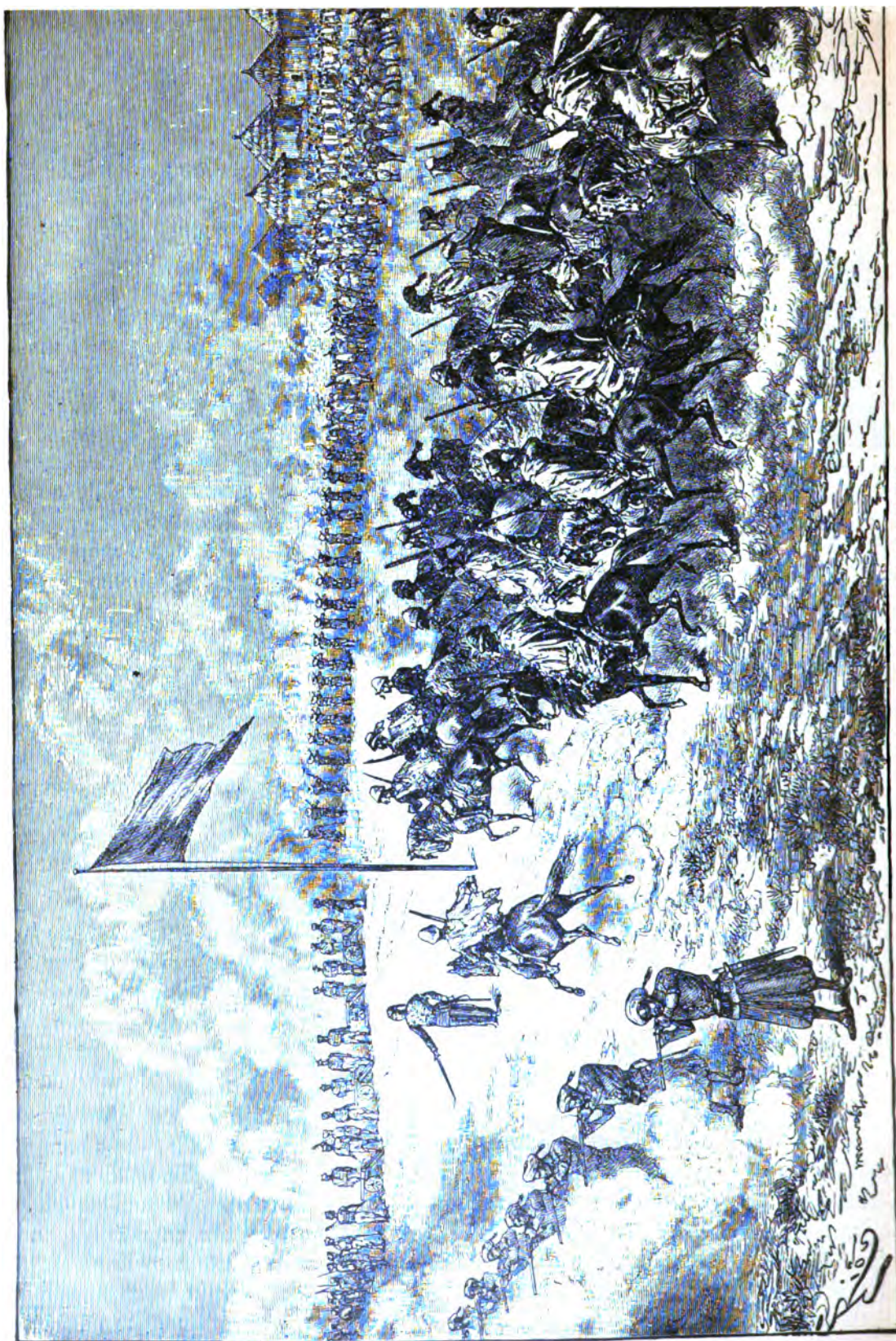


ONDON received Gordon with demonstrations of intense delight. His services, distinguished though they had been in the employ of foreign governments, were none the less appreciated, as exhibiting the generalship and governing instinct of one of the ablest of Englishmen. At this time affairs in Bulgaria were in a chaotic state, with the public insecurity of that province so great that it was proposed to make him the governor, the general belief being that no one could restore peace throughout the province so quickly as he. A proposition, looking towards his appointment, was accordingly about to be made to the Powers, but which was prevented by the receipt of letters from the Khedive calling him again to Egypt.

Gordon had resolved never to re-enter the Egyptian service again to assist in suppressing the slave-trade, unless he was given command over all the Soudan, as his previous experience had shown the futility of all his efforts when his power extended over only a limited district, outside of which the slave trade was permitted to flourish without restriction. In response to the Khedive's invitation, Gordon proceeded to Cairo in February, 1877, and was not only cordially received, but to secure his services again the Khedive granted his every request. By the desire of Gordon, therefore, Ismail Pasha Yacoub was removed from the office of Governor-General of the Soudan, and this office was conferred upon Gordon, who was thus placed in absolute command of a district which was 1640 miles long and 700 miles wide. He was provided with three deputies, one of whom should act as governor of the western Soudan, another for Dafour, and the third should have charge of the Red Sea littoral; thus dividing the Soudan proper into three districts, in all of which Gordon should establish a government with the special view of suppressing slavery.

### ENDING A WAR IN ABYSSINIA.

In addition to the functions of his office of Governor-General, Gordon was given a special commission to restore peace in Abyssinia, which was then distracted by a rebellion against King John, the successor of Theodore. This rebellion was the result of the elevation of a plebeian to the throne of Abyssinia, made possible by the success of English arms, and the promotion to a chieftainship of a native named Kasa, who had given assistance to Lord Napier in the war against Theodore. Kasa had been rewarded by a liberal gift of muskets and ammunition, with which he armed a large and desperate following,



RECEPTION OF GORDON BY THE PRINCE OF HOOCH.



and then proclaimed himself king, under the title of John. The rightful successor, the heir of Theodore, raised an army to resist the pretender, but his forces were routed in battle, and the heir was put to torture. King John now rapidly subdued the several provinces, excepting alone Shoa and Bogos, and instituted a rule that was more nearly anarchy than government. Encroachments were being made upon Egypt, so that it became necessary to protect her own subjects on the Abyssinian border, to annex Shoa and Bogos, which was done in 1874. This act aroused the enmity of Walad el Michael, hereditary prince of Bogos, who joined with King John in a crusade against Egypt.

In the first battle that followed the Egyptian troops were badly beaten, but in the spoils that were taken King John refused to divide with the prince, who deserted with his army, ostensibly to the Egyptians, though taking no active part, but holding himself in readiness to take advantage of either. The Abyssinians were now beaten in turn, and the triangular dispute became so ominous of evil to his rule, that John sent an ambassador to Cairo to treat with the Khedive. But the Egyptian ruler refused to receive him, and when he appeared in the streets the populace pelted him with stones.

This was the chaotic condition of affairs when Gordon was sent to Magdala, as the Khedive's representative, to treat with King John. In the middle of March he reached Masawa by way of the sea route, and from there proceeded to Keren, which was the capital of Bogos, by camel. The prince, learning his mission, and hoping to secure the favor of Gordon in an adjudication—which it virtually was—of the difficulty, sent out 200 cavalry to receive him, by which he was conveyed in state to the city. Here he was treated with such genuflexion as begat his contempt, for he was not a man to court fawning favors. As he came into Keren a band of musicians met him, and ten officers were specially ordered to assist him in dismounting. An escort of 200 infantry and 60 cavalry was also provided to constantly attend him, and altogether such distinguished consideration was shown him that he writes: "I can truly say no man has ever been so forced into a high position as I have. How many I know to whom this incense would be the breath of their nostrils! To me it is irksome beyond measure. Eight or ten men to help me off my camel, as if I were an invalid! If I walk, every one dismounts and walks also; so, furious at such obsequiousness, I get on again."

#### REMARKABLE DIPLOMACY.

The prince's reception of Gordon was hospitable in the extreme, not only by the military display as described, but also by personal attentions. This cordiality was Gordon's opportunity for bringing his diplomacy into use with the best possible results. He accordingly brought the prince into his tent and there read to him his plans for a settlement of the troubles. In this decision Gordon notified the prince that Egypt, in deference to the wishes of the European Powers, desired to end the war, and the proposition of settlement which he was instructed to make was to give the prince a government

separate from that of King John, which would be composed of three semi-civilized tribes. This proposal met with such small favor that the prince asked for time to consider it, intending to renew hostilities in another quarter. At the same time Menelek, King of Shoa, and at present King of Abyssinia, had raised an army to dispute with John, and had already captured Gondar. John was compelled to leave his capital to meet this new invader, but he was afraid his absence might be the signal for a rebellion in his own city, a thing that his uncle, Ras Bario, was threatening. All these complications were in Gordon's favor, for his shrewdness led him to threaten each with the unopposed vengeance of the other, and in the end terminated the troubles, at least temporarily, which was all that the Khedive had expected him to do.

#### OFF AGAIN FOR KHARTOUM.

He could no longer remain at the seat of conflict in Abyssinia, for his services were immediately required at Khartoum to suppress the slave trade, which had grown again to frightful proportions since his departure from the place a year before. The

ourney to that capital was made at the rate of thirty miles per day, through countless perils and with the most insignificant, because cowardly and treacherous, following. At every station on the way countless petitions for relief poured in upon him, and near Kassala a num-



MURDER OF GORDON'S CAMEL-DRIVER.

ber of his camel-drivers were killed by Baris, a very hostile tribe occupying the region between Khartoum and Gondokoro.

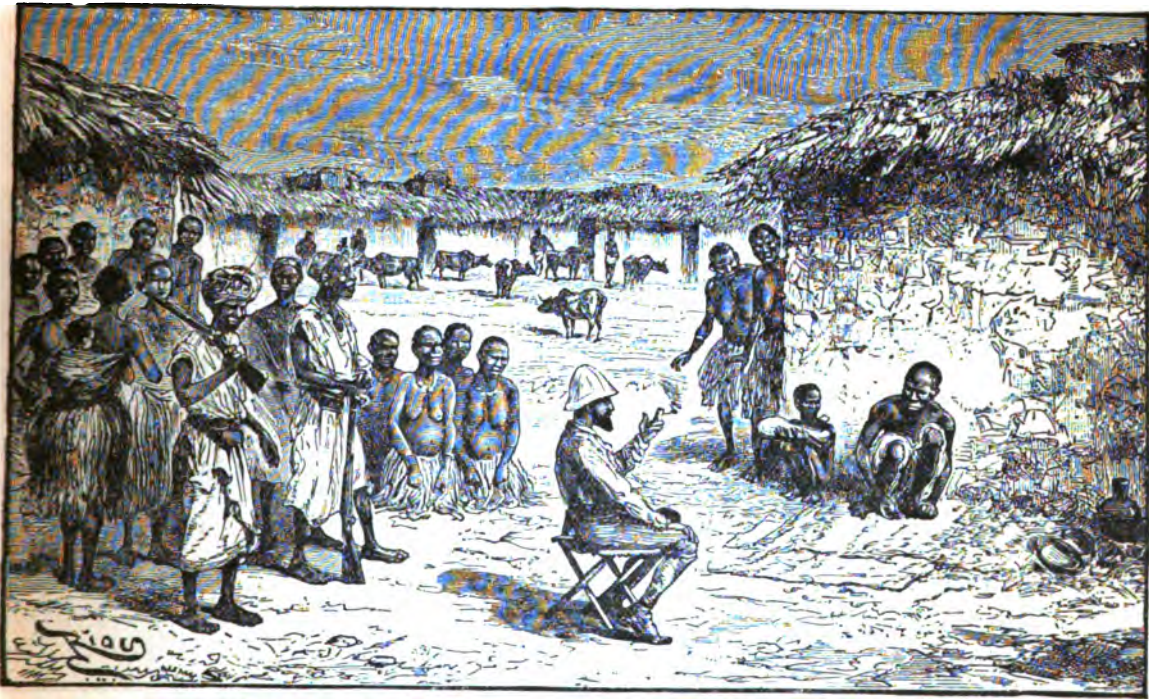
Gordon arrived at Khartoum on the 3d of May, and two days later was installed as Governor-General before a very large assembly, to whom he made no other speech than a declaration that, "With the help of God, I will hold the balance level." This epigrammatic expression of purpose greatly delighted the oppressed people, whose poverty so wrought upon his sympathy that he distributed no less than \$5000 out of his own purse among the natives.

The Khedive resolved that Gordon should live in state while representing the Egyptian Government, and therefore had provided him with a very large mansion and an attendance of two hundred servants and orderlies. Besides this it formulated a code of etiquette that the people must conform to when in his presence, all of which was intensely disagreeable to his democratic disposition. This courtly deference had the effect of creating burning jealousies



which greatly increased the natural difficulties of his surroundings. These were of a most discouraging nature and might well oppress him with grave fears and doubts. All the officers of the district had been purchasable by the slave dealers, and this custom of bribery had not only to be abolished, but the venials must be punished. He had also to disband 6000 Bashi-Bazouks who composed the frontier guard, and who were encouraging the slave trade instead of using any effort to suppress it. Besides these herculean tasks he must subdue the vast district of the Bahr Gazelle, which was at the time under the sway of the slave traders. Could he do it?

Gordon began his great work by first bringing Khartoum itself under his rule. By his generosity he had won the hearts of the natives, and he now



GORDON SEEKING A FRIENDSHIP WITH THE NATIVES.

made himself popular with the people of the place by devising a means for supplying the town with a rude kind of water-works which gave the citizens an abundant supply of pure water, and in cleaning the place of its long-accumulated filth that had made it a very court of death. Thus, under his orders Khartoum had been quickly transformed from a city of evil and disease to a place both orderly and healthy, the change being so grateful that the people hailed him as a benefactor.

#### BATTLE WITH THE LEOPARDS.

Hearing that Dafour was threatened, he left Khartoum to succor his small force there. His army consisted of only 350 poorly armed ragamuffins, and against these was opposed the great slave dealer Sebehr Pasha, with a force of

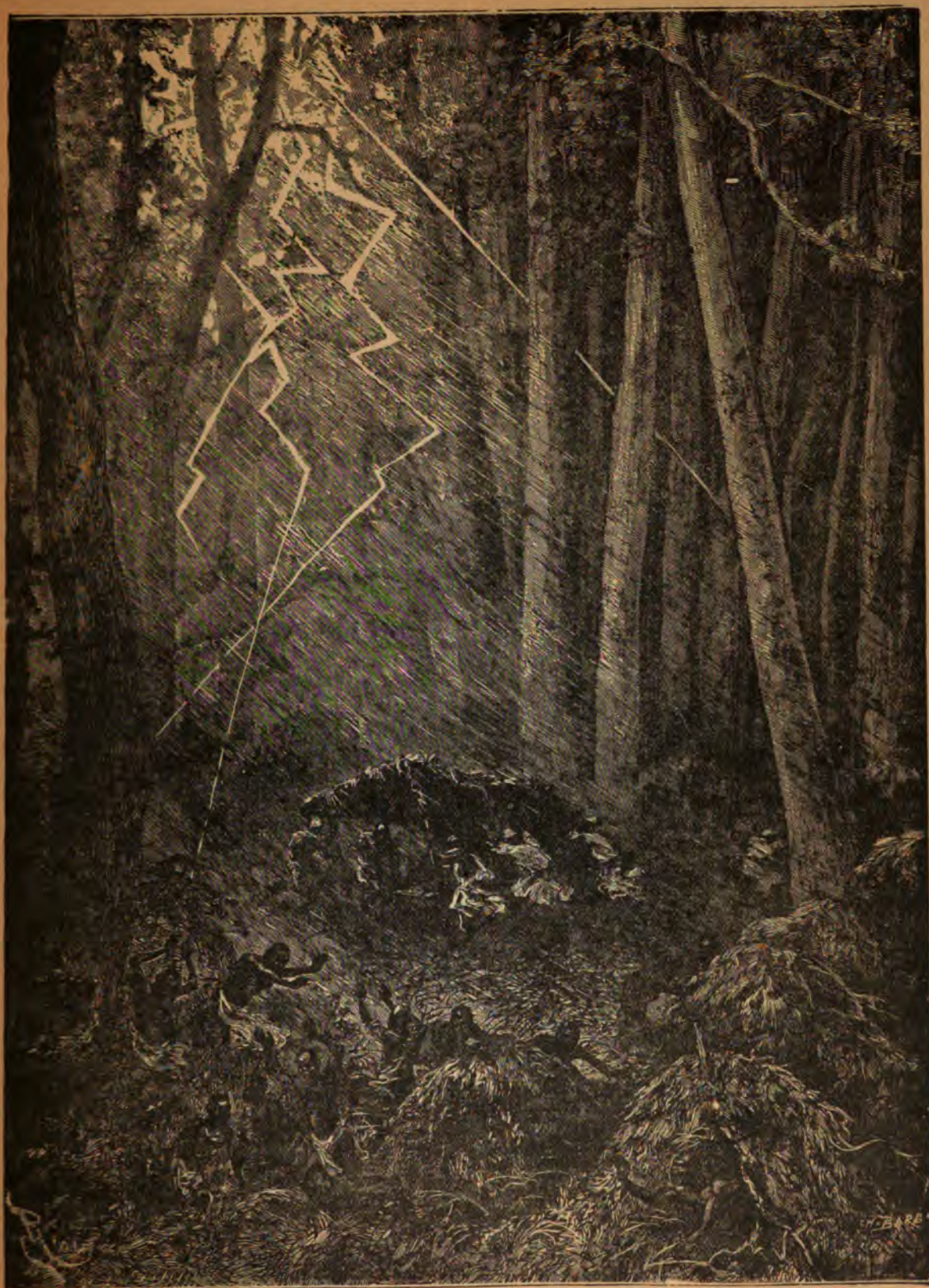




SEBEHR PASHA, THE SLAVE KING.

fully 11,000 men. But notwithstanding these frightful odds, he marched through the country scattering gratuities and so sympathizing with the people as to win their support. In this manner, instead of fighting his way through them, as a man of less diplomatic turn of mind might have done, he was winning the most substantial battles, and putting his real enemies to discomfiture. Upon arriving at Dafour, he found himself able to muster an army of 10,000 natives, who had been drawn to his assistance by the widespread knowledge of his generous acts. Even Suleiman, the son of Sebehr, with 6000 armed blacks, sought a junction with him, but Gordon suspected treachery and rejected the offer, whereupon Suleiman began plotting his murder. But Gordon took decisive steps to bring all the hostile slave traders to terms, by dispatching a force of 8000 natives and 1500 troops against the self-crowned sultan, Haroun, who was pre-





GORDON'S FORCES IN A TERRIFIC STORM.

tender to the throne of Dafour. Shortly after making a feint against Haroun he was joined by the Razagats, who could muster 7000 horsemen, and he now projected an attack against Suleiman. But before carrying this resolve into execution he learned that the Leopard tribes were threatening Toashia, his own stronghold, and he turned his troops towards this new enemy. On the march his army was caught in a terrific rain and wind storm that continued through the night, and so demoralized his troops that the divisions became separated, and it was two days before they could be brought together again. The columns were then re-formed and the march resumed. Two days later the stronghold of the Leopards was reached and a fight was begun, in the first charges of which the Leopards drove Gordon's cowardly troops back to the stockades they had thrown up before the engagement was opened. But though beaten in open battle, Gordon rallied his ragamuffins and contrived to bring them between the Leopards and a creek from which all the water supply had to be procured. Every assault they now made was repulsed, and as the heat was really terrific, thirst began to tell upon them more seriously than bullets. It was only a short while when overtures of surrender were made by the Leopards, which Gordon refused to consider except with an acknowledgment of absolute submission, a condition that they were not long in accepting.

#### RAPID ACTION BUT DAYS OF TORMENT.

The Leopards were vanquished, but it was like killing one fly in a swarm. On every side the enemy was both numerous and vigilant; nearly every station was sending to him for help, and yet his own army was too cowardly to even care for itself. Gordon had not only to command, but to execute also. His troops, the most miserable, disorderly, thievish and disgraceful set of vagabonds, were one day swearing their loyalty and the next day plotting his destruction. The slave dealers, on the other hand, had a great army of well-armed and courageous soldiery, schooled to danger by the raids they were employed to make, and brave because they knew the temper of those whom Gordon commanded. It was a terrible condition. Two hundred well-armed, well-drilled and stout-hearted soldiers might easily defeat 20,000 of such cowardly curs as composed his army.

There was no morale, no discipline, no fighting qualities, and the officers were no better than the troops. With these Gordon could do little more than use them as a show, and even the spectacle of a horde of such men could inspire little terror. Everything therefore depended upon his own personal resources, but these fortunately he possessed to a phenomenal extent. He not only put spies into the camps of his enemies, but set some of his faithful ones to scatter the seeds of discontent among them. By these means he stirred up a hostility between Haroun, Suleiman and Sebehr, until they came to look upon one another with suspicion, and were ready to aid in an attack against each other. This was his only course to prevent his own annihilation, besides, it aided immeasurably in the accomplishment of his purpose.



Thos. Agnew & Sons.



TREATING WITH THE LEOPARDS FOR UNCONDITIONAL SURRENDER.



While thus rapidly marching from place to place, giving relief to beleaguered garrisons and exciting the active sympathy of various tribes, upon which source he was compelled to rely for recruits, Gordon became a witness to many acts of what may be denominated refined cruelty. The whole country was blighted by plunderers, who not only kidnapped the natives but pillaged granaries and drove off cattle, until village after village was seen in which the inhabitants were starving to death, every article of food having been stolen from them.

Besides these sights of distressing poverty there were others almost daily witnessed that excited no less compassion. Gangs of slaves, shackled in galling yokes, were common spectacles. These were promptly set at liberty, and their masters made prisoners, but there were dying slaves by the wayside, women and children who, being exhausted with hunger, thirst and feebleness, were ruthlessly brained by their inhuman drivers to prevent them from falling into other no less rapacious and cruel hands.

#### BREAKING UP A THIEVES' DEN.

Shaka was the headquarters of the slave traders of the Soudan. Here they held their markets, committed their greatest excesses, defied the government, and held a high carnival of iniquity, in which the most inhuman savagery was conspicuous. Men, women and children were crowded into stockades, packed as closely as hogs in railroad cars, and with as little attention to the filth that became a natural consequence as shippers give to their stock. The babe died in its mother's arms, children were trampled to death beneath crowded feet, and yet the corpses were suffered to lie in the mass of mud, wallow and offal, the whole putrescent under a fiery sun, no one caring, for human life was cheap. Though his force was insufficient to contend with the army that the slavers had gathered about them at this place, yet Gordon determined to march against it. He accordingly gathered his ragged troops together and made a forced march towards Shaka, but before reaching the place his approach had been announced to Suleiman, who came out to meet him. This young son of Sebehr was not so much afraid of Gordon as he was ambitious to secure a governorship by appointment from the Khedive, and as he held command of the stronghold of Shaka, Gordon thought he might turn the young man's ambition to advantage. Accordingly, when Suleiman reached Gordon, coming as a visitor to his camp, he was cordially received, and an interview followed which resulted in a promise made by Suleiman to abandon the slave trade and give besides active sympathy towards its suppression. Of course Gordon placed little dependence in this promise, except as it might temporarily relieve the iniquity practised at Shaka, nor was he deceived. Suleiman did break down the slave pens, and made a spasmodic effort to relieve the place of its stigma, which afforded Gordon the opportunity of making more substantial reforms in garrisoning the place with a contingent from his own force and the appointment of a sub-governor for the district.



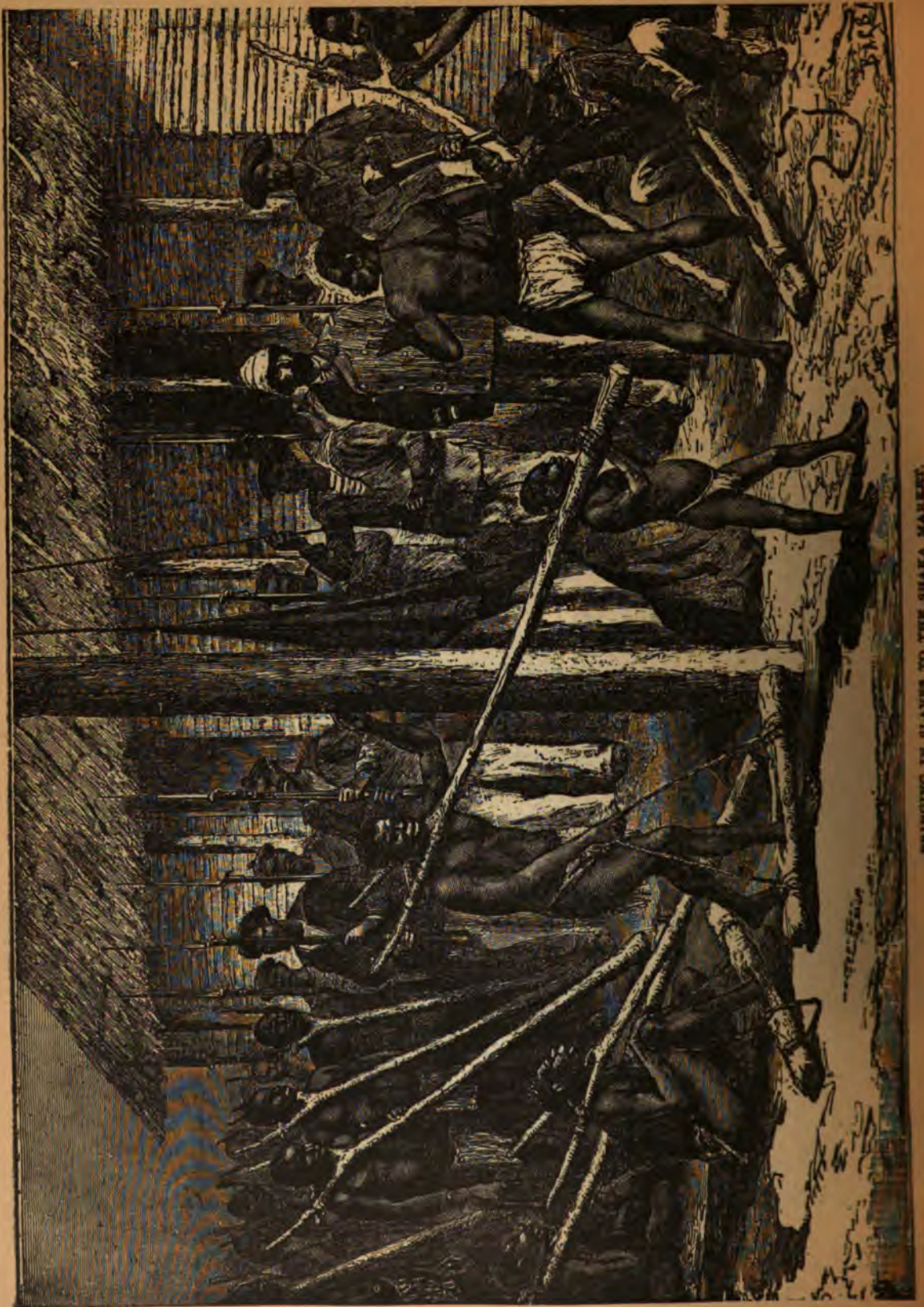
This much accomplished, which he hardly expected could be permanent, Gordon returned again to Khartoum, from which place he was suddenly summoned



MURDERING SLAVES THAT BECOME EXHAUSTED.

to Cairo by the Khedive to reform the Egyptian finances, which were now in a deplorable state. Gordon reached Cairo in March and was received with

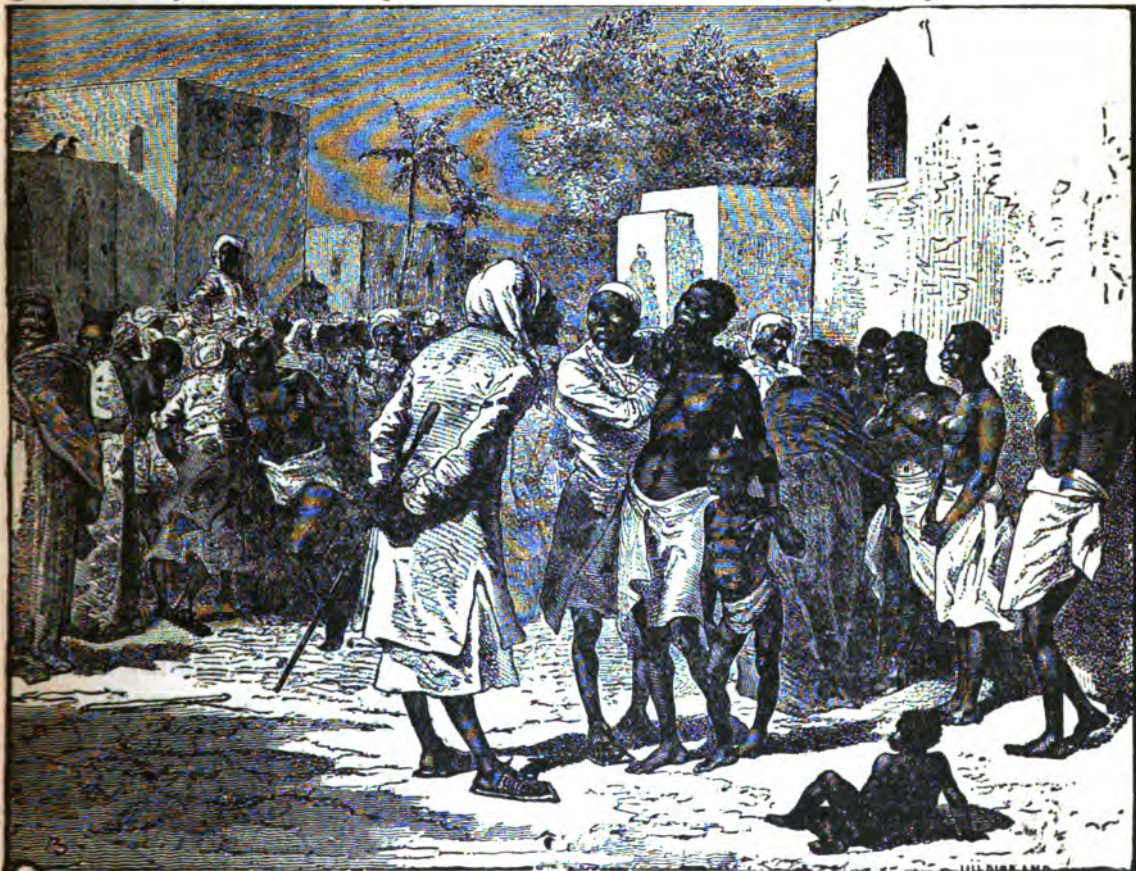




BRINGING IN SLAVES TO THE SHAKA MARKET.



royal cordiality, being taken immediately to the palace, and at a dinner which followed directly upon his arrival he was placed on the right hand of the Khedive. The real object of his summons to court, which he very soon learned, was to make him a figure-head in an inquiry into the Khedive's finances, and which he resented as an imputation upon his honor. He declared to the Khedive that if he was placed at the head of a commission of inquiry he would probe to the bottom and expose every misappropriation. This honest asseveration so discomfited the Khedive that without further ado he sent Gordon again to Abyssinia to complete the treaties that had been partially made between



BUYING SLAVES IN THE SHAKA MARKET.

**King John, Menelek and Walad el Michael, the Prince of Bogos, on his previous visit. He finally arranged these complications, and returned again to Khartoum, disregarding another summons to repair to Cairo to undergo an examination of the affairs in the Soudan before the Council of Ministers.**

**DEATH OF SULEIMAN AND RESIGNATION OF GORDON.**

It was now February of 1879, a year after his last departure from Khartoum, and in his absence another revolt had been made in the Bahr Gazelle district by the slavers, with Suleiman at the head. He therefore proceeded to Khartoum with all possible expedition and there confiscated all the property of the Zebahr



family, and sent his trusted lieutenant, Gessi, in pursuit of Suleiman, who had proclaimed himself Lord of the Province of Dafour. In addition to this usurpation he had surprised and massacred an Egyptian garrison at Dem Idris, and raised an army of 6000 men to establish himself in the position which he had thus assumed. Gessi was an able commander and as fearless as he was energetic. With a force of 300 regulars, 700 irregulars, or tag-rags, and two small cannons, he went in pursuit of the wily Suleiman. On the march he increased his force considerably by new enlistments, and at length engaged the enemy at Dem Idris, December 28th.

He easily beat Suleiman, and following him up several other severe battles were fought with equally fortunate results to Gessi, until the country about Dem Idris was cleared of the slavers and 10,000 slaves liberated.

Strange as it appears, nevertheless when Gessi had performed such signal



TRACK OF THE SLAVES.

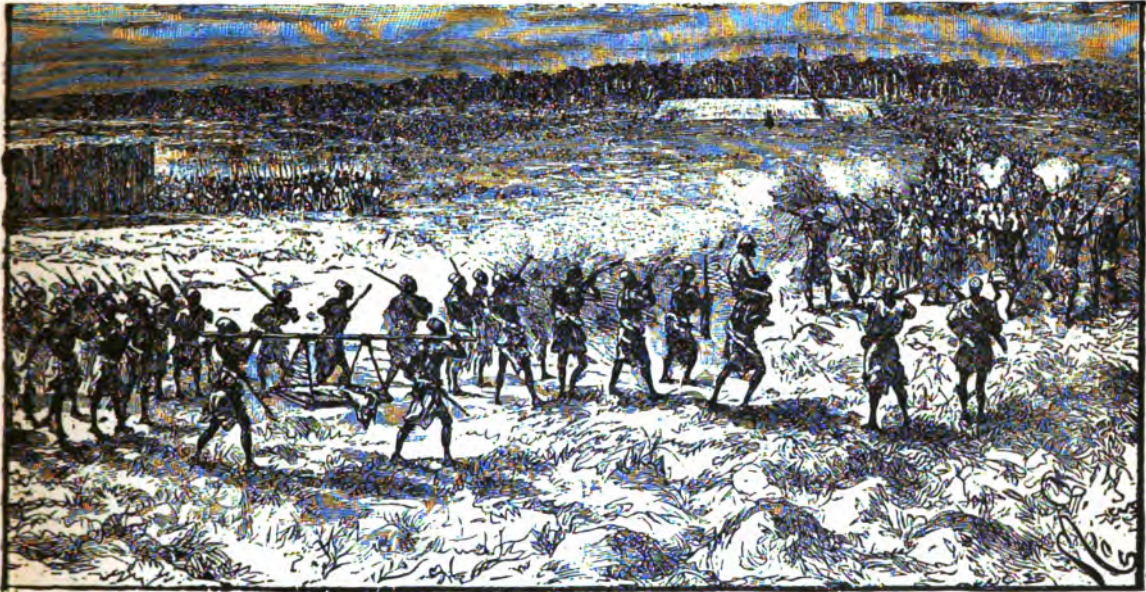
services towards suppressing the slave trade in the Egyptian Sudan, and had overcome the son of the arch slave dealer of that region, the Khedive insisted on Gordon appointing Zebehr, the father of Suleiman, to the governorship of Dafour. This act confirmed Gordon in his previous intention of relinquishing his office, as it proved conclusively the real desire of the Khedive to perpetuate the curse of slavery. But Gessi

was now calling on him for aid, so at the risk of offending the Khedive, Gordon not only refused to make the appointment requested but left Khartoum for Shaka, where the slavers had again established themselves, with the purpose of breaking up the cursed traffic there a second time. But only a day before reaching Shaka he received news from Gessi, who had attacked Suleiman at a place named in honor of the slaver, Dem Suleiman, where he beat him so badly that all the booty of the place fell into his hands, and Suleiman himself narrowly escaped capture.

Suleiman now had the effrontery to send emissaries to Gordon, but instead of these accomplishing their object they were court-martialed and shot, though

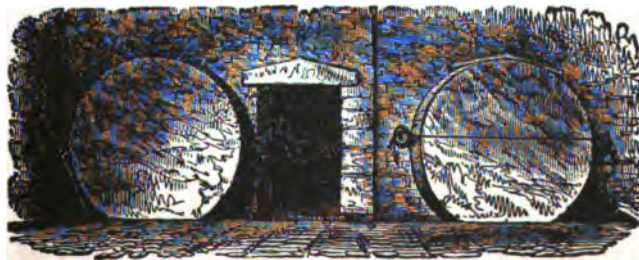


one of them was Zebehr's chief secretary. Soon after this Gordon and Gessi met, and for the latter's splendid services Gordon decorated him as Pasha, and bestowed upon him the honorarium of \$10,000. But Gessi remained idle scarcely a day, for increasing his force again to 300 regulars he set out to renew the pursuit of Suleiman, whom he at length found in a village with 700 men. Gessi boldly sent him a demand for immediate surrender, which was promptly



RETURN OF GESSI AFTER THE DEATH OF SULEIMAN.

complied with, and Suleiman and ten of his officers were sent as prisoners to Gordon, who quickly disposed of them by a court-martial that ordered them to be shot. It was less than two months after this that Haroun was attacked by Gessi at Dafour and killed, so that with the death of these two slavers and pretenders there was peace in the Soudan. Tewfik Pasha was now appointed to the Khedival dignity of the Soudan, and Gordon surrendered his office of Governor-General and returned to England.



## CHAPTER XVI.

### GORDON'S LAST EXPEDITION.



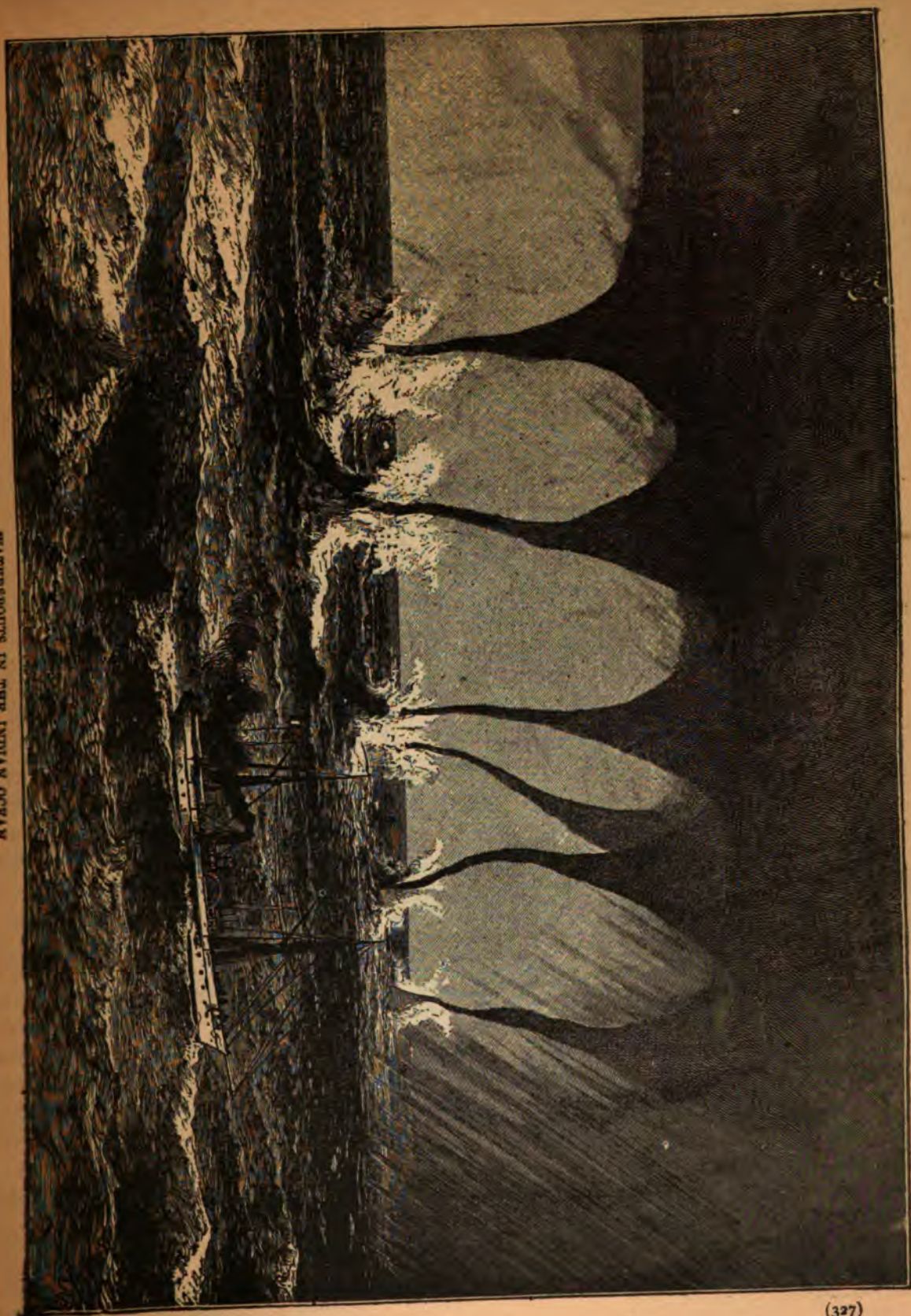
CONSIDERING the herculean labors that Gordon had performed, and the honors so nobly won and awarded, and particularly the nervous exhaustion from which he suffered, it is not surprising that he desired a long rest, and that he pictured to himself at least a few years of elegant leisure, which would have been an experience never thus far in his life realized. His arrival in England was followed by an ovation that would have stirred the pride and pleasure of any other man, but Gordon cared nothing for honors, and tried to hide from the public, where he could obtain the relaxation that his tortured mind and body so greatly needed. The great objection to personal popularity, however, is that it involves the loss of every bodily comfort. To be a hero is to invite the persecution of public attention, and also invidious criticism, the two so warring with one another that the object suffers alike from both. This was the unfortunate position in which Gordon found himself, and the hoped-for rest, as a consequence, was never realized.

In May, 1881, there was a shaking up of British officers in India. Lord Lytton had resigned the vice-regal rule, and was succeeded by Lord Ripon, who desired Gordon to accept a private secretaryship, which office was somewhat analogous to that of Prime Minister. Gordon, strange to say, accepted this subordinate position, but in the belief that the duties were so little exacting as to afford him the means for a longed-for rest. He soon discovered his error, however, and resigned while on the way to India, but went to China instead, at the invitation of Mr. Hart, Chinese Commissioner of Customs at Shanghai. While en route, in the Indian Ocean, the steamer on which he had taken passage encountered a terrific storm and several great waterspouts, which came so near wrecking the vessel that Gordon always regarded the escape as a special interposition of Providence. A war was threatening between China and Russia, during the time of his visit, which Gordon very largely assisted in preventing by his opportune counsel with Li, the Governor-General of the Taiping rebellion period, and now Prime Minister.

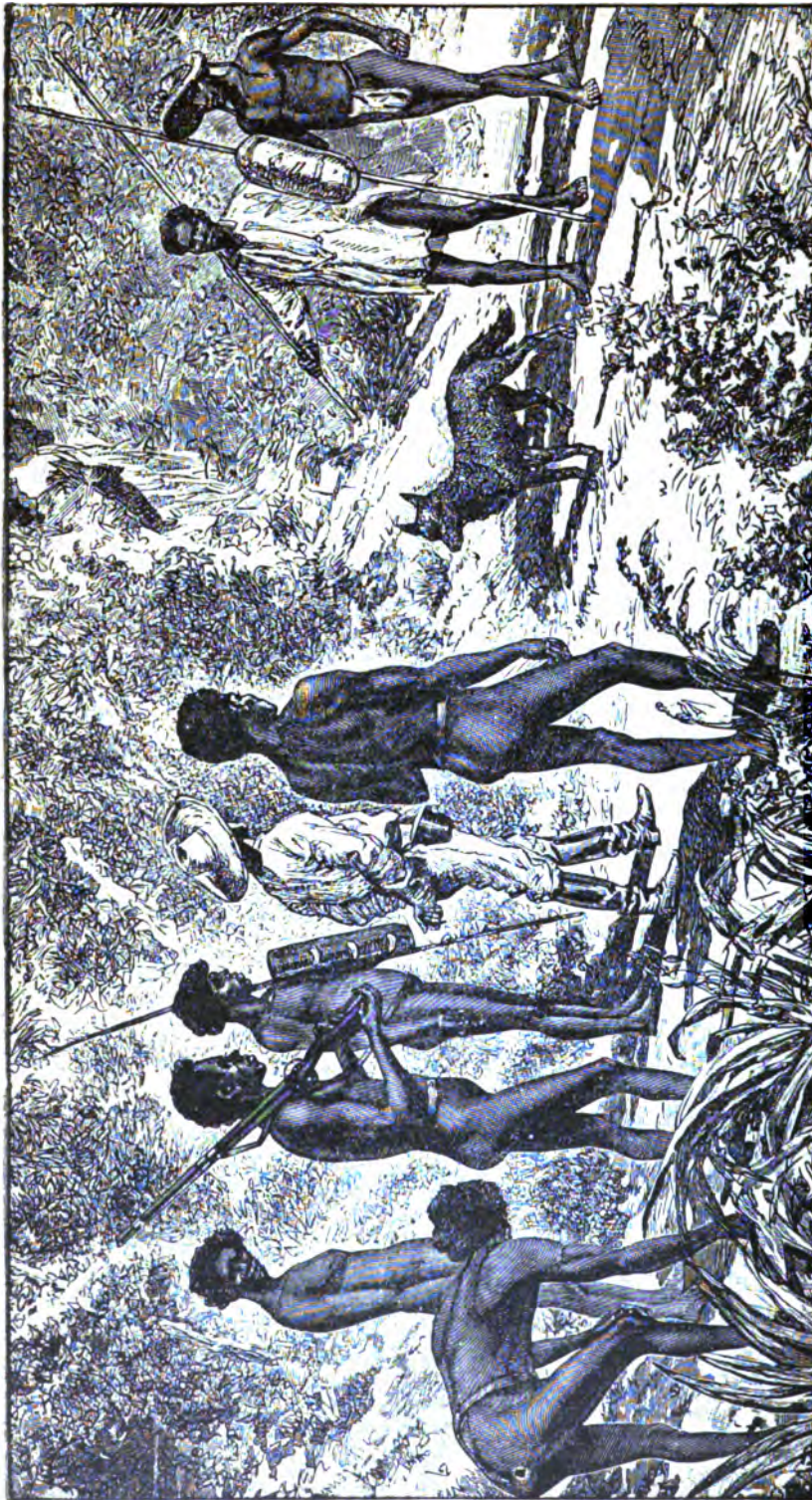
Gordon was several months in China, returning to England late in the winter, and was almost at once invited to the Belgian Court to discuss a projected international expedition to the Congo, to which Stanley was also invited; and here it was that the two great explorers and administrators first met. Stanley, it will be remembered, was placed permanently at the head of this



WATERSPOUTS IN THE INDIAN OCEAN.







AMONG THE BOERS IN SOUTH AFRICA.

company, so that Gordon sailed for the island of Mauritius, to repose for a time in that most paradisiacal resort. On his way, and while passing through Suez, he visited the tomb of his great lieutenant, Gessi, who had died in the French hospital at Suez, April 30th, from protracted sufferings brought on in his campaigns against Suleiman. Arriving at Mauritius without special incident, he remained there, experiencing a delightful rest for a period of ten months, when he was recalled to England, made a Major-General, and sent to the Cape to look after affairs there, that were in an unsettled state because of an uprising of the Boers. He arrived at Cape Town in due time, and was installed as Provisional Governor of the Colonial Government, May 18th, 1882. Here he remained until October 5th following, in the mean time having restored



the district to peace, and secured the lasting friendship of the people whom the Home Government had expected him to fight.

ON THE MOUNT OF OLIVES.

Having always been of a devout turn of mind, and a fatalist, in that he believed in fore-ordination as it relates to the present as well as to the future, he had long wished to spend a season in Palestine and familiarize himself with the places there made sacred by the presence of Jesus. His opportunity had



THE MAHDI AND HIS FAKIS.

now come, so that directly after his return to England from South Africa he departed for the Holy Land, and there interested himself not only in a tour of the noted places, but employed much of his time in researches and a survey of the Holy Sepulchre, the Tabernacle, and the walls of Jerusalem. Most strange to relate, with all his reverence for the beliefs of the ages, he wrote several papers embodying results of his investigations, in which he set out to prove that the places pointed out to tourists as certain holy sites, and which for a thousand years have been accepted as such, could not have been the scenes of the actions and ministrations as reputed.

After several months thus spent in Palestine he returned to England and began to labor among the poor in London, even opening a school at Gravesend and taking the place of teacher to hundreds of children who had never attended school. While thus engaged he was for a second time summoned to the Belgian Court of Leopold II., and asked to take charge of the "International African Society," and to proceed to the Congo with the view of assisting in suppressing the slave trade in that district.

In response to this appeal of Leopold, he asked a leave of absence from his Government, without forfeiting his commission as Major-General, and this being granted, he again set sail for the Dark Continent. But at this very moment a cry went up for his presence again in the Soudan, in which the English Government joined, and instead of proceeding to the Congo, he went again to Cairo to resume the Governor-Generalship of the Soudan.

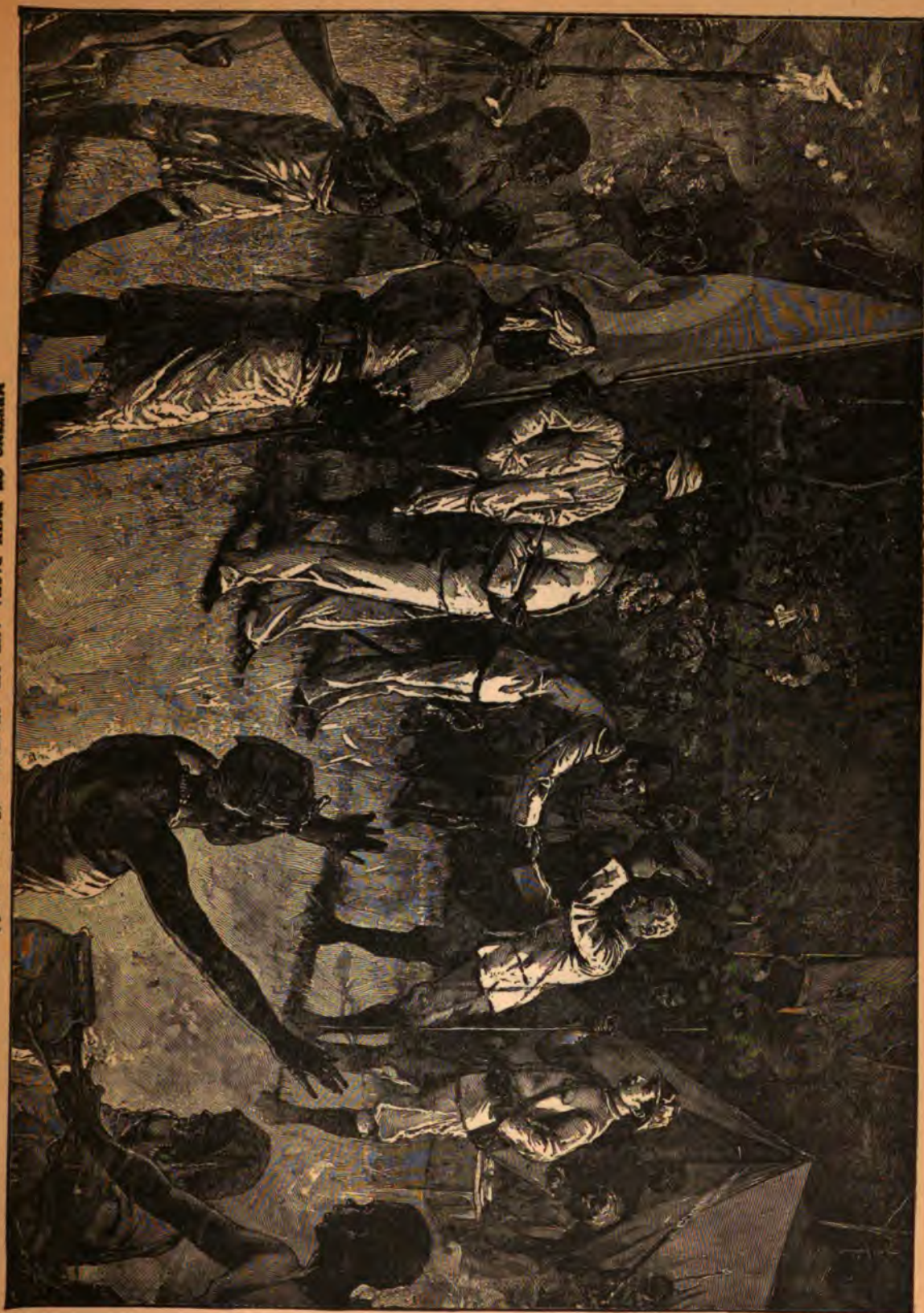
#### THE FALSE PROPHET.

Events leading to this sudden change in Gordon's engagement, and which sent him to the Soudan again instead of to the Congo, need to be here described: One year after the resignation of Gordon as Governor-General of the Soudan, a new and most unexpected disturbance of affairs in Lower Egypt was begun by the uprising of a fanatical sect under the banner of an enthusiast named Mahomet Ahmed, who boldly, and with surprising success, proclaimed himself the long-looked-for prophet that was to bring all the world to an acknowledgment and adoption of Islamism. He had really been for some time planning a crusade in the Dongola district, but so quietly, after the manner of the great Mahomet himself, that Gordon had never heard of him, or if he did, certainly no mention is made of him in any of Gordon's letters.

Mahomet Ahmed, also written Achmet, was a native of the province of Dongola, but laid no claim to being of royal blood. On the other hand he made a pretence of being a Christ, if not Jesus himself, and to carry out the pretension more fully, he said his father was like that of Christ, a carpenter. He himself was apprenticed to an uncle whose trade was that of a boatman, but he ran away from that service, and became the disciple of a faki (head dervish) who lived near Khartoum. As the result of a close study of religion, he was himself made a faki, and in 1870 took up his residence on the island of Abba, near Kana, on the White Nile. He speedily began to acquire a reputation for great devoutness, and so became wealthy, gathered disciples, and married freely, selecting wives from the families of the most influential sheiks of the vicinity. In the earlier part of 1881, Gordon having gone, he began to assert the claim that he was "the Mahdi"—the long expected redeemer of Islam whom Mahomet had foretold—and claiming a divine commission to reform Islam, and to establish a universal equality, a universal law, a universal religion, and a community of goods. Setting himself to gather about him a following, he addressed appeals to his brother fakis, one of whom informed the Government of his schemes and pretensions, adding the belief that



HUNTING OF KHAN PASHA AND MR. STANTLEY.—(See page 476.)





he was a madman. Raouf Pasha, the then Governor of the Soudan, proceeded to take cognizance of him as the result of this information; and it is at this stage of his career that the Mahdi steps out into the arena of contemporary history. Colonel Stewart thus characterizes him: "In person the Mahdi is tall and slim, with a black beard and a light brown complexion. Like most Don-



A DONGOLAWIS WOMAN.

golawis he reads and writes with difficulty. Judging from his conduct of affairs and policy, I should say he has considerable natural ability. The manner in which he has managed to merge together the usually discordant tribes denotes great tact. He probably had been preparing the movement for some time." Colonel Stewart, in another portion of his report, gives some indication of the reason why a religious fanatic finds so readily a following in the Soudan. "The Arabs and Dongolawis," he writes—"negroes, and others settled within the Arab (the northern) zone of the Soudan—are all Mohammedans of the Maliki school. This

religion, however, owing to the prevailing ignorance of the people, partakes mostly of an emotional and superstitious nature. Hence the enormous influence of the fakirs or spiritual leaders, who are credited with a supernatural power, and are almost more venerated than the prophet." Another cause for the strength of the Mahdi's following seems to have been that the great slave owners—the sheiks and chiefs who had flourished on their nefarious prac-



tices under Zebehr, and whom all the efforts of Baker and Gordon had not put down—threw in their lot eagerly with any enterprise that struck at the Egyptian rule, under which a term had been definitely fixed for the emancipation of the slaves.

The Mahdi easily repulsed the detachment Raouf Pasha sent out to bring him in, and at the end of 1881, defeated in the most summary style a stronger force under Rashid Bey that had been dispatched to drive him out of Gebel Gadir. But these were petty successes compared with the great victory he gained in June, 1882, over the main Egyptian army of the Soudan, which Abdul Kadir, who had superseded Raouf Pasha, had gathered for the purpose of crushing him, and the command of which had been entrusted to Yusuf Pasha. Very few of the Egyptian soldiers escaped, and all their commanders were slain. Thus early did the Arab fanaticism display itself. The attack at Gebel Geon was led by the dervishes, headed by an enthusiast of exceptional dash and fury, who was known as "The Dervish," and of whose conduct Colonel Stewart reported, "I hear that the desperate and fearless way in which he rushes on a square armed with Remingtons is something marvellous."

After his victory at Gebel Geon the Mahdi pursued the offensive. He overran the open country unchecked, but failed to achieve any success against places that had been fortified, even though the fortifications were feeble. In assailing El Obeid he met with a severe repulse, losing 6000 of his warriors in one assault alone. During the months of the campaign which the battle of Tel-el-Kebir ended so summarily, there were discrepant rumors concerning affairs in the Soudan. Now there were reports of the dispersal of the Mahdi's bands; reports, again, of their threatening Khartoum and the towns on the White Nile. Then, later, in the winter season of 1882-3, came definite tidings of the surrender to the Mahdi of the town of El Obeid, after the garrison had endured desperate straits. The surrender, however, once consummated, most of the garrison, with the Commandant Iskander Bey at their head, took service under their conqueror. With the proverbial zeal of the renegade, Iskander Bey became the medium for endeavoring to gain over officers in the Egyptian army in which he had himself held a commission. After the fall of El Obeid the Mahdi remained himself inside the Kordofan Province, but his emissaries were active in other parts of the Soudan.

#### DESPERATE BATTLE BETWEEN HICKS PASHA AND THE MAHDI

The unchecked march of the Mahdi, his decisive victories, and the rapid increase of his followers, rendered the situation in Lower Egypt distressingly grave. It was feared, because believed, that he would soon overwhelm all the Soudan, and then direct his victorious and wildly fanatic army against Upper Egypt, which was undoubtedly his ambition. Something must be done at once, and, to check the growing power of the prophet, Egypt must look beyond her own territory for help. To this end the Khedive sent for Colonel Hicks, a retired officer from the Indian army, and offered him the position of commander-





VILLAGE OF OREEL OROK.



in-chief if he would take charge of an expedition against the Mahdi. The offer was accepted and in the summer of 1883, two years after the Mahdi had proclaimed himself, Hicks Pasha began operations in the Sennaar district, between the White and Blue Nile. While on the march for Gebel Ain, April 29th, he was furiously assailed by the Mahdi, but the onslaught was not begun until Hicks Pasha had formed his troops into a hollow square and was well prepared to receive the enemy. A desperate battle followed, which is thus graphically



RETREAT OF THE MAHDISTS AFTER THE DEFEAT AT GEBEL GEON.

described by the military correspondent of the *London Daily News*, who was an eye-witness to the struggle:

"We opened a tremendous fusillade from our front face, apparently without effect, for still they came on gallantly, but at 500 yards they began to fall fast. Still the chiefs led on their men with all the reckless and romantic chivalry of the Saracen knights. One by one they fell, dismounted, two or three to rise again and dart forward on foot, waving their standards, only to drop and rise no more. After half an hour's continuous rattle of musketry, seeing their chiefs fallen and their banners in the dust, the advancing hordes wavered, and

were greeted with a tremendous yell from our troops, who had stood firmly and unflinchingly, and I may say as steadily as any troops could. Now the enemy moved off to the right among the long grass, and our front was cleared. Shells burst among them. Soon all were out of sight, except a few who walked about unconcernedly, and actually singly came up, after the rest had retreated, to within a few yards, brandishing their spears in defiance. One after another those fanatics were shot down. . . . Nordenfeldts and Remingtons are no respecters of creeds or fanatical idiosyncrasies. Sheik after sheik had gone down with his banner, although the Mahdi had assured each that he was invulnerable, and their faithful but misguided followers had fallen in circles around the chiefs they blindly followed. Twelve of the most prominent leaders—nine from Samoar and three from Kordofan—had left their bones to whiten on the field amidst three hundred of their followers."

#### ANNIHILATION OF HICKS PASHA'S ARMY.

The first battles against the Mahdi were won by Hicks Pasha, but his army was alarmingly small as compared with that of the enemy; besides, his Egyptian soldiers were the most arrant cowards imaginable, while those fighting under the Mahdi's standard were fanatically brave, believing themselves either invulnerable, or, if slain in battle, that they would be immediately transplanted to Paradise. Hicks Pasha and the few English soldiers with him had the gravest fears of success in operating against the Mahdi, with a government at their back that gave them the meagrest support, and a soldiery that was too effeminate to battle with the weakest enemy.

In pursuance of orders, on September 9th Hicks left El Duem for El Obeid, the Mahdi's strongest position, and which was fully two hundred and thirty miles from the nearest Egyptian post, and thus in the very heart of the enemy's country. Hicks asked for re-enforcements, but these could not be furnished, so, with his feeble, undrilled, cowardly tag-rags, he had to face the dread alternative of disobeying orders and being in disgrace, or probable annihilation. Brave man as he was, he chose the latter. The last information that came back from the doomed column was a message sent by O'Donovan, the *London Times'* correspondent, who dispatched the following from a point forty-five miles south-west of El Duem:

"We are running a terrible risk in abandoning our communications and marching two hundred and thirty miles into an unknown country. But we have burnt our ships. The enemy is still retiring, and sweeping the country bare of cattle. The water supply is the cause of intense anxiety. The camels are dropping." And so ended O'Donovan's work in the profession which he adorned; so closed too, the scanty record of this fateful advance!

Authentic details may never be forthcoming of the stupendous catastrophe which befell Hicks's column; and a lurid cloud of mystery may hang over the last scenes for all time. No European present in the fighting that wrought its annihilation is known to have survived.



The news of the fate of Hicks's army reached England November 20th, and caused a profound sensation. Thus far the British Government had refused to take any interest in the efforts of the Egyptian Government to subjugate the Mahdi, and now Lord Granville insisted on an abandonment of the Egyptian Soudan. But how could this be done? The Egyptian population in that district numbered fully 30,000, while a large number of British subjects were engaged in trade with the people of that region, and not a few held their residences in Khartoum. Must these be abandoned to the poor mercy of the Mahdi? Mr. Gladstone measured the situation fully, and his influence was in favor of the adoption of measures for relieving the garrisons. More than this, his acute discernment and high sense of justice led to energetic action to this



HICKS PASHA'S TAG-RAGS.

end, for on January 19th, 1884, General Gordon left England for the Soudan, having accepted the mission "to report on the military situation there, to provide in the best manner for the safety of the European population of Khartoum, and of the Egyptian garrisons throughout the country, as well as for the evacuation of the Soudan, with the exception of the seaboard."

Mr. Gladstone afterwards, in the House of Commons, on the evening of February 12th, defined more closely the duty which Gordon had undertaken. "General Gordon went," said the Premier, "not for the purpose of reconquering the Soudan, or to persuade the chiefs of the Soudan—the sultans at the head of their troops—to submit themselves to the Egyptian Government. He





MICHAEL PASHA'S LAST BATTLE.



went for no such purpose as that. He went for the double purpose of evacuating the country, by extricating the Egyptian garrisons and re-constituting it—by giving back to these sultans their ancestral powers, withdrawn or suspended during the period of Egyptian occupation. General Gordon has in view the withdrawal from the country of no less than 29,000 persons under military service in Egypt, and the House will see how vast was the trust which was placed in the hands of this remarkable person. We cannot exaggerate the importance we attach to his mission. We are unwilling—I may say we were resolved to do nothing which should interfere with the pacific scheme; a scheme, be it remembered, absolutely the most politic and which promised a satisfactory solution of the Soudanese difficulty, by at once extricating the garrisons and reconstructing the country upon its old basis of local privileges."

These opinions were put in the form of a letter of instructions issued by Lord Granville, under the seal of the British Government, and placed in Gordon's hands the day previous to his departure.

#### TO THE RELIEF OF KHARTOUM.

General Gordon had intended to proceed to the Soudan by way of Suez, thence to Souakim, and from that port across the country to Berber; but his original plans were disarranged by circumstances which required his presence in Cairo. He reached the Egyptian capital on the 25th and attended an audience with the Khedive on the following day, at which that ruler again bestowed upon him the high office of Governor-General of the Soudan, so that Gordon was now not only British High Commissioner, but the Khedive's representative also, with power to conceive and execute without restriction, which delegation of fairly autocratic authority was a necessary condition of his service.

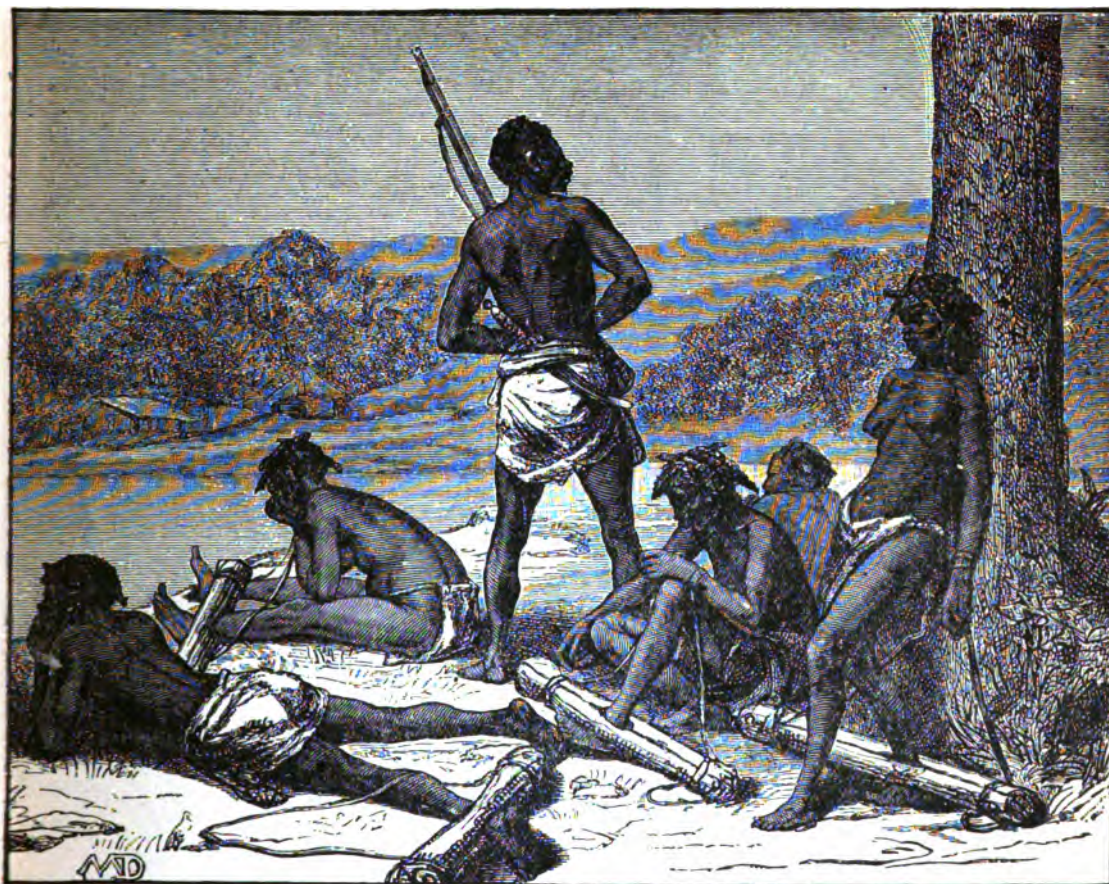
Leaving Cairo, Gordon was convoyed by General Graham as far as Assouan. Thence Gordon travelled with Colonel Stewart across the Nubian desert, on camel-back, a distance of two hundred and forty miles, to Abou Hamed, and thence to Berber. While making this journey, news of another dreadful massacre reached the Home Government. On February 4th, General Baker's Egyptian force, while marching towards Tokar to relieve the garrison of that place, was attacked by a detachment of Osman Digna's Arab levies, which resulted in a loss of two-thirds of Baker's force, and a complete dispersion of the balance, so that reorganization was impossible. This news caused Gordon great uneasiness, and gave the British Government equal concern, as little doubt was now felt that Khartoum would fall into the hands of the Mahdi in a very short while, unless something could be done to arouse the people in the district to make a resistance to the false prophet. To this end, before leaving Berber, Gordon confirmed Hussein Bey Halifa Governor of the province, and then sent forward orders to Khartoum removing Hussein Pasha from the Vice-Governor Generalship, and appointed Colonel de Coetlogen in his stead. He also sent a proclamation, and had it posted all over the city, proclaiming the Mahdi Sultan of Kordofan, remitting one-half the taxes, and per-



GERMAN DIGNA'S ATTACK ON TOWAR.



mitting the trade in slaves to be carried on. This action, though opposed by his nature, as perpetrating a great wrong that he had before tried so hard to suppress, was the only course left open to Gordon; for the power of the Mahdi was now grown so great that it was practically irresistible with the force available, while the people would join in any measure calculated to fully restore their immemorial slave-trading privileges. Gordon's purpose, therefore, was to placate both the Mahdi and the people, hoping thereby to save the garrisons



VICTIMS OF THE SLAVE-TRADING PRIVILEGES.

from massacre, and give a truce to hostilities until the evacuation of the Soudan could be accomplished.

#### HORRIBLE SCENES OF OPPRESSION.

It was on the morning of Tuesday, February 18th, that General Gordon made his entry into Khartoum. In one of his letters home he describes how, when entering Keren, arrayed in the splendid "gold coat" of a field-marshal, and in the pomp befitting the Governor-General of the Soudan, the humor of his fancy had suggested to him some resemblance in the eyes of the populace between him and "the Divine Figure from the North" who was just then a good deal in the mouths of men. A veritable "Divine Figure" he must have



shone in the sight of the people of Khartoum as he came among them on this February morning. What a change for them from the regime of Bashi-Bazonkery; of the pashas, of the stick, the lash, the prison; from the grinding taxation and the denial of even a form of justice! No wonder that, as he passed to the palace from the Mudirieh, where he had been holding a levee to which the poorest Arab was admitted, the people pressed about him, kissing his hands and feet, and hailing him as "Sultan," "Father," and "Saviour!" There was a whole-souled energy and an uncompromising thoroughness in everything that this man did. With the best will in the world to redress grievances,



FESTIVAL DANCE IN HONOR OF GORDON.

another man would have gone about the work in a methodical, ungalvanic fashion; but Gordon did not know the meaning of routine. There on the shelves were the Government ledgers, on whose pages were the long records of the outstanding debts that weighed down the overtaxed people. On the walls hung the kourbashs, whips and bastinado rods—implements of tyranny and torture. Gordon wiped out the evidence of debts and destroyed the emblems of oppression in a fine impulse of characteristic ardor. A fire was made in front of the palace, and the books and bastinado rods thrown on this funeral pyre of Egyptian tyranny.





GORDON HOLDING A COUNCIL WITH HIS OFFICERS.



He had so but begun the day's work. From the council chamber he hurried to the hospital, thence to inspect the arsenal. Then he darted to the heart of the misery of the prison. In that loathsome den two hundred wretched beings were rotting in their chains. Young and old, condemned and untried, the proved innocent and the arrested on suspicion, he found all clotted together in one mass of common suffering. With wrathful disgust Gordon set about the summary work of liberation. Before night came the chains had fallen from off scores of the miseries, and the beneficent labor was being steadily pursued. Ere this busy day closed, Gordon's energy had left him hardly anything to do inside of Khartoum. He had arranged that the Soudanese soldiers were to stay in their native land, and had appointed to the command of them a veteran negro officer who had distinguished himself in Mexico under Bazaine. He had settled that the Egyptian soldiers were to be sent across the river to Am Durman, where was Hicks's camp before he started on his ill-fated march, and that they and their families were to be sent down the river in detachments, and so also were to go the European civilians who cared to leave.

#### THE CRY FOR HELP.

Everything for a time appeared auspicious for a peaceful evacuation of the Soudan and of the complete success of Gordon's mission. This hopeful appearance of the situation was not only inspired by the loyal protestations of the people in and about Khartoum, but was more reassuring when messengers sent to El Obeid to invest the Mahdi with the Sultanship of Kordofan returned with a present of a rich cloak, given by the Mahdi as an evidence of the delight he felt for the dignity bestowed by the appointment. Gordon's telegrams to the Home Government were therefore filled with assuring promises for the safety of Khartoum and a peaceful solution of the question raised by the Mahdi against the Egyptian Government.

But when Gordon's hopes were brightest the most distressing news came from Cairo, which pictured the situation as being suddenly changed to one of a serious and alarming character. The Mahdi was again in the saddle, and with a force of 300,000 dervishes, as his soldiers were called, was said to be marching towards Cairo, with an avowed purpose of sweeping the hateful Turk and Infidel from off the earth. Berber was besieged, and the enemy was investing El Fasher, Dawa, Masteri, Foga, while Om Shanga and Thashi had already surrendered.

Telegraph communication being cut off, Gordon sent Colonel Stewart up the Nile to ascertain the feeling of the northern tribes. All were friendly as far as Webel Aul, but beyond that point the people were very hostile. The Khedive was filled with alarm for Gordon's safety, but refused to send Zebehr Pasha to his aid, though message after message besought him to do so. Every day the situation became more critical. Within Khartoum, however, there was peace, and by the issuance of paper money, to relieve the stringency and poverty produced by the collection of exorbitant taxes, trade had revived and the daily market scene



was a lively one. This fortunate turn in local affairs had served to endear Gordon to the citizens and they were both loyal and grateful. But beyond the Khartoum district war was sounding its wildest alarms. From the west, north and south hostile tribes were reported as advancing on the city, and the Mahdi had declared his intention of not only capturing the place but also of killing Gordon. Appeals to England for help met with no response, while none of the English forces within the Egyptian Soudan were available.

In the midst of these anxieties Gordon sallied out with as large a force as he could muster, 3000 men, to attack the rebels at Halfiyeh, but owing to the treachery of two of his Arab officers, who fired on their own gunners and then



THE BATTLE AT HALFIYEH.

sounded the retreat, the fight was little more than a massacre of Gordon's men. The two treacherous officers were apprehended, and after a full hearing, which clearly established their guilt, they were shot. This prompt and vigorous action served greatly to diminish the effects of the defeat, as it gave renewed confidence to both the Egyptians and Bashi-Bazouks, who saw in Gordon a leader who, while generally pacific, sympathetic and merciful, yet in extremity was courageous and always hopeful.

The reverse met with at the hands of the enemy at Halfiyeh, though a stunning blow, was in a sense helpful to Gordon, as it brought to his aid the merchant Arabs of Khartoum, who contributed in a most substantial manner



to the defence of the town, which was now about to be beleaguered. Gordon's treasury was empty and his soldiers clamorous for pay, which distressful and threatening condition was to a great extent relieved by an Arab who loaned him \$5000; and by another who raised and equipped a force of 200 blacks, which he placed at Gordon's service.

#### THE SIEGE OF KHARTOUM.

Gordon fully realized the danger of his position and foresaw that an investment of Khartoum must soon be made by the Mahdi, who was reported to be fitting out a fleet for a descent on the place. This report was not true, but its probability led Gordon to begin provisioning the city and throwing up



A SKIRMISH BETWEEN OUTPOSTS.

lines of fortifications for its defence. So perfectly were his orders carried out and so ample his measures, that he made announcement of the absolute safety of the place, and his ability to hold out till winter. He did not neglect, however, to fully acquaint the Home Government with his true situation, and reasonably expected that relief would come through a dispatch of troops from England in a month or two.

Up to this time Gordon had been sending people away from Khartoum in anticipation of a siege, and continued so doing until his armed steamers had to make an almost uninterrupted engagement with the rebels who now swarmed both banks of the river. At last all communication was cut off and the Mahdi



encamped his great army opposite the town, where he threw up breastworks and planted three large Krupp guns with which to bombard the city. The siege was begun.

A complete investment of Khartoum was made early in July, and for a period of six months following there was the excitement, fear and horror that attends attack, charge, sortie and vigorous defence. Gordon was now like the caged lion, which, though powerful of limb, still finds the bars of his prison too strong to be overcome. A thousand obstacles confronted him. Provisions were



KHARTOUM DURING THE SIEGE.

ample for the time being, but his force was relatively small in number, money had almost ceased to circulate, because the paper currency which he had issued to bridge a temporary stringency had depreciated to the point of worthlessness, but above all were the defects found in his army. The men were practically undisciplined, poorly armed, and worse than this, were treacherous. Desertion was punished by death, and yet every day one or more of his soldiers passed the guards and made their way to the enemy, carrying news of his condition and serving to give rise to a spirit of insubordination.

Against the tremendous odds that confronted him, Gordon bore up so



bravely that his presence gave encouragement in quarters even where hope had faded. Almost day and night he was with his men, taking scarcely any rest whatever, leading in every defence and being seemingly at every point where he was most needed. The rebels, finding that the place was so well defended, and that their assaults were invariably disastrous—more than 40,000 dervishes having fallen before the trenches—at length resolved to give over these tactics and settled down to a reduction of the town by starvation. About a dozen shots were fired each day into the city from the rebel cannons, but they did little execution, and were probably intended only to keep Gordon apprised of the enemy's continued presence and determination.



HEADQUARTERS OF THE MAHDI DURING THE SIEGE.

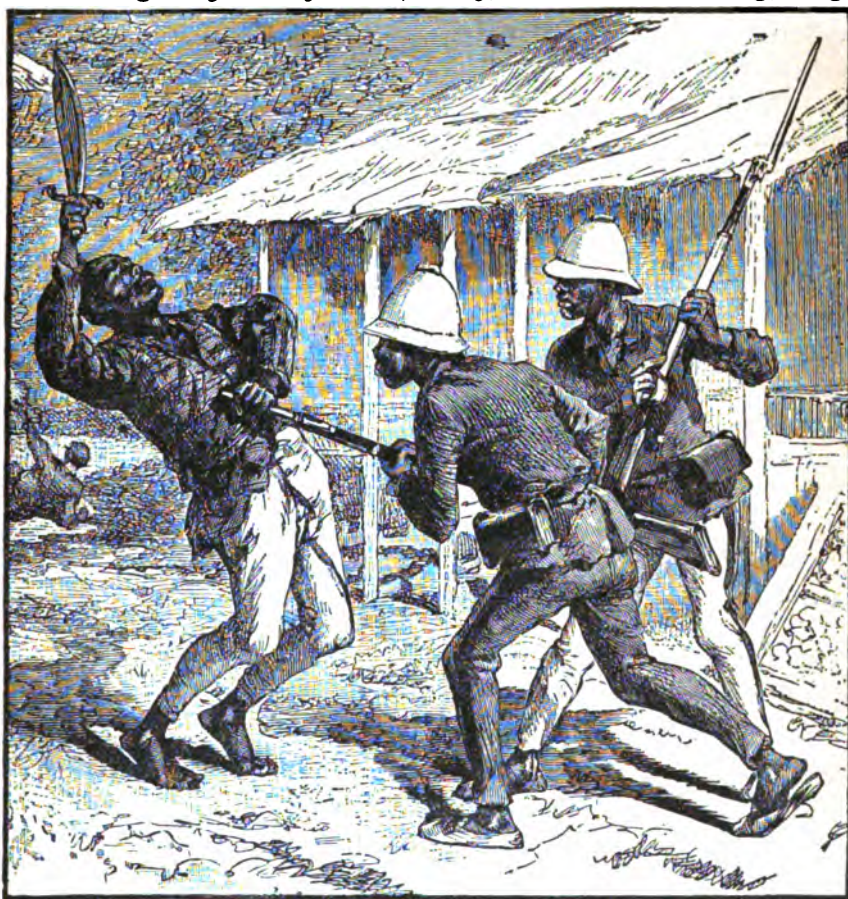
While this siege was going on, the Parliament of Great Britain was engaged in discussing the importance of the Soudan with an indifference to Gordon's fate that fairly dumbfounds the world.

#### THE TRAGIC DEATH OF GORDON.

Month after month went by, with Gordon still defending Khartoum and looking with anxious eyes for the aid that never came. Provisions began to run low, discontent increased, the Khedive found fault, the Arabs were dismayed, and yet Gordon did not quail, resolving to defend the city to the last extremity, and if necessary die behind its fortifications, a victim to shameful abandonment by his country. And so it came at last. Day by day the



store of food became smaller, until at last mouths were unfed, and gaping poverty hugged the streets for some chance nourishment. Discontent is the beggar's companion, and from discontent conspiracy developed that threw Gordon's army into mutiny. Man could do no more than he. Like a hero he suffered privations with his friends; like a martyr he bore the odium that came from a limit to his genius, his power as commander, diplomat and man. The end was near at hand, but little did so brave a man foresee the baseness of the means. Early on the morning of January 26th, 1885, weak from fasting, haggard from long-deferred hope, but withal patient under a resignation to God's will, Gordon, brave, heroic Gordon, came down from his quarters (which were in the Governor-General's mansion, that fronted the Nile River), to resume the trying duties of his position as commander of a forlorn hope; scarcely had he stepped outside the door, when with savage boast and hellish intent, two of his own soldiers, reinforced by a howling rabble, attacked him with their swords just as the enemy, through treachery of those within, came rushing into the city, to complete the capture. Unexpectant and unarmed, the brave soldier could make no defence, and hence bared his bosom to the steel of his assassins; and thus he fell, no more a hero than a martyr, for on England is the shame that she should exact such a sacrifice of one who deserved more honor than in most generous humor she could bestow.



DEATH OF GORDON'S BODY SERVANT.

Unexpectant and unarmed, the brave soldier could make no defence, and hence bared his bosom to the steel of his assassins; and thus he fell, no more a hero than a martyr, for on England is the shame that she should exact such a sacrifice of one who deserved more honor than in most generous humor she could bestow.

The particulars of Gordon's death have never been authenticated; a hundred stories have been told, but the carnival of massacre that followed simultaneously with the assassination threw every spectator into a chaos of horror, and blinded

the mind's eye by a confusion of fear that made description impossible. It is told that Gordon had one faithful attendant: a poor, half-naked black, who was armed with a matchet, or broad-bladed sword, with which he tried to defend his master, but was bayoneted by two of Gordon's soldiers. It may be so; but frightful enough is it to know that Gordon died at the hands of those who should have been his friends—his soldiers and his country.

It is not necessary, nor relevant, to describe the war which followed Gordon's death, it being only important in this connection to state the fact, that very late in the fall of 1884 English sympathy was excited on behalf of Gordon, and the government finally sent an army under Charles Wilson ostensibly to his relief. In fact, however, the army was expected to arrest the Mahdi's movements toward Cairo, and to give protection to British subjects in the Soudan, rather than to rescue Gordon. This intention is best evidenced by the manœuvres in which the army indulged so long before placing gunboats and transports on the Nile to relieve Khartoum, the investment of which had been known to Lord Granville for several months. But at last—I say "at last," because too late,—the English fleet reached Khartoum and engaged the rebels, but not till January 28th, or two days after the fall of the city, and the death of our hero, when by a vigorous shelling the rebels were put to rout and the city recaptured. The army was now put to some real service and did great execution in every battle that followed, many thousand dervishes being killed and the Madhi's power overthrown completely in the Soudan, so that his field of operations was transferred to the Equatorial Province, where he still holds his spiritual and militant supremacy. Thus did Gordon's services in the Egyptian Soudan end finally, though incidentally, in the accomplishment of the purpose for which he was sent there by England and the Khedive.





## CHAPTER XVII.

### LIFE OF EMIN PASHA.



IT is a most surprising thing, for which I will not undertake an explanation, that although Emin Pasha served in the most responsible positions for at least six years under Gordon in the Soudan, yet not once is his name mentioned in any of Gordon's letters, nor does any reference to him appear in the diaries or journals of contemporary explorers in Africa. This unaccountable omission has grown into a mystery in the light of present revelations, whereby it is ascertained that Emin has for twelve years occupied the post of Governor-General of the Egyptian Equatorial Province, to which place he was appointed by the Khedive at the urgent request of Gordon himself. In fact, the history of Emin is scarcely less interesting, in whatever aspect we consider it, than that of Gordon, and in some respects it is even more enigmatic, while certainly as important.

The real name of Emin Pasha is Eduard Schnitzer, and his birthplace is Oppeln, which is a city of Prussian Silesia. Eduard lost his father at a youthful age, but he was left a considerable patrimony, which enabled him to attend the universities of Berlin, Breslau, Koenigsberg, Vienna and Paris. He developed a zeal for the natural sciences, and was especially interested in a study of ornithology, in which he exhibited marked proficiency. In the year 1864 he completed a course of medicine at the Koenigsberg Institute and received his degrees, removing to Berlin to enter upon the practice of his chosen profession. His success, however, was so far from satisfactory that he concluded to visit Constantinople with the hope of mending his fortune, but while there he discovered an advantageous opening at a Turkisk port in Albania, at which he located and practised with much success for four years.

Though Dr. Schnitzer found his profession quite profitable as a local physician in Albania, he had a longing for the military, so that he seized the opportunity of joining an expedition to Syria and Arabia, in which he held the post of physician. From 1871-74 he was the constant companion of Ismail Pasha in Trapezund, Erzeroum, Constantinople, and in Ianina of Epirus, where Ismail died. After this event, which considerably changed his fortunes, Dr. Schnitzer returned to Germany, in 1875, but he again disappeared, and kept himself so well in seclusion that his friends knew nothing of him until he came into notoriety as Emin Bey.

Dr. Schnitzer's travels had been so extensive, and his acquisition of languages so great that he became a master of French, English, Italian, Turkish, Arabic, Persian, and several Slavonian idioms, besides acquiring occidental customs and manners that entirely destroyed every appearance of his Germanic descent.

#### JOINS GORDON IN THE SOUDAN.

In 1876 the doctor visited Cairo, and there by chance met General Gordon, to whom he offered his services. So favorable was the impression he produced, and so important to



EMIN PASHA. (DR. SCHNITZER.)

Gordon was his knowledge of Arabic, that his services were immediately engaged, and since that time the doctor has been true to the interests of the Khedive. The first mention made of him in the European prints is the following brief allusion by Martin Kansal, late Austrian consul at Khartoum, who, writing to his home government about Egyptian affairs, says: "A German, Dr. Schnitzer, who calls himself a Moslem from Constantinople, and as such is named Emin Effendi, has succeeded in getting a position with Gordon."

It seems, from circumstances since made public, that Gordon almost immediately formed the highest opinion of Emin's abilities both as a physician and administrator, for the latter part of 1876 Gordon sent him on a most important mission to Uganda, with instructions to bring back three hundred men who had gone, contrary to Gordon's orders, to the capital of Uganda with the intention of annexing the country to Egypt. It was known that the



appearance and purpose of this force would be considered as an invasion, and would most likely create an intensely hostile feeling, which it was particularly desirable to avoid. Emin so well acquitted himself, however, on this delicate mission, that the troops were brought back, and by a gift of many presents and kindly assurances, M'tesa, King of Uganda, was brought into a friendly relationship with Emin, besides giving promises of aid, in case of necessity, to the Egyptian contingent.

Gordon was so pleased with the success of Emin's mission, that as a mark of



A UGANDA VILLAGE.

his appreciation he made Emin surgeon-general of the Equatorial Province, with additional powers of sub-governor. Soon after he sent the doctor to another enterprise of still greater importance, in which a yet more diplomatic adroitness had to be practised, for Gordon himself hardly expected the mission to be successful.

#### THE MISSION TO KING KABBA REGA.

In a previous chapter, describing Baker's services in Central Africa as Governor-General, the reader will remember that an account was given of the



treachery of Kabba Rega, King of Unyoro, who viciously attacked Baker, but was in turn routed and driven out of his capital, Malindi, and his uncle, Rionga, installed in his stead. Though Kabba Rega was dethroned as described, he never lost his influence with his subjects, so that, after Baker left the country, he raised an army with which he easily defeated Rionga, and recovered the rulership, in which he continued with greater security than before. But the king's enmity against Egypt was intense because of Baker's action—as the representative of the Khedive—and as Kabba Rega was, next to M'tesa, the most powerful ruler in Central Africa, his authority was greatly feared. Besides, he was harassing the Egyptian frontier, and had made all effort at



EMIN AND HIS ESCORT EN ROUTE FOR UNYORO.

extension of the borders or advance towards Lake Albert exceedingly dangerous. To placate this king, or, if possible, to win his friendship, was so necessary, that, reposing the greatest confidence in Emin, Gordon decided to send him to Unyoro with this purpose in view. Any other man than Emin might well have recoiled from such an undertaking, but being, like Gordon, a fatalist, he did not hesitate to set out, with a small escort, and succeeded in reaching Malindi after a journey of nearly three months. Here he found Kabba Rega in no amiable frame of mind, but by careful address and a bestowal of presents, Emin finally concluded a peace with the king, which was so well observed that Gordon was soon after materially assisted by Kabba Rega, as have other travellers in the region since, notably the Church Missionary Society representatives.

#### APPOINTED GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

The success of Emin's mission to the King of Unyoro was recognized by Gordon in a most gracious manner, not only by the most complimentary considerations, but by his appointment, in 1878, as Governor of the Equatorial



Provinces, with the rank of Bey, which position he retained up to the time of his promotion to Pasha.

When Emin took charge of the administration of the Provinces, he was in the unenviable, indeed dangerous, position of one who finds himself at the head of a friendly body surrounded by a powerful and hostile force. The only district in peace was a narrow strip along the Nile from Lado to Albert Lake and in a small country east of the Nile, occupied by the Shulis tribe. But nowise discouraged, Emin laid aside all fear, if indeed he ever experienced the meaning of such a word, and set about the work of extending his authority and promoting peace. So resolutely did he apply himself that by 1880 most of the stations founded by Gordon, some forty in number, had been rebuilt, and a weekly post between them established, which was perfectly secure. In short, peace settled down upon the land with the quiet of a brooding dove, for even the slave dealers had been effectually rooted out. Besides this beneficent work, the Equatorial Provinces, which in 1878 showed a deficit of nearly \$200,000 per annum, had not only become self-sustaining, but actually exhibited a surplus of \$40,000. This result was due to well matured consideration of the people's need, and a rigid application of economy, combined with well directed labor. He had divided the whole province into districts, in each of which was a military station where the tax of grain and cattle was collected from the natives. His own capital was fixed at Lado, ten miles north of Gondokoro, which he greatly improved and made of it a well built town, all the government buildings and the mosque being of brick and roofed with corrugated iron, though the other buildings were chiefly grass huts, such as are common among most of the African tribes.



EMIN HAILED BY UNYORO WARRIORS.

out. Besides this beneficent work, the Equatorial Provinces, which in 1878 showed a deficit of nearly \$200,000 per annum, had not only become self-sustaining, but actually exhibited a surplus of \$40,000. This result was due to well matured consideration of the people's need, and a rigid application of economy, combined with well directed labor. He had divided the whole province into districts, in each of which was a military station where the tax of grain and cattle was collected from the natives. His own capital was fixed at Lado, ten miles north of Gondokoro, which he greatly improved and made of it a well built town, all the government buildings and the mosque being of brick and roofed with corrugated iron, though the other buildings were chiefly grass huts, such as are common among most of the African tribes.



The streets are wide and considerable space is left between the houses and the fortifications, while beyond these are large gardens. The fortifications are pierced by three gates, at which sentries are kept posted day and night, the gates being opened from 6 A. M. to 8 P. M. Here the best order prevails, not only among the garrison but among the people as well; for while the soldiers are made to drill regularly, the inhabitants are required to observe rules of cleanliness, not only in their own households, but to sweep the streets also, while the curfew is rung at 8 P. M. as a protection against fire, the many grass houses of the place rendering this olden time precaution necessary.

Emin's soldiers are, or were, nearly all Makraka men, who are distinguished for their bravery no less than for their physical perfection, which is remarkable. They are armed with Remington rifles and wear a uniform com-



STATION OF LADO, CAPITAL OF THE EQUATORIAL PROVINCES.

posed of a white tunic and trousers, boots, fez, and a belt of leopard skin which serves to hold cartridges, sword, bayonet and knife.

Each village is also required to support a police force, as conservators of the public peace and who attend to collecting the government tax. These police, who act also the part of dragomen, attend, on application, to the engagement of porters when work is required about the station. They are so nearly naked as to have no uniform, but are armed with double-barrelled shot-guns, which they have learned to use with no small skill, and are as brave as they are savage appearing.

The strongest stations in Emin's province are those at Lado, Kirri, and Duffili, but the most interesting one is Wadelai, from the fact that it was at this place Emin made his last residence, and where he was so long invested, as will be described hereafter.



## NATIVES OF THE SOUDAN.

To better understand the dangers and difficulties connected with an administration of the Khedival rule in the Egyptian Soudan and provinces, it is necessary to know something of the people or tribes over which this nominal rule extended. For it was not only slave dealers that opposed a most obstinate resistance to all attempts made to spread civilizing influences throughout that region, for quite as much, even more, resistance was offered by the natives themselves. This opposition, however, may be generally traced to the Arab slave dealers, who had for so many years carried desolation in their



EMIN'S IRREGULARS—NATIVE POLICE.

wake, robbing the tribes of their cattle, forcing ransoms of ivory for captives they made, burning villages and carrying thousands of the people into slavery, that it is not a matter for wonder that a universal mistrust of foreigners was felt, and that all the tribes fell into a condition of chronic war. To this abnormal condition, the natural outgrowth of murder, rapine and every form of oppression, we must add that of a normal savagery, which made of them the very incarnation of imbruted cruelty and ferocity.

Africa is the home of perhaps a hundred distinct tribes, but along the Nile, between Khartoum and the great lakes, are to be found the most diverse



characteristics, ranging from the perfectly naked, shiftless, cannibal Niam-Niams, to the fairly well governed, clothed and housed Wagandas who, though occupying the most central kingdom, are undoubtedly the foremost people of the so-called dark regions of Africa.

All the various tribes are communistic and live in villages composed most commonly of sticks, or poles bent in the shape of a domed hut, and thatched with grass. These habitations are variously shaped, however, even while retaining the general dome design, for some terminate in a sharp apex, others are cylindrical and pointed, many are oblong, with high and wide doors, and yet others with entrance so small as to admit a person only when crawling on his hands and knees. Not a few are raised on posts several feet from the ground so as to afford shade for a large group of villagers sitting underneath; while,



STATION AT KIRRI.

to cap the climax of human eccentricity in the construction of dwellings, a few have their homes in caves excavated in the hill-sides.

Most of the tribes along the Nile are pastoral, and

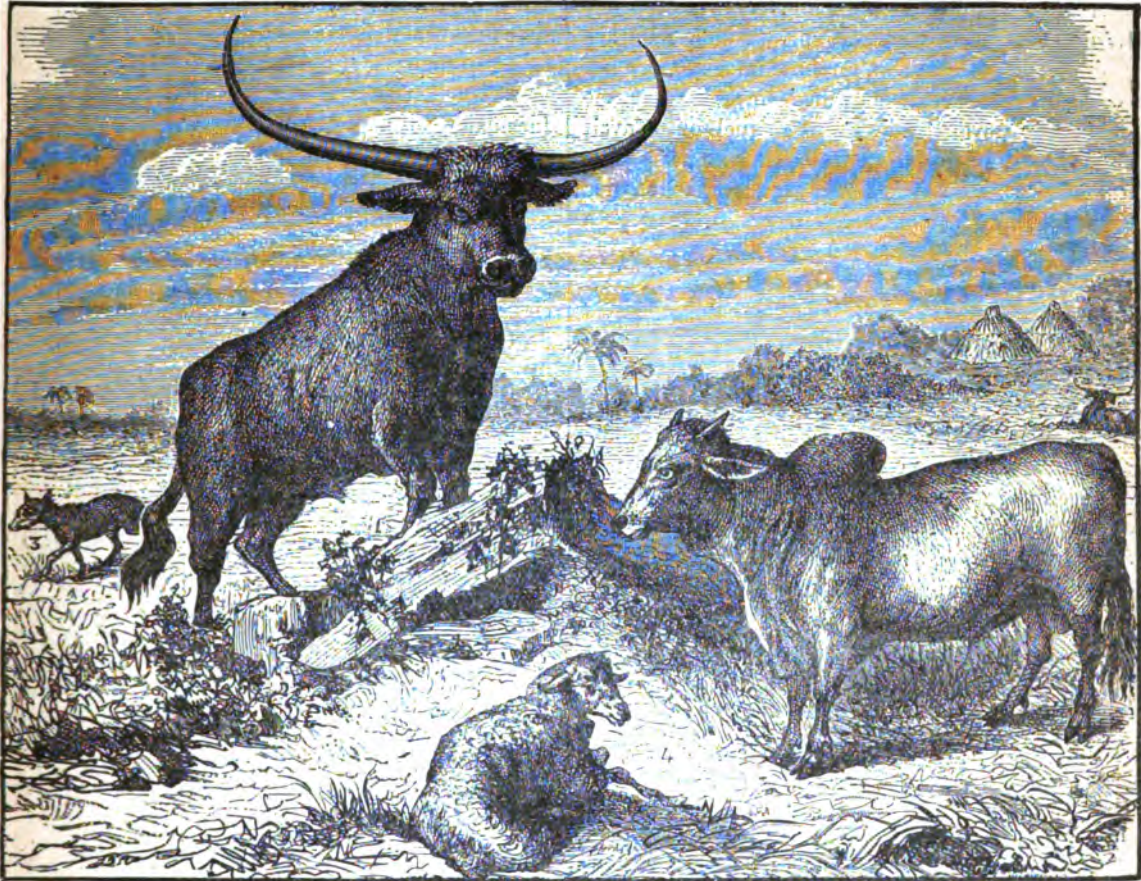
raise immense herds of cattle which they never, or very rarely kill for meat, but make the best uses of milk, by drinking it pure, or making butter, cheese, curds, etc. Though a great quantity of butter is made, it is never eaten, being used exclusively for greasing the hair and body, for an African without grease is like an American belle without jewelry. Some of the tribes pay considerable attention to raising grain, of which *doorah*, a sorghum maize, is the principal product. Though not worried by invasions of crows, cut-worms, locusts or grain flies, the African agriculturist is not without natural enemies that render his crops precarious. Several species of birds attack the plant when it first peeps above the ground, and so great would be the ravages, if no protection was offered, that to defend his growing crop the agriculturist is compelled to adopt expedients more effective than scare-crows. In the centre of the field—which is never very large, being more like a garden—a high platform is erected, to which strings are attached radiating to every point of the field. Boys are stationed on the platform, and when flocks of birds make a swoop to attack the plants they pull these strings sharply and thus frighten the winged pests. Hippo-



potami and elephants are the most serious curse to the grain-fields, however, for these cannot be frightened away.

#### NATURAL DRESS OF THE NATIVES.

Around nearly every village is a *zereba*, or hedge of thorns, which serves the double purpose of a defence in case of attack, and as a corral for cattle at night. Among the warlike tribes these hedges are grown so thick that a passage through them is impossible, affording all the protection of a fortification, and having only a single entrance, which is easily defended.



CATTLE COMMON TO THE NILE REGION.

In addition to the butter that is used for greasing the body, many employ ochre or other mineral pigments, also ashes, burnt bricks, etc., with which the legs, arms, breast and face are colored in almost identical resemblance to many of the Indian tribes of our country. This use of grease and coloring matter takes the place of clothes, for in so warm a country, clothing being a discomfort, a comfortable substitute is found by giving color to the skin that serves to hide a disgusting nakedness. A thought of indecent exposure no more occurs to him than it does to an animal, and as Baroud Bey observes, "any



garment on him is as much out of place as a coat would be on one of his cows."

All of the tribes south of Fashoda, as far as Unyoro, are seen in their natural state, except that in addition to the application of oil and ochre, they wear rings around their arms, necks and ankles, made of copper, iron, ivory, serpent's skin or hippopotamus hide. To these body ornaments the women of a few tribes mutilate their lower lips and lobes of the ear, and insert large round pieces of quartz, ivory or colored glass, after the manner of certain South American people. Beads, of course, are everywhere seen, and are worn as girdles, necklaces, and formed into passementerie, besides being used very largely as currency. Besides other decorations, especially among the Shooli, Madi, Lango and the Latooka Baris, the women wear helmets of plaited hair,



CAVE-DWELLERS ALONG THE NILE.

or work the hair into fantastic shapes and in the most ingenious and intricate manner. Feathers are also often used to heighten the effect.

#### BEAUTIFUL WOMEN OF THE MADI.

The Baris are the most warlike of all African tribes, and, I may also add, the most treacherous. The men are tall and generally heavy, while the women are noted for strength.

The Madis are smaller in size than the Baris, but more graceful, and, in fact, are almost the realization of the perfect type of physical manhood. They take infinite pains in adorning their bodies, and in dressing the hair, and this too with such taste and becomingness that the effect is highly pleasing. Among the women are to be found not a few, but many, of the most charmingly appearing nymphs, as beautiful in form and feature as Virgil ever conceived.

Very few of the tribes along the Nile carry shields, but are well armed



with spears, bows and poison-tipped arrows. The latter are also fiendishly barbed to make the greatest lacerations. Blacksmiths are common among nearly all the tribes, and though they work iron by the most primitive methods, contrive to make very useful implements. *Molots*, or hoes, hand-plows, spears, iron-pointed arrows, are the principal articles that they manufacture.



DEFENDING THE GRAIN FIELDS.

Throughout this large district, at least south of Gondokoro, large game is plentiful, which gives evidence that the people are not good hunters. Elephants and hippopotami are very numerous and give nearly all the tribes infinite trouble by seeking the granaries, or rioting among the growing crops, destroying field after field in the night-time, and giving themselves small concern for





A VISIT TO THE SAVAGE KING.





the shouts, cries and trumpet-blaring that is used with the vain hope of scaring them away. Besides these huge animals there are leopards that occasionally become so bold as to dispute the passage of a man, and to often stalk men and women. Whole villages are sometimes called out to give aid in destroying some leopard that has become an epicure on human flesh. Wild boars, a few giraffes, great herds of antelope, hartbeests, and quaggas abound. Buffaloes, though still common, are not nearly so numerous as formerly, their numbers seeming to have been greatly reduced during the past dozen years.

#### SAVAGERY OF THE CROCODILE.

But of all the creatures most dreaded in Africa the crocodile is the chief. He is the sly but horrible gorgon that takes toll from every living thing. Cattle stopping to drink are seized by the nose or whipped by his powerful



SAVAGERY OF THE CROCODILE.

tail into the stream. If herds attempt to swim a creek or river some of them are sure to be pulled under by its dreadful jaws. But the crocodile is no discriminator among living things; he lies in wait and is content with whatever fortune throws in his way. He loves young pig, or a fat monkey, but his appetite is omnivorous and he takes with equal greed a luscious negro boy or a piece of putrid offal, the last remains of some cow or ox that has lain blistering in the sun until pushed into the water.

As a measure for protecting water-carriers from greedy crocodiles, the place where water is drawn from the river by village women is nearly always guarded by a barrier made by driving piles in a semicircle so as to make a small enclosure, inside of which it is possible to dip up water with security. Orders are, indeed, given forbidding anyone from taking water at any other place, but despite these precautions and warnings, every village along the Nile has a weekly mourner for some more adventurous person who has been borne away



by a crocodile. Emin Pasha reports that six women lost their lives in this way during the first few weeks of his stay in Lado, while more than a dozen very narrow escapes were reported. In one instance a crocodile even mounted the bank and crawled up to a porch of one of the houses on which two young gentlemen were taking an afternoon nap, evidently with the intention of break-



STALKED BY A LEOPARD.

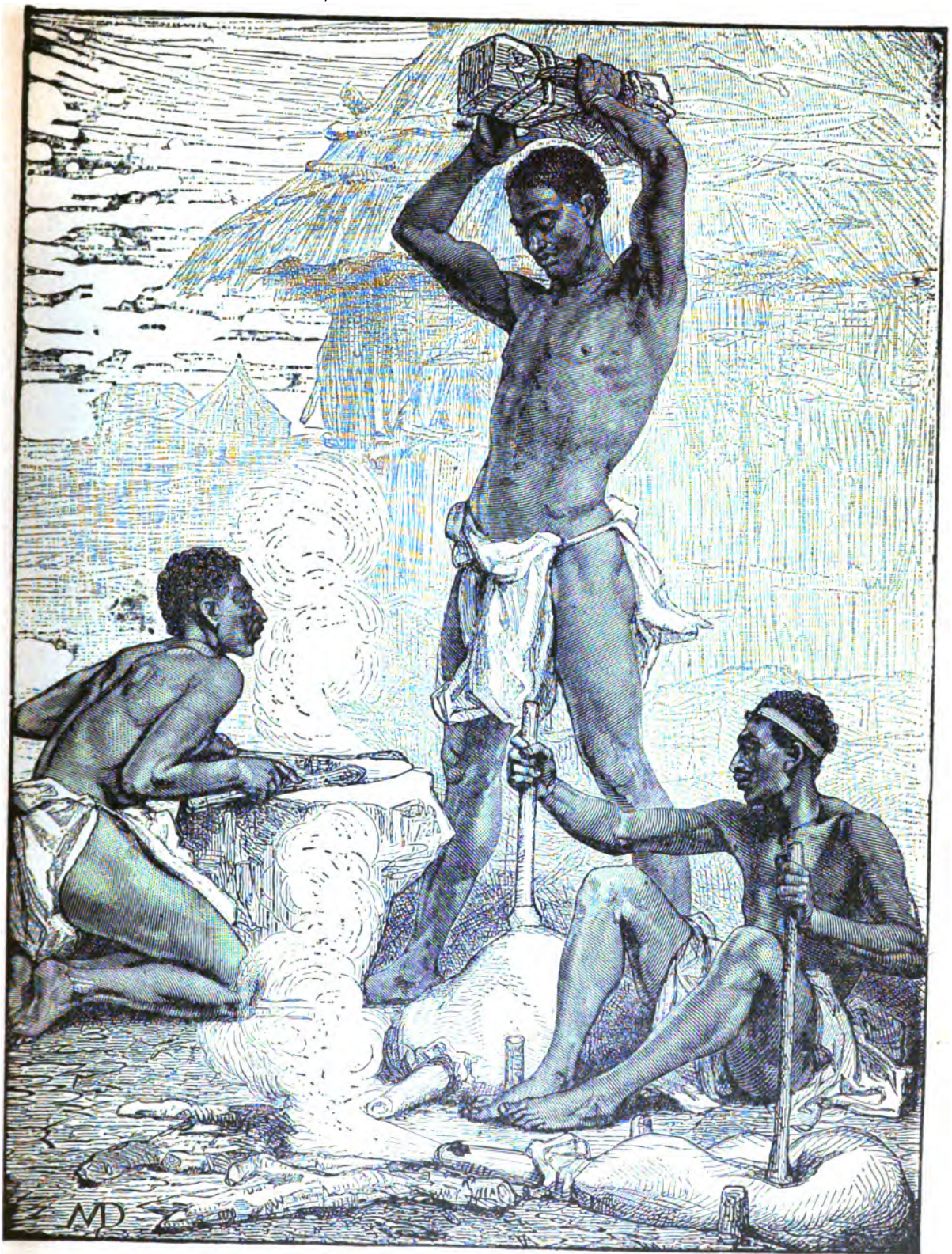
ing his fast on human steak. Fortunately, the young men awoke in time to disappoint the courageous reptile, but they were scared to the point of death.

#### THE KINGDOMS OF UNYORO AND UGANDA.

The Baris, Madi and Shooli tribes are hunters and pursue with special zest hippopotami and crocodiles, which they kill for food quite as much as for extermination, but as a rule the Nile people reject crocodile flesh as unclean; not, however, because of its natural offensiveness, but because every such reptile is placed under a ban for having eaten human flesh. They say: "Why, the crocodile may have devoured my grandmother; shall I then eat the flesh that was nourished on my grandmother?"

The Dinkas are a pastoral people, but nevertheless they are extremely poor, thin to a cadaverous appearance, effeminate, and altogether so repulsive that it is little wonder they are regarded only as fit to be slaves. The Shir



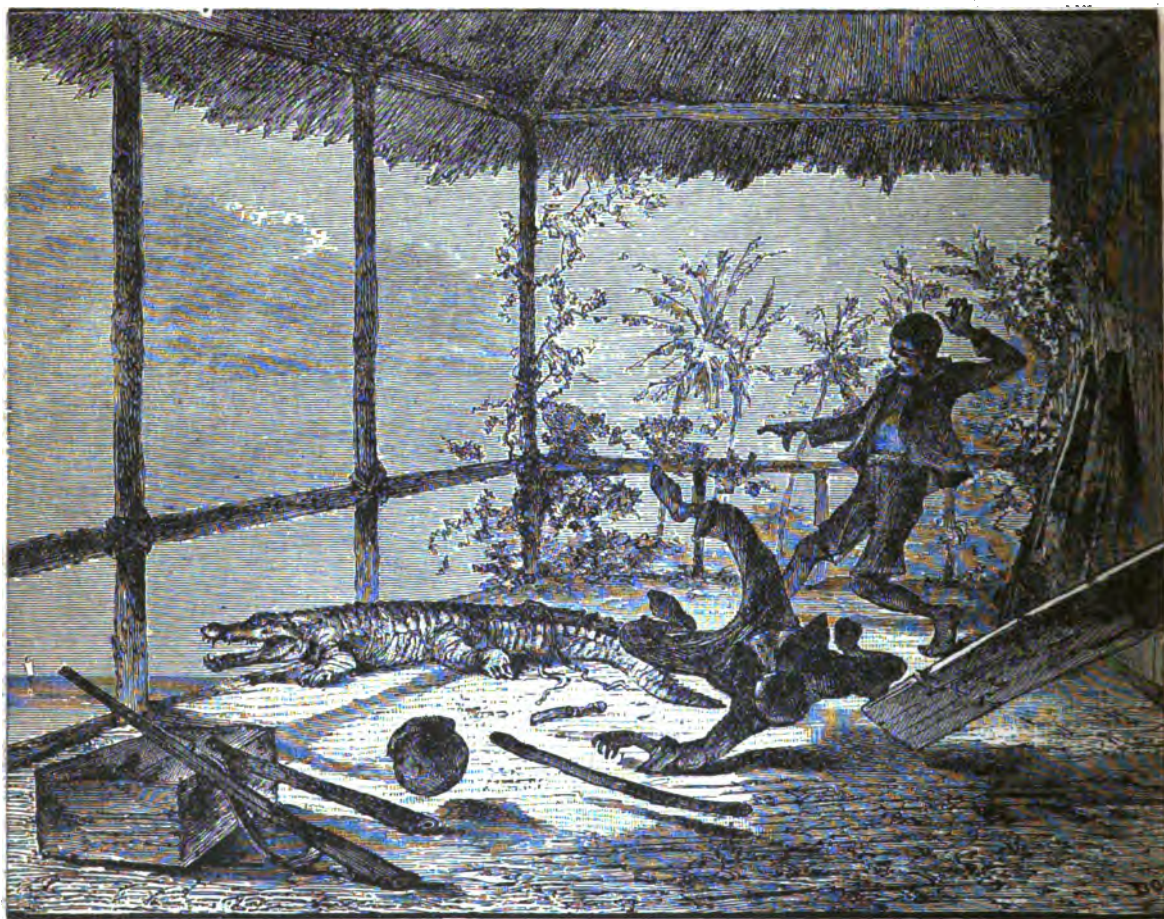


NATIVE BLACKSMITHS.



tribe is only one degree improved, though in some respects they are to be commended, especially as they are noted for their affectionate dispositions and the strength of family ties, which is equal to that found among the most highly civilized people. They are also plumper and better formed than the Dinkas, but are no more courageous.

The Shooli, Lango and Umiro tribes are vigorous, independent and brave, by which characteristics alone they have avoided absorption by their powerful

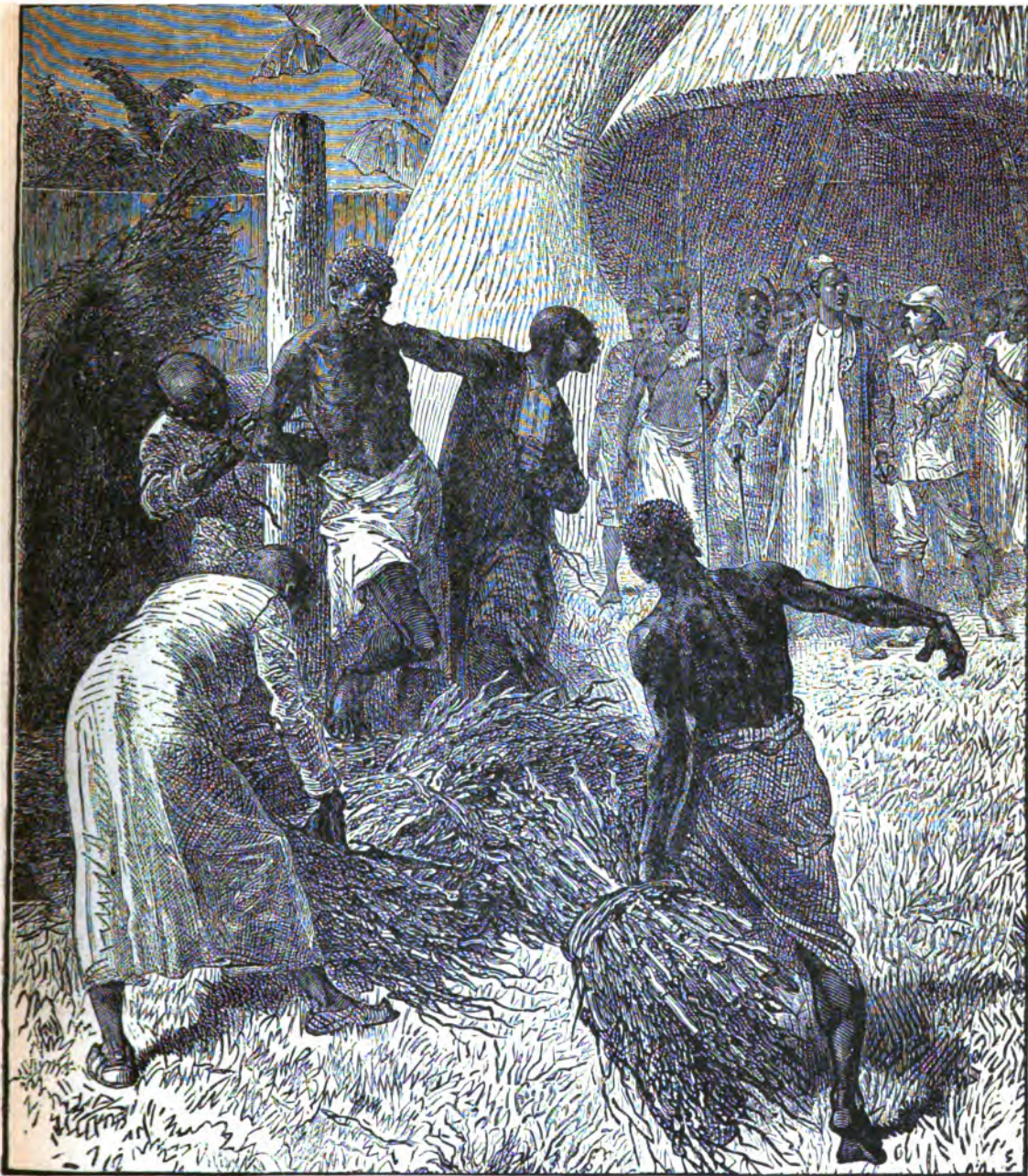


ATTACKED BY A CROCODILE.

neighbors of Uganda and Unyoro. Like all the more northern tribes, they maintain and are largely influenced by their Cajoor priests, who were at once rain-makers, medicine men and purveyors of magic in a hundred forms. The office of Cajoor would be a very pleasant one, in that he is regarded with the most reverential awe, were it not for the exceedingly discouraging fact that it frequently happens he forfeits his reputation by attempting things which he is unable to perform. He is often called on to heal a sick chief, or to produce rain when the country is suffering from a long protracted drouth; or to bring disaster upon an invading enemy. Failure of his magic to work these bene-

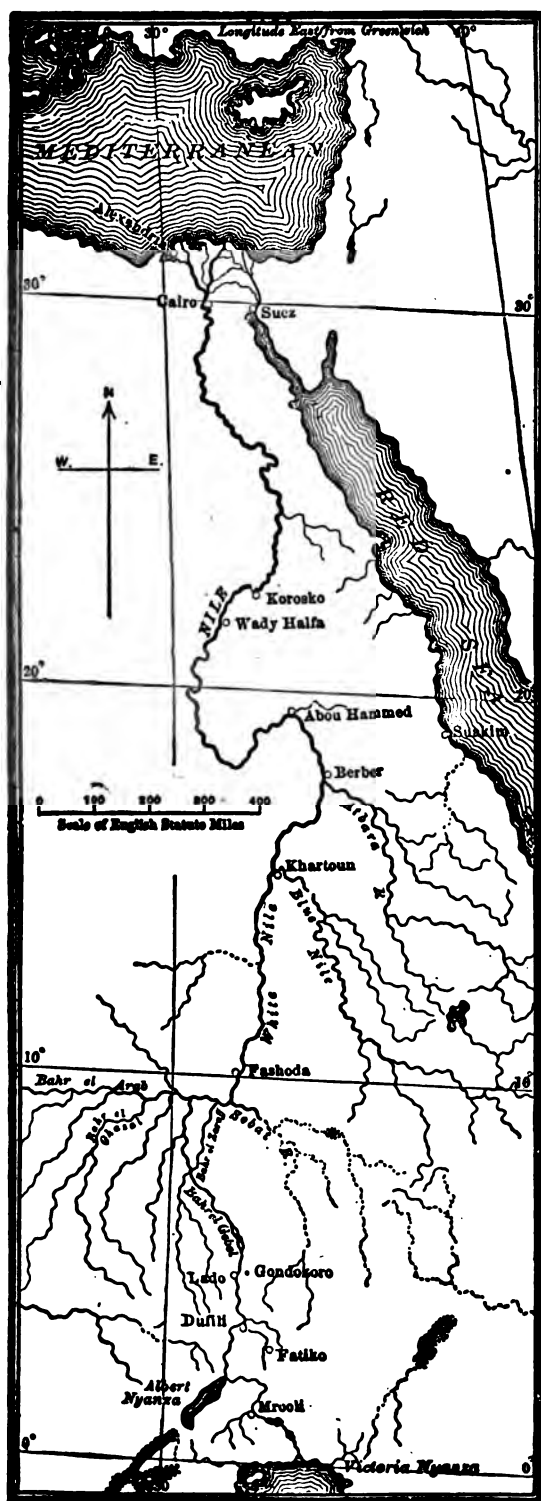


nces is commonly punished by the people seizing the Cajoor and burning him at the stake.



BURNING A CAJOOR IN UGANDA.

Uganda and Unyoro, which for many years have remained intact through an alliance offensive and defensive, are the largest and most prosperous kingdoms of Africa. Since the visit of Long to M'Tesa in 1875, that potentate has been outwardly a Moslem, or was up to the time of his death in 1886, although



NILE REGION, IN WHICH GORDON OPERATED.

Stanley has claimed him as a Christian. His son, and successor, M'wanga, has been a pronounced Moslem and built several mosques in his kingdom, so that nearly all his subjects now profess that faith.

Kabba Rega, the ruler of Unyoro, has been less pliant than M'tesa, and has remained insensible to Mohammedan influence. He has preferred to occupy a neutral position in order to reap like advantages from both Moslems and Christians, receiving each alike and giving encouragement for both to win his favor by liberal gifts. In fact, the king is still a hearty believer in fetiches, though he does not expose his idols so openly as formerly. In his palace are still found many *greegrees* and rudely carved wooden images of men and animals, to which he pays his devotions, and consults on occasions of need.

#### THE SITUATION OF EMIN PASHA.

Through the several tribes thus hastily sketched, Emin Pasha (a title subsequently given) had to make his way, and as their friendship was essential to the success of Gordon's undertaking, it fell to Emin to overcome their natural hostility and secure their sympathy. His easy acquisition of language was a masterful advantage, and by speaking their own tongue he obtained a hearing from all the tribes which might not otherwise have been accorded. Thus Emin, at length, was hailed as a friend and his missions facilitated by the chiefs of every tribe between Khartoum and Duffi. This feeling he further promoted, when he was assigned to the Governorship of the Equatorial Provinces, by seeking the welfare of the



native population and by removing, at great expense of time, treasure and suffering, the distressing consequences of centuries of unrestricted slave hunting.

Until the uprising, or rebellion, of the so-called Mahdi, in 1882, as already described, the Egyptian Soudan, as well as Emin's provinces, was in an orderly



CEREMONY OF CONFERRING TITLE OF PASHA ON EMIN.

and thoroughly peaceful condition. This most unfortunate occurrence, in a remarkably short space of time, utterly destroyed the peaceful and civilizing effects of Gordon's rule, and plunged the whole country into greater savagery than before, because to barbarian instincts was now added the more exciting and cruel disposition of religious fanaticism.

Though the Mahdi's rebellion had its seat in the Soudan, its baneful



influence spread far and wide, until Emin's provinces became involved. Gordon and his followers had to sustain the brunt of battle, but an invasion of the Equatorial district was attempted by the rebels, but which was successfully resisted by Emin through the bravery and fidelity of his negro soldiers.



INDUSTRIES INAUGURATED BY EMIN.

But news from the north, reporting repeated victories by the Mahdi's troops, unsettled affairs in Emin's provinces and resulted in cutting his communication with the civilized world. Mwanga, son of M'tesa, and the new King of Uganda, at once developed hostility to all Europeans through his open sympathies with the Mahdi, and to prevent the possibility of relief coming to Gordon's



rescue by way of Zanzibar, which must expose his own kingdom, he put a strong force to guard the south-east route and closed every avenue leading in or out of the kingdom. Thus the last news that we received from Emin was transmitted in 1883. For his successful resistance to the rebels, the Kledive conferred upon Emin the title of Pasha, which honorable promotion reached him just before communication between him and the outer world was cut off.

#### EMIN'S APPEAL FOR HELP.

With Emin, who was now practically a prisoner, though still the recognized head of his provinces, were Dr. William Junker and Captain Casati, Russian explorers, who chanced to be in the Lake region at the time of the Mahdi's rebellion. All three were, for a long time, supposed to be lost, until Emin contrived to send a brief letter to Mr. Allen, Secretary of the British and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society, in which his beleaguered position was described. In 1886, Dr. Junker succeeded in getting through the Uganda lines and reaching Zanzibar, following which escape the King of Uganda withdrew his lines of guards from the route and again permitted communication between his kingdom and Zanzibar. In this same year (1886) Emin sent several communications to friends in Europe, and to Dr. Junker, who was then in Vienna, describing his critical situation; which letters resulted in an earnest appeal being made by Junker and the International Society for government aid to relieve him.

While the tribes of the lake region were still hostile to Emin and were giving him much harassment through the intrigues of Arabic slave dealers, his personal liberty was little restricted. He might any time, indeed, have quitted the country, a thing which the slavers were eager for him to do, but he could not bring himself to even consider such a step. To leave the country as a fugitive would be to abandon the stations he had established, and the people who had a lawful claim upon his protection. His sense of honor and duty compelled him to remain and share the fate of his subjects, whatever it might be. To take his people out of the country was an impossibility. He had no means for provisioning so many on the long route to Zanzibar, and if this difficulty could be met, another equally great still remained, for women and children could not endure so long and fatiguing a march without hundreds dying on the way. Emin, accordingly, honestly and wisely awaited the result of his appeal for aid, and in the mean time continued his geographical and ethnological studies.

#### A DREADFUL FIRE.

In the fall of 1886, Emin discovered the great Kubik river, the source of which he found to be somewhere in the Usongora Mountains. He desired very much to follow up the stream to its head, believing it would lead him into an unexplored region, but his ambition in this direction was diverted by an extensive prairie fire that did great destruction by sweeping an enormous district, destroying villages, crops and vast stores of ivory, and which almost annihilated

Wadelai itself. Emin had therefore to turn his attention to relieving, so far as lay in his power, the new suffering to which his people were thus suddenly brought. He solicited aid from a neighboring Usongora chief, who responded with such substantial means that Emin was able to rebuild Wadelai, and to



FIGHTING THE GREAT FIRE.

bring the people who had suffered most by the fire into a fairly comfortable condition again.

When the true situation of Emin became known in Europe, it was believed that Egypt, which he had so bravely served, would immediately dispatch a force



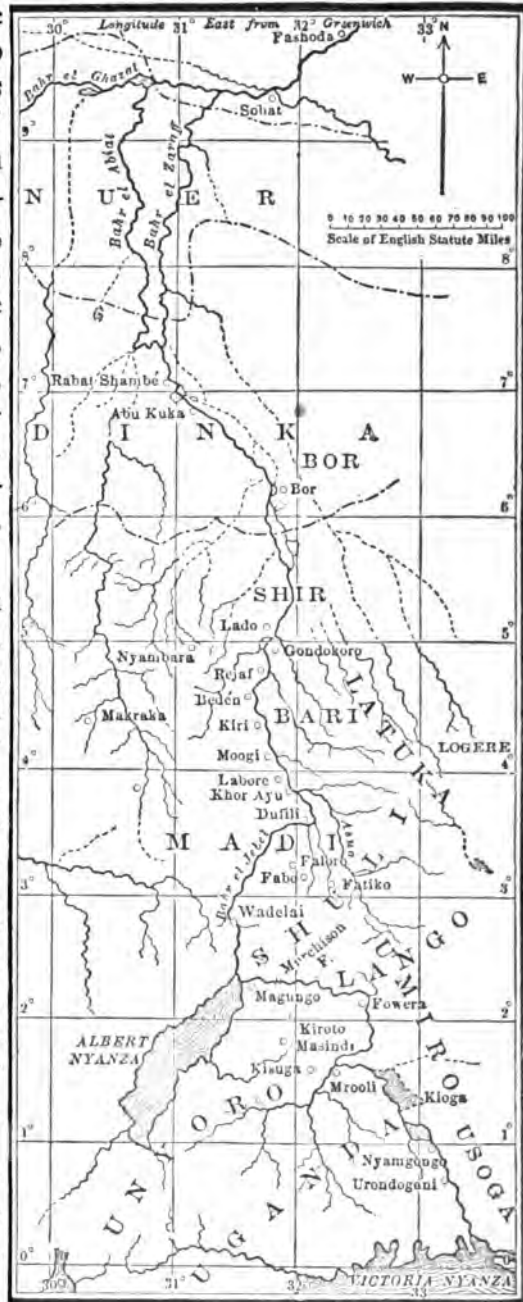
by way of Zanzibar for his deliverance; but that government contented itself with the bare offer of a promise to advance \$50,000 to an expedition that would attempt his relief, and with inviting proposals to that end.

The indifference exhibited by the Egyptian Government, which seems to have become utterly unmindful of Emin's services in extending the sovereignty of that nation to the great lakes, and in carrying the beneficent effects of civilization over such an immense district, aroused England, and caused to be set on foot well directed means for rescuing the heroic Pasha. Government action was, however, anticipated by private persons, who thoroughly equipped a large expedition for the purpose, and placed Stanley in command, recognizing his incomparable fitness for such an undertaking.

#### TO THE RELIEF OF EMIN.

Learning from latest reports that Emin, after his losses by fire, had moved southward from Wadelai, Stanley decided to enter Africa by way of the Congo and take his expedition up that river as far as its navigation would permit, and then strike across the country over a route with which he was somewhat familiar. Stanley dispatched messengers far in advance of the expeditionary force to apprise Emin of his coming, as it was not known how critical was his real extremity, and an announcement of succor near at hand might have the effect of either hastening a meeting, or in inducing Emin to hold his position a while longer.

The messengers thus sent forward met Emin at the southern extremity of Lake Muta Nziga, as he was returning from a trip to Usongora to visit the chief who had helped him to rebuild Wadelai. The news thus brought to Stanley's advance was a most pleasant surprise to Emin, whose anxiety to meet his deliverer repressed all other ambitions. Not knowing the route Stanley would take to reach the lake regions, Emin proceeded to Wadelai,



EMIN'S EQUATORIAL PROVINCES.

reasonably conjecturing that, since nearly all his letters describing his critical situation had been sent from that place, Stanley would no doubt make every effort to push on directly for that station. But even after learning from the messengers of Stanley's approach, Emin wrote to Dr. Falkin, of Edinburgh, under date of April 17th, 1887, reiterating his previously expressed resolution never to abandon his work in Africa, and to remain in his position even after Stanley's



WAITING THE RETURN OF STANLEY.

arrival. He declared the same in letters also written to Dr. Junker and to the British Anti-Slavery Society. This resolution, however, was no doubt made in the belief that Stanley's purpose was to relieve him by furnishing new recruits and supplies of ammunition to last for a protracted period, which would enable him to hold his position for an indefinite time; and not with any idea that Stanley would give such assistance as would permit him to leave the stations garrisoned and to remove all the people who desired to make their escape to the coast.



## OTHER RELIEF EXPEDITIONS.

Emin's anxiety for Stanley's safety after a time seemed to exceed that of his hope for speedy relief, so many months having now elapsed since a meeting with the messengers, and still without any further news whatever of Stanley. Emin knew the dangers that lay in the way, not only from the powerful and warlike tribes through which Stanley must pass, but also from other perils, such as famine, pestilence, and the almost insurmountable obstacles of raging rivers, dense thickets, unexplored country, and, lastly, possible mutiny. Being



THE USOGA CHIEF'S SLAVES REBUILDING WADELAI.

unable to bear the suspense any longer, Emin, in September, started out in search of the intrepid explorer. The last news that came from Emin came in a letter dated November 2d, and was written from Kibero, on the eastern shore of the Muta Nziga. From this time, for more than a year, all traces of both Emin and Stanley were lost, so that the public mind again became restless with the fear that both had perished. Nor was this anxiety without cause; for the long silence of itself was foreboding of ill, while other events were known to be transpiring in the Central Lake region which gave the sombreast aspect to the situation. From Stanley Falls, and the station at the mouth of the Aruwimi

River, where a part of the expedition, under Barttelot, was encamped awaiting Stanley's return from his trip to Albert Lake, came letters full of sad prophecy. Stanley had started across the country to communicate with Emin Pasha, with a promise to return in four months, leaving the principal part of his supplies at Stanley Falls, which he made the base of his operations. But month after month rolled by without any report of him being received, until his lieutenants at the Aruwimi and the upper station believed him to have met with disaster. Indeed, this belief grew so strong that Barttelot decided to proceed in quest of him, and in attempting to move that part of the expedition under his command a mutiny resulted, in which Barttelot was killed, as will be more fully related in a subsequent chapter. These facts were communicated to the promoters of the expedition in Europe, and of course caused the gloomiest feelings among the friends of the great explorer. But to intensify the fear which already prevailed, at this



MAJOR CHARLES WISSMANN.

critical juncture came letters from Missionary McKenzie, written from the seat of disturbance, describing a very reign of terror that was then prevailing over nearly all the lake region. Mwanga, the successor of M'tesa, urged by Mohammedans, had attacked the mission stations, killing many Christians and burning Bishop Hannington. This news threw all friends of the expedition into despondency, for it was evident that, under this condition of affairs, Stanley would have to fight his way not only among savages, but must meet a more formidable foe in thousands of well-armed Arabs, who would dispute his march. These facts seemed to thoroughly justify the prediction that Stanley had fallen a victim either to Tipo Tib's duplicity (who was known to look with an evil eye on the efforts of the Congo Association to suppress the slave trade), or to the overpowering numbers of hostile natives, re-enforced by Arabs in Uganda and Unyoro, who might easily crush a much larger force than that which was known to accompany Stanley; nor was there great reliance placed in the loyalty of his soldiers. Most of these were, or had been, in the service of Tipo Tib, and their sympathies as well as interests would seem to be naturally with the Arabs; for though slaves themselves they took savage delight in making slaves of others, while their love of rapine was encouraged by Arab masters. Thus the situation was truly one for alarm.

At length, an expedition was proposed, to go in search of both the explorers. Out of this proposition grew the organization of two expeditions under German auspices: one, under command of Lieutenant Wissmann, to enter Africa



by the Congo; and the other, led by Dr. Peters, to begin the search by proceeding by way of Zanzibar, the two expecting to meet somewhere in the lake regions.

#### CAREER OF LIEUTENANT WISSMANN.

A decisive result was expected from these expeditions, and with good reason, for though Dr. Peters had no experience in African explorations, yet he was an intrepid leader, with great executive abilities, and possessing many accomplishments that made him an available man for the most hazardous undertakings.

But while every confidence was reposed in Peters, public expectation centered chiefly in Wissmann, whose experience was equal to that of Stanley himself, as a short sketch will show.

Lieutenant Charles Wissmann was born in Frankfort-on-the-Oder, in 1853, whose father was a German inspector of military stores, whose duties compelled him to change his residence so frequently that young Charles was not put in school but received instruction from private tutors until the death of his father in 1866, when Charles attended consecutively the high schools at Erfurt, Kiel and New Ruppur. Upon reaching the age of eighteen he joined a cadet corps in Berlin, and two years later was attached to a regiment of Mecklenburg infantry. He was distinguished for his knowledge of the natural sciences, to a study of which he applied himself most industriously, setting these much above his interest in military affairs. Nevertheless, in 1873, he was promoted to a second lieutenancy, which permitted him to resign from the army, and through the influence of Dr. Pogge he offered his services to the African Society of Berlin. Upon an acceptance of his services by the society he was appointed topographer to Dr. Pogge's expedition, with which he sailed for St. Paul de Loando to make a journey into West Africa.

The expedition commanded by Dr. Pogge reached St. Paul early in 1881, and proceeded directly through the Ulunda States and up the valley of the Tschicapa, across by Kassai, Lubilosh, Lomani and on to Niangwe, where they arrived on May 5th. At this point Wissmann left the main body and continued his journey eastward until he reached Zanzibar on the 15th of November, 1882, thus making the trip across the continent in less than two years.

#### WISSMANN'S SECOND EXPEDITION.

On his return to Europe in January, 1883, Wissmann prepared at once for another expedition into Central Africa, a proffer of his services to the International African Association having been accepted. Considerable time was spent in organizing the expedition, which did not leave Europe until early in 1884, for the Portuguese interior station of Cassange. He plunged into the Dark Continent again with his accustomed enthusiasm, and following mainly his former route, by way of Kassai, reached Lubuka, the residence of King Mukenga, on November 10th, thus making a wonderfully rapid journey of over one thousand miles. Resting at Lubuka for a month he followed up the Lulua river a considerable distance, on the left shore of which he founded a station which he named Luluaberg. Continuing his journey he came upon the Saukura



NATIVES FOUND ALONG THE LULUA RIVER.



river and lake, which he believed to be a new discovery, but afterwards found that the lake was the same as that discovered by Stanley and by him named *Lake Leopold*.

Wissmann returned to the Atlantic coast at the end of 1884, and retired to Madeira for a time to restore his shattered health, but his recuperation being rapid, in the fall of 1885 he returned to the Congo with the purpose of exploring the country lying north-east of the Lulua river. He penetrated far into the interior without meeting any serious obstacles until he reached the Baluba nation, where he was so fiercely assailed by the natives that he was forced to retreat for a distance of one hundred miles down the Lulua. Here he stopped for a time at a friendly village and then started across the continent. On the way he explored several tributaries of the Lulango river, and ascertained the sources of the Tschnapa and Lomani rivers. He then proceeded on to Lake Tanganyika, the shore of which he reached in April, 1887. After a short stay at Ujiji, Wissmann again crossed the lake and visited Nyangwe, which is two hundred miles west of Tanganyika, where he remained a month exploring the vicinity, and then turned eastward again and reached Zanzibar in August following, thus having crossed the continent twice, and once penetrated to the Central regions, so that altogether he had the experience of quite 12,000 miles of travel in Africa.

#### STANLEY TO THE RESCUE.

Wissmann's fourth expedition into Africa, which was made in 1888, with the purpose of finding Stanley and also to search for and relieve Emin Pasha, as already explained, was conducted with dispatch and wise management, but it nevertheless failed in its prime mission. Wissmann proceeded to the great lakes, but found the country in such a turbulent state, with Emin a closely guarded prisoner in the hands of the Mahdi, and his own force too small to attempt aggressive measures for Emin's relief, that he made haste to reach the east coast to report the news and hurry to Emin's aid a force large enough to compel his release.

Dr. Peters, in the mean time, had pushed forward through a thousand obstacles, as far as Lake Victoria, where he was so beset by large bodies of hostile natives that he was compelled to abandon all efforts at further advance, and to employ all his energies to beating back the enemy. His position was therefore as critical as was Emin's, for he had divided his force and one half of it had been driven back to the main highway leading to Zanzibar, over which it retreated to the coast. At the present writing reports have been received of the massacre of Dr. Peters and all the people with him, by a force of 1200 Somalis against which he vainly fought for several days.

Stanley's return at last with Emin and 560 persons composing the command has relieved the doubts and dark forebodings of the millions who believed for a long while that both were dead, and from his own reports we are able to follow, with accurate detail, his changing fortunes, the perils that





WISSMANN ATTACKED BY THE NATIVES.



beset him, the fears that assailed him, and the desperate adventures which he met with on his dreadful march through Africa to the rescue of Emin. Stanley arrived at Bagamoyo on the afternoon of December 4th, 1889, and on the second day crossed over to Zanzibar, where a crowd of friends gave him joyous welcome. In the following chapters we will be made acquainted with all the details of Stanley's expedition from the time it penetrated the Dark Continent to the triumphal return; and also a description of Emin's defeat at the hands of the victorious Mahdi.



STANLEY TO THE RESCUE OF EMIN.

Emin, however, met with a dreadful accident upon the very moment of his return to civilization, which nearly cost him his life. On the evening following his arrival at Bagamoyo, while, it is stated, partially under the influence of wine that had been drunk to the health of those who welcomed his return, but more probably through his very defective eyesight, he walked out of an open window in the house where he intended to lodge for the night, and fell to the ground, a distance of twenty feet. He received injuries in the head which were so severe that for several days his life was despaired of. More complete particulars of the accident will appear in a subsequent chapter.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### STANLEY'S EXPEDITION FOR THE RELIEF OF EMIN PASHA.



**S**TANLEY'S last expedition, from which he returned December 4th, 1889, after an absence of nearly three years, full of honor, and the glory that the civilized world gratefully bestows, was more important than any of his previous undertakings in the Dark Continent, not only because of the import of his mission, but also for the wonderful discoveries that have resulted therefrom. New rivers, new mountains, new tribes of people, have been added to our geographical and ethnological knowledge; new routes to the interior opened; new and richer fields for agriculture, trade and missionary effort described, and the world's pulse quickened by an acquaintance with alluring possibilities, which have set civilization in a quickstep pace towards the golden opportunities which Central Africa seems to invite.

It is in these mighty results that we perceive the unlimited importance of the expedition, rather than in the triumph of the undertaking to relieve Emin Pasha, though to this latter attaches the interest of a wondrous tale.

As explained in the previous chapter, the news of Emin's imprisonment at the hands of the Mahdi set the world to planning for his release. But there was something re-enforcing this humane aspiration, and for the prompting we have not far to search, as it is well explained in the sad story of Gordon's death. The English people had nothing but condemnation for the parliament that left Gordon to his fate, for the public heart, more sympathetic, more just, than the official directory, cried, "Shame! Shame!" and paid the homage of their sorrow over the grave of that heroic man. Therefore, when an appeal for help again reached them, like a wail from that dark region, men, not parliament, answered the distress call and resolved to dispatch immediate aid to Gordon's successor. A dozen or more expeditions were<sup>o</sup> proposed, not only in England but in Germany also, and the matter had profound consideration before the council called by King Leopold II., sitting as ruler of the Congo Free State. But these active preliminaries did not prevent private parties from carrying into execution a well-matured plan for relieving the imprisoned Pasha; and as private enterprises progress with greater rapidity than those under government direction, we are not surprised that the organization of an expedition was accomplished by individuals before the governments of England, Belgium or Germany had perfected their plans.

Sir William McKinnon, of Edinburgh, President of the British East Africa



Association, offered to contribute the sum of \$50,000, in addition to a like sum offered by the Khedive, towards equipping an expedition to rescue Emin, which generous proposal brought letters from other liberal Scotchmen and Englishmen, which finally led to the organization of what was called the "Emin Pasha Relief Committee" to which fund there were twenty-five contributors, composing a company of which Mr. McKinnon was made president. Singularly enough, the arrangements for completing the organization were made chiefly by cable, as Mr. Stanley was in America at the time under engagement to lecture. Mr. McKinnon therefore sent him a dispatch requesting him to take command of the enterprise. What other than a favorable response could the distinguished explorer make, even though it conflicted with his private interests, since his very heart was wedded to ambitions which travel in Africa could alone gratify? Besides, who else was so admirably qualified for the undertaking, and in whom would the world have such confidence? Whatever may have been his real feelings, certain it is that Stanley immediately cancelled all his engagements and entered at once into perfecting the details of the organization, and preparing the expedition for movement at the earliest possible moment.



H. M. STANLEY—FROM A PHOTOGRAPH TAKEN IN JANUARY, 1887.



## HONORS TO STANLEY.

After an acceptance, by Mr. Stanley, of the command of the projected expedition, as a special mark of public confidence as well as favoritism, the City Corporation of London, in Court of Common Council, held at Guildhall, January



SIR WM. M'KINNON.

13th, 1887, presented him with the freedom of the city, and on the same evening a banquet was tendered him at the Mansion House, the Lord Mayor presiding. The certificate conveying the freedom of the city was enclosed in a gold casket of richest design in arabesque, standing on a base of Algerine onyx, surmounted by a plinth of ebony, with an ivory ostrich standing at each corner and an elephant's tusk curving over each bird. The panels and roof are also of ivory, bearing the monogram H. M. S. and a miniature map of Africa. On an oval platform surmounting the casket is an allegorical figure of the Congo Free State, seated by the great river from which it derives its name.

Mr. Stanley made his preparations for almost immediate departure. He accepted the services of eight English officers, as follows: Jephson, Stairs, Jameson, Barttelot, Johnson, Nelson, Williams, and Dr. Parke, who had obtained a three-years' leave of absence from the government, and he was also accompanied by two officers of the Belgian army, who were enlisted at the request of His Majesty, King Leopold II. Among the special articles with which Mr. Stanley provided himself was a portable, steel whale-boat, which was built under his directions in thirteen days. This boat was 28 feet long, 6 feet beam and 2 feet 6 inches deep. It was built throughout of steel, and divided into twelve sections, each weighing 75 lbs., to facilitate its transportation. The sections were fitted on the edges with india-rubber, so that, when brought together and bolted, the joints were watertight. The boat pulled ten oars besides carrying a lug sail. Her carrying capacity was twenty-two men and 1000 lbs. weight of baggage, and she could be put together in thirty-five minutes, and taken to pieces for transport in little more than half that time. Mr. Stanley's experience on his previous expedition,



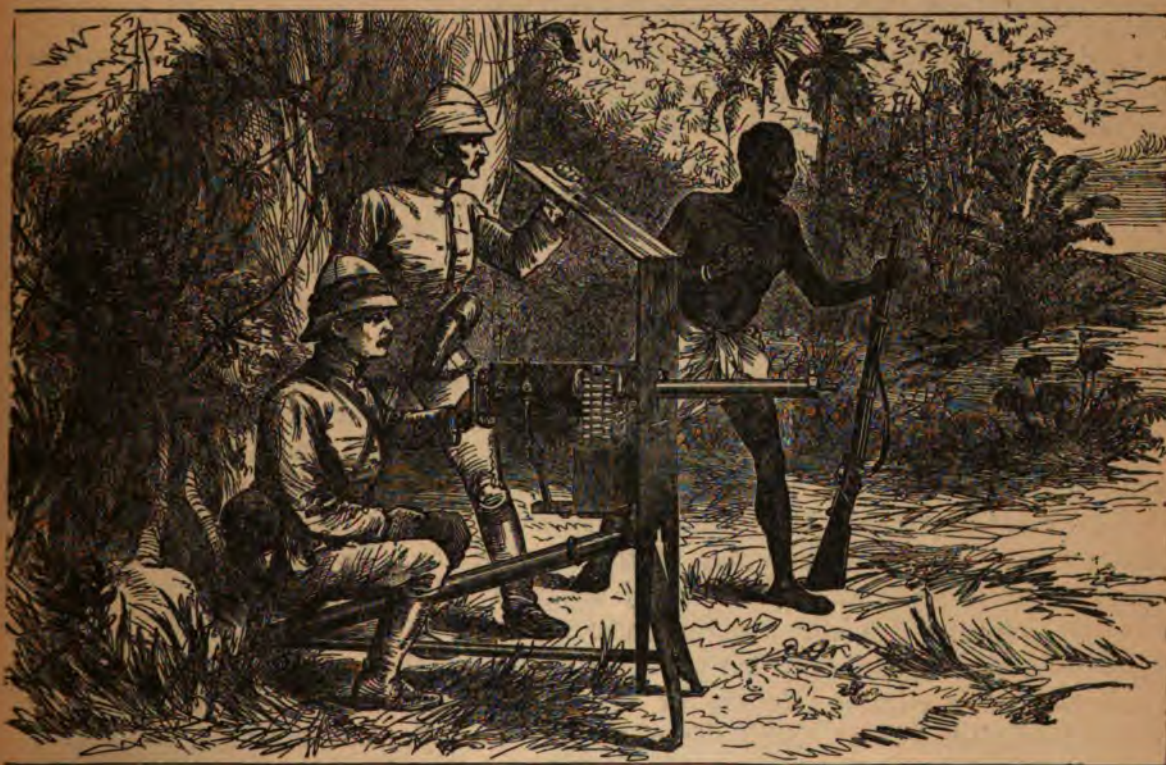
GOLD CASKET PRESENTED TO STANLEY.



when crossing the continent, and the excellent uses to which he put the *Lady Alice*, gave him practical ideas that were of the greatest service, and which found elaboration in his steel whale-boat, which was in every sense a very model of perfection.

#### STANLEY'S AUTOMATIC GUN.

Another almost equally serviceable, though really only precautionary article of his equipment was a Maxim automatic machine gun, which was provided with special mountings, expressly designed to meet the requirements of this particular service. The carriage of this wonderful gun was so made that it could be almost instantly folded up and carried on the shoulder of a single



STANLEY'S AUTOMATIC GUN.

person, and it could be again set up and the gun remounted ready for action in ten seconds. For rapid firing it exceeded even the Gatling gun, for when the trigger was pulled and held drawn back it poured out a very stream of bullets, or eleven shots per second, or with a quick pull only one shot might be discharged. To prevent heating during rapid firing, a small reservoir for water was provided in the breech, so that with each shot the recoil forced a small quantity of water out of the tank and around the barrel casing. One quart of water was used in this way with each one thousand shots fired. The gun proper weighed forty pounds, and the steel carriage on which it was mounted was fourteen pounds heavier, but the parts of the latter were easily

detached so as to permit its easy carriage by three or four men. Another provision, next in importance to the rapidity and accuracy of its firing, was the shield with which the gun was provided, rendering the operator almost secure from the arrows or even bullets of an enemy. The accompanying illustration will show more clearly than worded description the appearance of the gun and the manner of handling it.

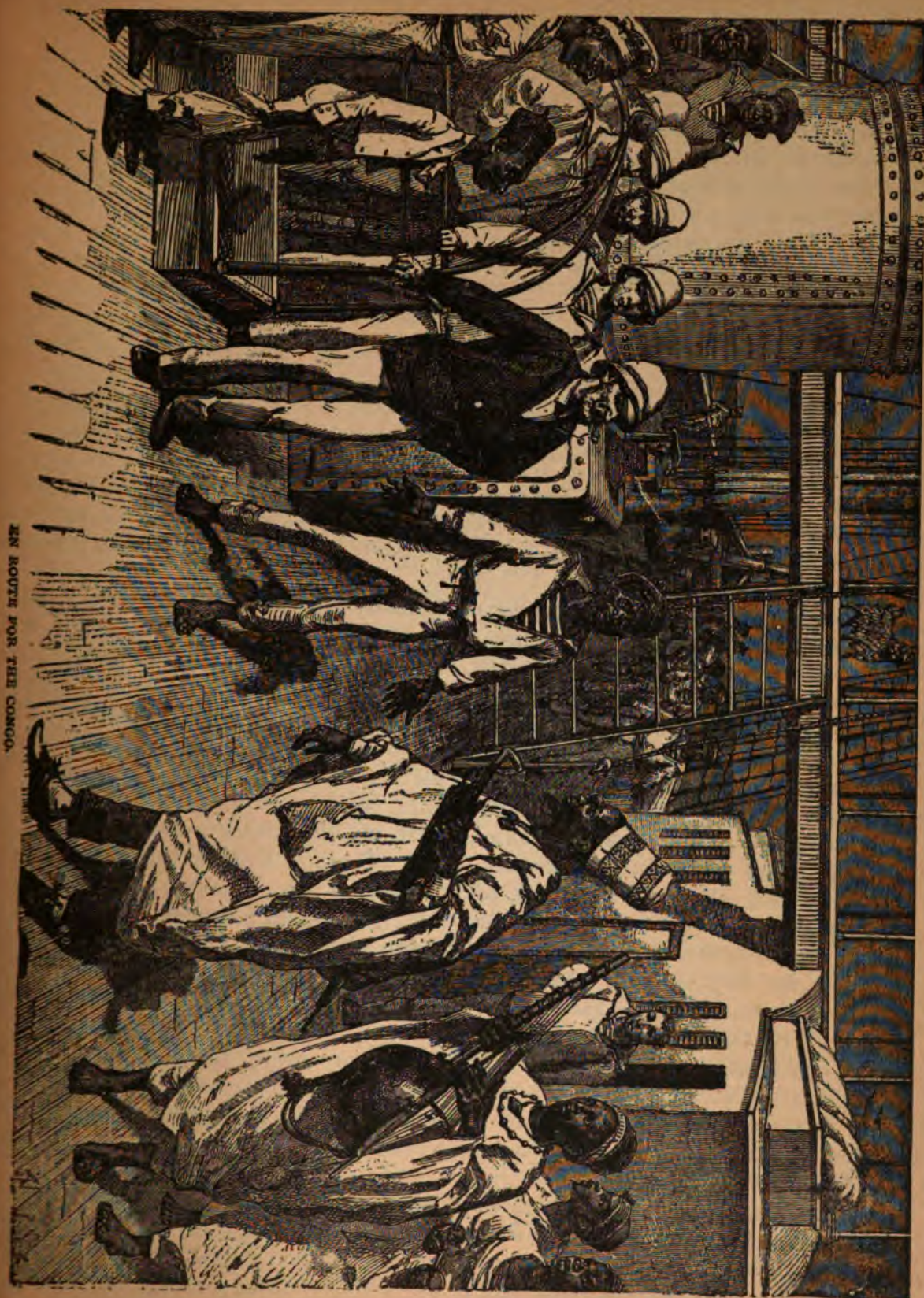
#### DEPARTURE FOR AFRICA.

Stanley left England on the 22d of January and proceeded directly to Cairo, where he held an audience with the Khedive, and also with Dr. Carl Junker, who had recently returned from the interior, having been one of Emin Pasha's lieutenants and by escaping, as already noted, brought back the latest news concerning the beleaguered, or imprisoned, Governor of the Equatorial Provinces. In this interview Dr. Junker related that he left Emin on January 1st, 1886, at Wadelai, and succeeded in securing a steamer, upon which he fled up the Nile, passing the stations of Fatiko, Lado, Fashoda, Duffili, Tashoro and Magungo, and thence to Chibero, on Albert Lake. He visited Kabba Rega at this latter place and there met Sig. Casati, the Italian explorer, and agent of the Khedive. After leaving Kabba Rega, Dr. Junker travelled across Uganda and thence to the south shore of Victoria Lake to Ukumbo, the French missionary station, where he was kindly received and assisted. In this journey he met several Europeans, among whom were Rev. F. Mackay, and Fathers Louderal and Delmon, in the Uganda country; Vicar Apostolic Goreau at Ukumbo; Rev. F. Gordon and a Mr. Wyce at Ut Salala; a Mr. Grescher, who has since been killed by Arabs, at Taboro, and several missionaries at Mpwapa. Besides the information thus secured from Dr. Junker, Mr. Stanley was also presented with an excellent map of the lake regions by the doctor, which he found to be of great value because of its remarkable accuracy.

Dr. Schweinfurth was also in Cairo at the time of Stanley's visit, and in company with Dr. Junker called several times upon the latter. At these friendly visits the most eligible routes for reaching Emin Pasha were frequently and exhaustively discussed. Both Schweinfurth and Junker strongly advised the route leading from Zanzibar to Lake Victoria, and over which Stanley had already travelled, but notwithstanding the fact that Dr. Junker had recently escaped over this same route, Stanley looked upon it as much less secure than the approach from the west, on account of Mwanga's hostility, who held every avenue leading out of his kingdom eastward. He therefore explained his intention of proceeding by way of the Congo river, believing that with the steamers at his disposal he might reach the head of that stream in thirty-five days, after which he would have only a land march of 360 miles, from Stanley Falls.

Yet another route was discussed, viz., that which leads from the east coast through Massai land, over which Mr. J. Thomson travelled, and by which he makes the distance to Wadelai 925 miles; certainly the shortest route, but not





ON ROUTE FOR THE CONGO.

nearly so available as that by the Congo river, which affords excellent means for transportation of large quantities of stores, such as Stanley carried with him.

While Mr. Stanley did not see proper to accept the advice of Doctors Junker and Schweinfurth, he was none the less grateful for their kindly interest, and was particularly thankful to the former for the very valuable information given respecting the situation of Emin Pasha, the stations, the routes, the hostility of Mwanga, and the location and numbers of Europeans in the lake region.

#### OFF FOR ZANZIBAR.

On the 3d of February, Stanley left Cairo en route for Zanzibar, accompanied by sixty-one black soldiers of the Egyptian army. Many distinguished persons were at the station to bid him God-speed, among the number being Sir E. Baring, Lady Baring, Generals Baker and Stephenson, Pigrane Pasha and several European residents of the city. Dr. Junker also accompanied him as far as Suez, at which port Stanley, with Dr. Parke, of the Army Medical Department, and his soldiers embarked for Zanzibar, and on his arrival at that city he engaged a considerable number of East African servants, known to him in his former journeys.

Besides engaging a large party of Zanzibaris porters and soldiers, Stanley also had the good fortune to secure, for a round sum, the services of Tipo Tib, the great slave-hunter and ivory dealer, who had before acted as Stanley's guard, with a force of five hundred armed Arabs, when the latter made his celebrated march through the land of dwarfs and cannibals, as already described. This man had, since his last service with Stanley, become the most powerful slaver and merchant in all Africa. He had traversed a greater portion of the interior in a quest for ivory, taking slaves incidentally, and so overawing the natives by murderous attacks and acts of rapine that all the chiefs and nearly all the African kings stood in the greatest dread of him. During the past several years he had also held the post of governor of the Kasonge district, under appointment by the Congo Association. As a Mussluman he assumed the prerogative of a Sultan, and had a harem with forty dark-eyed houris, which he had no disposition to abandon; hence, when engaging with Stanley, he made it a condition of his contract that his forty wives should bear him company on the journey.

Considerable time was spent in Zanzibar procuring supplies and men, so that Stanley did not embark for the mouth of the Congo until February 27th. His company, on leaving Zanzibar, consisted of the following persons: Dr. Parke, 61 trained Soudanese soldiers, 13 Somalis, 3 interpreters, 620 Zanzibaris, 40 Arabs, and Tipo Tib and his forty wives.

The trip around the Cape of Good Hope was a tedious one, and it was the middle of March before the expedition reached Banana Point, at the mouth of the Congo, where Stanley found seven English and two Belgian officers awaiting him. These, however, had not been idle while awaiting his arrival, for they



had spent much of the time getting the steamboats on the Congo ready to transport the expedition to the first cataracts. Leopold II., as President of the Congo Association, had put several boats in the river to build up a trade with natives of the interior along that great waterway, and these were all placed at the disposal of Stanley, and upon which he had relied to make a quick passage to Stanley Falls.

#### WHY STANLEY CHOSE THE CONGO ROUTE.

There were two decided reasons why Stanley chose the Congo route in preference to the more frequently travelled highway from Zanzibar to the Central Lake regions. Mwanga, the successor to M'tesa, though a Christian and Mohammedan by turns, had, during the three short years of his reign, become so jealous of both the Arabs and Christians that he had fought each, being moved to hostile acts by the belief that they had conspired with his brother, Kalema, to wrest the sceptre of the monarchy from him. He was also influenced by the Mahdi uprising, which spread terror throughout the country and gave immense self-assurance, and superstitious egotism—if I may use the expression—to the native kings. Mwanga, taking up the cry of "Death to the infidel dogs," carried his hostility to the Christian missionaries, whom he had before befriended, so far that he not only ordered them to leave the country, but even proceeded to more cruel means of ridding himself of their influence, by ordering their execution, Bishop Hannington being one of his first and conspicuous victims.

The true situation of affairs in Uganda, particularly, and which led Stanley to avoid the route, which if taken would be certain to bring him into conflict with Mwanga, is graphically described in the following letter from the Rev. Mr. Mackay, which follows the course of events in the lake region from the year preceding the departure of Stanley up the Congo, until the date of the close of the expedition:

#### THE WAR IN UGANDA.

"TO THE LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY:

"July 30, 1889.

"After the overthrow of our mission and the establishment of Mohammedanism in Buganda (generally written Uganda) last October, we heard little of what was taking place there until Easter of this year. On that occasion we were visited by a few of our former pupils, who had been sent by their comrades, who had taken refuge in Busagala, to ask our advice in their troubles. They wished particularly to know if we would sanction their making an attack on the Arab usurpers in Buganda, with a view to setting some other prince on the throne; one on whom they could depend as likely to grant them liberty of worship. Many were ready to aid even Mwanga, should he venture to return to their neighborhood, thinking that even his rule would be preferable to the intolerant and fanatical government of the Mohammedan, Kalema.



"Mwanga, who had been for some months the guest of the Romish priests at Ukumbi, on learning that the Christian exiles were prepared to aid him, persuaded Mr. Stokes (formerly a missionary, but now a trader,) to take him in a boat belonging to the latter, to a point on the N'yanza, about the mouth of the Kagera river, where he hoped to be able to join the Christians.

"On hearing of this scheme we sent to warn Mwanga of the risk he was about to run, while we sent a message to our friends in Busagala, advising them not to join in an enterprise which would have all the appearance of a



KING MWANGA.

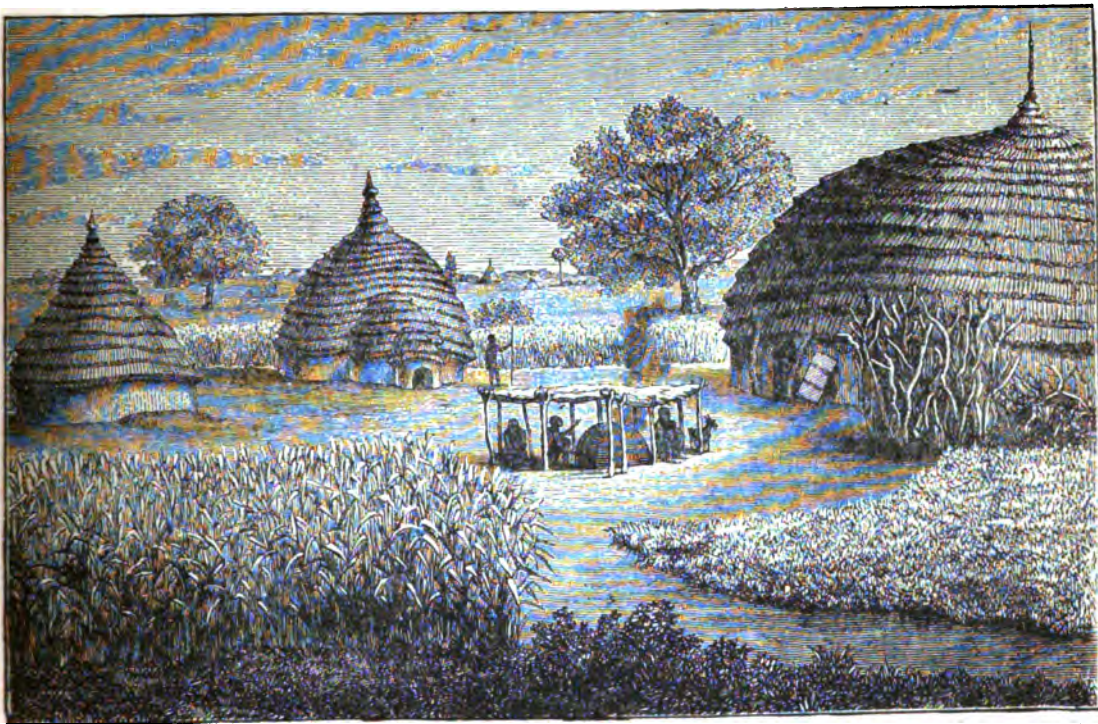
religious war, and which might prove disastrous to themselves. We counselled patience, as we felt sure the Buganda would soon tire of Arab rule, while Kalema himself would not long submit to be dictated to by the Arabs. Our advice was to Mwanga, if he wished to get back his throne, his best policy would be to come to some agreement with the agents of the Imperial British East African Association, who would probably be ready to aid him.

"The Buganda refugees, however, who were at Bugumbi, together with the French priests themselves, rejected our counsel of patience and recommended



immediate action. Accordingly, Stokes and Mwanga embarked at Ukumbi with about fifty Buganda, arms and ammunition being supplied partly by Stokes, and partly by the priests themselves.

"Meantime, our people in Busagala had been drawn into war before the return of the messengers whom they had dispatched to us. These messengers, on their way to this place, had to pass through the country of the Bazongora, commonly called Baziba, from whom they have received two or three canoes to enable them to come here. Tidings soon reached Kalema that the Baziba had sent canoes to this quarter in order (they supposed) to fetch Mwanga. Accordingly, Kalema lost no time in dispatching an army to punish the Baziba for their action, which was regarded as rebellion. The Christians



VILLAGE OF BUSAGALA.

got word of Kalema's force being on the way to attack their friends, the Baziba, and went at once to the rescue. They attacked Kalema's army and completely routed it, following up their victory far into the interior of Budu. Some then proposed returning to Busagala, but the majority advised marching right on to Kalema's capital. The counsel of the latter prevailed, and the Christians crossed the Katonga, which is the westernmost boundary of Buganda proper, where they were met by another larger force, sent by Kalema, under the command of his chief minister. A fierce battle ensued, and, although the Kalema forces were much larger, the Christians were again victorious. Their leader, named Nyonyintous, and many others were slain. Among the leaders





**KALEMA BURNS HIS BROTHERS AND SISTERS, AND HIS OWN CHILDREN.**



of Kalema's army three of the bitterest enemies of Christianity in former days were captured and executed, viz.: Chambalango, formerly known as Pokino, one of those who decreed Bishop Hannington's execution; Serukoti, murderer of the Christian Admiral Gabunga, and Masudi, the one-eyed, who, being an Arab, used to translate to the king all letters from the Consul-General to the Sultan of Zanzibar, invariably falsifying the interpretation to the prejudice of the Europeans of the country.

"Our people, disheartened by the death of their leader and many of their brethren, returned in a body to Busagala. No sooner had they reached there than they received intelligence of the arrival of Mwanga and Mr. Stokes at Dumo, a little to the north of the mouth of the Kagera river. This news was brought them by the messengers whom they had sent here, and who arrived at Dumo about the same time as Mwanga himself. They were sorely puzzled on perusing the letters which he had sent them, advising them to take no action in aid of the plot to restore Mwanga. Already they had fought two battles, and many of their number were slain, while Mwanga himself had now appeared on the scene in company with an Englishman. They responded to Mwanga's call, and joined his standard near Dumo. Mwanga seems to have held a sort of court there for nearly a month, many of the heathen nations joining him, as well as not a few of the islanders from Sesse, who brought their canoes to his aid.

#### BURNING HIS BROTHERS, SISTERS AND CHILDREN.

"Kalema was so enraged at his minister's defeat that he deposed that functionary from office, and fearing that the Christians would follow up their victory (doubtful though it was), and succeed in securing the person of one of the princes, all of whom were prisoners at the capital, he had every one of them, both princes and princesses, his own brothers and sisters, as well as his own children, burnt to death in the huts where they were confined. Had he known of Mwanga's arrival, probably he would not have committed such an atrocity, but Mwanga had not arrived at Dumo when the dismissed minister returned crestfallen to the capital.

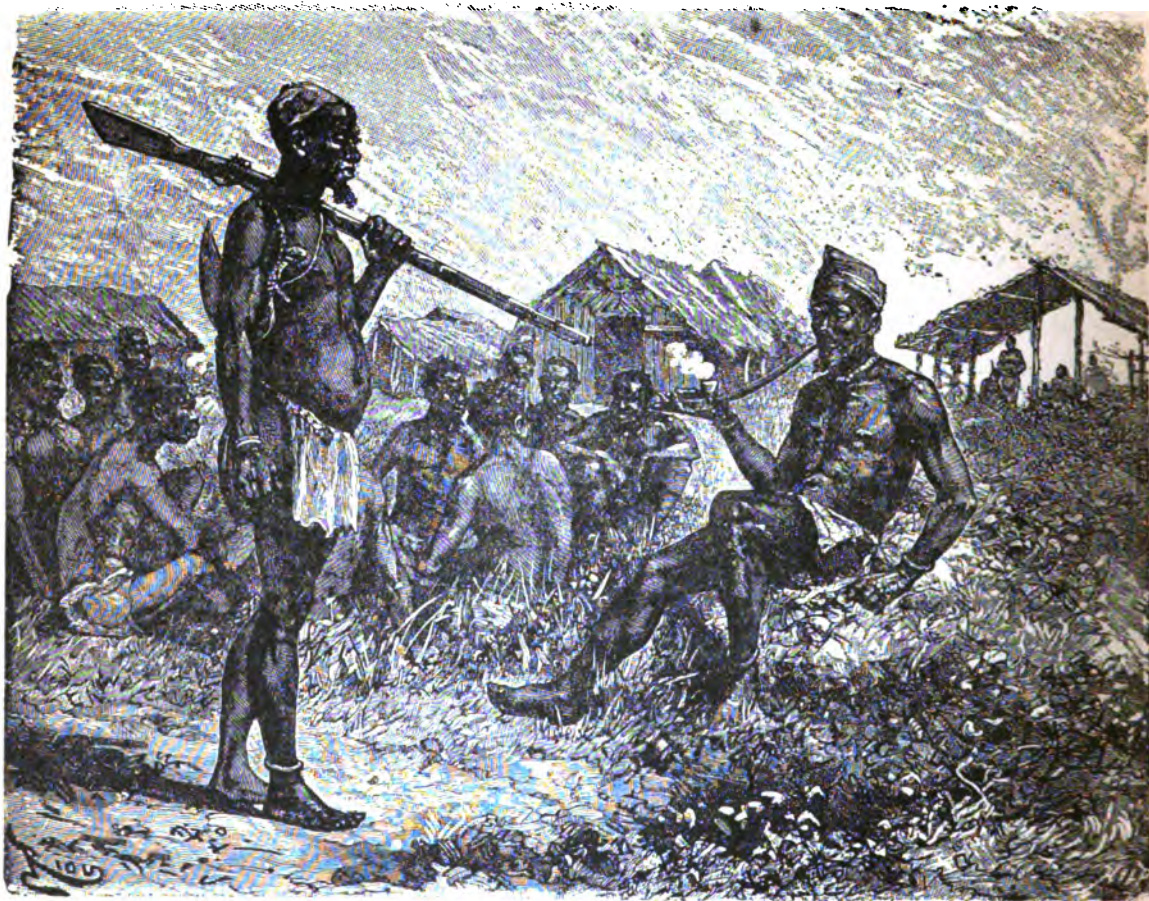
"Soon after, however, Mwanga's approach was reported, and a fresh army was dispatched by Kalema to meet him. Mwanga had several thousand adherents mostly armed with spear and shield, as well as about 1100 guns, while Kalema's force was vastly superior, not only in numbers, but in guns also, especially breech-loaders, several Arabs being among the leaders. A battle was fought, in which Mwanga's troops were defeated, and his chief general, Mwemba, killed. The Arabs set fire to Mwanga's camp; most of the Christians fled back to Busagala, while Mwanga himself took refuge on Stokes' boat, some 200 of his followers escaping with him in canoes, to one of the Sesse islands.

#### MWANGA SECURES A NEW FOLLOWING.

"The Basesse people, mostly fishermen, are devotees of the goddess Mukassa, and had already rebelled against the Mohammedan government of

Kalema. They therefore, without hesitation, swore allegiance *en masse* to Mwanga, who built a fresh camp on the largest island, and held a council as to future operations. He had now at his command all the canoes (many hundred) belonging to Buganda, besides no small following from the mainland.

"Mwanga next proceeded with his fleet along the coast of Buganda, burning and pillaging ports, rounded the promontory of Ntebe, and, advancing up Murchison bay, finally encamped on an island named Bulinguye, opposite his former temporary capital, Munyonyo. Kalema had watched his movements, and



MWANGA'S CAMP ON BULINGUYE ISLAND.

sent a small force under an Arab named Hamis, to prevent Mwanga from landing on the mainland at Munyonyo. It will perhaps be remembered that it was at Munyonyo where Mwanga was stationed some three years ago when he ordered a general massacre of the Christians.

"The island of Bulinguye now became Mwanga's headquarters and there he was when we last heard from him, surrounded mostly by his Christian followers, who are his chief advisers. There he is being gradually joined by many Buganda, almost all his former chiefs—deposed from office by Kalema,



having repaired to him with only a few followers each, as they are practically all poor men now. Among these is Kaluji, whose name has often been mentioned as the king's head storekeeper and chief adviser in former years. Poor Kaluji had to flee for his life from Kalema, as he saw no quarters shown to his former companions in power under the old *regime*. Even the once all-powerful minister had not escaped. He was first plundered by the Arabs of all his amassed wealth, and subsequently arrested on the charge of intrigue and burnt alive. A terrible vengeance thus overtook both him and Pokino, who were the chief advisers of the murder of Bishop Hannington. Both shared the same fate



DOMESTIC SCENE IN UKUMBI.

having been burnt alive—only more mercifully than they had slain many others better than themselves.

#### ADVICES OF STANLEY'S COMING.

"At Munyonyo skirmishes daily took place between Kalema's people and Mwanga. Stokes strongly advised a dash upon Kalema's capital, but Mwanga declined until his following largely increased. Where he is, he is practically unassailable by Kalema, as he is on an island, and the latter appears not to have a single canoe. Stokes got tired of inaction and left, arriving at this side of the lake about a month ago. Before he left Mwanga he heard of the arrival in Busoga of a party of white men, probably the vanguard of the Imperial East Africa Company on their way to relieve Emin Pasha. He wrote a note to



them explaining the position of affairs, Mwanga being eager to have their assistance. Now is the opportunity, if they are able to avail themselves of it. Could they succeed in placing Mwanga in power, they would have him as their dependent and ally, and thus exercise a most salutary control over his actions in future, besides overthrowing the present fanatical and intolerant Arab sway in Buganda.

"More recently, Mwanga's troops landed at Munyonyo, and burnt the old capital there, as also a large vessel or dhow which Kalema had nearly com-

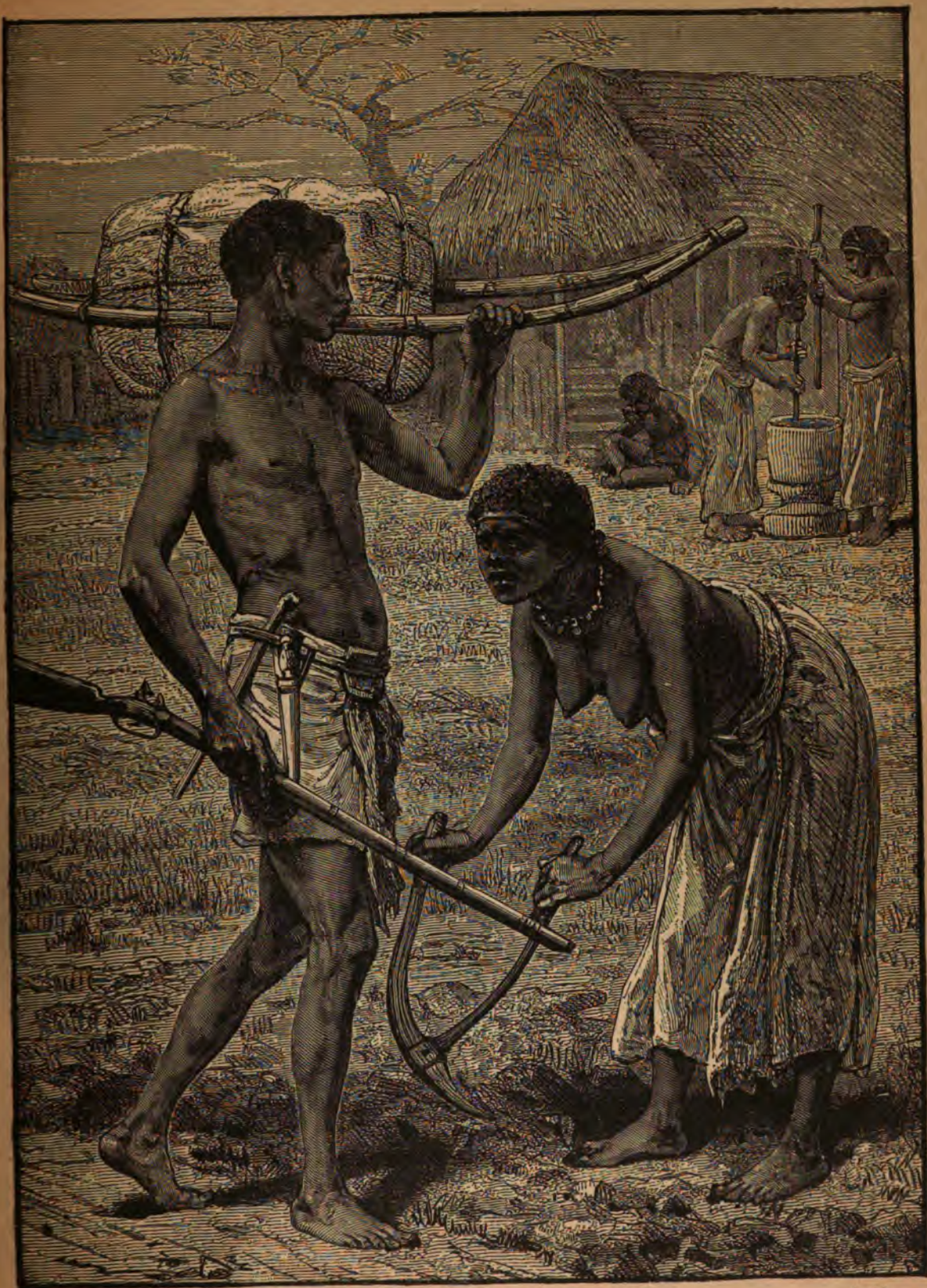


UGANDA MOHAMMEDANS AT THEIR DEVOTIONS.

pleted. A battle also took place on the mainland to the east of Murchison's Bay, in which Kalema's forces were defeated and many of their guns captured.

"Mwanga has now sent to Busagala, inviting all the Christians there to come to his aid. This they will undoubtedly do, but even with their aid, I do not think it likely that Mwanga will venture to face Kalema's army in open encounter. He means, I understand, to retire to Sesse, and there establish himself, meantime waiting for re-enforcements, and expecting aid from the white men in Busoga. Stokes means at once to go to his assistance with a cargo of arms and ammunition. Meanwhile, Mwanga has sent a deputation to ourselves and





AGRICULTURE IN THE MUTA NZIGA LAKE DISTRICT.

to the French priests at Ukumbi, inviting them and us to repair to Sesse in order to carry on Christian instruction among our respective communities of converts."

Mr. Mackay, the writer of the above letter, received a communication from Mwanga, under date of June 25, 1889. Translated, it reads as follows:

"I send my compliments to you and to Mr. Gordon. After compliments, I, Mwanga, beg of you to help me. Do not remember by-gone matters. We are now in a miserable plight, but if you, my fathers, are willing to come and help to restore me to my kingdom, you will be at liberty to do whatever you like.

"Formerly I did not know God, but now I know the religion of Jesus Christ. Consider how Kalema has killed all my brothers and sisters; he has killed my children, too, and now there remain only we two princes [Kalema and himself]. Mr. Mackay, do help me; I have no strength, but if you are with me I shall be strong. Sir, do not imagine that if you restore Mwanga to Buganda he will become bad again. If you find me become bad, then you may drive me from the throne; but I have given up my former ways, and I only wish now to follow your advice.

"I am your friend,

"MWANGA."

In the above letter it is made very clear that, had Stanley entered the Victoria Lake region, he would have had to fight his way, if, indeed, he had been able to beat back the natives, which is decidedly improbable; for, in addition to a large following of the black king, his troops were armed with guns, and not a few breech-loaders, while the Arabs might have been depended on to give him great assistance.

#### REASONS COMMERCIAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL.

A second reason which influenced Stanley in the selection of the Congo route is found in the fact that, in his expedition up the Congo, in 1880, he had established many stations that were known to be still flourishing; had completed treaties with the natives that gave him assurance of their friendship, and besides being familiar with a large part of the Congo, knew that, for so large an expedition as he was conducting, the river afforded him the easiest means of conveyance, with the many boats at his command.

But besides the two reasons explained, there may have been a third one, looking towards both a commercial and geographical advantage. Central Africa, or the lake regions, are represented as being of surprising fertility. The lakes themselves are vast inland seas, upon which the largest vessels might be put in service to carry products that the country yields in prodigal profusion, but which might be made to produce, under tillage, enough grain and cotton to supply the world. This wondrously favored district cannot be reached by the Nile because of many impassable cataracts, and the impenetrable "sud," or vegetation, that collects in the stream. The overland route from Zanzibar is 1000



miles, through jungles, savannahs, miasmatic regions and many warlike tribes. On the other hand, the Congo, being a large and navigable stream, was believed to have its source somewhere in the lake region, while other rivers, affluents of the Congo, were known to exist, and it was most reasonably supposed that by following these the central lakes might either be reached directly by boat, or that only a small intervening strip of land would have to be passed over. A determination of this question was of the utmost importance, and Stanley no doubt hoped to solve it.

#### THE PROCESSION UP THE CONGO.

The expedition debarked at Banana Point with the usual delays and vexations attendant on such an undertaking. Nearly a whole week was spent un-



RECEPTION OF STANLEY BY UGANDA CHIEF.

loading stores from the steamer and conveying them to the small boats that were able to approach within about one mile of the sea. Besides four small steamers thus provided by the Congo Association, there was also a steam-launch belonging to the upper mission stations. Stanley's boat, called the *Advance*, was not put in service here, but was placed on board one of the steamers, for conveyance to the upper waters, above the cataracts, where the other vessels could not be taken, except by a tedious portage, nor were they built to withstand such rough usage.



Several of the officers had, before Stanley's arrival, busied themselves with preparations to receive the expedition, and besides bringing down small boats and lighters on which to unload the steamer's cargo of donkeys, provisions, ammunition, etc., had fixed up, in the most comfortable and inviting manner, headquarters at Boma, a considerable village on the Congo, some fifty miles



DISPOSITION OF THE DEAD BY BOMA VILLAGERS.

from the coast. To this place Stanley directly repaired in advance of the main party, after the embarkation was completed, anxious to observe what changes had occurred in and about the place since his last visit to the village in the interest of the Congo Free State Association. Under the influence of missionaries he found that the town had grown considerably in size and that the natives had become so far Christianized that the place supported two flourishing churches, or rather one Catholic church and one mosque. To his very great surprise, however, on a walk beyond the outskirts of the town he saw unmistakable signs of a continu-

ance of native superstitions connected with the burial of their dead: in frail scaffolds on which rudely coffined bodies were exposed and the ghastly skeletons of sacrificed slaves underneath.

Stanley remained at Boma several days before he completed his preparations for moving the expedition upon its prime purpose.



When at last the expedition started up the Congo it presented the pleasing appearance of a flotilla procession bound upon some wondrous enterprise, as it certainly was. Stanley led, in what he euphoniously called his flag-vessel, but which was in fact a rather sorry looking craft to take so honorable a position. Tipo Tib and his forty-two wives occupied the passenger space in the next boat, while Stanley's lieutenant, the Zanzibaris soldiers, and the commissary stores, luggage, mules and ammunition, made up the loads of the others. The sound of escaping steam, ringing of bells and blowing of whistles, had already become familiar to the natives of the river shores, but so many boats in procession, the flying of so many flags, and the strange cargo that was being conveyed, lent remarkable interest to the river that flowed out of a mysterious



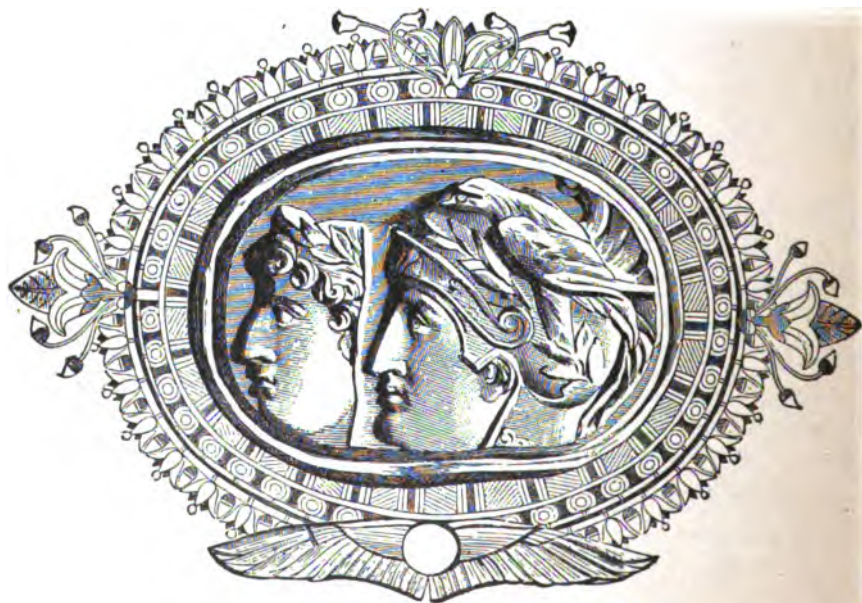
ATTACKED BY A LEOPARD.

country, through unexplored lands, bathing the most savage of people, giving drink to the most powerful and ferocious of animals, as it went gurgling over rapids, dashing down cataracts, and singing its way to the high rolling sea.

Typo Tib had contracted to furnish a force of 700 Somalis Arabs and Zanzibaris soldiers to give safe conduct to the expedition from Stanley Falls to Wadelai. This contract he was able to fulfil by taking men from the ivory stations he had established on the upper Congo, and between the Aruwimi river and the lakes. In this region he had built up an enormous trade, and he is reputed to have had on hand a stock of ivory valued at \$500,000, at the time of Stanley's last journey. His engagement to conduct the expedition, at an expense of \$25,000, was therefore a very profitable one, because he was on the point of visiting that region to look after his private interests at the time when Stanley entered into a contract with him.



The members of Tipo Tib's household, or, in other words, his wives, it must be admitted, were the most interesting attaches of the expedition. Some of them, it must be confessed, were a little *blase*, as the French say, or, to speak more courteously, they were past that age when plumpness of form and freshness of features are most commonly found. But the majority were lithesome, fair, vigorous and (is it to their discredit?) not above making favorable responses to the overtures of the natural male flirts that belonged to the expedition. Tipo, so far from being a bearded pard or Blue Beard, seemed to extract pleasure from the satisfaction which the officers exhibited in the innocent amours of his wives. Having indeed a good thing, he was unselfish enough to share it with his companions. Some of these houris were dressed most becomingly in Arabic costume, while others exercised a freedom only compatible with an oppressively hot climate, and herein possibly lay much of their charms. Anyhow, those having the least dress certainly attracted the most admiration. But the reader must not overlook the fact that in nearly all hot countries, and in Africa especially, the most flagrant exposure of person is not regarded as being the least indecent. Custom governs, and in Africa, along the equatorial line, much body decoration is employed, but practically no covering. The Georgia colonel who, it is related, appeared on dress parade in a cocked hat, paper collar and big spurs—with nothing between the collar and the spurs—would cut a fashionable rather than a ridiculous figure among the African tribes.





## CHAPTER XIX.

### THE VOYAGE UP THE CONGO.



**N**OBLY breasting the swelling waters of the eccentric Congo, the steamers pushed their way, halting every little while to take on fresh supplies of fuel. It is a fact that the cutting of wood proved to be the most tedious and laborious duty connected with the expedition. The boats consumed amazing quantities of fuel to keep up steam, because the wood that was procurable along the river was of a light, cotton-wood species, that burned rapidly without giving much heat. The wood bunkers, too, were small, so that every few hours a landing had to be made and the porters sent out to gather a fresh supply. It was not at every place, either, that wood of any kind was procurable, there being frequent bare stretches of either sand or small willows. The heaviest timber was, of course, sought for, and this could only be obtained in many instances a mile from the shore. Much time was also required to fell and split up the large trees into lengths of two feet, this being all that the furnaces would take. The porters were therefore worked so hard that it is not surprising they were, in two or three instances, in a rebellious mood, and came near mutiny.

Many stations were passed, at which stops were invariably made to enable Stanley to confer with the resident missionaries or government agents. On the Lower Congo these places were generally uninteresting, because, besides being inactive, the natives had lost their curiosity by frequent contact with Europeans.

The line of steamers, while they had not paid expenses, had served the beneficent purpose of bringing the natives to an appreciation of civilization, and in inciting them to an industry which gives promise of large profits hereafter. Besides this, these boats afforded means of rapid and easy communication between the stations, that resulted in a complete destruction of the slave trade which, before the establishment of these stations, flourished with all its attendant horrors, under the sanction of the Portuguese government.

#### THE STATION OF LUKUNGA.

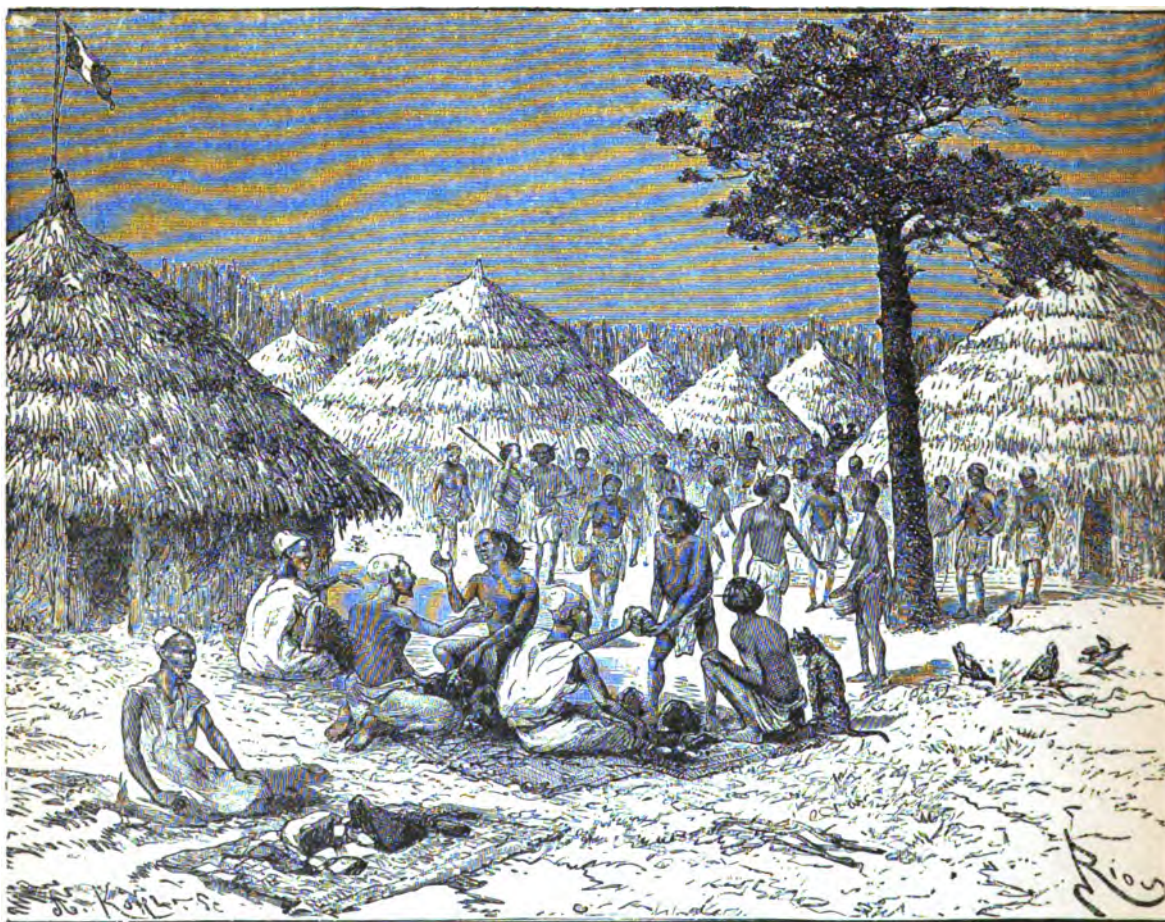
Mr. Stanley was more interested in the stations, many of which he had himself established in 1884, because of the benefits they had brought to the natives, and he therefore tarried a short while at each to give some kind word of promise or encouragement to those in charge. But it was not until the expedition reached Lukunga, above the last cataracts, and after the steamers had been abandoned for a march along the shore, that real interest was awakened. It was here that contact with the ruder, uncivilized, barbaric natives was entered upon, and thenceforth surprise upon surprise awaited the members who were travelling in mid-Africa for the first time.

Lukunga is nearly five hundred miles from the Congo's mouth, but less

than three hundred from the coast. It is a station founded by Stanley in the interest of the Congo Association, and is presided over by Mr. and Mrs. Ingham, who have charge of the mission. It is admirably located, and presents a charming aspect from the river. The station was created at a cost of barely \$500; yet so admirable has been its management that it is a much more interesting, inviting and prosperous place than Manyanga, only a few miles further north, which had cost the Association \$50,000.

#### SUPERSTITIONS OF THE NATIVES.

Though the natives at Lukunga and the region thereabout are under subordination and influence of the missionaries, they have lost very little, if any,



LUKUNGA STATION.

of their old superstitions, by which they still continue to be largely controlled.

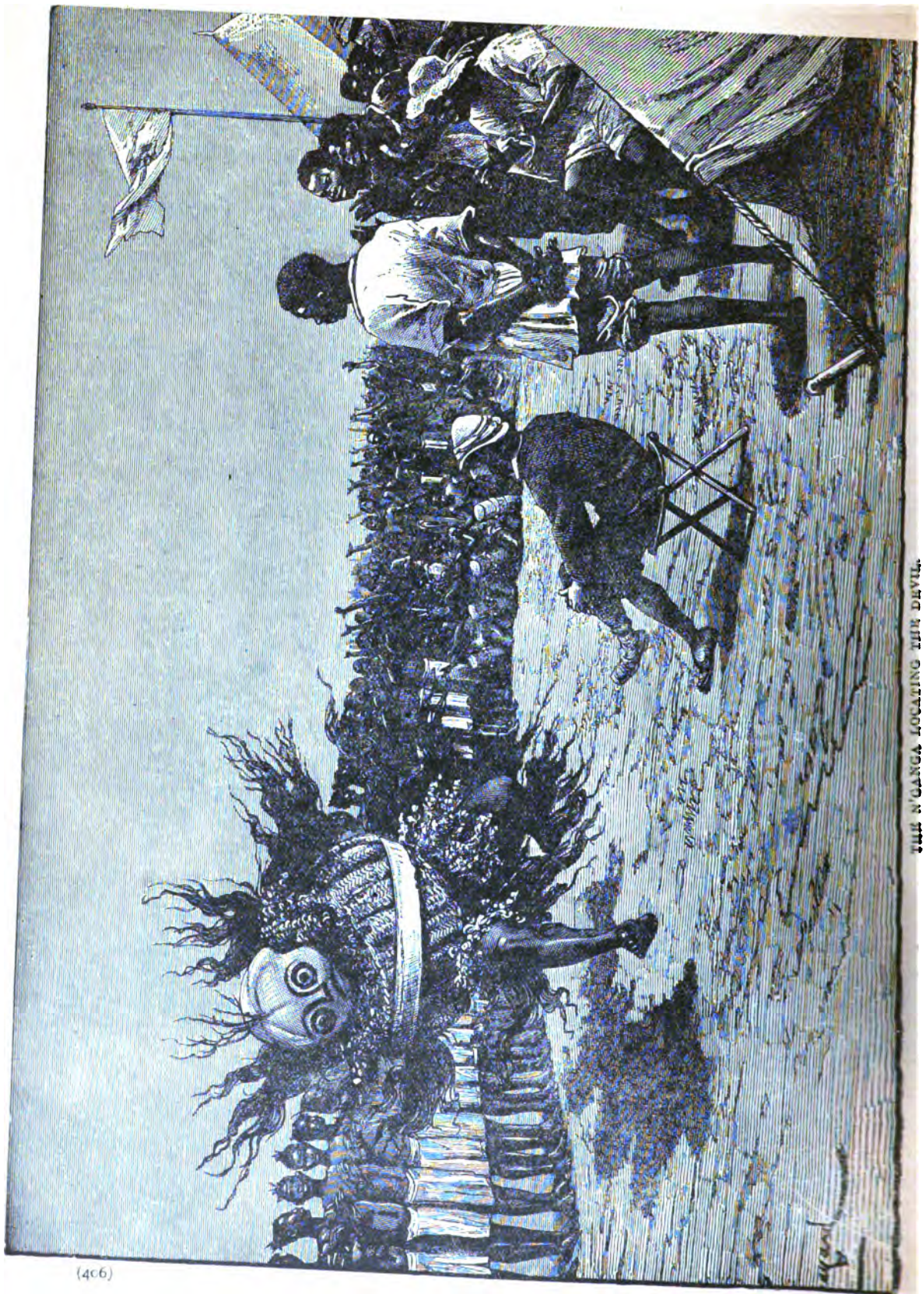
Mr. Herbert Ward, an attaché of the expedition, and who also spent a considerable time at this station, has communicated, by private letter, many facts respecting the natives of this region, from which I quote the following:

“\* \* \* The most interesting item is, I think, an ordeal which took place the other day close by in this valley. It was a ‘N’Ganga N’Kissi,’ or medicine



man's palaver. I learn from Mr. Harvey, of the Livingstone Inland Mission, that the general belief in the Congo is that nearly all sickness and death is the result of witchcraft. The consequence is that, when anyone is dangerously ill, the question arises, 'Who has bewitched him?' The guilty person is supposed to be secretly devouring the spirit of the unhappy sufferer. Should he die, a 'N'Ganga,' or medicine man, is usually sent for to determine who it is that is possessed of 'N'Doki' (the devil), or is guilty of the witchcraft. The 'N'Ganga' is invariably a crafty individual of another tribe or from a distant village. He brings with him an elaborate apparatus, consisting of leopard's teeth and claws, snakes and other skins, a fetish idol, perhaps a rattle, and above all a plentiful supply of powdered chalk. On special occasions he also adds a huge mask made of the inner layers of bark and painted in the most grotesquely horrid manner, with decorations of cowtails, which latter article seems indispensable to all African priests. Sometimes, especially when displaying his art before an audience where white persons are spectators, he charges furiously up and down as if battling with, and fleeing and chasing imaginary spirits, until his breath is quite spent. More frequently, however, the 'N'Ganga' seats himself on rising ground and there displays his paraphernalia, which he cleverly manipulates. He endeavors to make his audience believe that each article about him flies to his hand at the mere wish, and it is not surprising, therefore, to learn that he is a fair conjuror, in which sleight-of-hand is well practised. Even the mat upon which he sits seems now and then to be alive. He turns and looks at it occasionally when its manifestations seem to him as it were excessive. His well-feigned astonishment is not lost upon the throng. The mat, they plainly see, is beyond his control, as is everything else, his inspiration being from a superior and unseen power. Every now and then he pauses in his mummeries and listens with his head bent to the earth, and then he will bound up again from his listening attitude and intently examine the various persons near him, and turn away from them with equal suddenness, practically clutching at the air as if trying to lay hold upon some unseen being. He shrieks and wails like one possessed. Usually, before declaring the name of the guilty or suspected person, the payment for his services (previously agreed upon) has to be made, and in these transactions he shows that his connection with the unseen world has not lessened his interest in the possession of the wealth that belongs to the material world of his existence. He is not easily imposed upon, either, as regards the quantity or quality of the cloth offered to him as his remuneration. The guilty one being named, the poor wretch has to undergo the ordeal of poison. He must drink a certain amount of n'kasa, prepared from a poisonous bark by the 'N'Ganga.' Should the potion act as an emetic, the accused is pronounced innocent; otherwise, Satan's presence in the man is proved, the victim himself being as well assured of the fact as his accusers. His body begins to swell from the effects of the poison, and he is either buried alive (though in frequent cases his throat is cut before burial) or is drowned."





THE N'GANGA LOCATING THE DEVIL.



## - HOW WARD MET STANLEY.

Herbert Ward, above quoted, had been with Stanley on his founding of the Congo Free State, and was left in charge of several stations on the Congo, as the representative of the Association. He had already spent three years among the river stations, during which time he had experienced many hardships, and longed



THE ASSYRIAN AND HIS TWO WIVES.

for a vacation that would enable him to visit his father, Rowland Ward, a naturalist, formerly of London, but now settled on a fruit farm in California. He had obtained a leave of absence for six months, and had commenced his homeward journey, but had proceeded only a short way down the Congo when



he met Stanley, with whom it was his wildest ambition to make a trip into the lake regions. It was no surprise, therefore, that he should immediately turn his steps, his determination and change of plans being described in the following letter:

"EMIN PASHA RELIEF EXPEDITION,

MATADE STATION, April 3d, 1887.

"You will be astonished to hear that my plans are changed. Instead of returning to you, I am turning round the other way and going with Stanley and the Emin Pasha Expedition.



THE FALLEN MONARCH BESET BY HYENAS, JACKALS, VULTURES AND LIONS.

"I was on my way down country to embark for Old England and thence to America. About two days from here I met two armed Assyrians. Immediately behind them, and mounted on a fine mule whose new-plated trappings glistened in the sun, was Stanley himself. Behind him came a Soudanese giant, about 6 feet 6 inches high, bearing a large American flag. I saluted the Congo king. He smiled, and, indicating the bare ground, said, 'Take a seat.' He dismounted, and, handing me a cigar, we squatted and conversed for half an hour. He accepted me as a volunteer (I had previously, as you know, written to him), and it was at



once arranged that I should proceed down to this place and see to the transport of some of his remaining loads. I have done so, and now leave here to overtake him in four days.

"Of the eight whites he has with him, two have contributed to the expense of the expedition for the privilege of accompanying him through the heart of Africa, and the others are English officers on full army pay as volunteers.


"I never in my life was so struck with any sight as with Stanley's caravan on the march—Egyptians, Soudanese, Somalis, Zanzibaris, and others, nine hundred strong. It took me two hours to pass them, and then I met the second in command, Major Barttelot, a young fellow, burnt very dark, with a masher collar fixed on a flannel shirt, top boots, etc. He was carrying a large bucket that some fellow had abandoned. 'I say, are you Ward?' he shouted. 'I am Ward,' I answered, 'and now belong to your expedition.' 'I am very glad to hear it,' he replied; 'Stanley has spoken of you; and so you are coming along; that's right; very good business!' He seemed to be full of tremendous spirits; looked very fit; and I admired him immensely.

"Tipo Tib, the notorious slave trader of Stanley Falls, has come round from Zanzibar with Stanley, and, in his silken robes, jewelled turban, and kriss, looks a very ideal Oriental potentate. It is thought 'good business,' as Maj. Barttelot would say, getting him for an ally. He had forty-two of his wives along with him. Some of them are handsome women. One little stout lady, decked out in magnificent costume, appeared to be rather free in her behavior, I thought; she winked at me decidedly, and did not resent a gentle stroke under the chin. I gave her a little present, and we parted on good terms."



## CHAPTER XX.

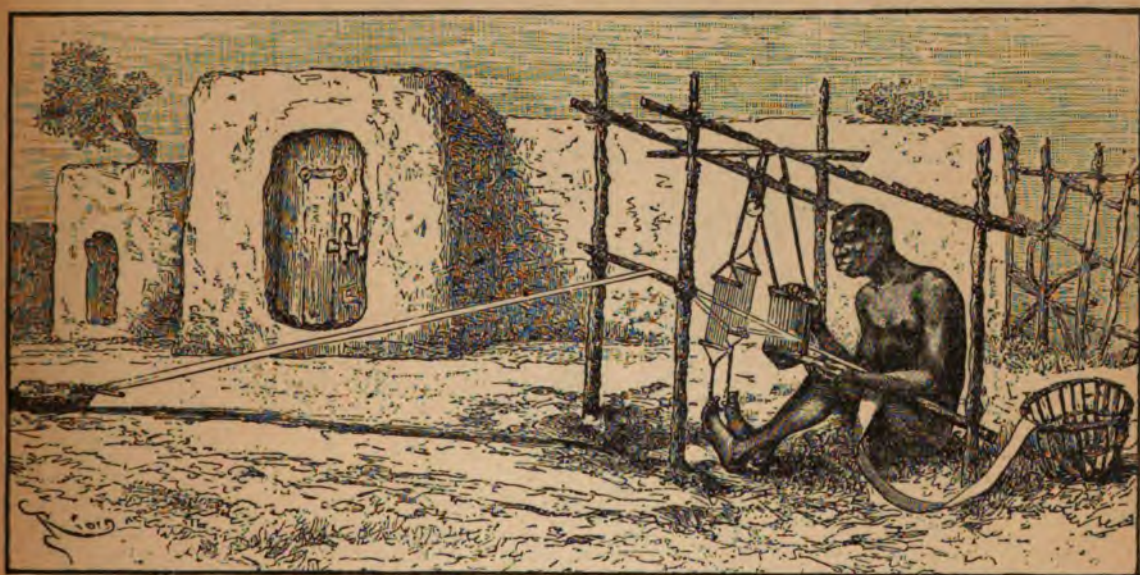
### THE TRIP TO BOLOBO.

OURNEYING through a wild country may be pleasant under certain circumstances. It is not therefore to be supposed that Stanley's expedition won its way through Africa by constant fighting, or by cleaving a passage through dense forests, over mountains, around cataracts, in continual peril and harassments. Enough of these he certainly had to encounter, but the march was relieved by many comforts which the abundant supplies he carried with him enabled him to secure. Besides, there were not entirely wanting the conveniences that settlement and civilization provide. The journey up the Congo to Nyangwe took about sixty days. All along the river great changes have occurred since Stanley's memorable trip down that stream twelve years ago. In many places the natives have disappeared from the banks, and large Arab and Zanzibarian settlements have taken their place, for Tipo Tib has some rivals, though at present they live in peace with each other. At frequent places along the banks extensive fields of rice are found, and all round Nyangwe and Kasonge the country is covered with such fields, and with plantations of all kinds. Nyangwe is no longer the important place it was in the days of Livingstone, or at the time of Stanley's first visit. Three days' distance from it is Kasonge, Tipo Tib's headquarters, a large town, with broad streets and many fine houses. Here also are other great Arab traders, and Arab and Zanzibar immigration is going on at an increasing rate.

On arriving at Stanley Pool, where Stanley stopped for two days, a steam launch, named *Henry Reid*, belonging to the American Baptist Missionary Union, was tendered to the explorer to transport a portion of his men, merchandise and ammunition from that point to the intended camp on the Aruwimi. Mr. Stanley was glad to avail himself of this kindly offer, as the boats at his command had such small capacity that the transportation to Stanley Pool had been attended with considerable discomfort for lack of space. The *Reid* was therefore at once put into commission, and towed a steam lighter besides the steel whale-boat. The lighter, which had previously been a paddle-steamer of the Etat du Congo, was formerly the quarters of Tipo Tib, his officers and harem. The dark-eyed houris enjoyed their trip immensely. It was, of course, a perfect novelty to them. They frolicked and danced and sang the whole of the day, while at night the sound of their rippling laughter could be heard for a long distance.



Upon leaving Kinchassa, the village at Stanley Pool, the expedition embarked in three steamers, *Le Stanley*, the large stern-wheel river steamer of the Etat du Congo, towing the *Florida*, the sections of which had just been put together. The *Florida* is the steamer of the Sanford exploring expedition, which came into existence in 1880, and which has just recently been converted into "The Belgian Commercial Society of the Upper Congo." The *Stanley* and her consort had on board four English officers and about 300 men, in addition to a cargo of ammunition, merchandise, and several donkeys on deck. The other steamer was the *Peace*, kindly and promptly placed at Mr. Stanley's disposal by the Rev. Holman Bentley, of the English Baptist Missionary Society. A young missionary named Whitley was in charge of the vessel, and



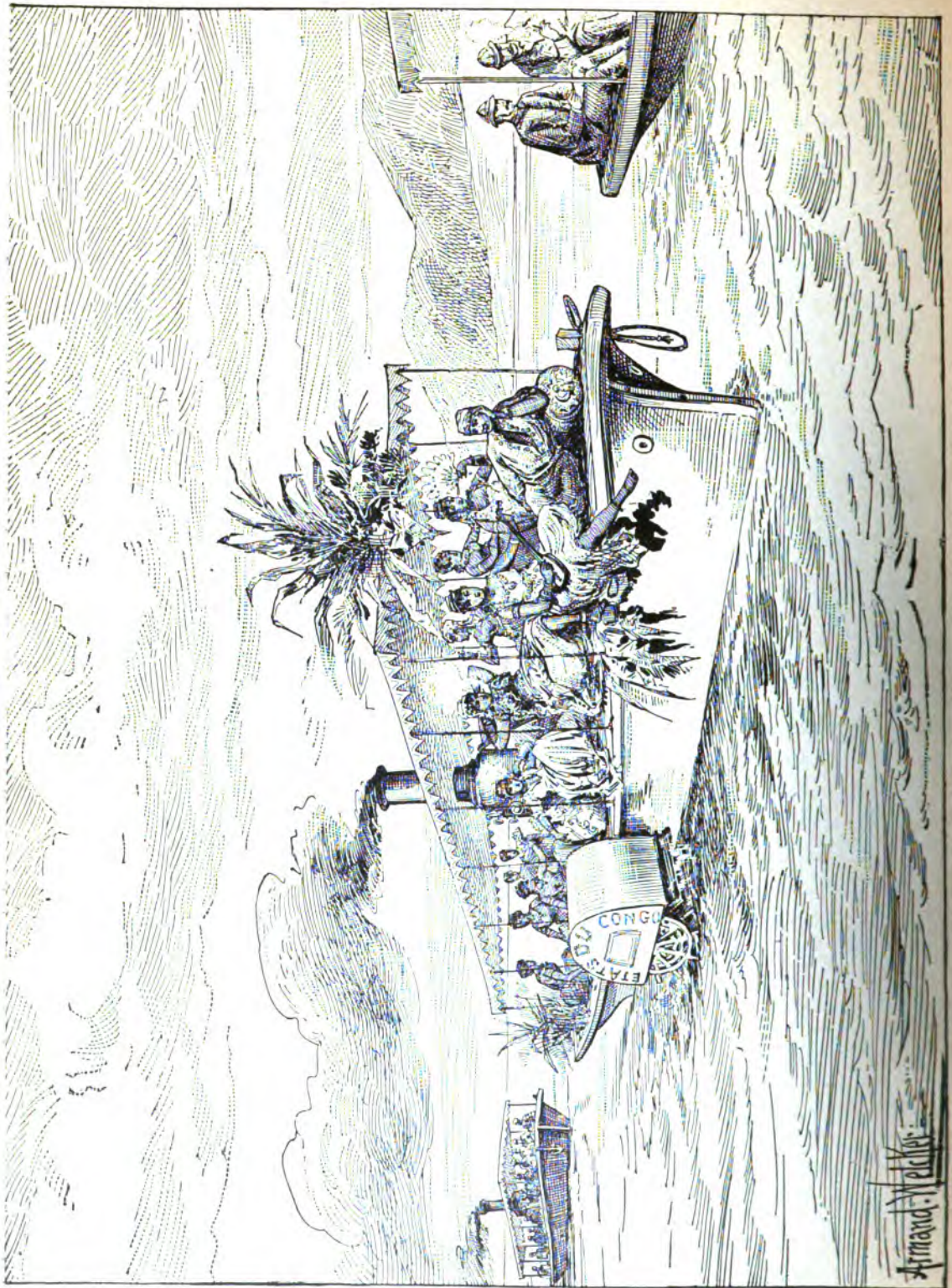
NATIVE OF KASONGE WEAVING.

Mr. Stanley himself and Mr. Herbert Ward (to whom he had given the command of his No. 1 company of Zanzibaris), Mr. Stanley's valet, "William," and an English engineer, made up the rest of the travellers.

#### SCENERY AND GRANDEUR OF THE CONGO.

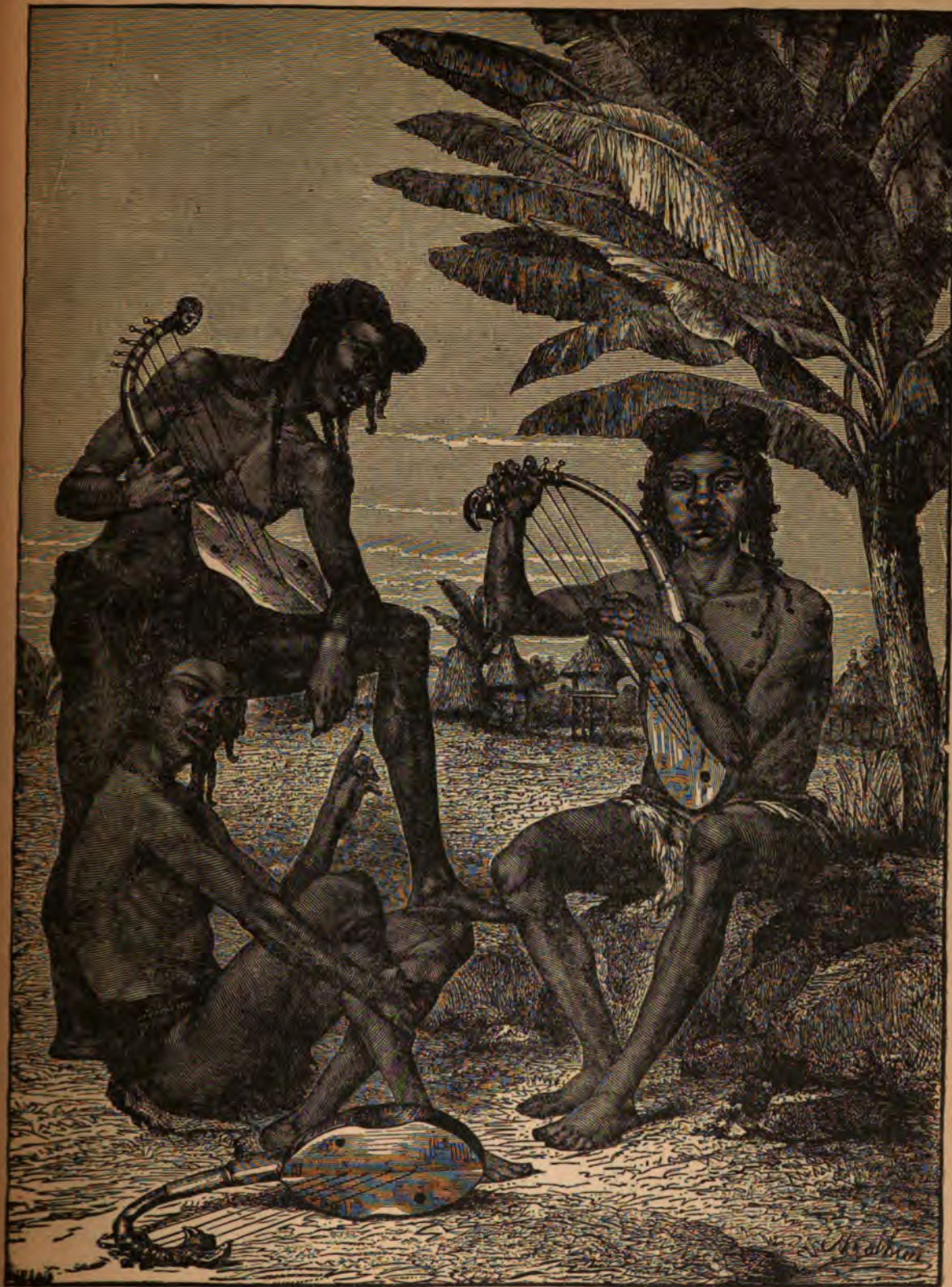
It does appear exceedingly strange, in the light of Stanley's discoveries, that so mighty a stream as the Congo, and particularly since, as the river Zaire, it has been known for more than two centuries, that so few efforts were made before the time of Livingstone to explore its length. It is found to be the great artery, the very aorta, of the arterial system of Africa, flowing from the heart of the continent and affording a commercial waterway back again to the central districts, whose fertility is positively amazing. Mr. Werner and other recent travellers speak in terms of enthusiasm of the scenery of the Congo, and compare it, indeed, with other famous waterways, to the disadvantage of the most magnificent rivers. Stanley himself led the way in





TIPO TIE EN VOYAGE.





BA-YANZI MUSICIANS.

these glowing descriptions. Talking of comparisons, which naturally occur to the reader, Stanley exclaims, "Why, the Rhine, even including its most picturesque parts, is only a microscopic miniature of the Lower Congo; but we must have the Rhine steamer, and its wine and food and accommodations, to be able to see it properly. The Mississippi? The Congo is one and a half times longer, and from eight to ten times broader. You may take your choice of nearly a dozen channels, and you will see more beautiful vegetation on the Congo than on the American river." Besides, there are its crocodiles, its hippopotami, its elephants—"standing sentry-like in the twilight"—its buffaloes, red and white, its parrots, its flocks of ibis, and a thousand other things that are novel and picturesque. "And as for towns," says the great explorer, "I hope the all-gracious Providence will bless our labor, and they will come by-and-by; meantime, there is room enough to stow half Europe comfortably on its spacious borders." The Nile, the Danube, the Volga, the Amazon, Stanley knows them all; and the Congo is still his king of rivers.

To the natural scenery and imposing size of this great river are added many other attractions, not the least of which are the numerous villages of the several tribes along its shores.

Just above Stanley Pool, and opposite the Ba-teke territory, is the land of the Ba-yanzi tribe, who occupy the south side. Here will be found the first fixed settlement of the tribes to be encountered on a journey up the Congo. Their village is very picturesque as seen from the water—"a broad lane leading up to a grove of oil-palms and bananas, with compact and tidy-looking houses interspersed among them; but the favorable impression is rather spoilt on landing by the horrible black fetid mud strewn with decaying offal that one has to cross." The people are a finer looking race than any Stanley had seen on the Congo. Some of the men are "perfect Greek statues as regards their splendid development and pose of their figures." The Ba-yanzi have certain cruel customs, but are in many respects much superior to some other natives of the great river. They make excellent pottery, knives, hatchets, articles of furniture and other things, which they sell to the Ba-teke and the Wa-buma. They are fond of music, and have a native instrument of the dulcimer class, upon which they produce not unpleasant harmonies. They are clever fishermen, and cultivate fruit and vegetables, tobacco, manioc and other products, in which they do a fair trade. According to ethnologists, they are not of the negro race, but belong to the "Bantu" family, which includes the people around Lake Tanganyika and Lake Nyassa, in Eastern Africa, and on the Zambesi.

They are remarkable for their great development of hair, which they treat very decoratively, sometimes fantastically dressing it up from the crown, and again twisting it so tightly as to be almost inflexible and horn-like in appearance. A similar fashion also obtains at Bolobo, which, however, is quite natural since this station is on the north line of the Ba-yanzi country.



## ADVENTUROUS INCIDENTS OF THE VOYAGE.

The trip up the Congo was enlivened by many interesting and a few thrilling incidents. The boats travelled continuously during the daytime, except when having to stop to wood-up; but at night they lay by, not having comfortable sleeping accommodations for so large a passenger list. Camps were therefore made in which the porters and soldiers slept, while the officers and Tipo Tib's wives found quarters on the boats. If the days were happily spent, with music floating over the waters from instruments tuned by deft houris' hands, the evenings were yet more delightfully romantic. Woman's influence, as well as her presence, is always conducive to happiness, and on this journey through a savage land even the half-civilized wives of the barbarous slave raider contributed very largely to the happy content of the motley mixture of those who composed the expedition. Music exercised a charm particularly potent on the banks of the Congo, and at night, with bonfires leaping skyward throwing dancing shadows, and guitars, zithers, mandolins and violins discoursing a music that harmonized so weirdly with Arab songs and the wild woods, made a minstrelsy that woke each heart to the measures



AN EXCESS OF SPORT

of poesy and the sweet spirit of rhapsodizing romance. And by the light of these fires that gave rapport to all the company, stories were told, the laugh went round, and graceful figures, male and female, flitted with trained feet in many a curious dance, but no more curious than the appearance of the dancers.

## TIPO TIB'S NARROW ESCAPE FROM A CROCODILE.

The journey, however, was not an undisturbed excursion, for occasionally incidents occurred which gave excitement to the usually pleasurable scenes. Along the banks were seen the rusty, grime-covered bodies of huge crocodiles, watching with omnivorous appetites for prey, while in the reeds, and often rising from the river beds, were monster hippopotami, blowing in their play or grunting with anger over their disturbance. These furnished sport for the hunters and lent a grateful divertisement to the party. But when the expedi-





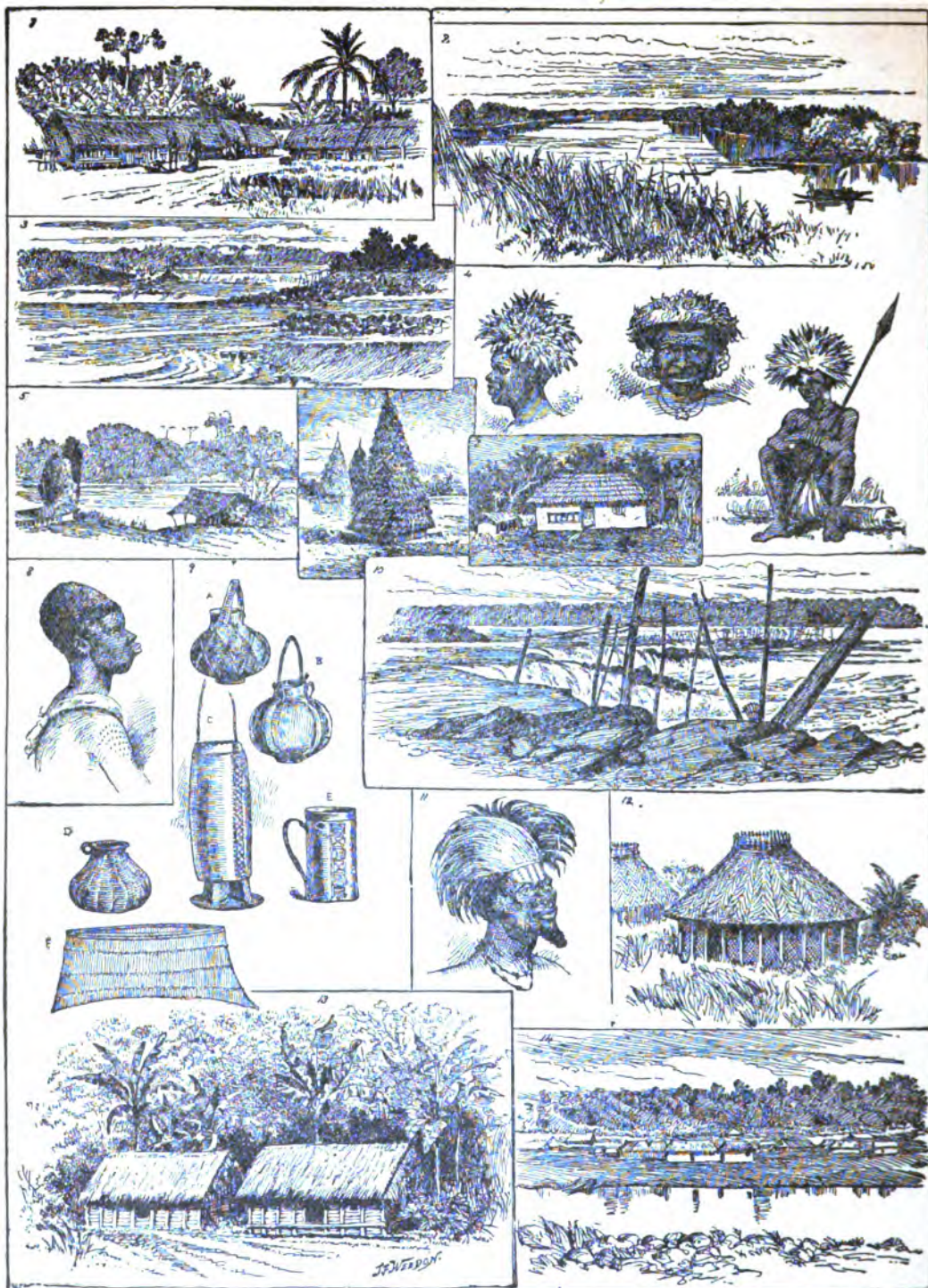
HERO TIE'S ADVENTURE WITH A CROCODILE



tion had reached the vicinity of the Aruwimi river, an adventure was met with which came near ending the cruel career of the savage Tipo Tib. While the boats were put in to shore to replenish their store of fuel, the great Arab chief went out on the bank for a recreative walk, and seeing some very beautiful wild honeysuckles depending from the vine that had climbed a large tree standing near the water's edge, attempted to gather the flowers of delicious fragrance. He had scarcely approached the base of the tree, however, when he was struck a violent blow which knocked him several feet distant and fairly into the river, but falling against a prostrate tree which extended into the stream, he was thus prevented from being thrown into deep water. The blow, too, chanced to be only half delivered by reason of the dense brush, so that Tipo Tib was hardly stunned, and he was able to immediately comprehend his dreadful adversary. In another moment he saw a huge crocodile advancing upon him with wide-open jaws, and but for his good fortune in having a gun with him to make his defence, he must inevitably have fallen a victim to the monster. Tipo therefore aimed his musket quickly and sent a ball into the eye of the reptile, but did not succeed, even with such a capital shot, in dispatching it; but he followed the shot with a thrust of his rifle into the mouth of the crocodile, which made the reptile retreat to securer quarters in the water. But though the Arab won the battle, he was immediately after the fight so prostrated with fear that his wives had to fan and coddle him for two hours, and give him the restorative of admiration for his valor.

#### BOLOBO STATION.

One of the principal stations on the Lower Congo, established by Stanley on his first expedition, and where he made his first camp on his last, is Bolobo, which is mentioned several times in the narrative of his relief expedition, because it was made a base of supplies. The Bolobo country commences at the picturesque village of Itimba, which is admirably situated on a small but very thickly-wooded hill. "Then, as you sail up the river," says Mr. Stanley, "village after village appears in a nearly continuous line for about an hour, when the station (Bolobo) comes into view on the open higher ground behind a narrow belt of tall timber lining the riverside. Imagine a strip of the left bank of the river, about twelve miles long, a thin line of large umbrageous trees close to the water's edge, and a gently sloping background of cleared country rising to about thirty feet above the tallest trees. Just above the centre of this strip, on the open ground, is the station of Bolobo, consisting of a long mat-walled shed, a mud-and-water kitchen, a mud-walled magazine with grass roofs, and about seventy huts arranged in a square, on the outside of the inner group of buildings. Above and below it, close to the water side, amid banana and palm groves, are sheltered about fifteen villages. Seven of these—Itimba, Mingolo, Biangulu, Ururu, Mongo, Mangu, Yambula and Lingenji—are below the station. Eight are above, among which is Mbanga and a few villages of the Banuna tribe. These form what is called Bolobo.



1. Hut on the Congo River.  
 2. Looking up the Congo from the house of Sheikh Mohamed-ibn-Said, at Stanley Falls.  
 3. The Dinka-Wamanga Tribe (Three Types).  
 4. Village in Mohamed-ibn-Said's District.  
 5. One Hut at Stanley Falls.  
 6. Hut at Yambou.  
 7. Native Women of Arwata P.  
 8. A and B. Palm-leaf Fan, Yambou.  
 9. Pot containing Cam-wood and Oil, Article of an Arwata Native's Toilet; carried over the shoulder.  
 10. Basket used for drying Cam-wood, do.  
 11. Basket used for preserving Cam-wood, do.  
 12. Basket for Potatoes.  
 13. Stanley Falls.  
 14. House of the Arwata Country.  
 15. House in View: Five hours' march to Stanley Falls.  
 16. View.  
 17. House of Type 12, Stanley Falls.

SKETCHES IN AND ABOUT BOLOBO, AND STANLEY FALLS.



## THE BA-TEKE MUSICIANS.

Above Matade station, where the second camp was made, and just beyond the influence of the missionaries, lives a small tribe called the Ba-teke, a quiet, inoffensive people who are chiefly distinguished as what may be called natural musicians. Stanley halted among them for two days, and gives an interesting report of their proficiency on native instruments. He says: "They discourse melody from a form of marimba, an instrument of wide-spread range, which in principle is so many slips or keys of metal arranged along a sounding board. These instruments are about eight inches long, and three to four broad. They are provided each with metal bars tempered by fire and hammered into a highly metallic elasticity, and when pressed down sharply with the finger spring back and give a clear, distinct note. They are also tuned in certain keys, each instrument differing in scale so as to play in harmony with each other. When twanged by practised hands they yield delightfully sweet sounds, comparable to the dulcimer, mandolin or zither, and when played well by a pretty African girl the critical ear might fancy himself under the bower of an accomplished Madrid senorita."

Among these same people, and in fact among all the tribes within one hundred miles of Lukunga, there is a superstitious dread of the owl, which by them is regarded not only as a bird of ill omen, but also the bearer of an evil spirit sometimes sent by an ill-disposed person to plague an enemy. Speaking of this superstition Stanley relates a very strange incident which seems to have come under his own observation. He says:

## THE BIRD OF ILL OMEN.

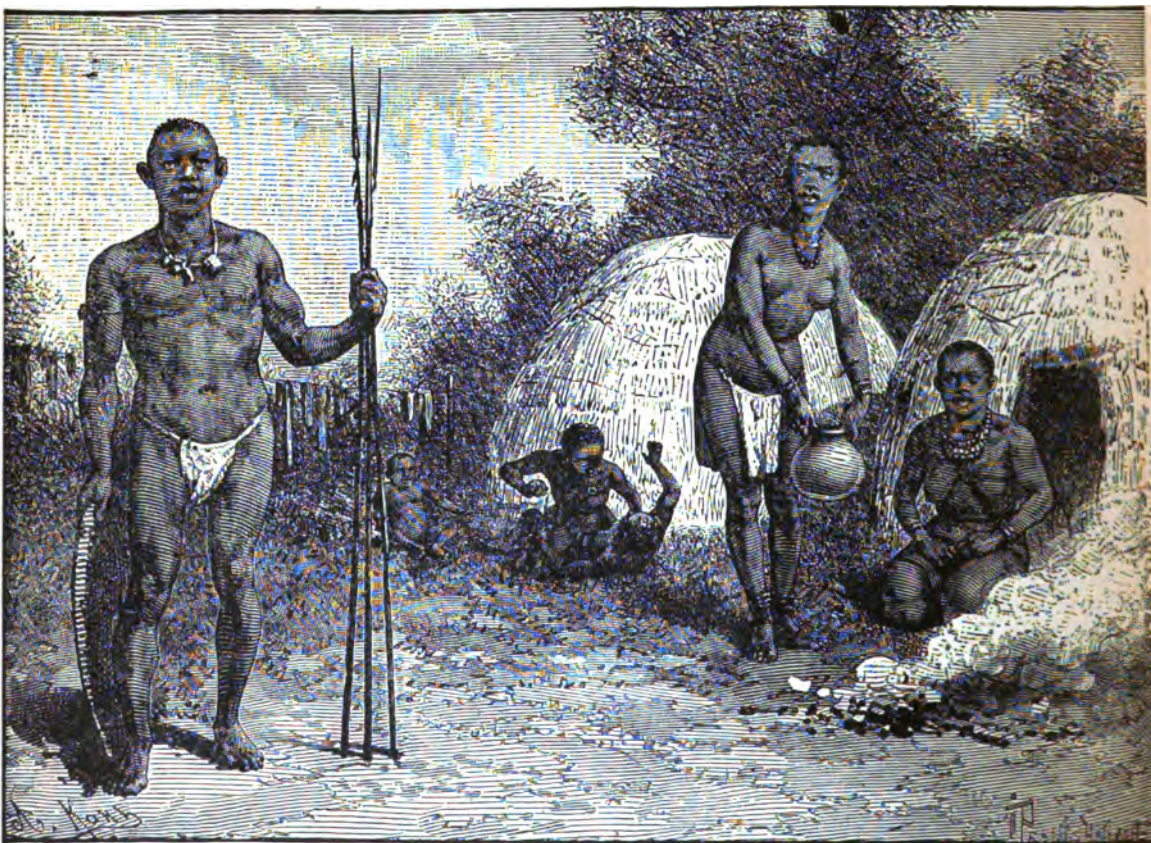
"One day the King of Kanganpaka visited the Livingstone Inland Mission, his face the very picture of misery and despair. 'What has happened?' he was asked; to which question, after a studied silence, he replied in a whisper, that the people of a neighboring town had, during the night, sent a bad bird, n'kissi, or spirit in the shape of an owl, which had bewitched his plantain trees and blighted them. Upon examining the trees they were indeed found to be blighted and looked as if they had been struck by lightning, every one being blackened and apparently dead. But as this had occurred in the long dry season, when lightning is almost unknown, the mischief had evidently been done by some chemical agency, probably only known to the N'Ganga, or medicine man. The old king begged for some *mundili*, or white-man medicine, to counteract the effects of the wicked spirit. To satisfy his craving for the moment, the missionary of the station gave the king some insect powder and sent him away. Strange to relate, the old king, in the fullest faith of the magic powder, sprinkled it upon the blasted trees, whereupon in a little while new plantains shot out from the seared trunks and flourished finely."

## CEREMONIES OF THE N'KIMBA TRIBE.

Beyond the Ba-teke are found the N'Kimba tribe, occupying a district some **fifty** miles in length along the Congo. They are a naked, shiftless people, and

practise some singular customs which, though curious in origin, are identical with some practised by ancient people in civilized sections of the world. Writing of these ceremonies, Mr. Ward says they are associated with a certain bacchanalian worship, during which the youthful initiates undergo the rite of circumcision, which is quite common among many African tribes. Again he likens the ceremonies to a kind of Free Masonry, which he thus describes:

"All the lads of a town, or group of towns, from ten to twelve years of age, go through an educational course lasting from six months to two years. During this time they are not allowed to wash themselves. They disfigure



MAN AND WOMEN OF THE N'KIMBA TRIBE.

their bodies with chalk, and wear a hideous dress of grass. The women and children of the towns are in continual fear of the N'Kimba, who are allowed to parade through the villages at any time of the day or night. Any article of food or clothing required by them can be appropriated without question, if only the things belong to a 'mungwala,' or uninitiated person. At the induction ceremony the candidate is required to drink a certain potion, which renders him insensible. He is then declared to be dead, and is carried into the bush, where the operation of circumcision is presumably performed. After a while he is restored, and by the simple towns-people he is believed to have been raised



from the dead. He then receives a new name, and he professes not to be able to remember his former tribe or even his parents.

"The N'Kimba declare the rainbow is their father. They also adopt a new language, which is of a mysterious nature, and though taught to the males, it is never disclosed to females. It is possible that it is some old or archaic form of the Bantu language, conserved for religious purposes—like the Sanscrit, the old Slav, and the Latin; or it may be nothing more than an arbitrary transmogrification of words such as are found in the Mpongwe, or in such artificial dialects as the Ki-Nyume of Zanzibar.

"An N'Kimba before initiation is called *mungwala*, and afterwards *tungwa*."

#### A GRAND CAVALCADE.

After reaching Kasonge the boats were abandoned and the march overland for another considerable distance began. Between several of the cataracts a steam launch service is maintained, but occasionally there are stretches of many miles where rapids and cataracts are so frequent that no boats of any kind can pass them. Around these therefore Stanley had to make the passage by land, which he was well provided to do. Describing the caravan as it left the great Arab station of Kasonge, Ward says: "First of all proceeded four Somalis carrying their kit; then came Stanley, mounted on a fine mule; behind him was a great, tall Soudanese soldier, carrying James Gordon Bennett's yacht flag, (American, with round yellow circle and anchor,) then followed seven hundred men, presenting the most imposing sight that I ever saw. All the men were fresh and were dressed in their characteristic costumes: Zanzibaris, in their white Arab shirts reaching to the knee, with just a little of their gaudy colored loin cloth visible below it, boxes on their heads, water bottles slung over their shoulders, their guns at their backs; Soudanese soldiers in their dark blue great coats and hoods, their bayonets, cartridge belts, guns and kit; Somalis with their fancy waistcoats and variegated loin cloths; sections of the whale-boat, carried each by four men; donkeys with pack saddles and loads; large-horned goats with similar saddles and loads, and hoes, shovels and axes; the caravan stretched away for three miles, a fine subject for a painter; a most unusual and strange sight along the Congo."

#### STANLEY FALLS.

The expedition continued on without mishap until in due time Stanley Falls was reached, the last station on the Upper Congo. The river scenery about Stanley Falls is very similar to that in the vicinity of Bolobo, but the Falls themselves are very interesting, not on account of any surprising descent, for it is not really great, but because they so nearly bridge the river as to divide it into two main channels. The stakes and nets, as seen in the illustration on p. 418, just below the Falls, serve to mark the various cataracts, and also the favorite occupation of the Wenya people, especially the women, who are devoted fishers. At this place Tipo Tib has one of his principal headquarters, and from here he conducts his most profitable raids upon the neighboring people, from whom he

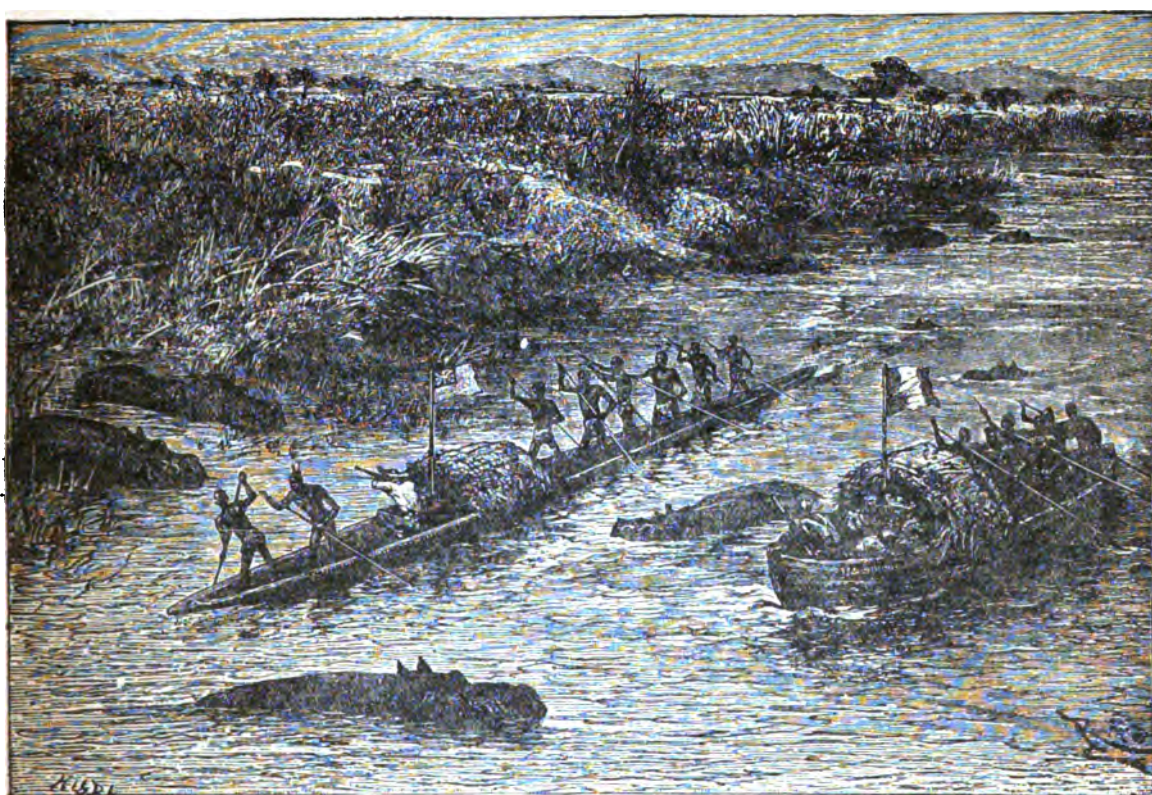


STANLEY'S MARCH FROM KASONGE.



gathers both slaves and ivory. To convey his booty he keeps a steamer, named *Stanley*, plying between the Falls and Yambuya, though not running regularly, from which latter station the ivory and slaves are sent either up the Aruwimi river and thence by way of the lake regions to Egypt or Zanzibar, or are conveyed down the Congo in large canoes, eighty or one hundred feet in length.

The immense influence, and especially the power which Tipo Tib possessed in this large region, made his friendship absolutely necessary to Stanley, for he had the ability to destroy the expedition at a single blow, or by rendering such



TRAVELLING BY CANOE ON THE UPPER CONGO.

assistance as was at his command, to insure its success. Therefore when Stanley found the cunning raider at Zanzibar, he at once obtained an interview and sought to establish friendly relations. It was not long after this meeting before Stanley learned of Tipo Tib's intention of making another raid along the Congo, which the explorer knew the small garrisons at the several stations could not prevent, and which in fact threatened their own destruction. To prevent this and to save his expedition, Stanley entered into a contract with the great Arab by which Tipo was to furnish 700 carriers to convey supplies and also act as a military escort for the expedition from Stanley Falls to Wadelai.





A BAYOKA FEAST OF BANANA BEER.



Stanley did not really expect Tipo Tib to carry out the terms of this contract, for he well knew the treacherous character of the villainous raider, but he rightly expected that the contract would serve the purpose of a compact of friendship, and that while thus avoiding his opposition to the expedition, would also prevent the intended raid upon the Congo stations.

The results prove that Stanley had correctly estimated the value of this contract. Tipo Tib did accompany the expedition as far as Stanley Falls, but here he halted with promises to furnish an escort when the camp at Yambuya, comprising the rear column, should be ready to move. But how he broke this promise will be seen hereafter.



## CHAPTER XXI.

### THE INTRENCHED CAMP AT YAMBUYA.



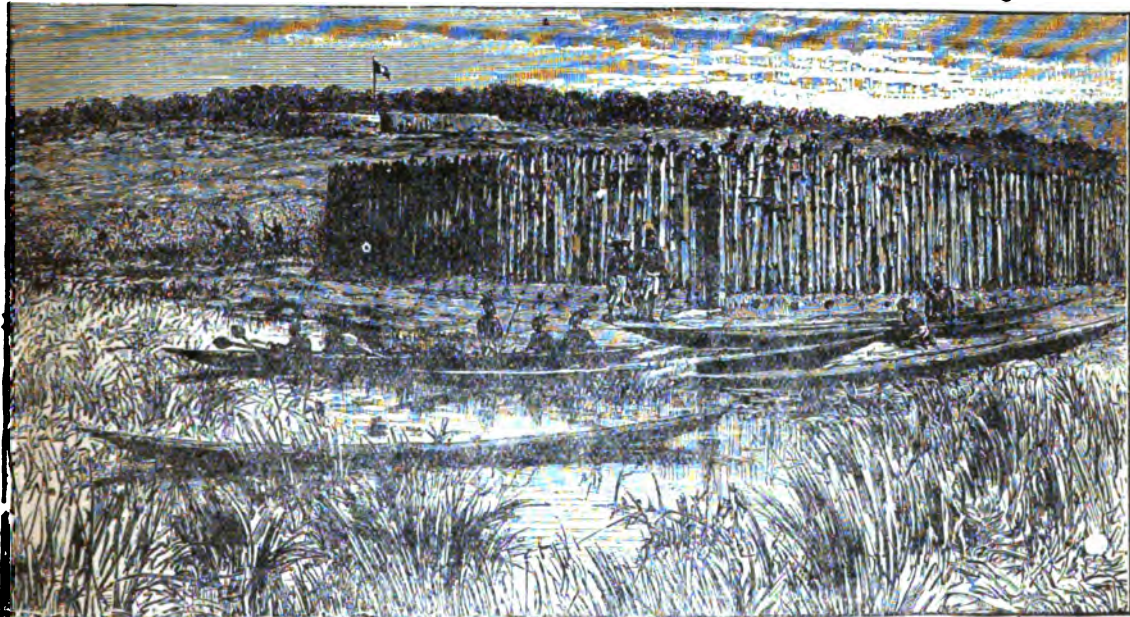
ON the 15th of June, Stanley, having returned from Stanley Falls, disappointed in securing the seven hundred carriers promised by Tipo Tib, made his permanent camp at Yambuya, near the mouth of the Aruwimi, which he caused to be intrenched and made the base for his supplies. Tipo Tib had renewed his promise to furnish the required number of carriers in a month, giving specious excuses why he was unable to immediately comply with the terms of his contract. Being for this reason unable to move the whole of his force at once, and anxious to push on without delay to the rescue of Emin Pasha, who was believed to be in a dangerous situation, Stanley divided his command into two columns. With one-half his force, he decided to move as quickly as possible, leaving the rear column in command of Major Barttelot with his lieutenants, Ward, Jameson, Bonny and Troup. Full instructions were left with Barttelot, who Stanley thought would be able to follow him within a month, at which time he expected Tipo Tib would supply the necessary carriers.

Mr. J. R. Werner, an engineer in the service of the Congo Free State, who was a visitor to Yambuya, describes the fort which was constructed by Lieut. Stairs and Mr. Jameson, as follows :

"This fort, containing all the stores as well as the huts of the Europeans, was an enclosure some thirty yards square, surrounded by a strong palisade of sticks or poles, from two to three inches in diameter, and twelve to fifteen feet in length. These were fixed as closely together as possible, just leaving room to insert the muzzle of a gun between them. Facing the river the palisade was planted on the edge of an almost vertical descent of fifty feet, rendering that side of the stronghold unassailable; but on the other three sides a stage was erected six feet from the ground, so that two rows of men could bring their guns into use at the same time, the palisade being high enough to afford cover for the upper row. Opposed to natives who fight with spears and arrows, this arrangement would have been complete; but in an engagement with Arabs, who have rifles and double-barrel shot-guns, the men would, of course, have been too much exposed. For provision against this emergency, an embankment five feet high had been thrown up against the outside of the palisades, composed of clay taken from a trench which surrounded the whole, and was from time to time filled with water. There is no regular rainy season in this part of Africa. Heavy showers fall at uncertain intervals, usually every few days; so that the trench was not only useful in the matter of defence, but could be relied upon for water, in case the camp was cut off from the river. On the land side, nearest the



adjacent Arab camp, were two semicircular redoubts, through which the defenders would have opened a flank fire on any party attempting to approach the trench. There were five huts inside the enclosure, three of which were occupied by the Europeans and half filled with stores; the fourth was used as a mess-room, much space, however, being filled up with donkeys' stalls, spades, hoes, and various other articles and implements necessary for the expedition. The fifth, on the occasion of Mr. Werner's visit, was occupied by Mr. Troup, who was very ill, and eventually, as will be remembered, had to return home. Supplementing these five huts was a galley and four smaller erections for servants and other natives. The two entrances to the enclosure were about three feet wide, and defended by a door formed of planks made from the bottoms of large canoes.



FORT YAMBUYA.

They were hinged at the top, and kept open during the day by having their lower ends supported on stout poles. It required four or five men to raise and close them. At night they were watched by a proper guard. The trench was crossed by means of planks, which formed a kind of primitive drawbridge. The south side of the enclosure was defended only by a palisade, being covered by the men's camp, a second enclosure, longer than the first, round which the palisade and trench were continued. Within this outer enclosure were the numerous small grass huts occupied by the men, and its southern end was in a line with the foot of the last rapid in the river. Among the huts were several of the conical-roofed native huts, representing all that remained of the village which had already been burnt by the Arabs. Around the entire stockade the bush had been cleared away, so as to leave no cover for enemies approaching from the land side. The clearing had been extended on the north for some distance up the river, and formed an esplanade."

Stanley left Yambuya on the 28th of June, 1887, by way of the Aruwimi river, over an untrodden path through an unexplored country, with his compass as a guide, for Lake Albert N'yanza, on whose shores he hoped to find and rescue Emin Pasha. The parting between those that started on this perilous journey and those who were left behind was both impressive and affecting, for in that dark region, infested by savages and the yet more to be dreaded foe that lurks in fens, morasses and miasmatic swamps, who might speak a lightsome *au revoir* when separation by death appeared most probable? But if the parting had in it the elements of sadness, it was only a portent of real sorrows and death, which was to be a fulfilment of the gloomiest misgivings, and a fatal ending of the hopes and ambitions of those composing the rear guard.

Stanley marched off, though sad at heart, yet resolute in purpose, kissing his hand to Barttelot as long as he remained in sight, and soon the advancing cavalcade had passed out of view up the Aruwimi river.

The feeling of dread of consequences, though considerable, was somewhat relieved by the belief that Barttelot would soon receive the aid promised by Tipo Tib and be able to move after his chief, though it must be confessed that at no time did either Stanley or Barttelot repose the fullest confidence in the treacherous Arab. But after the advance column had departed, Barttelot set about establishing his camp and kept well employed for several days apportioning the labors of his men, drilling his small force of soldiers and enforcing sanitary regulations. The country about Yambuya was generally level, or slightly undulating, with low hills rising about five miles from the Aruwimi shores. There was considerable game to be found in the well-wooded hills, chiefly antelopes, spring-boks, buffaloes and occasionally leopards, lions, elephants and rhinoceri. These grazed in the rich pasturage of the low lands, but sought the woods for shade, where they were more easily hunted. Therefore after the camp was completed and thorough order established, which was not accomplished for some weeks, Barttelot and Jameson went out for a hunt, being accompanied by a half dozen natives as guides.

#### A RHINOCEROS IN PURSUIT OF THE HUNTERS.

The two met with such poor success the first day that with great discouragement they started on their return to camp; but on the way they met a native from a neighboring village who reported having that morning seen a white rhinoceros in a grassy range about two miles distant. This news had such an exciting effect that the hunters engaged the native to guide them to the spot, and off they set at once in search of the royal game.

It was now growing late in the afternoon, and it was felt that the game must be quickly located if the hunt were concluded before nightfall. The spot indicated was soon gained and the beaters sent out in a semicircle to drive the tall grass. Barttelot was on the extreme right, a little in front of the beaters, while Jameson took the left. In a little while a shout went up which was unmistakable in its import, and in a few seconds out dashed a huge rhinoceros



that made off to the left in a sharp run, followed by the beaters. As the animal came near Jameson he fired at its head, but his aim was not good, for the bullet struck the creature's long, sharp horn, tearing away a portion of its weapon. But the shot served to swerve the rhinoceros, which now turned and came charging to the right, and dashed right through the beaters, one of whom fell in a frantic endeavor to get out of the way. Fortunately the beast did not attack his prostrate foe but kept on in the direction of Barttelot, who now fired at it but missed.

In the next instant the rhinoceros was charging him, and the hunter now turned suddenly from the sport to the more serious business of seeking a retired position where he could avoid annoyance. It was of course a selfish prompting, but it stood him well in need, for a good pair of legs at that juncture was as important as their vigorous use, a fact which Barttelot, better than the reader, perhaps, thoroughly understood. At all events, he ran with amazing speed, and succeeded in gaining a friendly bush, by which the rhinoceros, quite as much frightened as the hunter, passed like an engine with the throttle wide open. It ran on with undiminished speed until it gained the woods and there disappeared, leaving the hunters the one satisfaction of thanks for their escape as a solace for their having to return to camp without any game.

#### ADVENTURE WITH A BUFFALO.

The unsatisfactory ending of their first hunt about Yambuya did not wholly subdue the ambition of Barttelot and Jameson, though it is more than probable that they had no special longing to avenge themselves upon the rhinoceros family. But in a few days after the untoward event just related another hunt was projected in which Mr. Bonny and Barttelot, with a goodly guard of Soudanese, concluded to participate, leaving Ward, Jameson and Troup in charge of the camp.

The party started out early in the morning, expecting to be gone two days. They had provided themselves with plenty of ammunition, but expecting to confine their sport to antelopes, they took only 44-calibre guns. This time, too, they crossed the river, having heard that several miles from Yambuya, on the south side, there was a beautiful park-like region in which spring-boks and

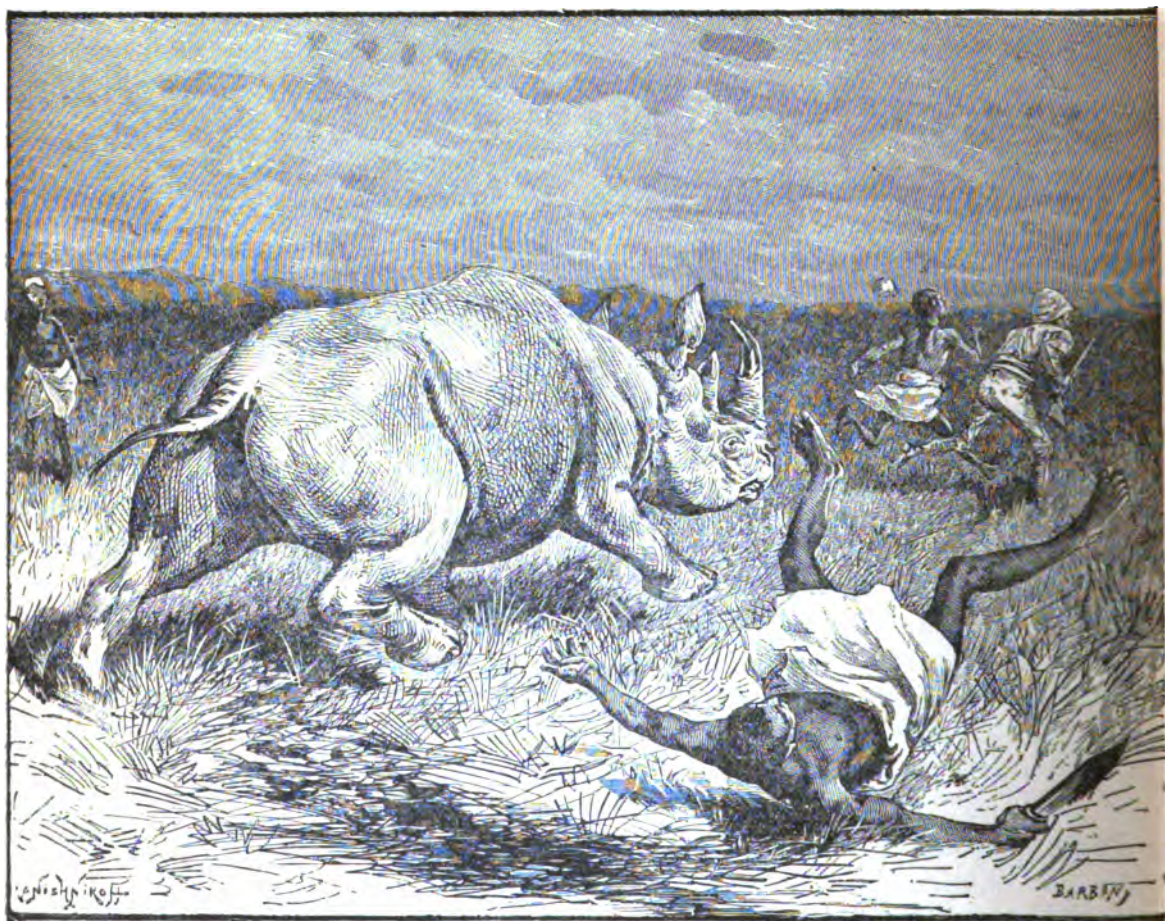


MAJOR EDWARD M. BARTELLOT.



antelopes were plentiful. Nor were they disappointed; in fact, game of nearly every kind was found, and the party had royal sport. Several antelopes were bagged, and these would prove a great blessing at the camp, where meat had become very scarce, so that the lack of it had indeed been seriously felt.

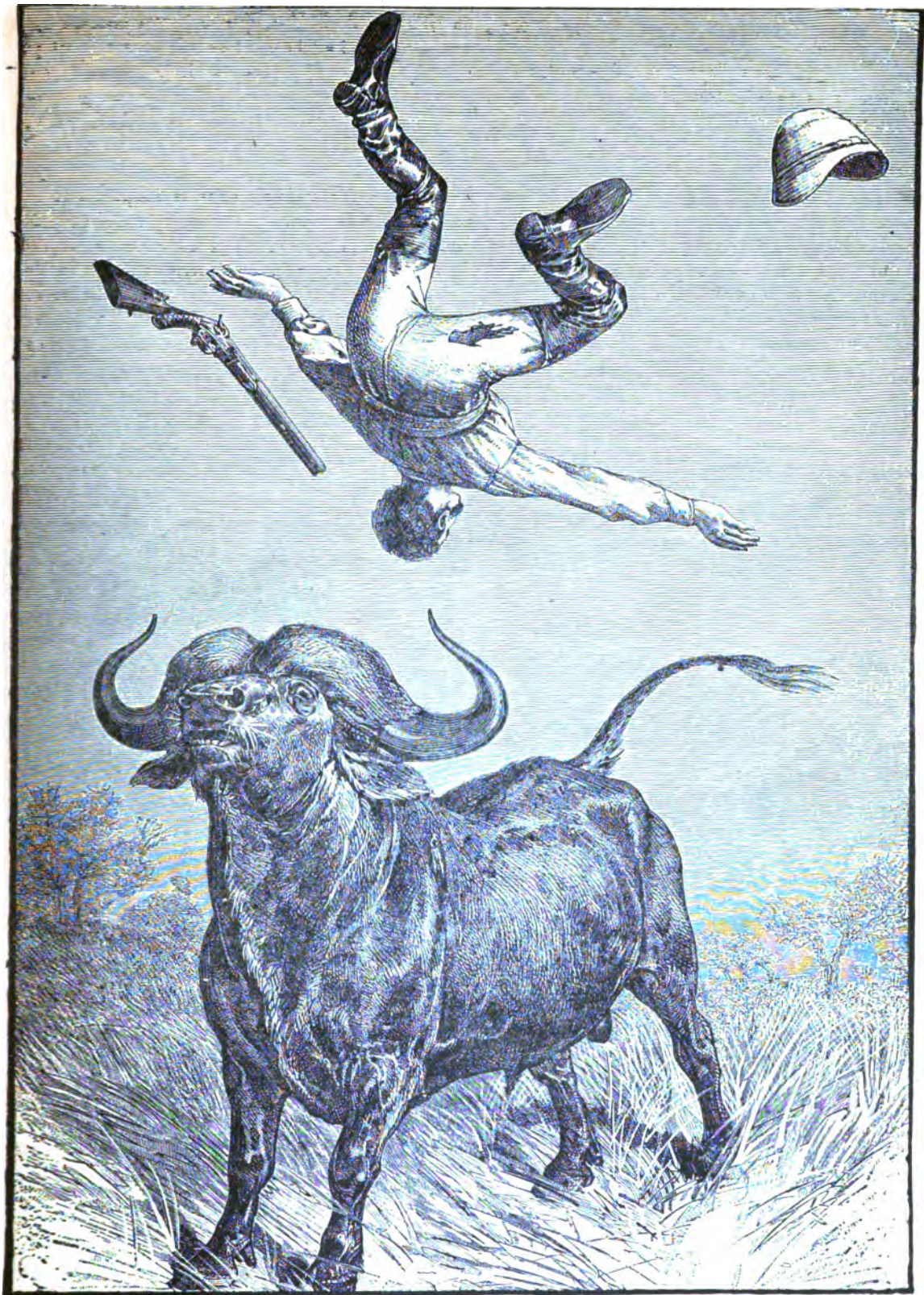
Towards noon of the second day, when the hunters were taking a rest beside a brook, one of the beaters reported the presence of a small herd of buffaloes near by. Four of the beaters had been sent back to the camp with as many antelopes, and only four more remained with Barttelot and Bonny.



A SUDDEN CHANGE OF BASE.

These were directed to surround the herd and to reach elevations from which they could signal the location of the game. These instructions were faithfully carried out, and in a short time one of the men was seen standing on an ant-hill, waving his hands as an indication that he had sighted the buffaloes. Both the hunters were provided with field glasses, through which they were able to clearly observe the beater and to understand his gestures. They therefore spread out and advanced towards a depression in the park, where the game was found to be standing in a shallow pond, whisking their tails as a

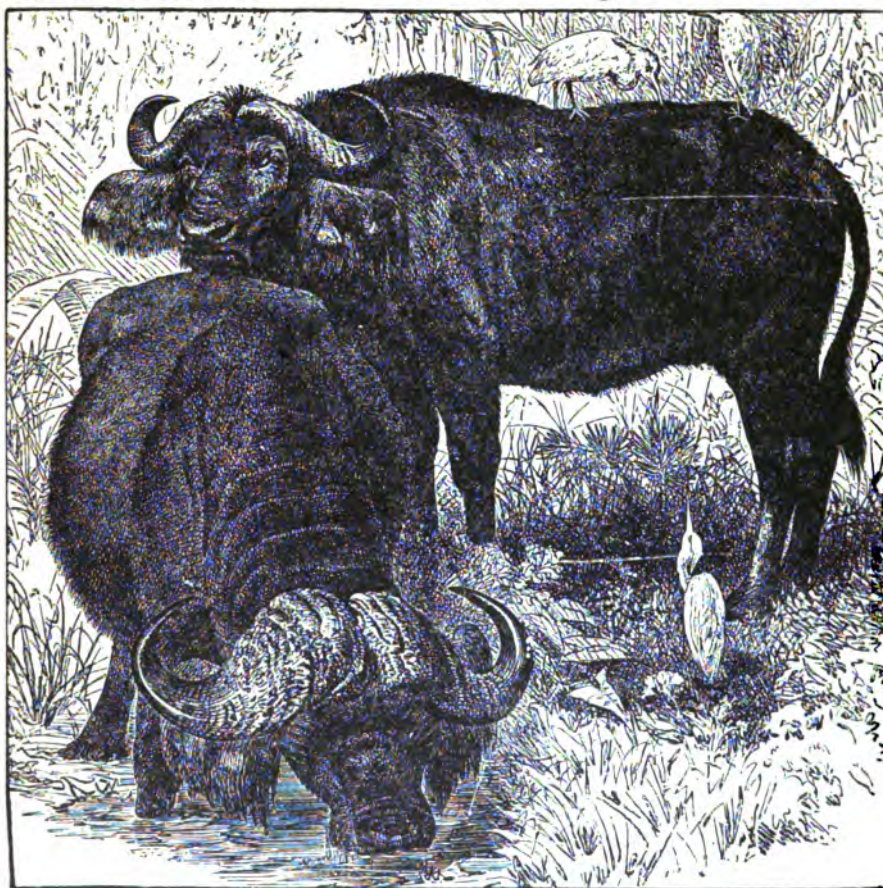




BARTHELOT'S ADVENTURE WITH A BUFFALO.



protection against the flies. Bonny was the first to fire, and succeeded in wounding a cow, which shambled off into the high grass evidently badly hurt. The shot alarmed the herd, that now scattered and dashed in every direction, one large bull passing so near Barttelot that, in the excitement, even by firing at random, he struck the animal in the side and brought it down. In the next instant, however, the bull was again on its feet, foaming at the mouth and presenting a picture of ferocity and madness. Barttelot fired a second shot as the enraged animal stood for a moment as if trying to locate its enemy, and at the discharge down it dropped, as if stricken instantly dead. Barttelot now rushed forward to cut its throat, having never before hunted buffaloes, and



AFRICAN BUFFALO.

therefore not understanding the danger that attends approaching even a dying animal of this kind. He carried his gun at a "trail-arms," least suspecting any peril, when, having come within a few feet of the apparently dead buffalo, it arose with the most surprising celerity, and before Barttelot could use his gun the savage creature rushed at him, and with a tremendous dash caught him fairly on its horns and tossed

him into the air. This one extraordinary endeavor, made in its last throes, seemed to blind the infuriated animal, else Barttelot would not have lived to die afterwards by an assassin's bullet. So savage had been the toss that the hunter fell behind the animal, but he was so injured as to be wholly unconscious, and thus he lay at the mercy of the wounded bull. Instead of using its advantage, however, the buffalo seemed dazed, and stood pawing the earth, while blood was pouring out of its nostrils. Bonny, fearing that something



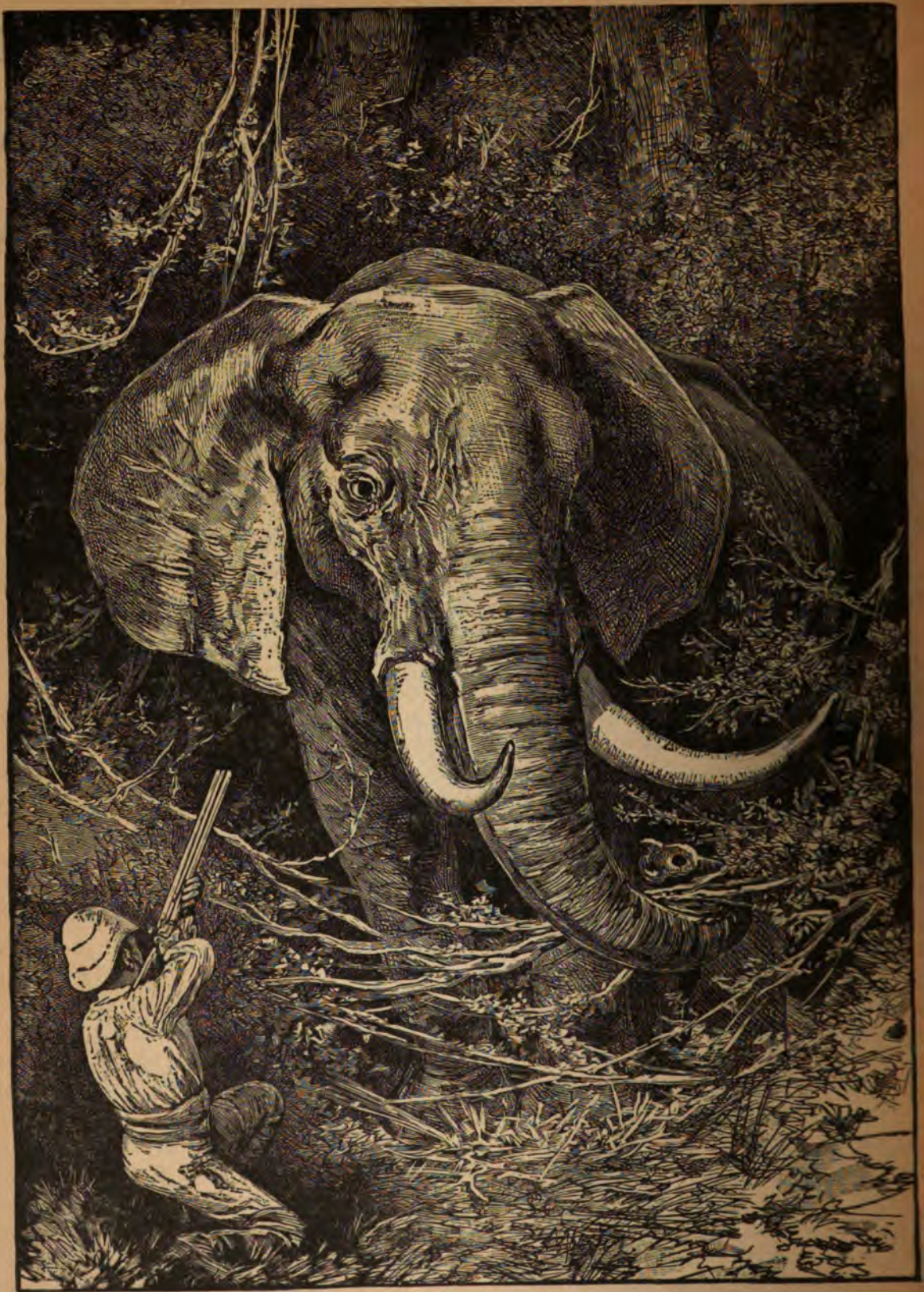
had happened, as he could get no reply to his shoutings, though he had not seen the accident, now ran in the direction from whence came the sound of Barttelot's last shot, and was just in time to send another bullet into the buffalo as it was sinking on its knees. He then gave his attention to his comrade, whose prostrate form he now discovered. Bonny was a surgeon and physician, and was connected with the medical staff of the expedition, hence he knew just what to do. Having a brandy flask on his person, he used its contents to restore the wounded hunter, and then made an examination of his hurts. It was found that Barttelot had sustained a severe shock, besides a deep wound in the left thigh where the bull's horn had struck him. Moreover, he complained of severe internal pains, so that it was for a while believed that he was dangerously hurt. The beaters were called in, and a litter constructed on which the wounded man was carried to the brook beside which the party had a short while before rested. Here the wound was carefully washed and then bandaged by pieces torn from Mr. Bonny's shirt. Barttelot now seemed much better, and it was thought expedient to carry him back to Yambuya, even though the march was a long one. He stood the journey much better than Bonny had expected; but it was nearly a month before his wound healed sufficiently to allow him to resume his active duties about the camp.

#### AN ELEPHANT BAGGED.

A short while after Barttelot's disastrous hunt, an elephant was discovered by some natives within two miles of the camp, and Bonny, who had been somewhat successful as a hunter, set out to bag it, if possible. The spot where it had been located was a most uninviting place for a hunter, being in an almost impassable thicket of dense brush and wait-a-bit thorns. But an enthusiastic hunter, like the devoted lover, makes no pause before obstacles, so Mr. Bonny did not hesitate to seek the giant game in such a covert.

The several beaters taken with him were less determined, however, and it appeared for a time as if he must be his own beater. Several hours were thus spent in a fruitless search for the game, but late in the evening the elephant was located under the shade of a large tamarind tree, around which was a very dense thicket. To move in such a place was to give the alarm, hence Bonny induced the beaters to make a wide circuit and come in on the opposite side, so that in case the elephant retreated it would run in the direction of the hunter. The plan was so successful that in half an hour after the beaters went to execute the order, Bonny heard the footfalls of the rapidly-approaching game. It was a truly royal brute, in its stupendous majesty, and the incarnation of terrible power, before which any but a brave heart indeed must quail. But Bonny was nerved for the opportunity. He had a splendid double-barrelled rifle, carrying a three-ounce ball, and had implicit confidence in his steadiness of nerve, as well as his knowledge of the vital places in an elephant's head. Therefore he quietly waited, well hidden by the brush, until the huge form came so near as to fairly rise above him. At this moment the great beast had







recovered from its alarm, finding that there were no pursuers, and at the moment that it made its full appearance the elephant was walking slowly and playfully tossing its trunk, wholly ignorant of the danger that confronted its path.

As the ponderous creature came within a few feet of the hunter, who had dropped on one knee, the rifle was raised and fired just as the elephant turned its head fairly to the left. This enabled Mr. Bonny to reach the oval soft place in the skull just slightly in front and below the ear. The elephant stopped, trembled violently and then staggered, but recovered itself and trumpeted shrilly, though it was not able to run. Mr. Bonny now waited a favorable opportunity, seeing that the animal was too badly wounded to make a charge, until he could



NATIVES RUSHING TO DIVIDE THE ELEPHANT.

fire the second barrel into the right side of the head, at which shot the huge beast fell over with great force and immediately expired.

As soon as news of Mr. Bonny's success was sent back to camp, a large crowd came flocking out to see the remains, and their numbers were speedily swelled by an immense collection of natives. Mr. Bonny secured the tusks, which were a beautiful pair, and then gave the gigantic body over to the savages, who attacked it with everything they could procure that would cut, and soon carried it away in pieces, not even rejecting the entrails. The four feet were secured, however, by the Zanzibaris, who took them to camp, and prepared what is esteemed a delightful repast of grilled elephant's feet.

## CHAPTER XXII.

### AFFAIRS GROW DESPERATE AT YAMBUYA CAMP.



**D**URING the long, long absence of Stanley, affairs at Yambuya camp became finally both critical and tedious in the extreme. Stanley had left the last of June, promising to return in November. But month after month had passed beyond that date and no news of him had reached the camp. The few hunting diversions described had not sufficed to relieve the desperate monotony of the camp; the same wearying rounds of duty had palled on the members, food had become scarce, the rain and a long season of gloomy weather had chilled the spirit of the bravest, game had become so rare that the hunt was no longer enjoyed, while absence of news from Stanley, now so long overdue, served to intensify the fears and privations of the camp. But to these troubles must be added others equally great arising out of the evident treachery of Tipo Tib in his refusal to supply Barttelot with the carriers he had promised.

#### A SLAUGHTER OF THE NATIVES.

The camp at Yambuya was therefore frequently monotonous, and life at times became almost insupportable because of long enforced idleness and weary, weary waiting for Stanley's return or the promised aid of Tipo Tib. But this condition was not invariable, for at times most exciting events transpired to lend the charm of intense excitement. On February 4th, 1888, Ward writes from the Aruwimi camp as follows: "Jameson's third anniversary of his marriage. We were not able to do much in the celebration line. The Arabs started firing at early dawn, and then set on fire the village they attacked (in the neighborhood). It was a pretty, if sad, sight to see the place burning. The Arabs killed eight men and brought in the head of one who must have been a fine fellow. Jameson and I sketched it, and we shall pickle, salt and preserve it, so that the head can be mounted. Another head they lost—dropped it in the river. The unhappy natives in hundreds took to their canoes and made for up-stream, but are being slaughtered by the Arabs who occupy an island in the midst of almost impassable rapids."

But with these horrible sights, which were occasionally witnessed, there were other things that relieved the tediousness, though they were the aggravating results of the seemingly endless waiting and delusive promises. The scarcity of food and the demoralization of a long-delayed advance, together with the slave-hunting raids of the Arabs, made the maintenance of discipline less easy as it became more important. Major Barttelot seems to have been forced into severely punishing his insubordinate followers—an impression gained by reading one of Ward's letters written from Yambuya. He says:

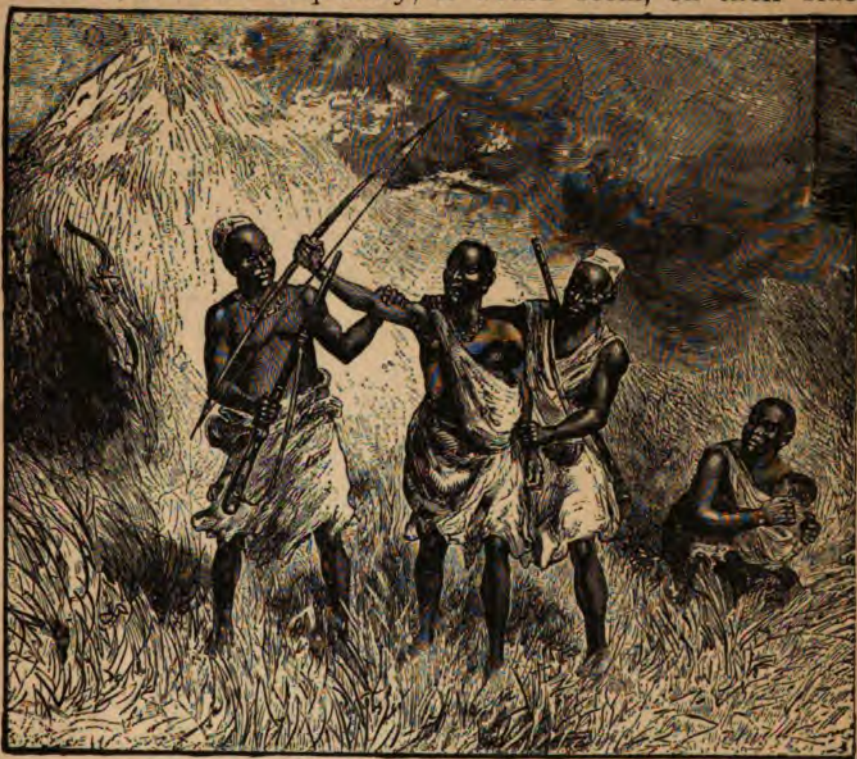


"Bangari, who stole some goat-meat, and who had 200 lashes with a *chicotte*, and who has to parade daily in heavy chains for punishment, has grown tired of it, and succeeded in getting away with his guard's gun and twelve rounds of ammunition. He is a very hardened scoundrel, and I should not be surprised if he has concealed himself near by in the forest, so as to have a shot at one of us as we walk up and down in the evening outside the post."

#### ARAB SLAVE RAIDERS.

The Arabs in their raids do not have it always their own way. They fall now and then, and after the fighting are used to furnish forth cannibalistic feasts. Providence, however, is most frequently, it would seem, on their side.

There are no instances more pathetic in the history of slave dealing than the inhuman hunting, burnings and human captures by the Arabs of Central Africa. But occasionally they meet a just retribution. Under date of February 5, Ward writes: "This morning some of the raiders came down from up river, with news of a defeat of ten of their number, cut to pieces by the natives, who sought



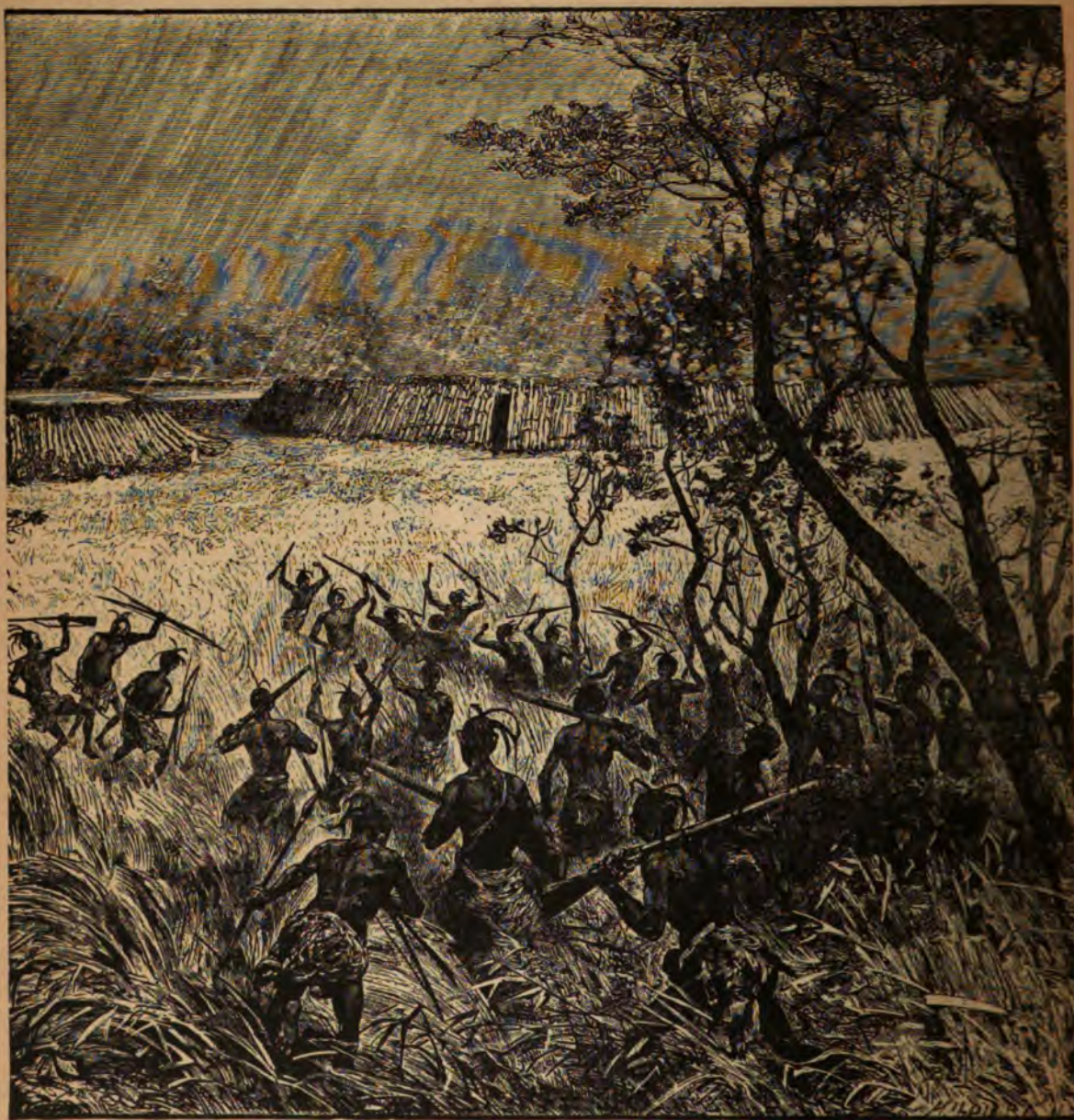
SELIM'S MEN DESTROYING VILLAGES AND TAKING SLAVES.

refuge in their canoes above the rapids. Selim and his men started off, some by the bank and some in canoes, to continue their awful work. They returned in the evening, having only killed two natives." On the next day Selim informed Ward that 200 or more of the natives escaped in the darkness down the river. Two canoes had not got away, and he was able to kill two of the occupants. Arriving at the spot where his ten men had fallen, he found their fingers tied in strings to the scrub of the river bank, and some cooking pots containing portions of their limbs and bones."

On March 24th Major Barttelot decided to send Ward to the coast with dispatches and cable messages for the committee in London. Writing of this commission, he says: "I am to start in five days. Barttelot returned from the



Stanley Falls, Jameson gone to Kanongo. Both have been very ill at the Falls, and indeed Barttelot looks awfully bad. Very sorry for him." At the time stated Ward started and made a remarkably quick trip to Boma, arriving there April 28th, though he met many perils on the way. Writing from Boma,



SELIM'S FORCES ADVANCING TO RAID A NATIVE VILLAGE.

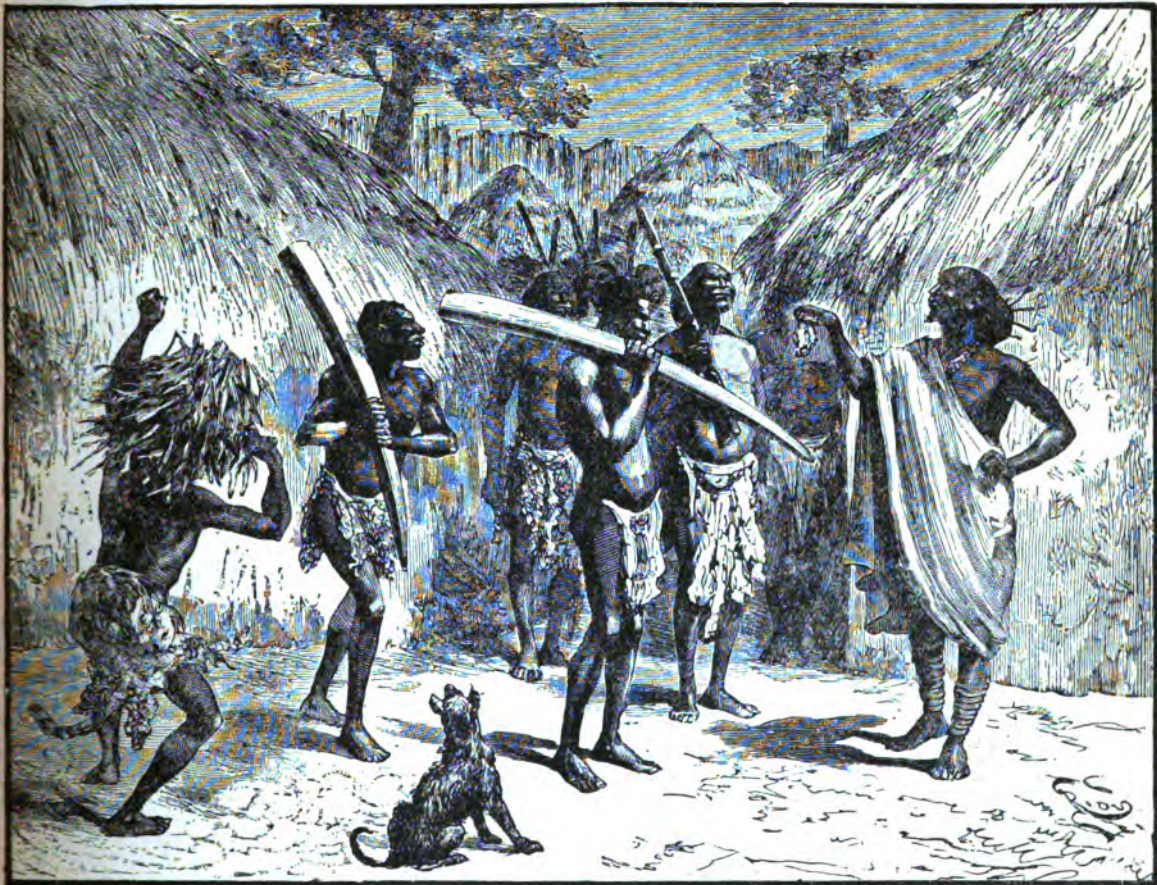
in a reflective mood, he says: "What fatality there seems to be connected with all Europeans who had to go to the Falls! First, Brung shot himself; second, a Belgian officer died on his way up; third, Werter, who went home very ill; fourth, Deane, who underwent awful perils; fifth, Du Bois was



drowned; sixth, Vanderwelde, who died the other day at Leopoldville en route for the Falls; seventh, Spelmann, his companion, got sick and had to go home to save his life; eighth, Amelot, who died on his way to Zanzibar."

Since Ward made this sorrowful recapitulation Deane has died, Barttelot has been assassinated, Jameson has died of fever, and Troup had to go back to England, as did Spelmann, to seek recovery that was impossible in Africa.

To these perplexities must be added the oppressive circumstances of the camp surroundings, in which savagery in its worse than imbruted phases was



AN IVORY TRADER.

conspicuous, for to other abhorrent practices of the natives that of cannibalism was frequent if not common.

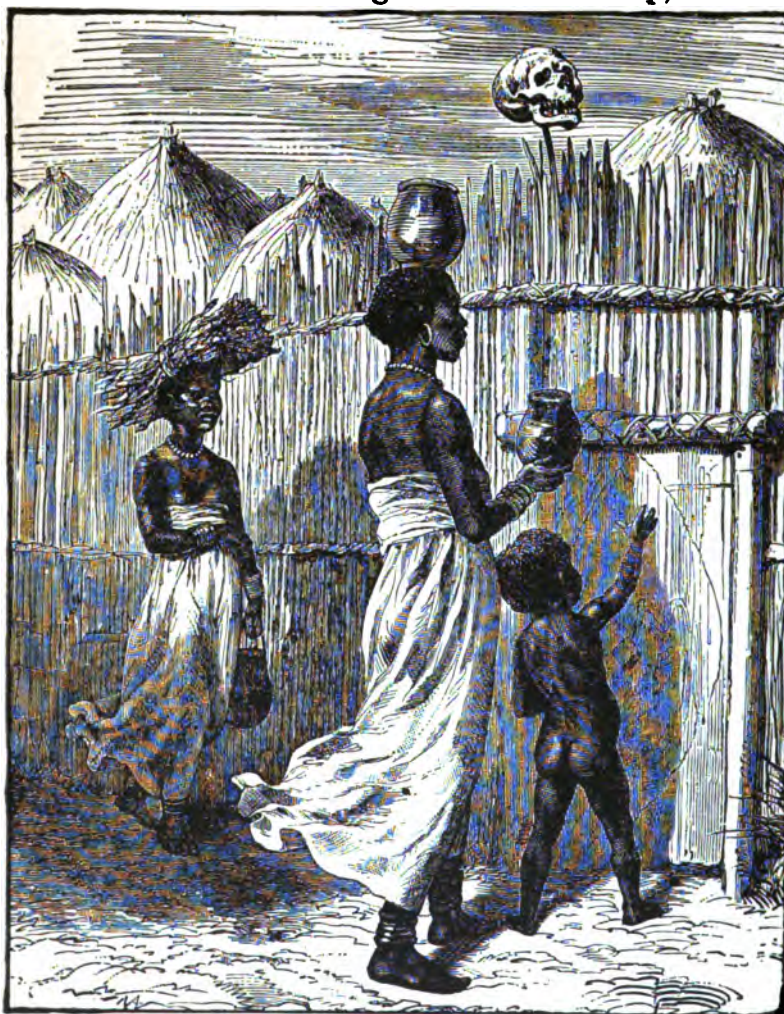
#### CANNIBALISM ON THE CONGO.

In one of Mr. Stanley's letters, found elsewhere in this book, he makes his defence against many cruel and unjust charges, and among other things he enters a specific denial of the open acts of cannibalism which Rev. Wilmot Brooke claims that certain English travellers told him came under their own observation while travelling among the Manyema and other Congo tribes. The Manyema have always been regarded as cannibals, the practice of killing



and eating human beings being quite as common among them as it is among the Fans and Makkarikas. Stanley has entertained the idea that the Man-yuemas have been in contact with Arabs so long that they have abandoned cannibalism, as have others of the Congo tribes. But in this opinion he is evidently mistaken, as the following letter from Ward, written at the intrenched camp at Yambuya, February 26th, 1888, will clearly show. He says:

"I went this morning to Nassibu's camp, which is situated about an hour's



THE WALLS OF NASSIBU'S CAMP.

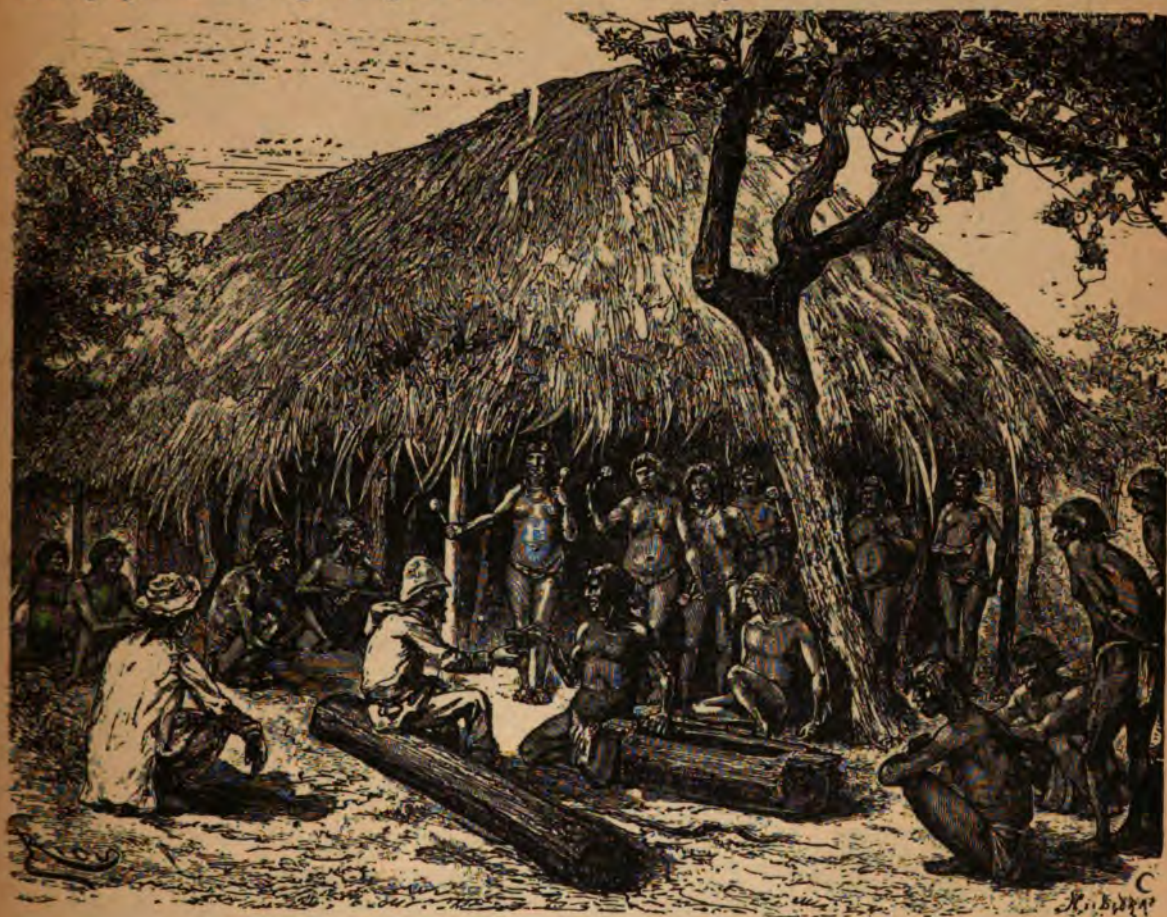
march from our own camp on the Falls (Aruwimi). He received me with much ceremony, and at my request drummed to the natives, who were in two clearings at the back of his camp. A number came and went through the usual demonstrations at seeing a white man. Among them were about a dozen young women, with pleasing countenances and beautifully-moulded limbs. They would have made worthy models for a sculptor. I selected a man as a model for myself, but it was very difficult to induce him to stand still while I sketched him. I then started for their village with Majuta, Mr. Jameson's boy, carrying my bag, and Fida, a native woman, who has

been with the Arabs for some time, to interpret from Swahili into the native language.

"Almost the first man I saw was carrying four lumps of human flesh (with the skin on) on a stick, and through Fida I found that they had killed a man this morning and had divided the flesh. She took me over to a house where some half-dozen men were squatting, and showed me more meat on sticks in front of a fire; it was frizzling and the yellow fat was dripping from it,



whilst all around was a strong odor which reminded me of the smell given out by grilled elephant meat. It was not yet the general meal-time, they told me, but one or two of the natives cut off pieces of the frizzling flesh and ate it, laughing at Majuta, who, being disgusted, held his nose and backed into the brush. I spoke with the natives, through Fida, and they told me from what parts the meat was cut. One tall, sturdy native was quietly leaning against a tree and picking off pieces of flesh from a thigh bone with good relish. Other dainty joints were grilling at the fire. I send you a sketch of the scene, and



IN NASSIBU'S CAMP.

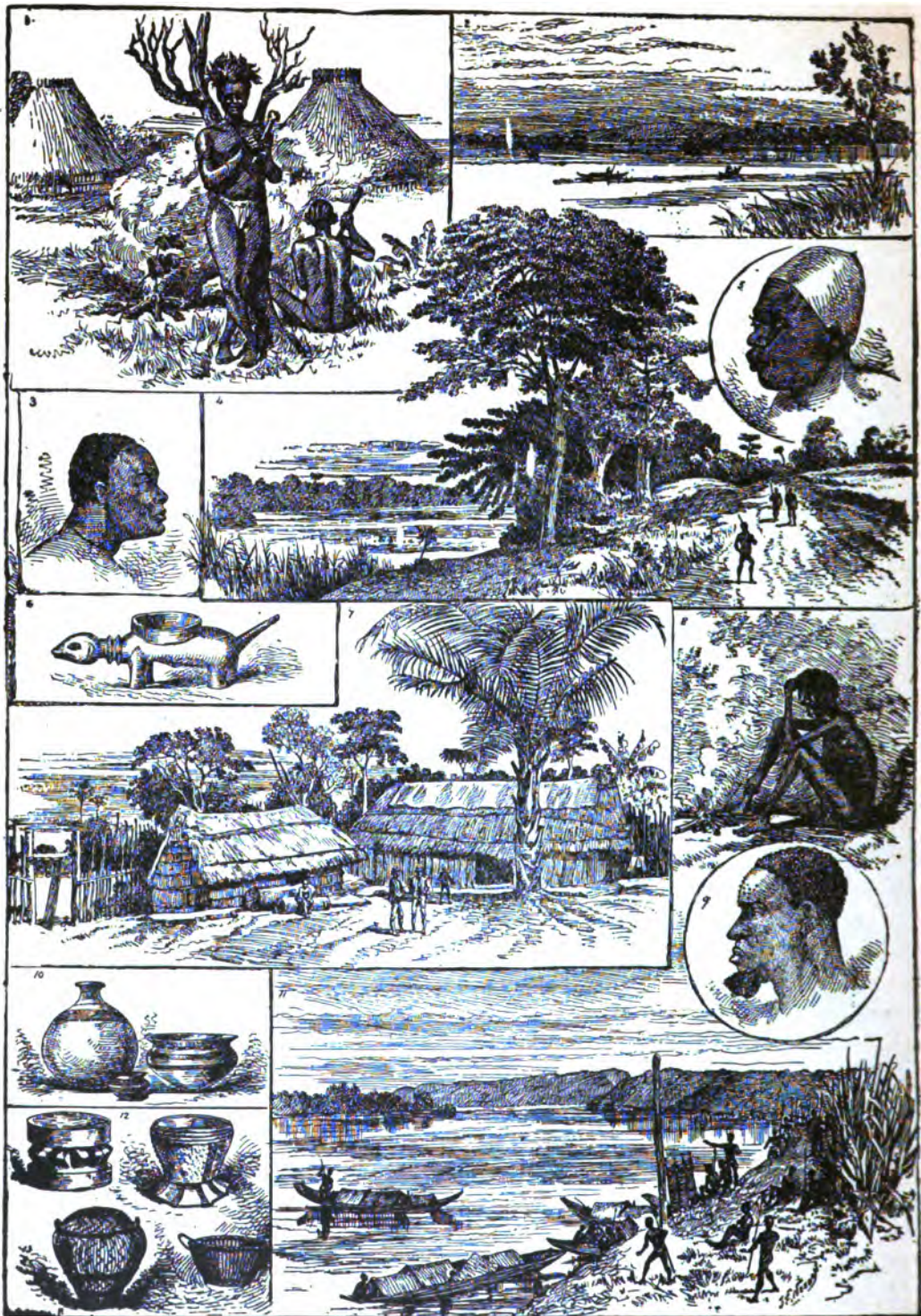
some day hope to tell you all the horrible details of cannibal habits and customs which prevail in this strange country."

## PITIABLE SIGHTS IN CAMP.

The terrible anxieties that harassed the camp by reason of Stanley's protracted absence and the horrors of cannibalism as described are shown by numerous letters from Ward, from which we are permitted to print the following extracts. On February 8th (1888) he writes:

"I went to Selim's camp to-day, and they told me that two more of their





1. Sketch of scene in village near Stanley's Camp on the Aruwimi.  
2. Portrait of one of the natives of the Congo, at the Camp.  
3. Portrait of one of the natives of the Congo.  
4. The Port of Stanley, looking up the river from the Camp.

5. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth.  
6. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.  
7. A corner of the Camp at Stanley.  
8. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth.

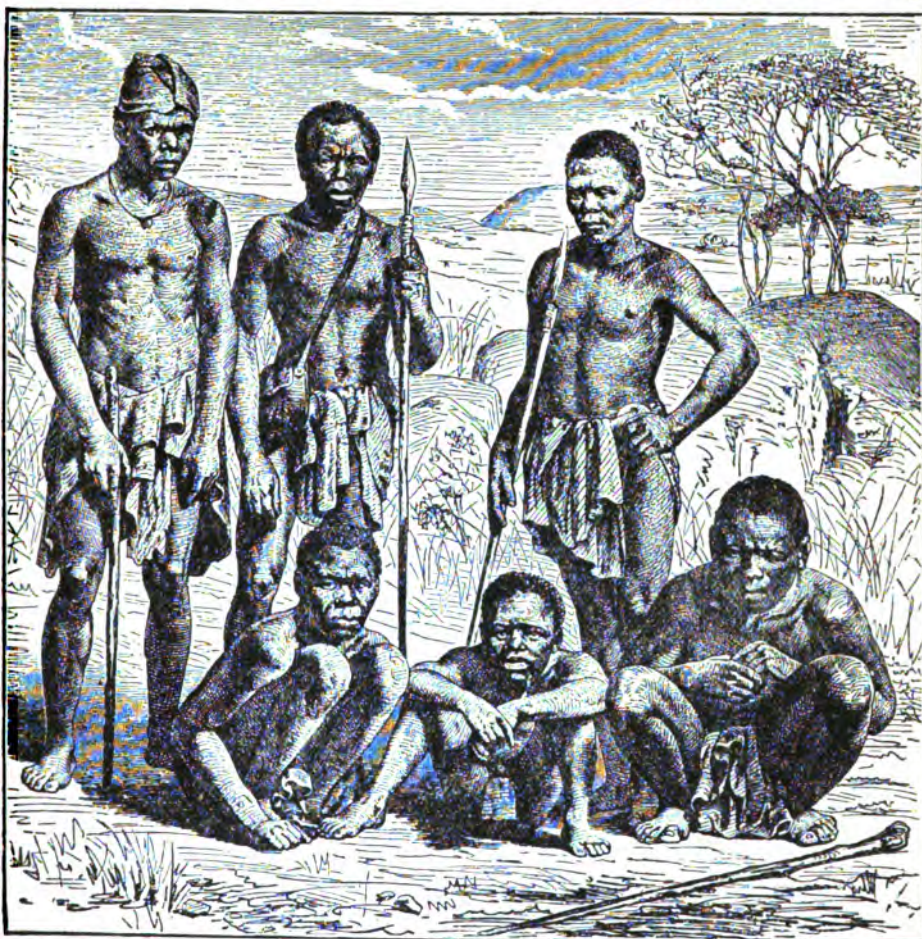
9. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.  
10. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.  
11. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.  
12. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.  
13. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.  
14. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.  
15. Sketch of the Aruwimi's mouth, looking from Stanley's Camp.

# WARD'S SKETCHES ON THE CONGO AND ARUWIMI RIVERS.



men (Arabs) had been caught and eaten by the natives, whose village they had raided and burnt some weeks ago. This will probably make Selim angry, as he went with Barttelot much against his will, and only left a few men and his women. This eternal waiting is awful—waiting for what never comes! Day after day passes; we see no fresh faces, we hear no news. Many of our men are daily growing thinner and weaker, and are dying off. Poor wretches! they lie out in the sun, on the dusty ground, most of them with only a narrow strip of dirty loin-cloth; and all the live-long day they stare into vacancy, and at night gaze at a bit of fire.

"It was a pitiable sight, a few days ago, to see an emaciated man crawl, with the aid of a stick, after a corpse, that was being carried on a pole for interment. He staggered along, poor fellow, and squatted down alongside the newly-made grave and watched the proceedings with large,



MEMBERS OF THE REAR COLUMN.

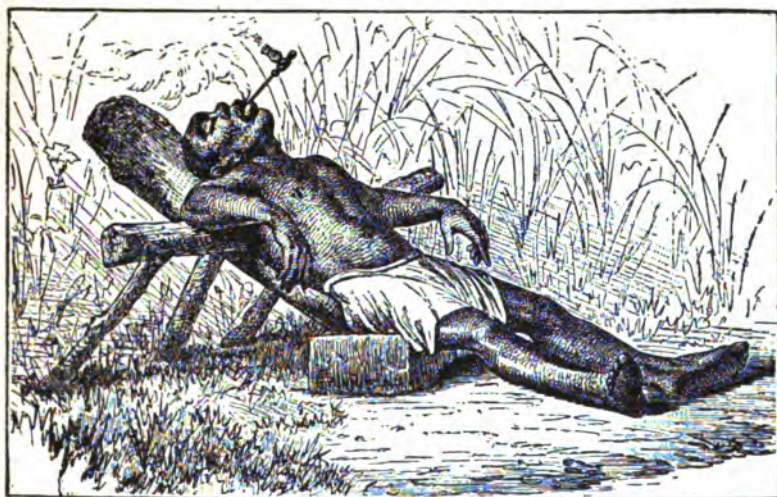
round, sunken eyes, knowing that it would only be a matter of a few days when he himself would be a dead man. He told me in a sepulchral voice, 'Amekwa rapiki angu' (He was my friend). Another poor fellow is a mass of bones, yet persists in doing his work, and every evening staggers into the camp. He has been told to lay up, and that his manioc shall be provided for him, but he refuses, and in replying to my sympathetic remark that he was very thin, he said, 'Yes, only a short time more, master!' Death is written in his face, and just as plainly in the faces of many others in this camp. Almost as many



lives, I fear, will be lost in this philanthropic enterprise as there are lives of Emin Pasha's people to save."

#### THREATS AGAINST BARTELOT'S LIFE.

Ward does not say positively that Tipo Tib is chiefly to blame for this sorry situation, but he frequently refers to the suspicious nature of his delay in supplying the men he had undertaken to provide. On January 18th he writes: "Selim-bin-Mahomed, who has hitherto been most pleasant and agreeable, is now beginning to get 'touchy.' Evidently we shall never get the 700 men Tipo Tib promised us." In another of his letters dated February 8, he seems to forecast poor Barttelot's fate. "To-day," he writes, "I am an orderly officer. An old empty cartridge-box was picked up in the river (Aruwimi) to-day. It was much broken and sodden; it must have been floating down the river for a very long distance. Selim-bin-Mahomed told me this morning that Bungari, the escaped prisoner, had told him, preparatory to escaping, that his



TAKING IT EASY.

life was not worth living, marching up and down in the hot sun all day, and that he knew he would be shot when caught, and that he intended shooting Barttelot dead before he would be captured."

Again he writes: "It is picturesque but dull, and wretched with waiting and hoping for orders to move. Nassibu, an Arab of Tipo Tib's,

visited us, bringing some Stanley Falls rice and a goat. He told us an absurd yarn of Abdullah having seen Stanley. Jameson continues collecting birds and painting them. We sketched the second rapids from below the camp. We have not sufficient medicine, and very little food. The Zanzibaris and Soudanese are suffering seriously, and there are many deaths. This awful delay of news from Stanley bodes misfortune, and we are all compelled to conclude that he has met with trouble and is in difficulties—if not worse. A brave, skilful and determined man, a hero, one hopes, and hopes he may be safe and well."

Ward's letter of January 9th, 1888, reads as follows:

#### "YAMBINGA, INTRENCHED CAMP, ARUWIMI RIVER.

"It seems very strange we have heard nothing of Stanley, who was to have returned (from Lake Albert, whither he went to seek Emin Pasha) last November, and we can only account for his prolonged absence by supposing that he had to go a longer journey from the Albert N'yanza than he had pre-



viously anticipated. If anything has happened to him it will be a bad look-out for the expedition; and I do not know how the relief goods, merchandise and ammunition, seven hundred loads, will ever reach him. There appears to me to be some motive in Tipo Tib's delaying the seven hundred men he promised. It is hardly feasible, his excuse that his men refused to carry our loads on account of their weight. His authority certainly ought to overcome any scruples of that sort, and, besides, \$7500 is very good pay for his Manyuema slaves. There is something at the bottom of it all which we shall perhaps know all about before long."

These fears were not alone occasioned by the mere absence of news, but were increased by a knowledge of Arab treachery. The Arabs were continually harassing the natives by plundering them of slaves and ivory, and in turn the natives were goaded into making reprisals on their foes. Under these conditions it was a difficult matter for the natives to distinguish between Stanley's people and their Arab allies. In this particular, therefore, as in others, Stanley's alliance with Tipo Tib really increased his danger, which fact was well known by Barttelot and his lieutenants.

#### DEATH OF BARTTELOT.

And thus did a sad and demoralizing condition continue to prevail in the camp at Yambuya. The fear for Stanley's safety, added to the sufferings entailed by reason of insufficient food, want of medicine, harrowing scenes and insubordination, finally determined Barttelot to move at all hazards in quest of his long overdue chief. Several counsels were first held, at which Ward, Jameson and Barttelot expressed their conviction that Stanley was dead. Troup, who was in charge of the commissary, alone dissented from this opinion and urged further delay. But Barttelot's anxiety could no longer brook delay. He felt that if his chief were dead, other lieutenants of Stanley's might still be living, and that most likely his aid was urgently needed. Already he had waited too long, and should, some months before, have acted on the discretionary order given him by Stanley. Therefore gathering his command together, he first proceeded down to Stanley Falls to ascertain how many carriers he could obtain from the Arabs there, no longer, however, placing any trust in Tipo Tib. His trip was of no avail, for he could not induce the Arabs or Manyuemas to give him any assistance, though he offered \$7500 for the service.

Returning to Yambuya he resolved to proceed over the route taken by Stanley with the aid of the few men he had at his command, among whom



BUNGARI.



were several Manyemas belonging to Tipo Tib. But when he gave orders to prepare to march, there was open rebellion upon the part of nearly his entire force. Being hot-headed, as Stanley says, he undertook coercive measures, and ordered some to be flogged and others shot. At this there was an uprising, and in the confusion that followed a shot was fired from a musket. No one seemed to know who fired the gun, nor has it since been determined, because the confusion was very great, and several of the men, including Sudanese, Zanzibaris and Manyema, had guns, and no one, if they really knew,



THE KILLING OF BARTELOT.

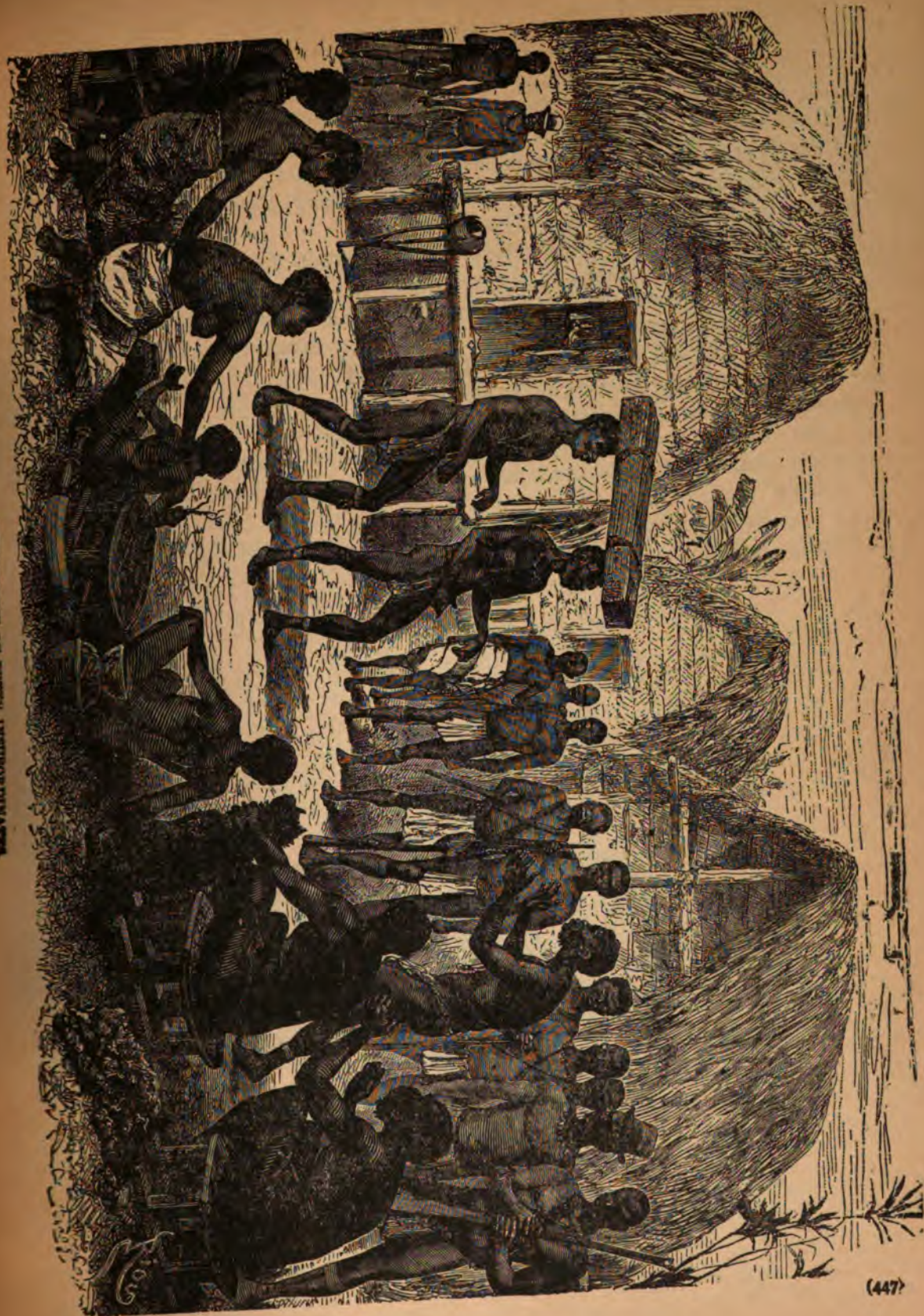
would expose the guilty party. But the result was, alas, too manifest. The bullet had struck poor Barttelot in the back of the head, killing him instantly, so deadly being the shot that he never uttered either word or groan. Thus ended, in deepest shadows, the bright prospects of this young officer, who fell in his enthusiastic devotion to Stanley, and his loyalty to the purposes of the expedition.

#### ABANDONMENT OF YAMBUYA.

Two weeks before this inexpressibly sad event, Jameson died of a fever, no doubt superinduced by his anxieties and the hardships which he had been com-



PUNISHMENT OF PRYTY INSUBORDINATE.



pelled to undergo in common with other members of the expedition. Troup also fell ill and it appeared that he too must die, but seeing that all hope of the rear column proceeding eastward must now be abandoned, he turned his steps homeward and reached England more dead than alive, but ultimately recovered.


Ward, who had, with the other officers, except Troup, and possibly Bonny, believed Stanley was dead, after giving his best efforts to a reorganization of the demoralized rear column, or the few that now remained, left for England, leaving Mr. Bonny, the sole white man now in the camp, in charge. Bonny therefore, finding that all the responsibility was now upon his own shoulders, decided to follow, as nearly as he could, Stanley's written orders to Barttelot, and in pursuance of this resolve he removed the supplies and the few men yet with him to Banalya, estimating that station to be much more secure than Yambuya, besides at this place he was more likely to hear news from Stanley, as traders passed more frequently from Banalya to the lake regions than from Yambuya, or even from Stanley Falls. The wisdom of this removal will presently appear.





## CHAPTER XXIII.

### NEWS FROM STANLEY AND EMIN.

 MONTH after month went by in dreary succession, with no news from Stanley. His departure from Yambuya was known to readers in both Europe and America, but after the beginning of that important march nothing further was heard for nearly two years. And the silence of Emin and his companion, Casati, the Italian, who, acting as a representative of the Khedive as well as an explorer, was known to have joined him, was equally oppressive and ominous.

At length the long, long, fearful silence was broken by the receipt of the following letter from Casati, addressed to Campino, and published in the *Reforma*, Rome. It was like news from the dead:

#### LETTER FROM CAPTAIN CASATI.

TUNGURU, LAKE ALBERT, March 25th, 1888.

The ill-concealed hatred of King Kabba Rega has vented itself, superstitious fear has conquered him, preparing the ruin of his kingdom. Kabba Rega, urged by his rapacious instincts, had closed the entrances of the country to us, and granted us a miserable concession, which he daily attempted to restrict or elude. The transmission of the post by way of Uganda was a scarecrow which disturbed his rest, and our continual exposure of his infamous designs had exasperated his naturally cruel soul. His hatred for us, and especially for me, had reached its height, and he, like the coward that he is, was hesitating and awaiting an opportunity which finally presented itself. Armed troops were approaching from the west and, having encamped at Luche, their presence certainly menaced his kingdom. Hence an end to all delays! He breaks the thread which he thought might lead to ruin, and completes the isolation of the kingdom by closing the road to Uganda. On January 9, 1888, I was therefore treacherously arrested by order of this wretched monarch, barbarously bound, and driven along hap-hazard, from village to village, always towards the country of the chief Kokora, along the Victoria Nile, a river which, as you know, unites the Victoria and Albert lakes. The chief, Kokora, had received orders to prepare to put me to death.

However, after eight days of suffering and three of absolute fasting I, with my men and two soldiers of the Government, was rescued by Emin Pasha, who came to my relief with a steamer. A soldier sent by me to Tunguru, on the shores of the Albert Lake, in a boat which we happened to find amongst the reeds, had borne the announcement of our unhappy plight to the Pasha.

A merchant named Biri, who was a guest in my house, a refugee from Wadelai to Uganda, underwent the same ill-luck as I, but was even less fortunate; he is reported to have killed himself on the road. All my goods, those of Biri, and the ivory belonging to the Government, were sequestered by the robber-king, but we were permitted to provide ourselves with a little grain to keep off starvation on the road. I will say nothing of my writings, my notes taken during the journey



SON AND DAUGHTER OF KABBA REGA.

—the grief is too strong. It is the first time I have felt annihilated; my soul yields, and in the face of this irreparable misfortune my mind is confused. Meanwhile, Stanley is near us; Emin Pasha has already received notice of an expedition towards the north. On April 15th he will start with two steamers and a sufficient number of soldiers and make minute researches. Kabba Rega has sent soldiers to intercept Stanley's march. If my health is restored I shall accompany Emin Pasha. I have made him acquainted with the tenor of the letter which you sent to him, and which Kabba Rega intercepted. He thanks and salutes you.

Will Kabba Rega remain unpunished as did Mwanga? May the life of a European be attacked with impunity, and an African king openly violate the laws of hospitality, betray and break his plighted faith? —make himself the executioner of a person living in his country as representative of a civil government, such as the Egyptian? It would be too shameful. CASATI.

Captain Casati was agent for the Egyptian Government, stationed near Kabba Rega's capital in Unyoro, east of Lake Albert, and all letters from Emin for Europe were sent to him, whose task it was to get them through to Zanzibar; it was this advantage that enabled him to transmit the above communication, though many that were written before had miscarried.



## A LETTER FROM STANLEY.

A few months after the receipt of Casati's letter came a communication from Stanley, being the first news received from him since his departure from Yambuya in quest of Emin. This letter, which by chance fell into the hands of a missionary and was thus transmitted, was from his own hand and written under date of August 17th, 1888, from Boma of Banalya (Urima), and addressed to Sheik Hamed Ben Mahomed, better known as Tipo Tib. In this letter he announces his meeting with Emin and Casati, who he declares have a great abundance of ivory, sheep, fowls, goats, food of all kinds and 10,000



NATIVES OF UNYORO.

head of cattle. At the time of writing this letter Stanley had with him 130 Wangwana, three soldiers and 66 natives, and 82 days had then passed since he had left Emin on the Albert N'yanza. Stanley wrote Tipo Tib to come to him at Boma, where he would wait ten days his arrival, and then move to a big island in the lake, two hours' journey from Boma.

To this letter the great Arab chief replied, and refused to accompany Stanley, just as he had refused a few weeks previously to accompany Jameson, who offered him, surprising as the statement appears, \$150,000 to make the journey with him from Stanley Falls to Wadelai.





STANLEY IN THE DARK CONTINENT.

**STANLEY'S INSTRUCTIONS TO BARTTELOT.**

Shortly after receipt of this first news from Stanley came transcripts of two other letters which he addressed to Major Barttelot, and which satisfied our longing to know just what he expected of the Major upon leaving Yambuya. The first letter was sent by three messengers, and the second was dispatched under an escort of twenty men from Boma, on the 14th of February. Neither of these messages, however, reached their destination. The messengers who carried the latter, under a reward of \$50 each for its safe delivery, were detained at an Arab camp which Stanley passed through on his first journey eastward, and both letters were recovered in that place by him on his return trip to



ascertain what had become of Barttelot and his companions. The letters read as follows:

CAMP ON SOUTH BANK ARUWIMI RIVER (Opposite Arab Settlement),  
SEPTEMBER 18TH, 1887.

MY DEAR MAJOR: You will, I am certain, be as glad to get news, definite and clear, of our movements as I am to feel that I have at last an opportunity of presenting them to you. As they will be of immense comfort to you and your assistants and followers, I shall confine myself to giving you the needful details. We have travelled 340 English miles to make only 192 geographical miles of our easterly course. This has been performed in 83 days, which gives us four and one-tenth miles per day. We have yet to make 130 geographical miles, or a winding course of perhaps 230 English miles, which, at the same rate of march as hitherto, we will make in 55 days.



CUTTING A ROAD TO THE RIVER.

We started from Yambuya 389 souls, whites and blacks. We have now 333, of whom 56 are so sick that we are obliged to leave them behind us at this Arab camp of Ugarrowwa. We are 56 men short of the number with which we left Yambuya. Of these, 30 men have died, four from poisoned arrow wounds, six left in the bush or speared by the natives; 26 have deserted *en route*, thinking they would be able to follow a caravan of Manyema which we met following the river downward. But this caravan, instead of going on



returned to this place, and our deserters, misled by this, will probably follow our tracks downward, until they meet you, or be exterminated by the natives. Be not deluded by any statements they may make. Should you meet them you will have to secure them thoroughly.

#### FIGHTING THEIR WAY.

The first day we left you we made a good march, which terminated in a fight, the foolish natives firing their own village as they fled. Since that day we have had probably thirty fights. The first view of us the natives had inspired them to show fight. As far as Panga Falls we did not lose a man or meet with any serious obstacles to navigation. Panga is a big cataract, with a decided fall. We cut around it on the south bank and dragged our canoes and went on again.

We had intended to follow a native path which would take us toward our destination with usual windings of the road. For ten days we searched for a road, and then took an elephant track, which carried us into an interminable forest totally uninhabited. Fearing to lose ourselves altogether, we cut a road to the river, and have followed the river ever since. From the point whence we struck the river to Mugwye's country, four days' journey below Panga, we fared very well. Food was abundant; we made long marches, and no halts whatever. Beyond Mugwye's, up to Engweddeh, was a wilderness, eleven days' march, villages being inland and mostly foodless. From this date our strength declined rapidly. People were lost in the bush, as they searched for food, or were slain by the natives. Ulcers, dysentery, and grievous sickness, ending in fatal debility, attacked the people. Hence our enormous loss since leaving Panga—30 dead and 26 deserters. Besides which we are obliged to leave 56 behind so used up that without a long rest they would also soon die. Of the Somalis, one is dead (Achmet), the other five remain at this camp until our return from the Lake (Albert). Of the Soudanese, one is dead, we leave three behind to-day. All the whites are in perfect condition, thinnish, but with plenty of go.

Among our fights we have had over fifty wounded, but they all recovered except four. Stairs was severely wounded with an arrow, which penetrated an inch and a half, within a little below the heart, in the left breast. He is all right now. We have had one man shot dead by some person unknown in the camp; another was shot in the foot, resulting in amputation. This latter case is now in a fair state of health.

#### HEWING A PATH THROUGH THE FOREST.

The number of hours we have marched ought to have taken us back to you by this time, but we have had to daily hew our path through forest and jungle to keep along the river, because the river banks were populated. The forest inland contains no settlements that we know or have heard of. By means of canoes we were able to help the caravan carry the sick and several loads. The boat helped us immensely. Were I to do the work over again I should





collect canoes as large as possible, man them with sufficient paddlers and load up with goods and sick. On the river between Yambuya and Mugwye's country the canoes are numerous and tolerably large. The misfortune is that the Zanzibaris are exceedingly poor boatmen. In my force there are only about 50 who can paddle or pull an oar, but even these have saved our caravan immense labor and many lives which otherwise would have been sacrificed.

Our plan has been to paddle from one rapid to another; on reaching strong water, or shoals, we have unloaded canoes and poled or dragged them up, with long rattan or other creepers, through the rapids, then loaded up again and pursued our way until we met another obstacle. The want of sufficient and proper food regularly pulls people down very fast, and they have not that strength to carry the loads which has distinguished them while with me in other parts of Africa.

If Tipo Tib's people have not yet joined you I do not expect you will be very far from Yambuya. You can make two journeys by river for one that you can do on land. Slow as we have been coming up and cutting our way through, I shall come down the river like lightning. The river will be a friend indeed, for the current alone will take us twenty miles a day, and I will pick up as many canoes as possible to help us for our second journey up the river. Follow the river closely and do not lose sight of our track. When the caravan which takes this passes you, look out for your men, or they will run (desert) in a body, taking valuable goods with them.

I need not say that I wish you the best of health, and luck and good fortune, because you are a part of myself. Therefore, good-by.

Yours very truly,

*Major Barttelot.*

HENRY M. STANLEY.

The second letter was written from Fort Bodo, Ibwiri District, February 14th, 1888.

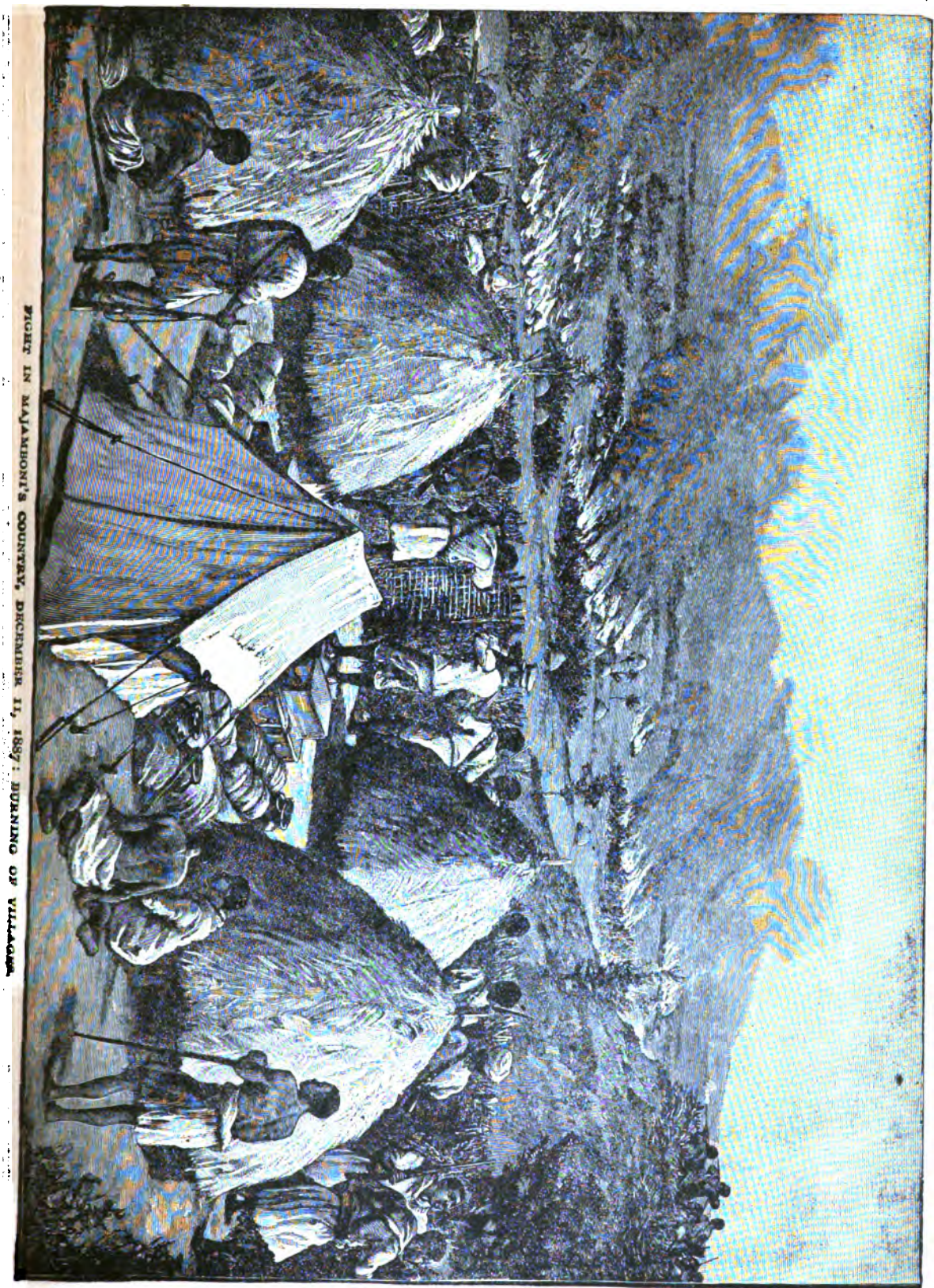
"MY DEAR MAJOR: After much deliberation with my officers upon the expediency of the act, I have resolved to send twenty couriers to you with this letter, which I know will be welcome to you and your comrades, as the briefest note or word from you would be to us.

Fort Bodo is 126 English miles from Kavalli, on the Albert N'yanza, or 77 hours of caravan marching (west) and is almost on the same latitude. It is 527 English miles almost direct east from Yambuya, or 352 hours of caravan marching."

After giving explicit directions as to the route Barttelot should take, and the villages where food might be purchased, Stanley continues:

"The object of this letter is not only to encourage and cheer you up with definite and exact information of your whereabouts and the land before you, but to also save you from a terrible wilderness whence we all narrowly escaped with our lives. I wrote you from Ugarrowwa's a letter sufficiently detailed to





FIGHT IN MAJAKHONT'S COUNTRY, DECEMBER 11, 1887: BURNING OF VILLAGES



enable you to understand what our experience was between Yambuya and Ugarrowwa's, therefore I begin from Ugarrowwa's and go east to the N'yanza.

"After leaving Ugarrowwa's on September 19th we had 286 souls with us, and 56 sick at Ugarrowwa's; total, 341. By October 6th we had travelled along the south bank of the river amid a country depopulated and devastated by Arabs; and our condition was such, from a constant pinching want, that we had eight deaths and fifty-two sick, that is, sixty utterly used up in sixteen days. I was forced to leave Captain Nelson, lamed by ulcers, and 52 sick and 82 loads



NATIVES IN THE DISTRICT OF UGARROWWA'S.

with him at a camp near the river, while we would explore ahead, find provisions and send back relief.

"Until October 18th we marched in the hope of obtaining food, and on this day we entered a settlement of Manyuema, but in the interval we had travelled through an uninhabited forest, where we lived on wild fruit and fungi. In these twelve days we had lost twenty-two by desertion and death, while the condition of the survivors was terrible.

"We were all emaciated and haggard, but the majority were mere skeletons. On the 29th Nelson's party was relieved, but out of 52 there were only five



left. Many had died, many had deserted, about 20 were out in the forest foraging, out of which party only 10 ultimately turned up.

"On October 28th we marched from the Manyuema settlement to this place, Ibwiri. Here we found such an abundance that we halted to recuperate until November 24th. The killing of a bullock immediately upon our arrival was followed by one of the wildest scenes that I ever beheld. Naked and starved the men fought like dogs for every morsel they could tear from the slaughtered animal. On this day the advance column mustered as follows: Sick at Ugai rowwa's (Arab settlement), 56; sick at Manyuema settlement, 38; present in Ibwiri, 174; total, 268. On September 19th we numbered 341; November 24th, 268; dead and missing, 73.

#### A SAD STORY OF SUFFERING AND DEATH.

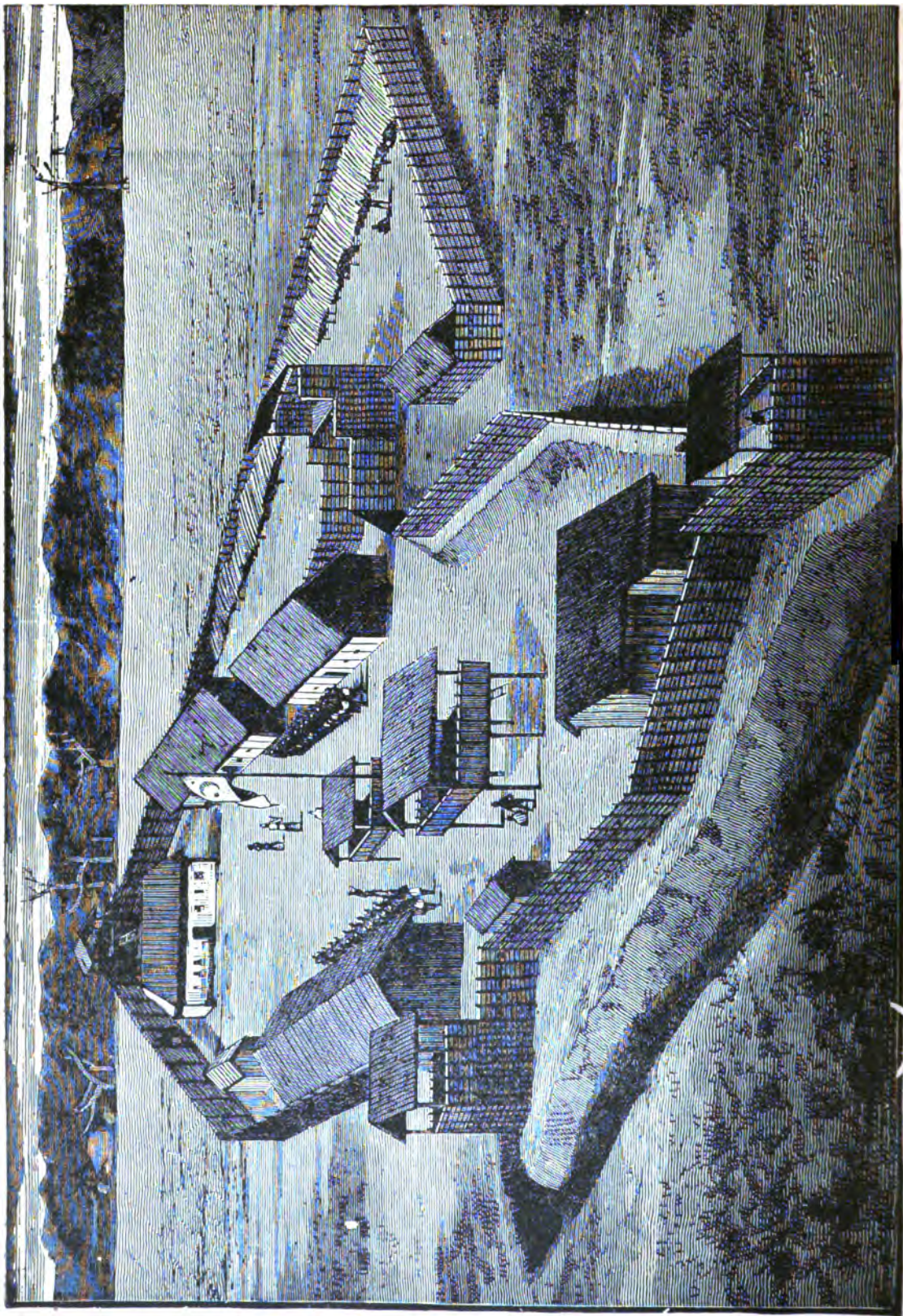
"Beyond this place, Ibwiri, no Arab or Manyuema had ever penetrated, consequently we suffered no scarcity, and on November 24th we marched from Ibwiri for the Albert Lake, which we reached December 13th, having lost only one by death, result of wilderness miseries, and we returned to this place from the Lake Albert January 7th, having lost only four, two of whom died from cause of wilderness miseries; one, Klamis Kaururu (chief), of inflammation of the lungs, and one, Ramaguebin Kuru, of fever and ague contracted near the lake. Thus, between November 24th and January 7th we had lost but five; three of these deaths being a result of privations undergone in the wilderness.

"We first met the Manyuema on the first day of August, and parted from them January 6. In this interval we have lost 118 through death and desertion. In their camps it was as bad as in the wilderness, for they ground us down by extortion so extreme that we were naked in a short time. They tempted the Zanzibaris to sell their rifles and ammunition, ramrods, officers' blankets, etc., and then gave food so sparingly that these crimes were of small avail. Finally, besides starving them, tempting them to ruin the expedition, they speared and scourged them and tied them up, until in one case death resulted.

"Never were such abject slaves to slaves as our people had become under the influence of the Manyuema. Yet withal they preferred death by spearing, scourging, starvation, ill-treatment, to the duty of load-bearing and marching on to happier regions. Out of 38 men left at the Manyuema camp 11 have died; 11 others may turn up, but it is doubtful. However, we have only received 16; 16 out of 38. Comment is unnecessary.

"When we left the Manyuema camp, October 28, we were obliged to leave our boat and 70 loads behind, as it was absolutely impossible to carry them. Parke and Nelson were detailed to look after them. We hoped that we should find some tree out of which we could make a sizable canoe, or buy or seize one already made. But arriving at Albert Lake we found neither tree nor canoe, therefore were obliged to retrace our steps here quickly to send men back to the Manyuema settlement for the boat and loads. The boat and 37 loads were brought here by Stairs and nearly 100 men day before yesterday.



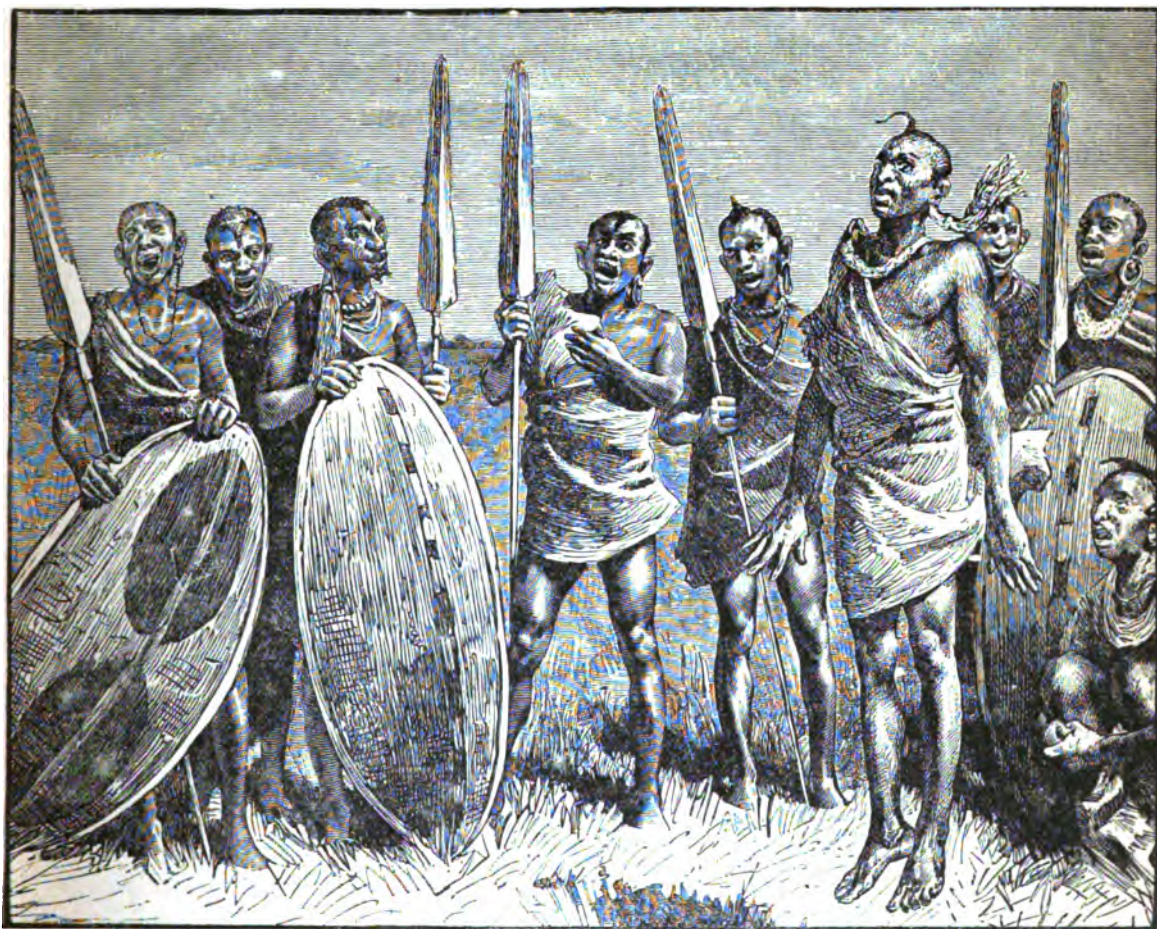


Fort MADO.—(See page 454.)



## ANXIETIES.

"You will understand, then, that Emin Pasha, not being found or relieved by us, made it as much necessary that we should devote ourselves to this work, as it was imperative when we set out June 28, 1887, from Yambuya. And you will also understand how anxious we all are about you. We dread your inexperience, and your want of influence with your people. If with my people preferred the society of the Manyuema blackguards to me, who are known to them for twenty years, how much more so with you, a stranger to



WARRIORS CHALLENGING STANLEY.

them and their language. Therefore, the cords of anxiety were strained to an exceeding tension. I am pulled east to Emin Pasha and west to you, your comrades, people and goods.

"Nearly eight months have elapsed, and perhaps you have not had a word from us, though I wrote a long letter from Ugarrowwa's. We were to have been back in December; it is now February, and no one can conjecture how far you may have reached. Did the *Stanley* arrive in due time? Did she arrive at all? Did Tipo Tib join you? Are you alone with your party, or is

Tipo Tib with you? If the latter, why so slow that we have not a word? If alone, we understand that you are very far from us. These are questions daily agitating us.

"According to my calculations, we shall be on the lake April 10. All about Emin Pasha will be settled by April 25; on the 13th of May we shall be back here, and on the 29th we shall be at Ugarrowwa's, if we have not met you. We shall surely, I hope, meet with the return messengers. These messengers, whom I send to you with a reward of \$50 each for the safe delivery into your hands of this letter, I advise you to retain, two of them as guides—Rugu and Ruga—in front, but they should be free of loads. Send the 18 and two others back to me as soon as you can, because the sooner we hear from you the sooner we will join hands; and after settling the Emin Pasha question we shall have only one anxiety, which will be to get you safely up here.

"Assuming that Tipo Tib's people are with you, our guides (two) will bring you quickly on here, and we shall probably meet here or at Ugarrowwa's. You have arrived at some station on our former journeys from Yambuya, below Mugwyes, as I take it. Hence, before you get near the Arab influence, where your column will surely break up if you are alone, I order you to go to the nearest place (Mugwyes, Aveysheba, or Nepoka Confluence) that is to you, and there to build a strong camp and wait us; but whatever you decide upon let us know. If you come near Ugarrowwa's you will lose men, rifles, powder, everything of value; your own boys will betray you, because they will sell food so dearly that your people, from stress of hunger, will steal everything.

"At either of these places above you will get safety and food until we relieve you. So long as you are stationary, there is no fear of desertion, but the daily task, added to constant insufficiency of food, will sap the fidelity of your best men.

"With everybody's best wishes to you, I send my earnest prayer that you are, despite all unwholesome and evil conjectures, where you ought to be, and that this letter will reach you in time to save you from that forest misery and from the fangs of the ruthless Manyuema blackguards. To every one of your officers, also, these good wishes are given, from

"Yours most sincerely,

"HENRY M. STANLEY.

"To Major Barttelot, Commanding Rear Column."



## CHAPTER XXIV.

### STANLEY'S DESCRIPTION OF HIS JOURNEY.



UNDER the most favorable auspices and conditions a journey through Central Africa is attended by perils and hardships which only the most persistent, courageous and strong-constituted traveller can endure. But in the march now before us, so graphically described by Stanley's own pen, the privations and dangers were accentuated by many obstacles rarely met with even in that savage region. The territory which lay between Yambuya and Albert Lake, a distance of three hundred and sixty miles, was totally unexplored. No white man's foot had ever passed over any part of it; there was no highway marked even by the feet of wild animals, while traditions of tribes between, and of Tipo Tib, peopled that region of darkness with the most surprising forms of both human and animal life. The journey must be made along the southern line of a country that has been dreaded for ages, because around it has always clustered the most fright-inspiring stories ever told by the tongue of ignorant and superstitious man.

#### WONDERFUL SUPERSTITIONS.

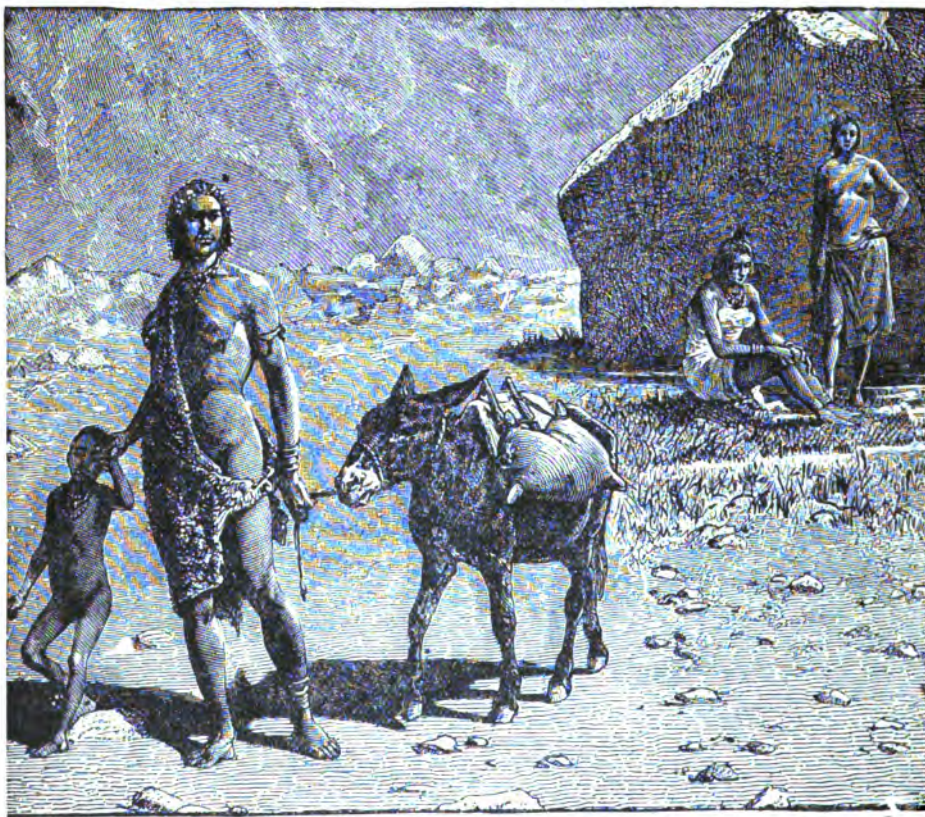
On the northern borders of this unexplored region is the city of Bornu, already described in an early chapter of this book. The town is said to take its name from the ship of Noah, called *Burnu* by the Mohammedans of the place, having landed at the spot on which the town is built. To the east of Bornu is said to be a town called Futa, which it is alleged was founded by Phut, the grandson of Noah, and from whom it is believed the Fellahs are descended. This much of Bible history is preserved connecting the people of that so little known region with civilization. But south and south-east of Futa the wildest fancies and beliefs run riot, because it has long been maintained that no one dare venture therein. The Moors and Arabs entertain the most astonishing conceits and traditions respecting the inhabitants of that so-called cursed country. They declare that somewhere on the other side of Yakoba is a tribe of people called Alakere, none of whom are more than three feet in height. The chiefs, they say, are somewhat taller than the common people. The Alakere are said to be a very ingenious people, especially in working iron, and they are so industrious that their towns are believed to be built on high hills surrounded by iron walls.

#### MEN WITH TAILS AND FOUR EYES.

Another tribe living near the Alakere are the Alabiru, who it is declared have inflexible tails about six inches in length. As the stiffness of their tails prevents the Alabiru from sitting flat on the ground, each person carries a sharp-

pointed stick with which to drill a hole in the earth to receive the tail when sitting. They are also said to be industrious manufacturers of iron bars out of which the fine swords of the Soudan are believed to be made. Another adjoining tribe, called the Alabiwoe, it is alleged, are distinguishable by having a small goat-like horn growing from the middle of the forehead. It is said that a woman of this tribe was captured and held a long while in slavery by an Arab in Offa, near Ilorin. She seemed to be ashamed of her horn and always wore a handkerchief around her head to conceal it.

There are said to be many other strange people in this "Doko" region, some of whom it is declared have four eyes, others who possess such extraordinary



NATIVES OF THE TOWN OF FUTA.

ears that they make use of one to lie upon, like a blanket, and the other as a covering for the body. Some live in trees and others in subterranean galleries, but all alike are represented as being wonderfully courageous and ferocious, while not a few possess such a knowledge of the black art that to their ferocity they add the power

of torturing victims without even touching them. The dwarfs, most of whom it is believed wear long beards and sharpen their teeth like the Fan Cannibals, are very vindictive and cruel, guarding their kingdom with the greatest jealousy and visiting inconceivably terrible punishments upon all who invade their territory. It will be remembered that Kabba Rega gave Stanley, on his second expedition into Central Africa, surprising descriptions of these much dreaded manikins, and fully indicated the great fear in which they are held.

To the superstitions here mentioned, which are current throughout a greater part of Africa, and which made Stanley's men so reluctant to enter this proscribed



and horror-associated country, another trouble quite as serious was encountered by Stanley in Tipo Tib's refusal to supply the armed escort that he had promised under contract. Thus was Stanley forced to use his own resources, consisting largely of persuasion and moral influence, to induce his column to continue an advance towards the Albert Lake, and that he succeeded is another proof of his wonderful power over the ignorant natives and his extraordinary abilities as a commander in the most direful exigencies. His own story as herewith given is as exciting in the detail of facts as it is modest in tone and description.

BUNGANGETA ISLAND, ITURI OR ARUWIMI RIVER,  
August 28th, 1888.

To the Chairman of the Emin Pasha Relief Committee.

SIR:—A short dispatch briefly announcing that we had placed the first instalment of relief in the hands of Emin Pasha on the Albert N'yanza was sent to you by couriers from Stanley Falls, along with letters to Tipo Tib, the Arab governor of that district, on the 17th inst., within three hours of our meeting with the rear column of the expedition. I propose to relate to you the story of our movements since June 28th, 1887.

I had established an entrenched and palisaded camp at Yambuya, on the Lower Aruwimi, just below the first rapids. Major Edmund Barttelot, being senior of those officers with me, was appointed commandant. Mr. J. S. Jameson, a volunteer, was associated with him. On the arrival of all men and goods from Bolobo and Stanley Pool, the



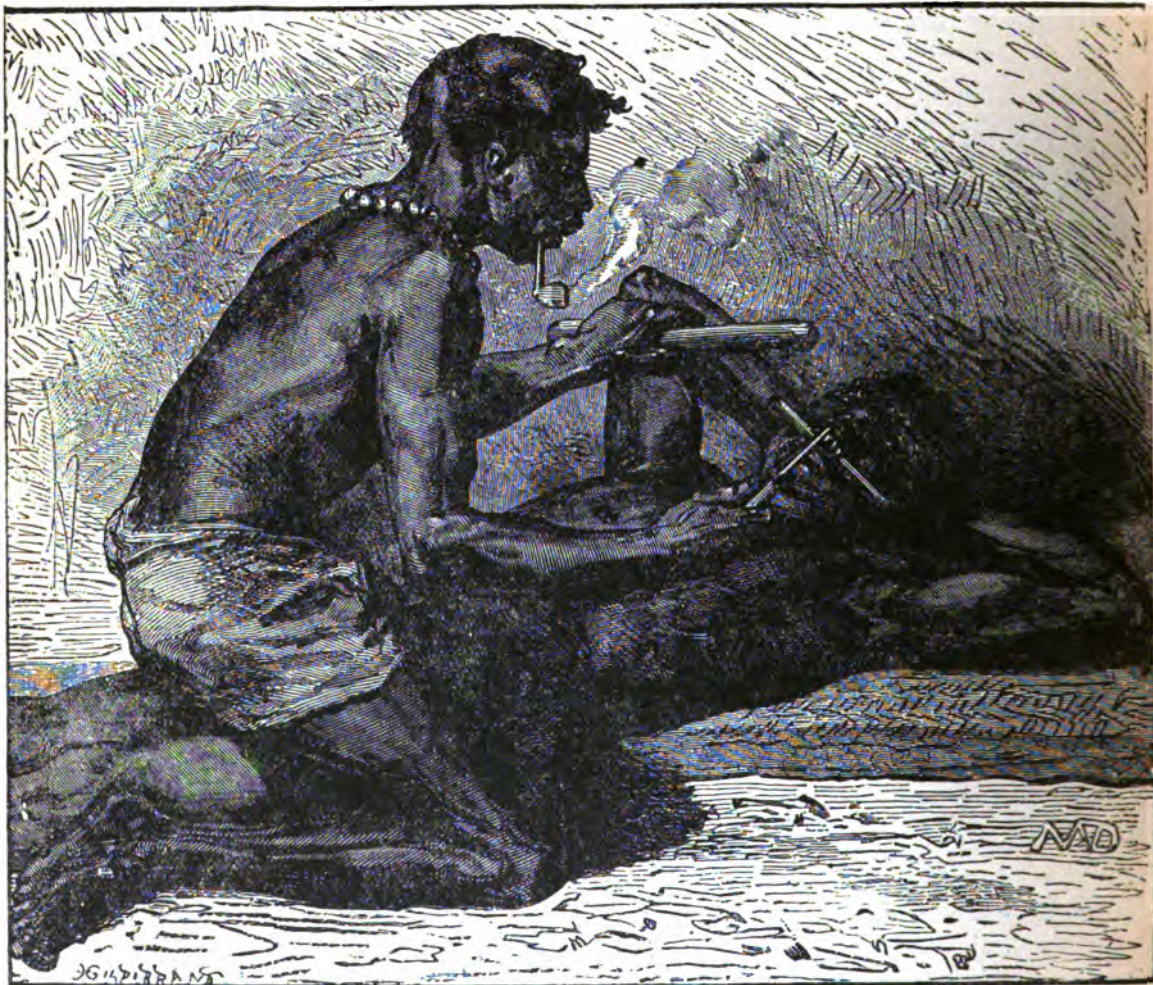
AN ALAKERE VILLAGE.

officers still believed Messrs. Troup, Ward and Bonny were to report to Major Barttelot for duty. But no important action or movement (according to the letter of instructions given by me to the Major before leaving) was to be made without consulting with Messrs. Jameson, Troup and Ward. The columns under Major Barttelot's orders mustered 257 men.

As I requested the Major to send you a copy of the instructions issued to each officer, you are doubtless aware that the Major was to remain at Yam-



buya until the arrival of the steamer from Stanley Pool with the officers, men and goods left behind; and, if Tipo Tib's promised contingent of carriers had in the mean time arrived, he was to march his column and follow our track, which, so long as it traversed the forest region, would be known by the blazing of the trees, by our camps and zaribas, etc. If Tipo Tib's carriers did not arrive, then if he (the Major) preferred moving on to staying at Yambuya, he was to discard such things as mentioned in letter of instructions, and commence



SHARPENING THE TEETH.

making double and triple journeys by short stages, until I should come down from the N'yanza and relieve him. The instructions were explicit and, as the officers admitted, intelligible.

#### FIRST CONFLICT WITH THE NATIVES.

The advance column, consisting of 389 officers and men, set out from Yambuya June 28th, 1887. The first day we followed the river bank, marched twelve miles, and arrived in the large district of Yankondé. At our approach the natives set fire to their villages, and under cover of the smoke attacked the



pioneers who were clearing the numerous obstructions they had planted before the first village. The skirmish lasted fifteen minutes. The second day we followed a path leading inland but trending east. We followed this path for five days through a dense population. Every art known to native minds for molesting, impeding and wounding an enemy was resorted to; but we passed through without the loss of a man. Perceiving that the path was taking us too far from our course, we cut a north-easterly track, and reached the river again on the 5th of July. From this date until the 18th of October we followed the left bank of the Aruwimi. After seventeen days' continuous marching we halted one day



CROSSING A SMALL AFFLUENT OF THE ARUWIMI.

for rest. On the twenty-fourth day from Yambuya we lost two men by desertion. In the month of July we made four halts only. On the 1st day of August the first death occurred, which was from dysentery; so that for thirty-four days our course had been singularly successful. But as we now entered a wilderness, which occupied us nine days in marching through it, our sufferings began to multiply, and several deaths occurred. The river at this time was of great use to us; our boat and several canoes relieved the wearied and sick of their load, so that progress, though not brilliant as during the first month, was still steady.

On the 13th of August we arrived at Air-Sibba. On the opposite bank of the river there seemed to be a dense population of savages, who resented our

appearance by firing volley after volley of poisoned arrows at us. The Zanzibari's returned the compliment by a round from their muskets, which brought our white men quickly into action. Lieutenant Stairs, followed by a party of resolute fellows, jumped into a boat and headed for the enemy, who lay concealed in the dense brush that grew down to the water's edge. As he was standing up in the boat to direct the rowers, a poisoned arrow, having a wooden head, struck him just below the heart. The shaft was broken in an effort to extricate it, leaving a large portion of the arrow head in the wound. He was at once brought back and placed under the care of Dr. Parke, our surgeon, who succeeded in saving his life, although the piece of arrow left in the wound was not extracted until fourteen months afterward. Nearly all the other men wounded by poisoned arrows in this engagement died within four days, of lockjaw.

On the 15th Mr Jephson, in command of the land party, led his men inland, became confused and lost his way. We were not reunited until the 21st.

On the 25th of August we arrived in the district of Air-jeli. Opposite our camp was the mouth of the tributary Nepoko; and on the 31st of August we met for the first time a party of Manyuema belonging to the caravan of Ugarrowwa, alias Uledi Balyuz, who turned out to be a former tent-boy of Speke's. Our misfortunes began from this date, for I had taken the Congo route to avoid Arabs, that they might not tamper with my men and tempt them to desert by their presents, yet twenty-six men deserted within three days of this unfortunate meeting.

On the 16th of September we arrived at a camp opposite the station at Ugarrowwa's. As food was very scarce, owing to his having devastated an immense region, we halted but one day near him. Such friendly terms as I could make with such a man I made, and left fifty-six men with him. All the Somalis preferred to rest at Ugarrowwa's to the continuous marching. Five Soudanese were also left. It would have been certain death for all of them to have accompanied us. At Ugarrowwa's they might possibly recover. Five dollars a month per head was to be paid to this man for their food.

#### THE DEATH MARCH.

On September 18th we left Ugarrowwa's, and on the 18th of October entered the settlement occupied by Kilinga-Longa, a Zanzibari slave belonging to Abed bin Salim, an old Arab whose bloody deeds are recorded in "The Congo and the Founding of its Free State."

#### NELSON STARVATION CAMP.

On October 5th the expedition was so nearly exhausted for want of food, and having arrived at an impassable cataract just below the junction of the two rivers Ihuru and Ituri, we made camp and sent men on ahead to examine the river and discover where navigation might be resumed. Remaining here one day the men returned and reported that the river route was impracticable



for either boats or canoes for a long distance. Captain Nelson was suffering from ulcerated feet and unable to travel further. Several other of our men were in an equally deplorable condition, so that I concluded to make a camp here at which to leave those who were unable to proceed further on foot, hoping that the rest would soon restore them. Accordingly we sank the canoes and took the boats out of the water preparatory to making ready for an inland march. To have halted the entire expedition here would result in starvation for all, so those able to travel were forced, for self-preservation, to push on, to procure food for themselves and to send back supplies to those left behind.

On October 6th the column started, leaving behind them fifty-five men, one white officer, and eighty-seven loads. It was thought that food would most probably arrive at the camp in about nine days. The day after the column left, Captain Nelson got up a canoe, and, picking out twenty of the strongest men, sent them down river to try and get food at some deserted plantations the column had passed some two or three days before. On leaving camp, Lieutenant Stairs had given Captain Nelson one fish-hook. While getting the canoe up a little fish like a white-bait was found in the sand at bottom of canoe. This was promptly seized, and, after the canoe had started, was placed on the hook. After fishing for a few minutes Captain Nelson got one small fish about four inches long. Taking off the head, which he kept for bait, he promptly cooked the fish. This, and one cup of weak beef-tea, was all the food that day, for on going to fish again the hook got fast in the rocks in the middle of the river and was lost. Soon death began to play havoc among the poor Zanzibaris, first one dying, then another, so that after the first few days there was hardly a day passed without one or two deaths. Deserters came back from the column with terrible accounts of the people's sufferings, and also of hard fighting with the natives. The scene in camp was now an awful one, dead and dying lying all over the camp. At first the dead were put into the river, for no one had strength to dig graves for them; but afterwards they had to be left, as the living were too weak



ON THE ROAD TO KILINGA-LONGA'S.



to remove the corpses. The ninth day had passed without the promised relief arriving. Day after day passed away, until at last, on October 29th, the twenty-third day, Mr. Jephson arrived with about forty Zanzibaris and thirty of the Manyuema from the Arab camp, with a small supply of food. Out of the fifty-five men left in camp, and made up to about sixty by the deserters from the column, only eight were fit to start; and of these only five reached the Arab camp. Captain Nelson was simply a bag of bones, having hardly an ounce of flesh left. The total loss was fearful. Sixty being the whole number, five



A MEAL IN THE WILDERNESS.

reached the Arab camp, with Mr. Jephson; of the twenty who had gone down river to get food ten were, after terrible suffering, picked up by a caravan of Kilinga-Longa's; and of these fifteen men only seven or eight actually went on to Fort Bodo; the others died at the Arab camp."

This proved an awful month to us; not one member of the expedition, white or black, will ever forget it. The advance numbered 273 souls on leaving Ugarrowwa's, because out of 389 men we had lost sixty-six by desertion and death between Yambuya and Ugarrowwa's, and had left fifty-



**six** men sick in the Arab station. On reaching Kilinga-Longa's we discovered we had lost fifty-five men by starvation and desertion. We had lived principally on wild fruit, fungi, and a large, flat, bean-shaped nut. The slaves of Abed bin Salim did their utmost to ruin the expedition, short of open hostilities; they purchased rifles, ammunition, clothing, so that when we left their station we were beggared and our men were absolutely naked. We were so weak physically that we were unable to carry the boat and about seventy loads of goods; we therefore left these goods and boat at Kilinga-Longa's under Surgeon

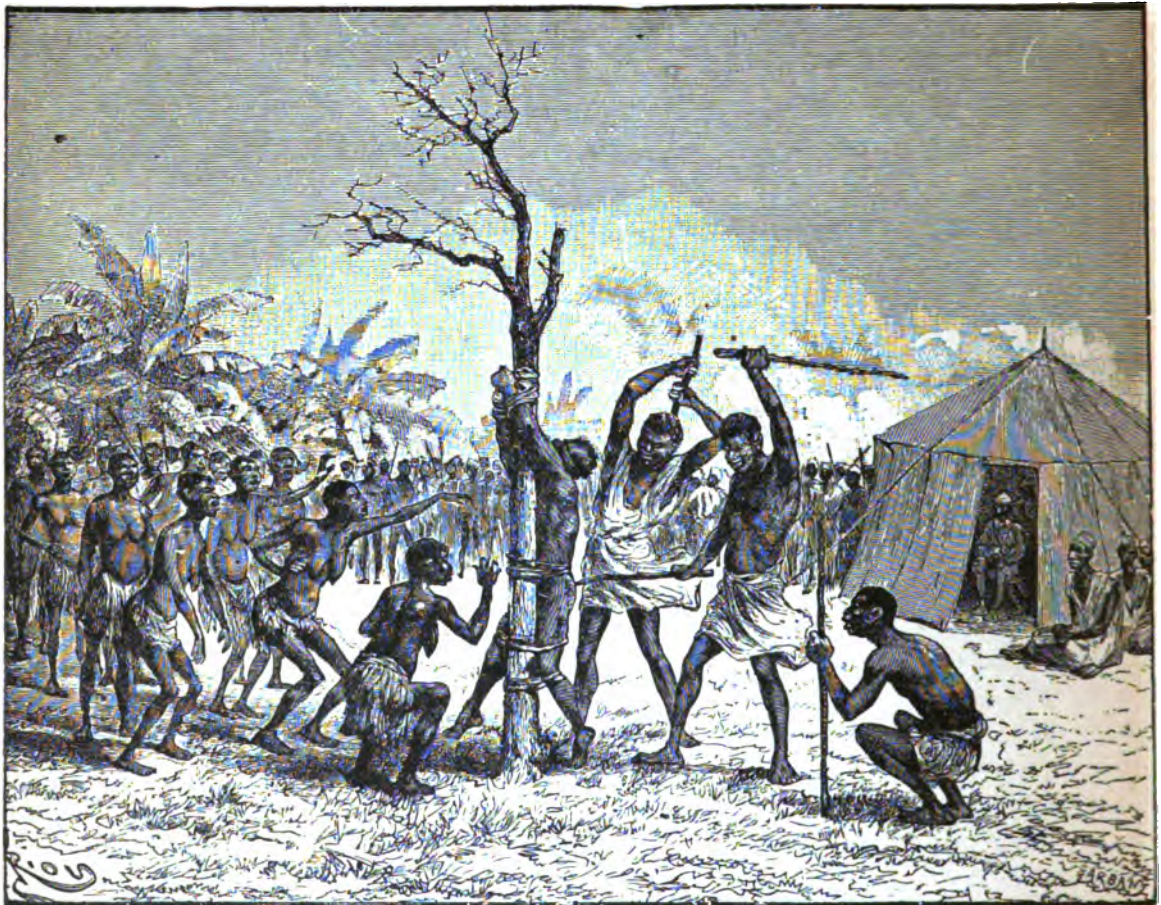


HUTS OF THE IBWIRI VILLAGERS.

Parke and Captain Nelson, the latter of whom was unable to march, and after 'twelve days' journey we arrived at a native settlement called Ibwiri. Between Kilinga-Longa's and Ibwiri our condition had not improved. The Arab devastation had reached within a few miles of Ibwiri—a devastation so complete that there was not one native hut standing between Ugarrowwa's and Ibwiri, and what had not been destroyed by the slaves of Ugarrowwa and Abed bin Salim the elephants destroyed, and turned the whole region into a horrible wilderness. But at Ibwiri we were beyond the utmost reach of the destroyers; we were on virgin soil, in a populous region abounding with food. Our suffering from



hunger, which began on the 31st of August, terminated on the 12th of November. Ourselves and men were skeletons. Out of 389 we now only numbered 147, several of whom seemed to have no hope of life left. A halt was therefore ordered for the people to recuperate. Hitherto our people were sceptical of what we told them; the suffering has been so awful, calamities so numerous, the forest so endless apparently, that they refused to believe that by-and-by we should see plains and cattle and the N'yanza and the white man, Emin Pasha. We felt as though we were dragging them along with a chain round our necks.



WHIPPING AN INSUBORDINATE.

"Beyond these raiders lies a country untouched, where food is abundant and where you will forget your miseries; so, cheer up, boys; be men, press on a little faster." They turned a deaf ear to our prayers and entreaties, for, driven by hunger and suffering, they sold their rifles and equipments for a few ears of Indian corn, deserted with the ammunition, and were altogether demoralized. Perceiving that prayers and entreaties and mild punishments were of no avail, I then resolved to visit upon the wretches the death penalty. Two of the worst cases were accordingly taken and hung in presence of all, and others were whipped.

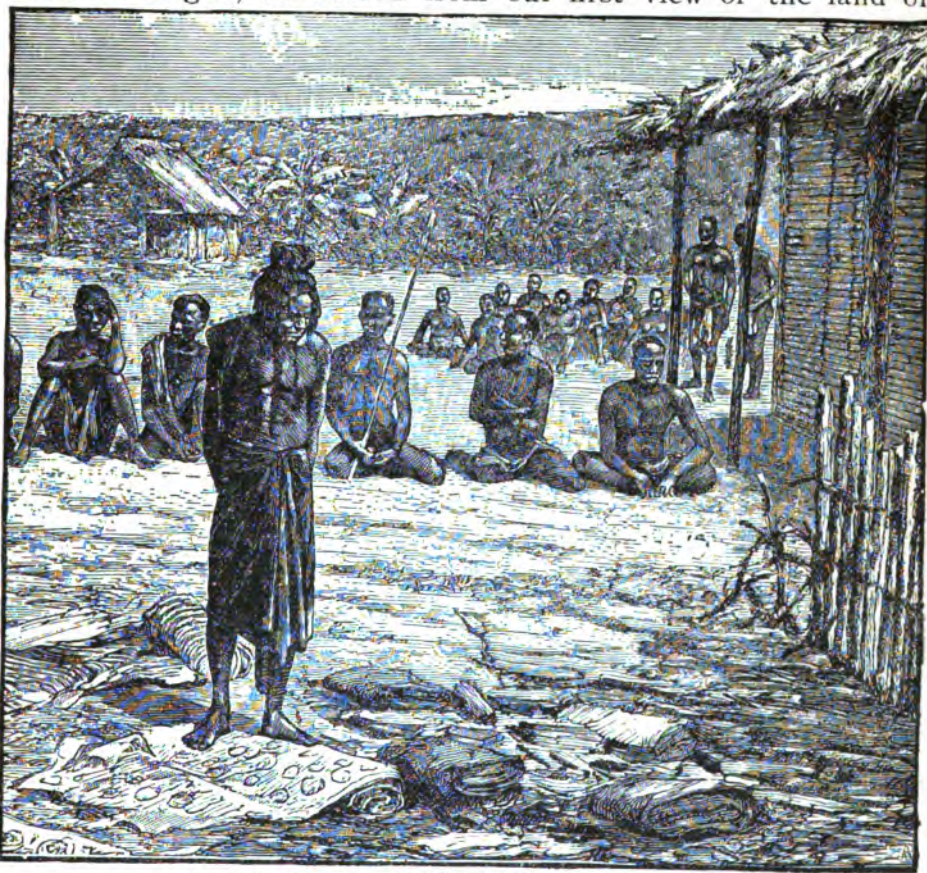


## FOOD AT LAST.

We halted thirteen days in Ibwiri, and revelled on fowls, goats, bananas, corn, sweet potatoes, yams, beans, etc. The supplies were inexhaustible, and the people glutted themselves; the effect was such that I had 172—one was killed by an arrow—mostly sleek and robust men, when I set out for the Albert N'yanza on the 24th of November. We were still 126 miles from the lake; but, given food, such a distance seemed nothing.

On the 1st of December we sighted the open country from the top of a ridge connected with Mount Pisgah, so named from our first view of the land of

promise and plenty. On the 5th of December we emerged upon the plains, and the deadly, gloomy forest was behind us. After 160 days' continuous gloom we saw the light of broad day shining all round us and making all things beautiful. We thought we had never seen grass so green, or country so lovely. The men literally yelled and



PURCHASING A SIGHT OF KING MAZAMBONI.

leaped for joy, and raced over the ground with their burdens. Ah, this was the old spirit of former expeditions successfully completed all of a sudden revived.

Woe betide the native aggressor we may meet, however powerful he may be; with such a spirit the men will fling themselves like wolves on sheep. Numbers will not be considered. It had been the eternal forest that had made them abject, slavish creatures, so brutally plundered by Arab slaves at Kilinga-Longa's.

On the 9th we came to the country of the powerful chief Mazamboni. The villages were scattered over a great extent of country so thickly that there was



no other road except through their villages or fields. From a long distance the natives had sighted us, and were prepared. We seized a hill, as soon as we arrived, in the centre of a mass of villages, about 4 P. M. on the 9th of December, and occupied it, building a zariba as fast as bill-hooks could cut brushwood. The war cries were terrible from hill to hill; they were sent pealing across the intervening valleys; the people gathered by hundreds from every point; war-horns and drums announced that a struggle was about to take place. Such natives as were too bold we checked with but little effort, and a slight skirmish ended in our capturing a cow, the first beef tasted since we left the ocean. The



ASCENDING A HILL, OVERLOOKING THE ALBERT N'YANZA.

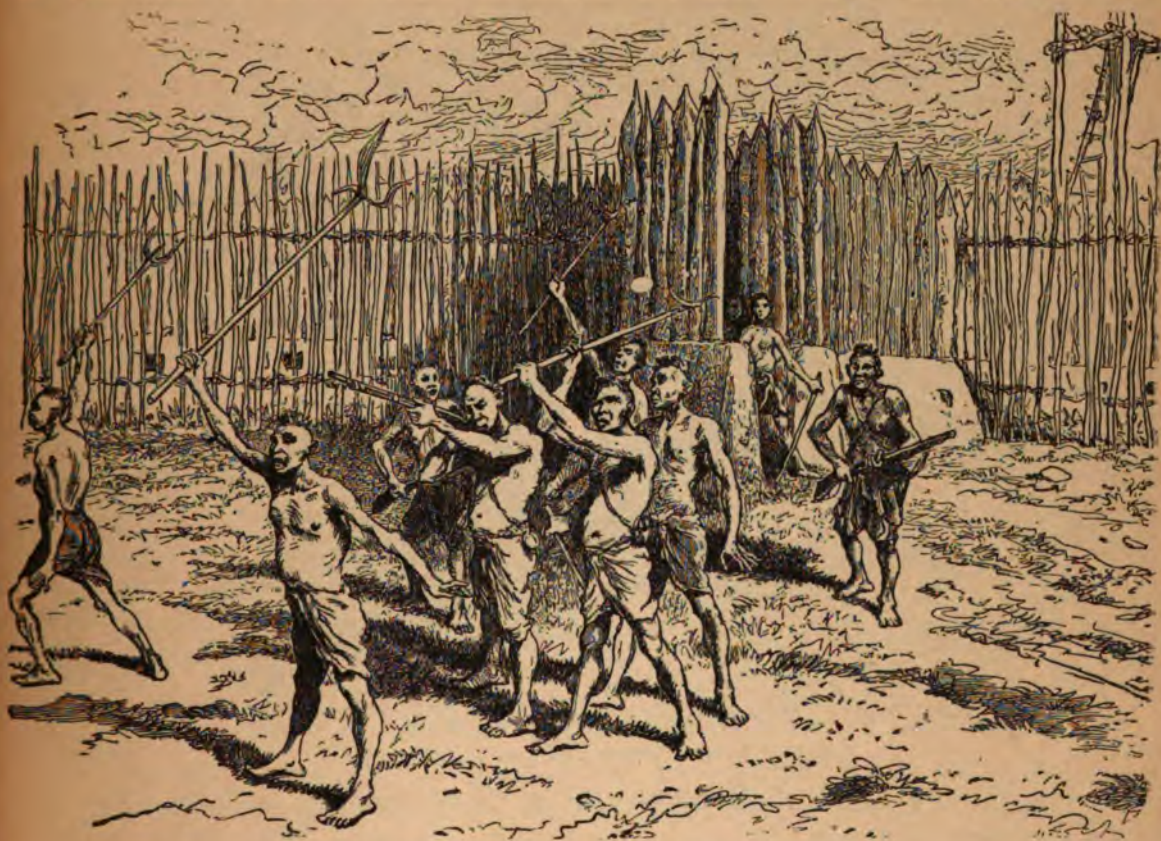
night passed peacefully, both sides preparing for the morrow. On the morning of the 10th we attempted to open negotiations. The natives were anxious to know who we were, and we were anxious to glean news of the land that threatened to ruin the expedition. Hours were passed talking, both parties keeping a respectable distance apart. The natives said they were subject to Uganda; but that Kabba Rega was their real king, Mazamboni holding the country for Kabba Rega. They finally accepted cloth and brass rods to show their King Mazamboni, and his answer was to be given next day. In the mean time all hostilities were to be suspended.

#### THE WAR SLOGANS.

The morning of the 11th dawned, and at 8 A. M. we were startled at hearing a man proclaiming that it was Mazamboni's wish that we should be driven back from the land. The proclamation was received by the valley around our neighborhood with deafening cries. Their word "kanwana" signifies to make peace, "kurwana" signifies war. We were therefore in doubt, or rather we hoped we had heard wrongly. We sent an interpreter a little nearer to ask if it was kanwana or kurwana. Kurwana, they responded, and to emphasize the term two arrows were shot at him which dissipated all doubt. Our hill stood between a



lofty range of hills and a lower range. On one side of us was a narrow valley 250 yards wide; on the other side the valley was three miles wide. East and west of us the valley broadened into an extensive plain. The higher range of hills was lined with hundreds preparing to descend; the broader valley was already mustering its hundreds. There was no time to lose. A body of forty men were sent, under Lieutenant Stairs, to attack the broader valley. Mr. Jephson was sent with thirty men east; a choice body of sharpshooters was sent to test the courage of those descending the slope of the highest range. Stairs crossed on, passed a deep and narrow river in the face of hundreds of natives, and assaulted the first village and took it. The



NATIVES FORBIDDING A PASSAGE THROUGH THEIR DISTRICT.

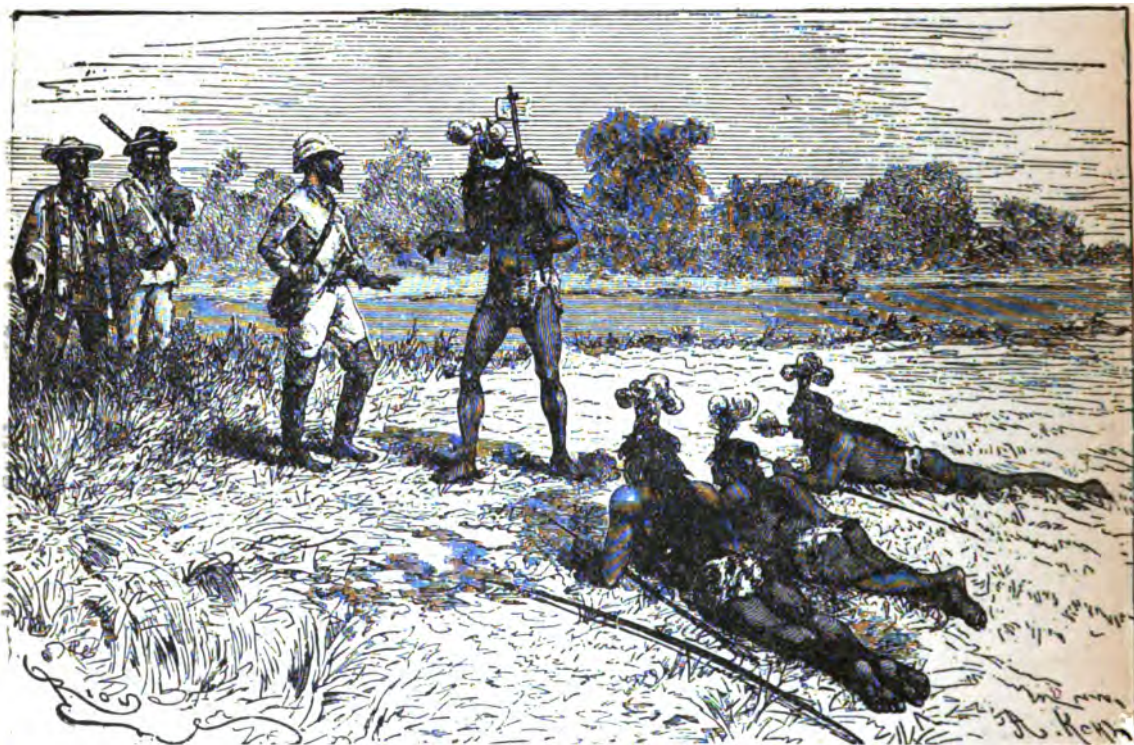
sharpshooters did their work effectively, and drove the descending natives rapidly up the slope until it became a general flight. Meantime, Mr. Jephson was not idle. He marched straight up the valley east, driving the people back, and taking their villages as he went. By 3 P. M. there was not a native visible anywhere, except on one small hill about a mile and a half west of us.

On the morning of the 12th we continued our march; during the day we had four little fights. On the 13th we marched straight east; attacked by new forces every hour until noon, but these we successfully overcame; then we halted for refreshments.



## 'A SIGHT OF THE N'YANZA.

At 1 P. M. we resumed our march in a driving rain storm up a steep hill. Fifteen minutes later I cried out, "Prepare yourselves for a sight of the N'yanza!" The men murmured and doubted, and said, "Why does the master continually talk to us in this way? N'yanza, indeed; is not this a plain and can we not see mountains at least four days' march ahead of us?" At 1.30 P. M. the Albert N'yanza was below them. Now it was my turn to jeer and scoff at the doubters, but as I was about to ask them what they saw, so many came to kiss my hands and beg my pardon that I could not say a word. This was my reward. The mountains, they said, were the mountains of Unyoro, or rather its lofty



ARGUING WITH A CHIEF FOR THE RIGHT OF WAY.

plateau wall. Kavalli, the objective point of the expedition, was six miles from us as the crow flies.

We were at an altitude of 5200 feet above the sea. The Albert N'yanza was over 2900 feet below us. We stood in 1 deg. 20 min. N. lat.; the south end of the N'yanza lay largely mapped about six miles south of this position. Right across to the eastern shore every dent in its low flat shore was visible, and traced like a silver snake on the dark ground was the tributary Simliki, flowing into the Albert from the south-west.

After a short halt to enjoy the prospect we commenced the rugged and stony descent. Before the rear-guard had descended 100 feet, the natives of the plateau we had just left poured after them. Had they shown as much cour-



age and perseverance on the plain as they now exhibited, we might have been seriously delayed. The rear-guard was kept very busy until within a few hundred feet of the N'yanza plain. We camped at the foot of the plateau wall, the aneroids reading 2500 feet above sea-level. A night attack was made on us, but our sentries sufficed to drive these natives away.

At 9 A. M. on the 14th we approached the village of Kanongo, situate at the south-west corner of the Albert Lake. Three hours were spent by us attempting to make friends. We signally failed. They would not allow us to go to the lake, because we might frighten their cattle. They would not exchange blood-brotherhood with us, because they never heard of any good people coming from the west side of the lake. They would not accept any presents from us,

because they did not know who we were. They would not give us water to drink, and they would not show us our road up to Nyamsassie. But from these singular people we learnt that they had heard there was a white man at Unyoro, but they had never



VILLAGE OF UGARROWWA.

heard of any white men being on the west side, nor had they seen any steamers on the lake. There were no canoes to be had, except such as would hold the men, etc.

#### RETREAT BACK TO IBWIRI.

There was no excuse for quarrelling; the people were civil enough, but they did not want us near them. We therefore were shown the path and followed it a few miles, when we camped about half a mile from the lake. We began to consider our position, by the light thrown upon it by the conversation with the Kanongo natives. My couriers from Zanzibar had evidently not arrived, or, I presume, Emin Pasha with his two steamers would have paid the south-west side of the lake a visit to prepare the natives for our coming. My boat was at Kilinga-Longa's, 190 miles distant. There was no canoe obtainable, and to seize a canoe without the excuse of a quarrel my conscience would not permit. There was no tree anywhere of the size to make canoes. Wadelai was a terrible distance off for an expedition so reduced as ours. We had used five cases of cartridges in five days' fighting on the plain. A month of such fight-

ing must exhaust our stock. There was no plan suggested which seemed feasible to me, except that of retreating to Ibwiri, build a fort, send a party back to Kilinga-Longa's for our boat, store up every load in the fort not conveyable, leave a garrison in the fort to hold it, and raise corn for us; march back again to Lake Albert, and send the boat to search for Emin Pasha. This was the plan which, after lengthy discussions with my officers, I resolved upon.

On the 15th we marched to the site of Kavalli, on the west side of the lake. Kavalli had years ago been destroyed. At 4 P. M. the Kanongo natives had followed us and shot several arrows into our bivouac, and disappeared as quickly as they came. At 6 P. M. we began a night march, and by 10 A. M. of the 16th we gained the crest of the plateau once more, Kanongo natives having persisted in following us up the slope of the plateau. We had one man killed and one wounded.

By January 7th we were in Ibwiri once again, and after a few days' rest Lieutenant Stairs and a hundred men were sent to Kilinga-Longa's to bring the boat and goods up, also Surgeon Parke and Captain Nelson. Out of 38 sick in charge of the officers only 11 were brought to the fort, the rest had died or deserted.

#### FORT BODO—ELEPHANT MARAUDERS.

A site having been chosen at Ibwiri, an entrenched camp was begun on June 7th, 1888, which we named Fort Bodo. This work was by no means a small undertaking, for we recognized the importance of making our position here a thoroughly secure one. Our men therefore began the work with a hearty will. Some collected long poles, others the boards used by the natives in building their villages, others cut long vines to be used as rope, and some more men dug the holes in which the uprights of the boma were to be placed. The poles having been placed in position, two and two, the boards were inserted lengthways between these and secured, lashed home with strong vines, and so on until a secure arrow-proof boma, ten feet high, surrounded the whole position. Four towers were placed—two at the east and west angles, and one on the north and one on the south faces—to give efficient flank defence and command over the surrounding country. A ditch, eight feet wide and seven feet deep, was dug on the north side, and every means possible adopted to make the place secure against surprise. It was also intended that this place should afford a depot for grain, so that if necessary a "suffari" could come in and leave in a day or two's time fully provisioned. For this purpose they broke up eleven acres of ground, and planted the same with Indian corn and beans. The greatest trial was the nocturnal raids of droves of elephants. Sometimes three or four acres of banana trees would be destroyed in a single night by these monsters. It required the close attention of sixteen men for four days a week to keep these elephants out of the plantations. Another source of worry to the garrison was the devastating hurricanes, which would sweep over the crops, laying green corn flat on the ground, and lessening greatly the quantity of corn to go into the granaries. The Expedition officers kept the



sentries on the alert both day and night, or they would have had the fort burnt down over their heads. They had tried many times to make friends with the Bushmen around, but to no purpose. No less than five times these came on at night trying to steal corn and tobacco, and every time the sentries heard them in the darkness, and were able to drive them off. To the north, about six miles in the forest, were many hidden camps of "Wambutti," or dwarfs—little men averaging, perhaps, four feet four inches in height, and keen in everything pertaining to woodcraft. To describe every-day life at Fort Bodo, a day's doings has simply been taken out of one of the journals: "Thursday, May 17.—To-day, 4th of Ramadan. Had a muster, posted all men to their stations (this a precaution in case of night attack). At work with all hands hoeing and weeding lower field; to-day's sick number ten; all are improving slowly. Nelson's brew of banana beer has come off splendidly. We now make beer, syrup and jam from ripe bananas, all of which are very good. The boys killed a large puff-adder this morning in the lower field, a most venomous-looking reptile." And so on, from day to day, planting, looking after the crops and sick men. This was the chief work, varied now and then by a counter-attack on those natives who might get too bold.

On the return of Stairs with the boat and goods he was sent to Ugarrowwa's to bring up the convalescents there. I granted him 39 days' grace. Soon after his departure I was attacked with gastritis and an abscess on the arm, but after a month's careful nursing by Dr. Parke I recovered, and 47 days having expired I set out again for the Albert N'yanza, April 2d, accompanied by Messrs. Jephson and Parke. Captain Nelson, now recovered, was appointed commandant at Fort Bodo in our absence, with a garrison of 41 men and boys.

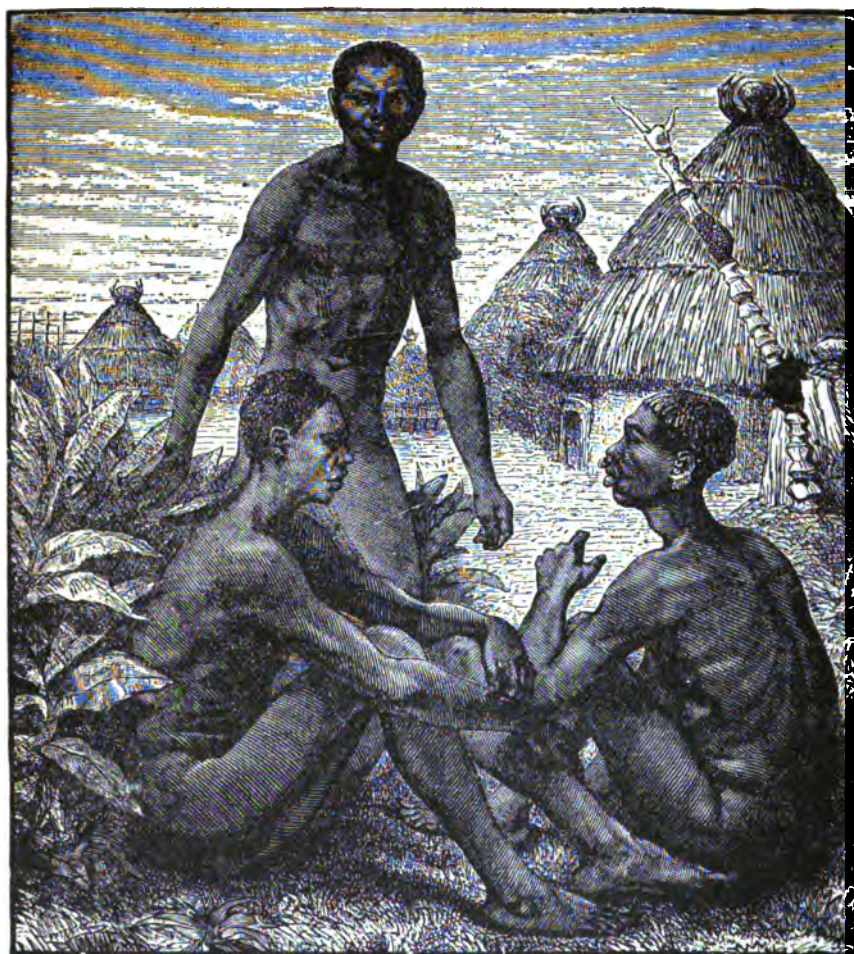
#### A LETTER FROM EMIN.

On April 26th we arrived in Mazamboni's country once again, but this time after solicitation Mazamboni decided to make blood-brotherhood with me. Though I had 50 rifles less with me on this second visit, the example of Mazamboni was followed by all the other chiefs as far as the N'yanza, and every difficulty seemed removed. Food was supplied gratis; cattle, sheep, goats and fowls were also given in such abundance that our people lived royally. One day's march from the N'yanza the natives came from Kavalli and said that a white man named "Malejji" had given their chief a black packet to give to me, his son. Would I follow them? "Yes, to-morrow," I answered, "and if your words are true I will make you rich."

They remained with us that night, telling us wonderful stories about "big ships as large as islands filled with men," etc., which left no doubt in our minds that this white man was Emin Pasha. The next day's march brought us to the chief, Kavalli, and after a while he handed me a note from Emin Pasha, covered with a strip over black American oil-cloth. The note was to the effect "that as there had been a native rumor to the effect that a white man had been seen at the south end of the lake, he had gone in his steamer to make

inquiries, but had been unable to obtain reliable information, as the natives were terribly afraid of Kabba Rega, King of Unyoro, and connected every stranger with him. However, the wife of the Nyamsassie chief had told a native ally of his named Mogo that she had seen us in Mrusuma (Mazamboni's country). He therefore begged me to remain where I was until he could communicate with me. The note was signed "(Dr.) Emin," and dated March 26th.

The next day, April 23d, Mr. Jephson was dispatched with a strong force of men to take the boat to the N'yanza. On the 26th the boat's crew sighted Msaw



NATIVES OF THE FORT BODO DISTRICT.

station, the southernmost belonging to Emin Pasha, and Mr. Jephson was there hospitably received by the Egyptian garrison. The boat's crew say that they were embraced one by one, and that they never had such attention shown to them as by these men, who hailed them as brothers.

#### MEETING WITH EMIN.

On the 29th of April we once again reached the bivouac ground occupied by us on the 16th of December, and at 5 P. M. of that day I saw the Khedive steamer about seven miles away steaming up towards us. Soon after 7 P. M. Emin

Pasha and Signor Casati and Mr. Jephson arrived at our camp, where they were heartily welcomed by all of us.

The next day we moved to a better camping place, about three miles above Nyamsassie, and at this spot Emin Pasha also made his camp; we were together until the 25th of May. On that day I left him, leaving Mr. Jephson, three Soudanese and two Zanzibaris in his care, and in return he caused to accompany me three of his irregulars and 102 Mahdi natives as porters.





Fourteen days later I was at Fort Bodo. At the fort were Captain Nelson and Lieutenant Stairs. The latter had returned from Ugarrowwa's 22 days after I had set out for the lake, April 2d, bringing with him, alas, only 16 men out of 56. All the rest were dead. My 20 couriers whom I had sent with letters to Major Barttelot had safely left Ugarrowwa's for Yambuya on March 16th.

Fort Bodo was in a flourishing state. Nearly ten acres were under cultivation. One crop of Indian corn had been harvested, and was in the granaries; they had just commenced planting again.

On the 16th of June I left Fort Bodo with 111 Zanzibaris and 101 of Emin Pasha's people. Lieutenant Stairs had been appointed commandant of the fort, Nelson second in command, and Surgeon Parke, medical officer. The garrison consisted of 59 rifles. I had thus deprived myself of all my officers in order that I should not be encumbered with provisions and medicines, which would have to be taken if accompanied by Europeans, and every carrier was necessary for the vast stores left with Major Barttelot. On the 24th of June we reached Kilinga-Longa's, and July 19th Ugarrowwa's. The latter station was deserted. Ugarrowwa, having gathered as much ivory as he could obtain from that district, had proceeded down river about three months before. On leaving Fort Bodo I had loaded every carrier with about 60 pounds of corn, so that we had been able to pass through the wilderness unscathed.

Passing on down river as fast as we could go, daily expecting to meet the couriers, who had been stimulated to exert themselves for a reward of \$50 per head, or the Major himself leading an army of carriers, we indulged ourselves in these pleasing anticipations as we neared the goal.

#### SAD NEWS.

On the 10th of August we overtook Ugarrowwa with an immense flotilla of 57 canoes, and, to our wonder, our couriers, now reduced to 17. They related an awful story of hair-breadth escapes and tragic scenes. Three of their number had been slain, two were still feeble from their wounds, all except five bore on their bodies the scars of arrow wounds.

A week later, on August 17, we met the rear column of the expedition at a place called Banalya, or, as the Arabs have corrupted it, Unarya. There was a white man at the gate of the stockade whom I at first thought was Mr. Jameson, but a nearer view revealed the features of Mr. Bonny, who left the medical service of the army to accompany us.

"Well, my dear Bonny, where is the Major?"

"He is dead, sir; shot by the Manyema about a month ago."

"Good God—and Mr. Jameson?"

"He has gone to Stanley Falls to try and get some more men from Tipu Tib."

"And Mr. Troup?"

"Mr. Troup has gone home, sir, invalided."



"Hem—well, where is Ward?"

"Mr. Ward is at Bangala, sir."

"Heavens alive—then you are the only one here!"

"Yes, sir."

A DEPLORABLE SITUATION.

I found the rear column a terrible wreck. Out of 257 men there were only 71 remaining. Out of 71, only 52, on mustering them, seemed fit for service, and these mostly were scarecrows. The advance had performed the march from Yambuya to Banalya in sixteen days, despite native opposition. The rear column performed the same distance in forty-three days. According to Mr.



LOOK OUT FOR THE CROCODILE.

Bonny, during the thirteen months and twenty days that had elapsed since I had left Yambuya, the record is only of disaster, desertion and death. I have not the heart to go into the details, many of which are incredible, and, indeed, I have not the time, for, excepting Mr. Bonny, I have no one to assist me in re-organizing the expedition. There are still far more loads than I can carry, at the same time articles needful are missing. For instance, I left Yambuya with only a short campaigning kit, leaving my reserve of clothing and personal effects in charge of the officers. In December some deserters from the advance column reached Yambuya to spread the report that I was dead. They had no papers

with them, but the officers seemed to accept the report of these deserters as a fact, and in January Mr. Ward, at an officers' mess meeting, proposed that my instructions should be cancelled. The only one who appears to have dissented was Mr. Bonny. Accordingly, my personal kit, medicines, soap, candles and provisions were sent down the Congo as "superfluities." Thus, after making this immense personal sacrifice to relieve them and cheer them up, I find myself naked and deprived of even the necessities of life in Africa. But, strange to say, they have kept two hats and four pair of boots, a flannel jacket, and I propose to go back to Emin Pasha and across Africa with this truly African kit. Livingstone, poor fellow, was all in patches when I met him, but it will be the reliever myself who will be in patches this time. Fortunately, not one of my officers will envy me, for their kits are intact; it was only myself that was dead.

I pray you to say that we were only 82 days from the Albert Lake to Banalya, and 61 from Fort Bodo. The distance is not very great; it is the people who fail one. Going to N'yanza, we felt as though we had the tedious task of dragging them; on returning, each man knew the road and did not need any stimulus. Between the N'yanza and here we only lost three men, one of which was by desertion. I brought 131 Zanzibaris here, I left 59 at Fort Bodo, total 190 men out of 389; loss, 50 per cent. At Yambuya I left 257 men; there are only 71 left, ten of whom will never leave this camp; loss, over 170. This proves that though the sufferings of the advance were unprecedented, the mortality was not so great as in camp at Yambuya. The survivors of the march are all robust, while the survivors of the rear column are thin and most unhealthy looking.

#### IMPORTANT DISCOVERIES.

I have thus rapidly sketched out our movements since June 28th, 1887. I wish I had the leisure to furnish more details, but I cannot find the time. I write this amid the hurry and bustle of departure, and amid constant interruptions. You will, however, have gathered from this letter an idea of the nature of the country traversed by us. We were 160 days in the forest—one continuous, unbroken, compact forest. The grass land was traversed by us in eight days. The limits of the forest along the edge of the grass land are well marked. We saw it extending north-easterly, with its curves and bays and capes, just like a sea-shore. South-westerly it preserved the same character. North and south, the forest area extends from Nyangwe to the southern borders of the Monbutto; east and west it embraces all from the Congo, at the mouth of the Aruwimi, to about east longitude 29 deg.—40 deg. How far west beyond the Congo the forest reaches I do not know. The superficial extent of the tract thus described—totally covered by forest—is 246,000 square miles. North of the Congo, between Upoto and the Aruwimi, the forest embraces another 20,000 square miles.

Between Yambuya and N'yanza we came across five distinct languages. The last is that which is spoken by the Wanyoro, Wanyankori, Wanya Ruanda, Wahha, and people of Karangwe and Ukerewe.



The land slopes gently from the crest of the plateau above the N'yanza down to the Congo River from an altitude of 5500 feet to 1400 feet above the sea. North and south of our track, through the grass land, the face of the land was much broken by groups of cones or isolated mounts or ridges. North we saw no land higher than about 6000 feet above the sea, but bearing .250° deg. magnetic, at a distance of about 50 miles from our camp on the N'yanza, we saw a towering mountain, its summit covered with snow, and probably 17,000 feet or 18,000 feet above the sea. It is called Ruewenzori, and will probably prove a rival to Kilimanjaro. I am not sure that it may not prove to be the Gordon Bennett Mountain in Gambaragara, but there are two reasons for doubting it to be the same—first, it is a little too far west for the position of the latter as given by me in 1876; and secondly, we saw no snow on the Gordon Bennett. I might mention a third, which is that the latter is a perfect cone apparently, while the Ruewenzori is an oblong mount, nearly level on the summit, with two ridges extending north-east and south-west.

I have met only three natives who have seen the lake towards the south. They agree that it is large, but not so large as the Albert N'yanza.

The Aruwimi becomes known as the Suhali about 100 miles above Yambuya; as it nears the Nepoko it is called the Nevoa; beyond its confluence with the Nepoko it is known as the No-Welle; 300 miles from the Congo it is called the Itiri, which is soon changed into the Ituri, which name it retains to its source. Ten minutes' march from the Ituri waters we saw the N'yanza, like a mirror in its immense gulf.

#### EMIN PASHA'S FORCES.

Before closing my letter let me touch more at large on the subject which brought me to this land, viz., Emin Pasha.

The Pasha has two battalions of regulars under him; the first, consisting of about 750 rifles, occupies Duffili, Honyu, Labore, Muggi, Kirri, Bedden, Rejaf; the second battalion, consisting of 640 men, guards the stations of Wadelai, Fatiko, Mahagi and Mswa, a line of communication along the N'yanza and Nile about 180 geographical miles in length. In the interior, west of the Nile, he retains three or four small stations—fourteen in all. Besides these two battalions he has quite a respectable force of irregulars, sailors, artisans, clerks, servants. "Altogether," he said, "if I consent to go away from here we shall have about 8000 people with us."

I replied, "Were I in your place I would not hesitate one moment or be a second in doubt about what to do."

"What you say is quite true," he responded, "but we have such a large number of women and children, probably 10,000 people altogether. How can they all be brought out of here? We shall want a great number of carriers."

"The women must walk. It will do them more good than harm. As for the little children, load them on the donkeys. I hear you have about 200 of them. Your people will not travel very far for the first month, but little by

little they will get accustomed to it. Our Zanzibar women crossed Africa on my second expedition; why cannot your black women do the same? Have no fear of them; they will do better than the men."

"They would require a vast amount of provisions for the road."

"True, but you have some thousands of cattle, I believe. Those will furnish beef. The countries through which we pass must furnish grain and vegetable food."

"Well, well, we will defer further talk until to-morrow."

#### AN ARGUMENT.

May 1, 1888. Halt in camp at Nsabe. The Pasha came ashore from the steamer Khedive about 1 P. M., and in a short time we commenced our conversation again. Many of the arguments used above were repeated, and he said:

"What you told me yesterday has led me to think that it is best we should retire from here. The Egyptians are very willing to leave. There are of these about 100 men, besides their women and children. Of these there is no doubt, and even if I stayed here I should be glad to get rid of them, because they undermine my authority and nullify all my endeavors for retreat. When I informed them that Khartoum had fallen and Gordon Pasha was slain, they always told the Nubians that it was a concocted story, that some day we should see the steamers ascend the river for their relief. But of the regulars who compose the 1st and 2d battalions I am extremely doubtful; they have led such a free and happy life here that they would demur at leaving a country where they have enjoyed luxuries they cannot command in Egypt. The soldiers are married, and several of them have harems. Many of the irregulars would also retire and follow me. Now, supposing the regulars refuse to leave, you can imagine that my position would be a difficult one. Would I be right in leaving them to their fate? Would it not be consigning them all to ruin? I should have to leave them their arms and ammunition, and on returning all discipline would be at an end. Disputes would arise and factions would be formed. The more ambitious would aspire to be chiefs by force, and from these rivalries would spring hate and mutual slaughter until there would be none of them left."

"Supposing you resolve to stay, what of the Egyptians?" I asked.

"Oh, these I shall have to ask you to be good enough to take with you"

"Now, will you, Pasha, do me the favor to ask Captain Casati if we are to have the pleasure of his company to the sea, for we have been instructed to assist him also should we meet?"

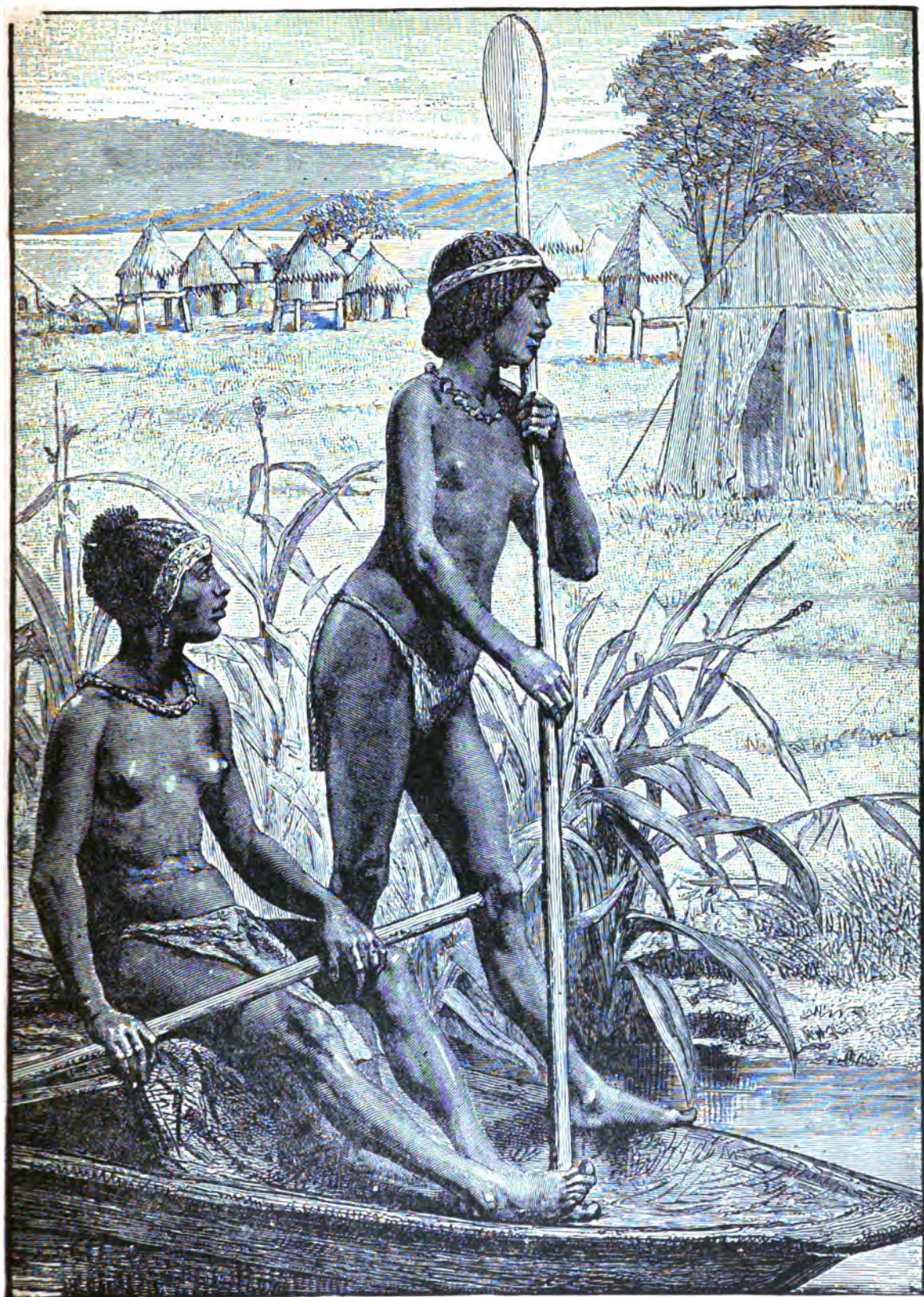
Captain Casati answered through Emin Pasha:

"What the Governor Emin decides upon shall be the rule of conduct for me also. If the Governor stays, I stay. If the Governor goes, I go."

"Well, I see, Pasha, that in the event of your staying your responsibilities will be great."

A laugh. The sentence was translated to Casati, and the gallant captain replied:





NATIVE BOAT-WOMEN AT KAVALLI.



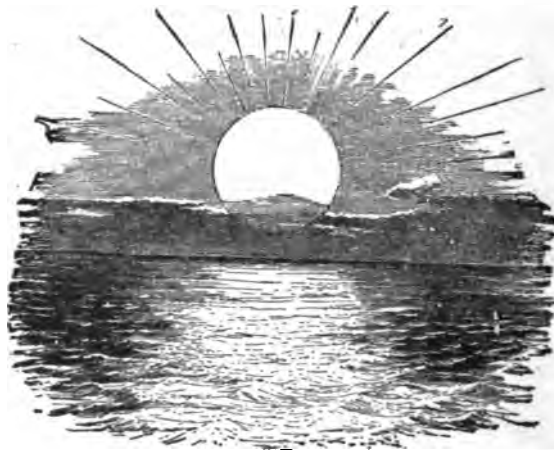
"Oh, I beg pardon, but I absolve the Pasha from all responsibility connected with me, because I am governed by my own choice entirely."

Thus day after day I recorded faithfully the interviews I had with Emin Pasha; but these extracts reveal as much as is necessary for you to understand the position. I left Mr. Jephson, thirteen of my Soudanese, and sent a message to be read to the troops, as the Pasha requested. Everything else is left until I return with the united expedition to the N'yanza.

Within two months the Pasha proposed to visit Fort Bodo, taking Mr. Jephson with him. At Fort Bodo I have left instructions to the officers to destroy the fort and accompany the Pasha to N'yanza. I hope to meet them all again on the N'yanza, as I intend making a short cut to the N'yanza along a new road.

Yours respectfully,


HENRY M. STANLEY.





## CHAPTER XXV.

### STANLEY'S REPLY TO HIS CRITICS AND DESCRIPTION OF HIS JOURNEY.

VERY great man naturally becomes a target at which jealous persons aim their shafts of venomous criticism. Mr. Stanley, important, herculean, heroic and philanthropic as have been his labors in Africa, has not escaped the flings of contemptible critics, nor the bites of pismires in human form. His undertaking was at first considered as foolhardy, and success in the face of direful predictions intensified the jealousy of the rueful prophets who seek now to sustain their suffering reputations by attacking Mr. Stanley's purposes and his honor. The inspiration of these onslaughts is well known to be a savagely begrudging disposition which actuates so many men and makes them color-blind to the good deeds and triumphs of others.

So offensive, as they are unjust, became the criticisms upon Stanley's generalship, his orders, intentions, aspirations, and his conduct generally in his efforts to relieve Emin Pasha, that he was at length moved to make a full answer to all the harpings of these miserable fault-finders and traducers of noble reputations. In making this full reply Mr. Stanley incidentally describes, briefly it is true, nearly the whole of his journey from Yambuya to Kavalli, as will be seen, hence his letter is one of extraordinary interest, as well as of value. It is as follows:

C. M. S. STATION AT WSALALA, South end of Lake Victoria,  
Central Africa, August 31st, 1889.

MY DEAR DE WINTON.—We arrived here on the 28th inst. and found the modern Livingstone, Mr. A. M. Mackay, safely and comfortably established at this mission station. I had always admired Mackay. He has never joined the missionary attacks on me, and every fact I had heard about him indicated that I should find him an able and reliable man. When I saw him and some of his work about here, then I recognized the man I had pleaded, in the name of M'tesa, should be sent to him in 1875; the very type of a man I had described as necessary to confirm M'tesa in his growing love for the white man's creed.

A packet of newspaper cuttings was given to me on my arrival here. The contents of most of them have perfectly bewildered me. I am struck with two things, viz., the lack of common-sense exhibited by the writers, and the utter disregard of accuracy shown. Not one seems to have considered my own letters to the Emin Pasha Relief Committee, or my speech at the MacKinnon dinner before starting, as worthy of regard. They do not care for the creed that I have always professed—the one great article of faith of the working portion of my life—"Never make a promise unless you mean to keep it;" and my second article of faith, which ought to have been as generally known, if words

and corresponding actions may be judged—"Obey orders if you break owners." "All I prayed for," said I at the MacKinnon dinner speech, "is that the same impelling power which has hitherto guided and driven me in Africa would accompany me in my journey for relieving Gordon's faithful lieutenant."

#### THE RELIEF OF EMIN PASHA EXPLAINED.

Now, in this White Pasha affair, tell me why I should budge one foot to right or left from the straight line described to you in my letters. Kavalli's, on the Albert N'yanza, almost due east from Yambuya—that is the objective point, natural obstacles permitting. I have never yet departed from the principle of fulfilling my promise to the letter, where there is a responsibility attached



INTERRUPTION OF THE PASHA'S REVERIE.

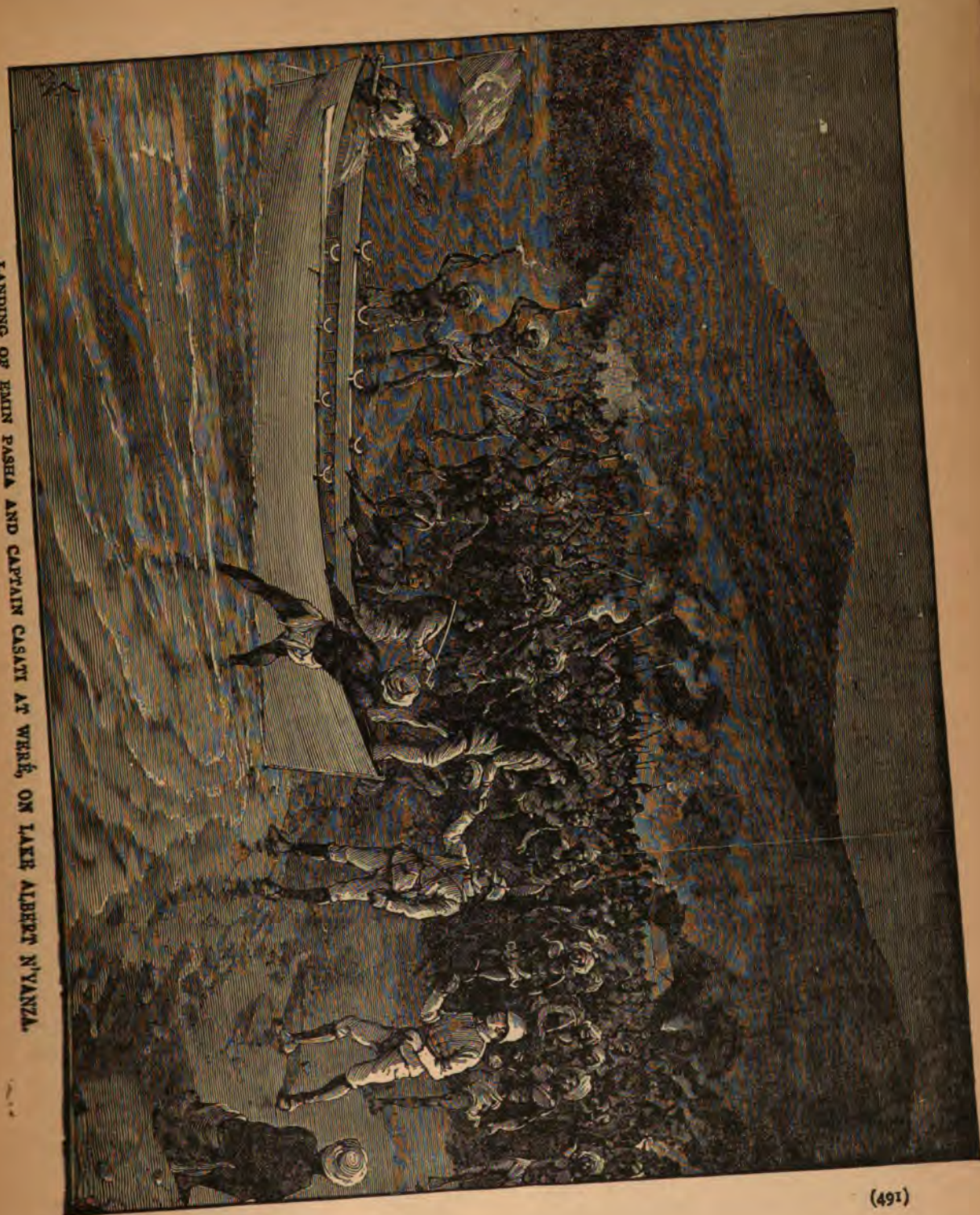
to it. Have people at any time discovered any crankiness in me? Then why should they suppose that I, who expressed my views that Gordon disobeyed orders—Gordon's wilfulness, you remember the phrase in the Mansion House speech—would be ten times

more disobedient and a thousand times more disloyal, deserving of such charges as "breach of faith," "dishonesty," "dissimulation," by going in the direction of Bahr Gazelle or Khartoum? I should not have gone were it to win the Imperial crown, unless it had been an article in the verbal bond between the Committee and myself. The object of the expedition, as I understood it, was simply the relief of Emin Pasha, so far as the Committee was concerned in the undertaking, but the Egyptian Government added, "and the escort of Emin Pasha and his people to the sea, should he require it."

Now, in the Emin Pasha affair, the latest Blue Book which Lord Iddesleigh furnished me with contained many expressions through Emin Pasha's letters, which seem to prove that he had faithfully maintained his post until he could learn from his government what its intentions were, and that he had force enough with him to depart in almost any direction towards the sea if such was the government's wish: by the Congo, by Monbutto or via Langgo



LANDING OF EMIN PASHA AND CAPTAIN CASATI AT WERE, ON LAKE ALBERT N'YANZA.



Land, and Musai—were equally alike to him. But on November 2d, 1887, forty-two days before I reached the Albert N'yanza, he (the Pasha) writes to his friend, Dr. Falkin:—"Do not have any doubt about my intentions; I do not want a rescue expedition. Have no fears about me. I have long made up my mind to stay."

#### A COLD MEETING WITH EMIN PASHA.

All this is very unsatisfactory and inexplicable. He (the Pasha) also said he had sent searching parties in the direction I was supposed to come. On December (1888) 15, 16, 17, I made inquiries of the people at the south end of Lake Albert, and they had seen no steamer since Mason Bey's visit in 1877, consequently this absence of news of him cost us a 300-mile journey to obtain our boat and carry her to the N'yanza. With this boat we found him within three days. Finally he steamed up to our camp, but instead of meeting with one who had long ago made up his mind to stay or to go away with us, he would first have to consult his people, scattered among fifteen stations over a large extent of country. I foresaw a long stay, but to avoid that and to give the Pasha ample time to consider his answer and learn the wishes of his people, I resolved to go back even to Yambuya to ascertain the fate of the rear column of our expedition under Major Barttelot. This diffidence on the part of the Pasha cost me another rough march of 1300 miles. When I returned to the N'yanza, after eight months' absence, it was only to find that Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson, one of our officers who stayed with him as a witness, had been made prisoners four months previous to our arrival on the N'yanza, and that the invasion of the Pasha's province by the Mahdists had utterly upset everything.

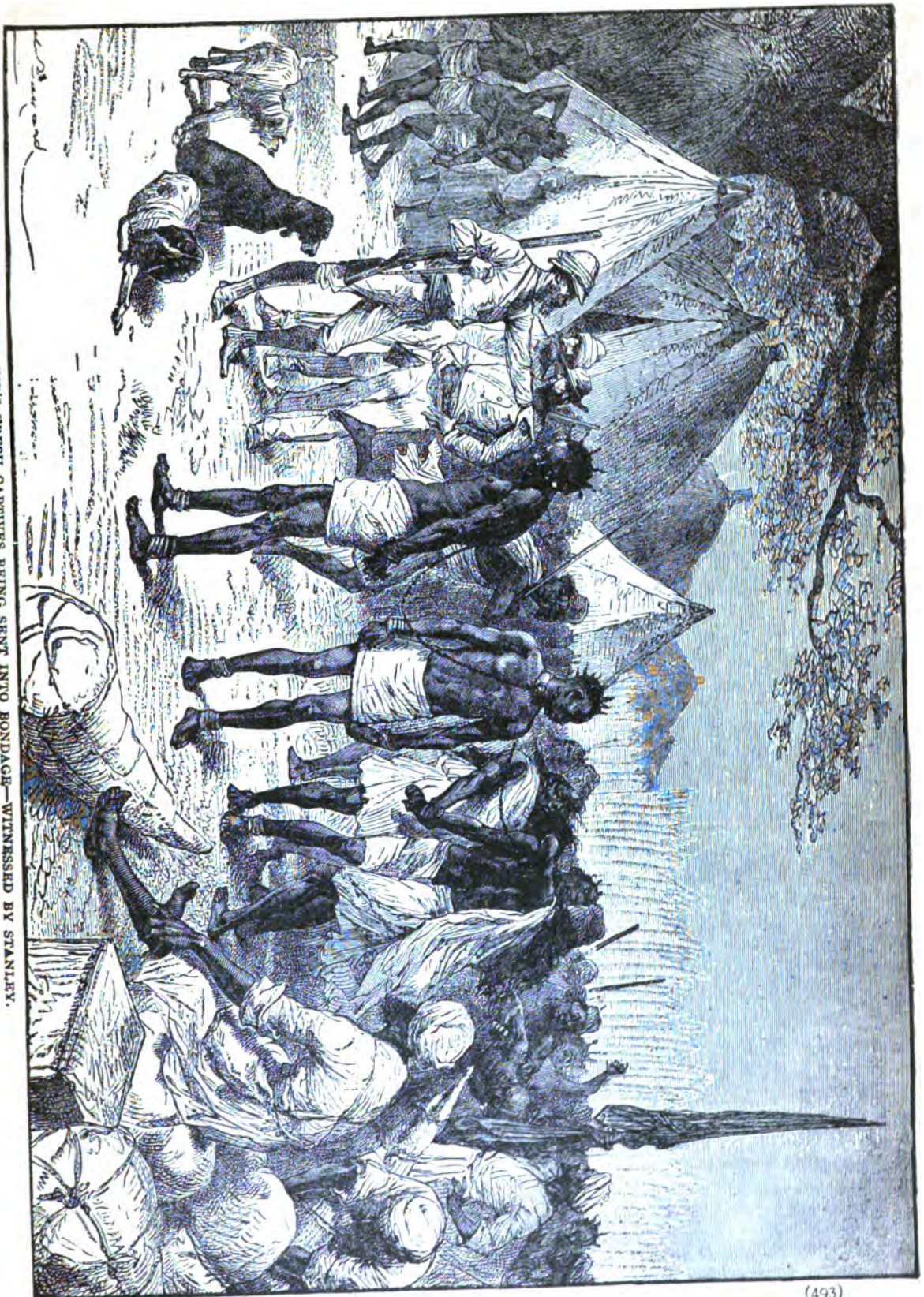
When Mr. Jephson, according to command, detached himself from the Pasha and came to me, I learned then for the first time that the Pasha had had no province, government or soldiers for nearly three years; that he was living undisturbed, and that the people sometimes yielded to his wishes apparently through mere sufferance and lack of legitimate excuse to cast him off utterly. But when he committed himself by a gust of awakened optimism to venture into the presence of his soldiers he was at once arrested, insulted, menaced, and imprisoned.

#### TIPO TIB'S ENGAGEMENT.

In relation to the subject of Major Barttelot and Tipo Tib, I have seen more nonsense than on any other. You remember the promise I made "to do as much good as I could, but as little mischief as possible." Let us see how this applied to the engagement with Tipo Tib. This man had grown rich through his raids, which had been the boldest and best rewarded with booty of any ever made. That error of judgment which led Captain Deane to defy the Arabs for the sake of a lying woman who had fled from her master to avoid punishment, had irritated all the Arabs at Stanley Falls, and especially Tipo Tib and all his relatives, friends, subjects and armed slaves. Tipo Tib was resolved to retaliate on the Congo Free State; he was at Zanzibar collecting material for the most important raid of all—that is, down the Upper Congo.



TIPO TIL'S FRESH CAPTIVES BEING SHUNT INTO BONDAGE—WITNESSED BY STANLEY.





Who could have stopped his descent before he reached Stanley Pool? Who knew the means of the State for defence better than I did? Therefore it was either a fearfully desolating war, or a compromise and a peace while good faith was kept. If both parties are honest peace will continue indefinitely. To secure Tipo Tib's honesty a salary of \$150 per month was given to him. For this trifling consideration thousands of lives are saved and their properties secured to them. No Congo State is permitted to consolidate until it is readier with offensive means than at this time.

Thank God I have long left that immature age when one becomes a victim to every crafty rogue he meets. I am not a gushing youth, and we may assume that Tipo Tib's prime age is far from dotage. We both did as much as possible to gain advantage. I was satisfied with what I obtained, and



ONE OF TIPO TIB'S SLAVE GANGS.

Tipo Tib secured what money he wanted. At the time he agreed I feel certain that he was sincere in his intentions. You remember your Scripture, I dare say, and you remember the words, "There is more joy in heaven over one sinner that repenteth than over

ninety-nine that need no repentance." Who had been a greater sinner than Tipo Tib, at least in our estimation? But he could not sin down the Congo, for pecuniary as well as for more powerful reasons, which cannot be mentioned lest other crafty rogues take advantage of the disclosures.

#### THE APPOINTMENT OF BARTELOT.

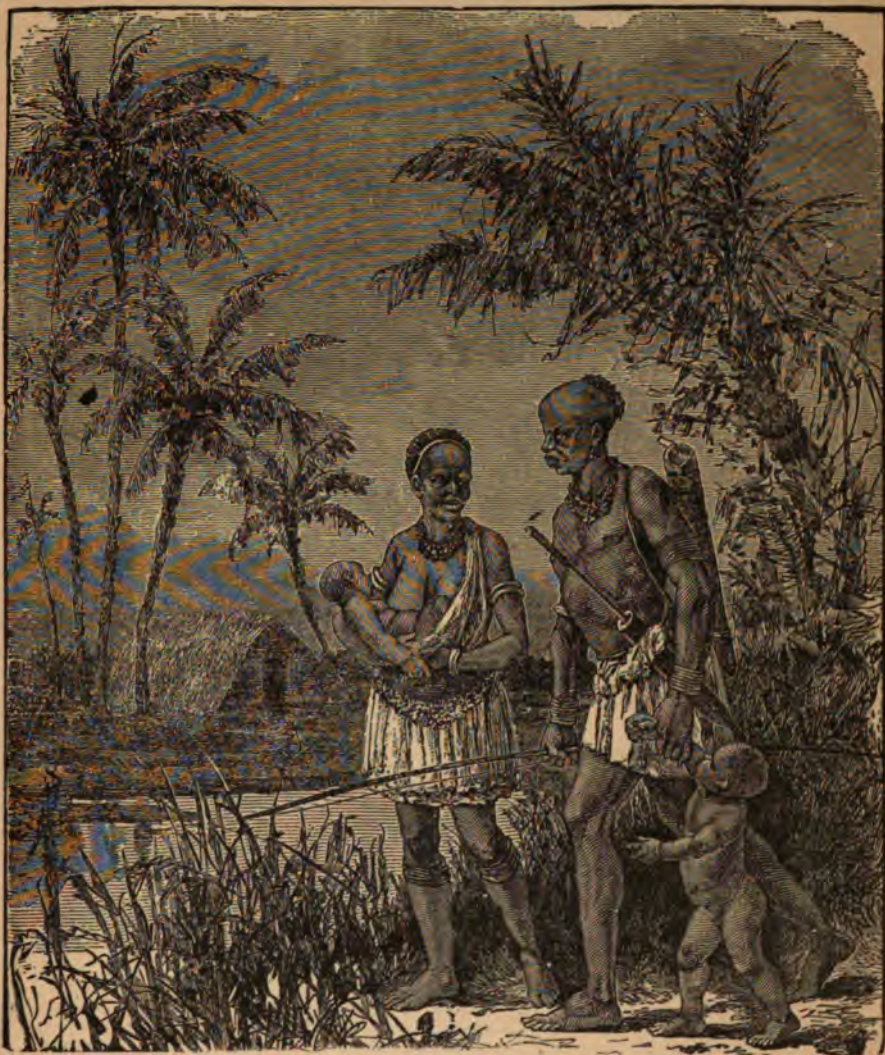
After disposing of Tipo Tib, the pirate, the freebooter, buccaneer, and famous raider, I may say a word about poor Barttelot. He was a Major in the British army. His very manner indicated him to be of a frank, gallant, daring, and perhaps somewhat dangerous disposition if aroused. His friends who introduced him to me in London spoke of him in some such terms. They named the campaigns he had been in, and what personal service he had performed. As I looked at the Major's face I read courage, frankness, combative



ness in large quantity, and I said to these friends: "Courage and boldness are common characteristics among British officers, but of the most valuable quality for an expedition like this I have not heard anything: I hope you can add forbearance."

The only quality perhaps in which he was deficient was that of forbearance, though I promised myself that he should have little chance to exercise combativeness.

You must not think this was a defect in him. It was merely the result of high spirits, youth, and good constitution. He was just pining for work. I promised him he should have so much of it that he would plead for rest. But unfortunately, want of sufficient vessels to float the expedition at one time on the upper Congo compelled me to leave about one half of my stores in charge of Mr. Troup at Stanley Pool, and 126 men under Messrs. Ward and Bonny at Bololo, and as



NATIVES OF THE BOLOLO DISTRICT.

the Major was senior officer and Mr. Jameson was an African traveller of experience, after due consideration it was concluded that no other two men could be fitter for the post of guarding the camp at Yambuya. With me for the advance column were Lieutenant Stairs, R. E., very intelligent and able, Captain Nelson, of the Colonial forces, Mounteney Jephson, a civilian, to whom work was as much a vital necessity as bread, and Surgeon T. H. Parke, of

the A. M. D., a brilliant operator and physician. All were equally ignorant of the Kiswahili, the language of the Zanzibaris, as Major Barttelot and Mr. Jameson. The only two who knew the language were Messrs. Ward and Troup, and they were not due at Yambuya until the middle of August. Would it have been wise to have placed either Stairs, Nelson or Jephson, instead of Major Barttelot, the senior officer, in command of Yambuya? I feel sure you will agree with me I made the best choice possible.

#### CIRCUMSTANCES LEADING TO BARTTELOT'S DEATH.

When young officers, English, German or Belgian, come to Africa for many months, there is no abatement of that thirst for action, that promptitude for work, that impatience to be moving, which characterizes them at home. Anæmia has not sapped the energies and thinned the blood. They are more combative at this period than any other. If any quarrels or squabbles arise it is at this time. I had to interfere twice between fire-eating young Arabs and strong, plucky young Englishmen, who were unable to discern the dark-faced Arab from the nigger, before we reached Yambuya. Well, it just happened that the Major, forgetting my instructions as to forbearance, met these Arab fire-eaters, and the consequence was that the Major had to employ the Syrian Assad Ferran to interpret for him. Whether the man interpreted falsely I know not, but a coolness arose between the high-spirited young Major and the equally high-spirited nephew of Tipo Tib, which was never satisfactorily healed up, and which, in the long run, led to the ever-to-be-regretted death of poor Barttelot.

#### STANLEY'S INSTRUCTIONS TO BARTTELOT.

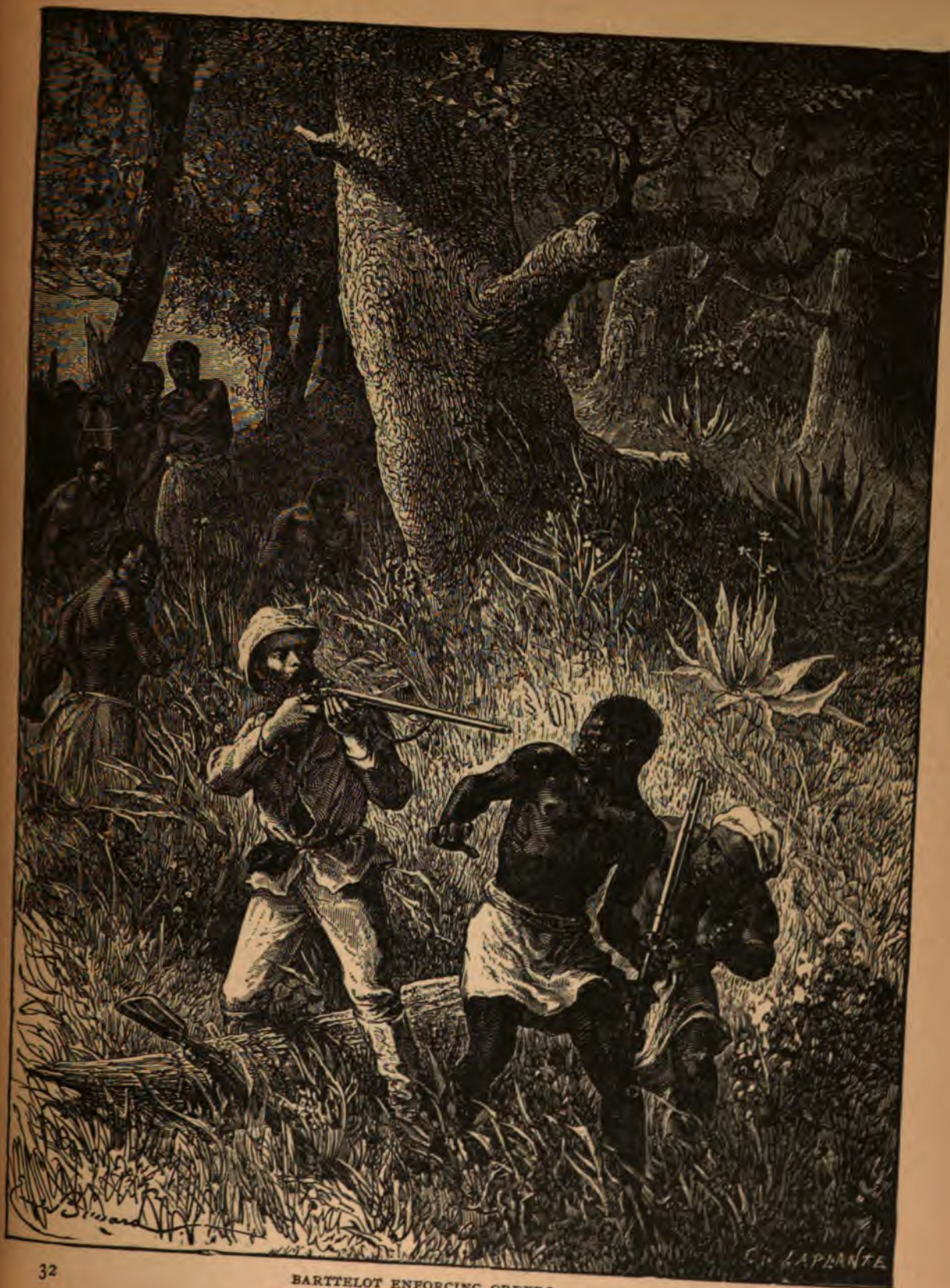
In the written instructions to Major Barttelot, June 24, Yambuya stockaded camp, paragraph III reads as follows:

It is the non-arrival of the goods from Stanley Pool and the men from Bololo which compels me to appoint you commander of this post. But as I shall shortly expect the arrival of a strong re-enforcement of men (Tipo Tib's people), greatly exceeding the advance force, which must at all hazards proceed and push on to the rescue of Emin Pasha, I hope you will not be detained longer than a few days after the departure of the *Stanley* on her final return to Stanley Pool in August (say August 18, 1887, as the steamer did not arrive in time August 14).

Paragraph V.—The interests now entrusted to you are of vital importance to this expedition. All the men (Zanzibaris), who will shortly be under your command, will consist of more than a third of the expedition. The goods are needed for currency through the regions beyond the lakes. The loss of these men and goods would be certain ruin to us, and the advance force itself would need to solicit relief in its turn.

Paragraph VI.—Our course from here will be due east, or by magnetic compass east by south. The paths may not exactly lead in that direction at times, but it is the north-west corner of Albert Lake, near or at Kavalli, that







is our destination. . . . Our after conduct must be guided by what we shall learn of the intentions of Emin Pasha.

Paragraph VII.—We shall endeavor, by blazing the trees and cutting saplings, to leave sufficient traces of the route taken by us.

Paragraph VIII.—It may happen, should Tipo Tib send the full complement of men promised (700), and if the 126 men have arrived by the *Stanley*, that you will feel competent to march your column along the route pursued by me. In that event, which would be most desirable, we should meet before many days. You will find our bomas or zeribas very good guides.

Paragraph IX.—It may happen also that Tipo Tib has sent some men, but he has not sent enough. In that event you will, of course, use your discretion as to what goods you can dispense with to enable you to march.



TIPO TIB'S SLAVES MARCHING OUT OF STANLEY FALLS.

(List of classes of goods, according to their importance, here given. Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, the highest numbers to be first thrown away.)

If you still cannot march, then it would be better to make double marches than to throw too many away, if you prefer moving on to staying for our arrival.

#### TIPO TIB'S UNRELIABILITY.

These instructions were supplemented by verbal explanations, giving permission to march the very next day after the contingent from Bololo had arrived, if he could prepare his goods in time—urgently impressing him not to place any stress on the promises of Tipo Tib, if he failed to make an appearance within a reasonable time of the promised date. His carriers were not absolutely necessary, but they would serve to keep our men fresh for other journeys. If Tipo Tib came, why, well and good; if he did not come, ther



be indifferent, adapt your goods to your carriers, and march on after us. The sooner you can march the sooner we will meet. If Tipo Tib broke his written agreement made with me before the consul, his promises to you would be more unreliable. When you last saw him, he promised to come within nine days; that date will be over day after to-morrow. If he comes any time before the arrival of the *Stanley* all will be well; but if he does not come by that time it will prove that the man never intended to keep his promise. Do not bother your mind about him, but come along with what you can—ammunition, beads, cloth, private luggage, and European provisions. If you make double marches of four or six miles a day, you will do very well, etc.

The Major rose up in his frank, impetuous manner, and said: "By George, that's my style. I will stop very few days indeed after the people from Bololo come up. I wouldn't stop longer for anything." Unfortunately, tantalizing delays, accompanied by constant fair promises on the part of the Arabs, prevented the forward movement, with what unfortunate results to the expedition and to the rear column is too well known to be again referred to here.

#### MISREPRESENTATIONS ABOUT CANNIBALISM,

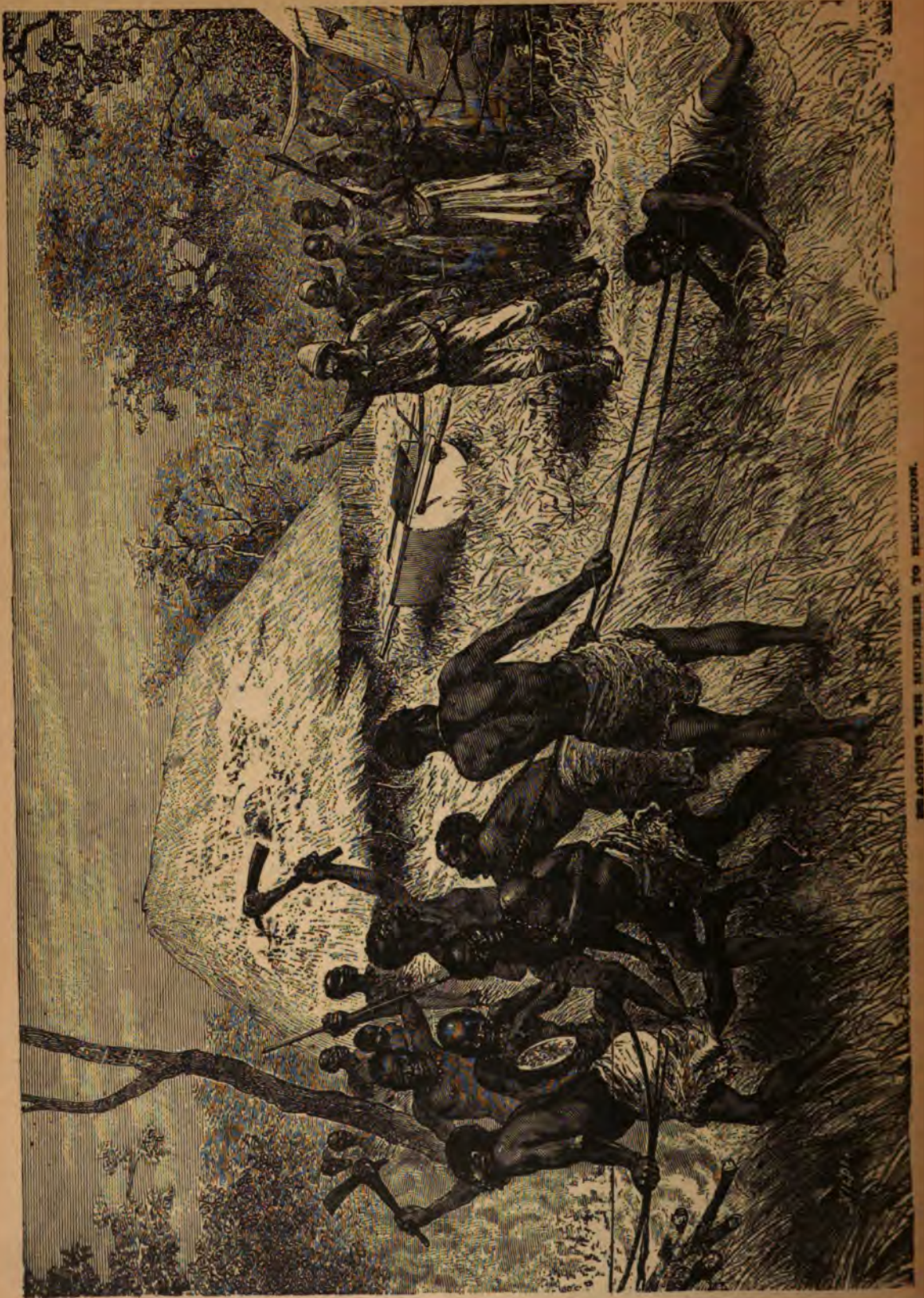
In regard to atrocities reported on the Congo, I do not know who made the horrible statement that I have seen connected with the names of Major Barttelot and Jameson. It is inconceivable nonsense—a sensational *canard*. The Rev. Wilmot Brooke has written a letter to the *Times* about atrocities on the Aruwimi. There is one part of a sentence which reads as follows: "Eye-witnesses, both English and Arab, have assured me that it is a common thing, which they themselves have seen on passing through the Manyuema camp, to see human hands and feet sticking out of their cooking pots."

The question I should like to ask here is, "Who are those English who have seen this curious sight—hands and feet sticking out of cooking pots?" Mr. Wilmot Brooke is an independent missionary seeking for a nest. It must be that there is something of an "untraveller" look about him for him to have been chosen as the recipient of this interestingly sensational item. I would not mind guaranteeing that "those English" are as undiscoverable as Prester John's traditional crown. I have had 150 so-called Manyuema, or rather Wasongora, and Wakusu slaves of Manyuema headmen with me—Tipo Tib's people—some twelve months now, and not one Englishman has seen anything of the kind.

Is Mr. Wilmot Brooke, or is it Assad Ferran, the author of that tale that an execution of a woman was delayed by Jameson or Barttelot that a photographer might make ready his apparatus? Would it surprise you to know that there was no photograph apparatus of even the smallest kind within 500 miles of Stanley Falls or the camp at Yambuya, north, south, east or west, at that time or at any time near that date?

But I might go on at this rate forever with the "infinite finite" nonsense I find in print in these scraps. Major Barttelot did punish men twice with severity, but, singular as it may seem, the white person who accused him was





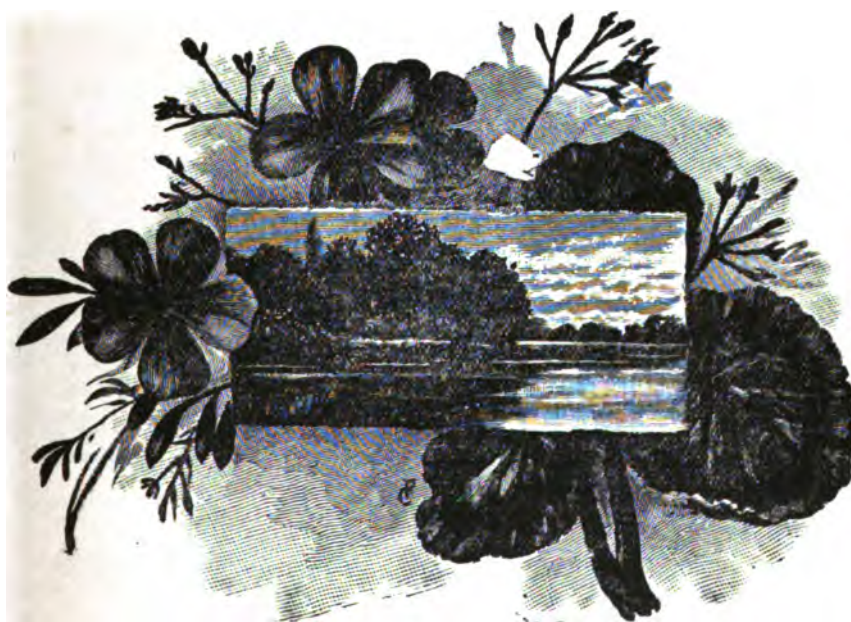
BRAGGERS THE SLAVERS TO THE MOUNTAIN.



present on both occasions during the flogging scene—he never even protested; the second time he gave his verdict—death—at a fair trial, and signed the document consigning him to instant doom.

I have had to execute four men during our expedition; twice for stealing rifles, cartridges, and broken loads of ammunition; one of the Pasha's people for conspiracy, theft, and decoying about thirty women belonging to the Egyptians, besides for seditious plots—court martialed by all officers, and sentenced to be hung; a Soudanese soldier, the last, who deliberately proceeded to a friendly tribe and began shooting at the natives. One man was shot dead instantly, and another was seriously wounded. The chiefs came and demanded justice, the people were mustered, the murderer and his companions were identified, the identification by his companions confirmed, and the murderer was delivered to them, according to the law, "blood for blood." Yours very faithfully,

HENRY M. STANLEY.



## CHAPTER XXVI.

### ADVENTURES ON THE ROUTE.



**T**HE description which Stanley gives of his journey from Yambuya to Kavalli, on Lake Albert, is in the nature of a report to a scientific body, and therefore, while reciting the perils of the march, it does not descend to the particulars of adventures, which he reserved for subsequent description, for publication as well as to add exciting interest to the letters which he wrote from Africa to his friends. It was my good fortune to be able to secure facts from his correspondence, and to add here the principal adventures of his most memorable journey.

As an explorer, whose chief mission, while philanthropic, was hardly less an ambition to familiarize himself with new regions, Stanley could not afford to disregard even the traditions respecting the country lying along the Aruwimi river, especially since, though possibly idle stories, they were evidently grounded firmly in the beliefs of both Arabs and natives of all Central Africa. By this careful attention to beliefs, as well as critical observation, he has been able to give us much information about tribes which have never before been brought to the notice of even ethnologists, much less to the great mass of people. To features of his march not described in his letter to the Relief Committee we must therefore now address ourselves.



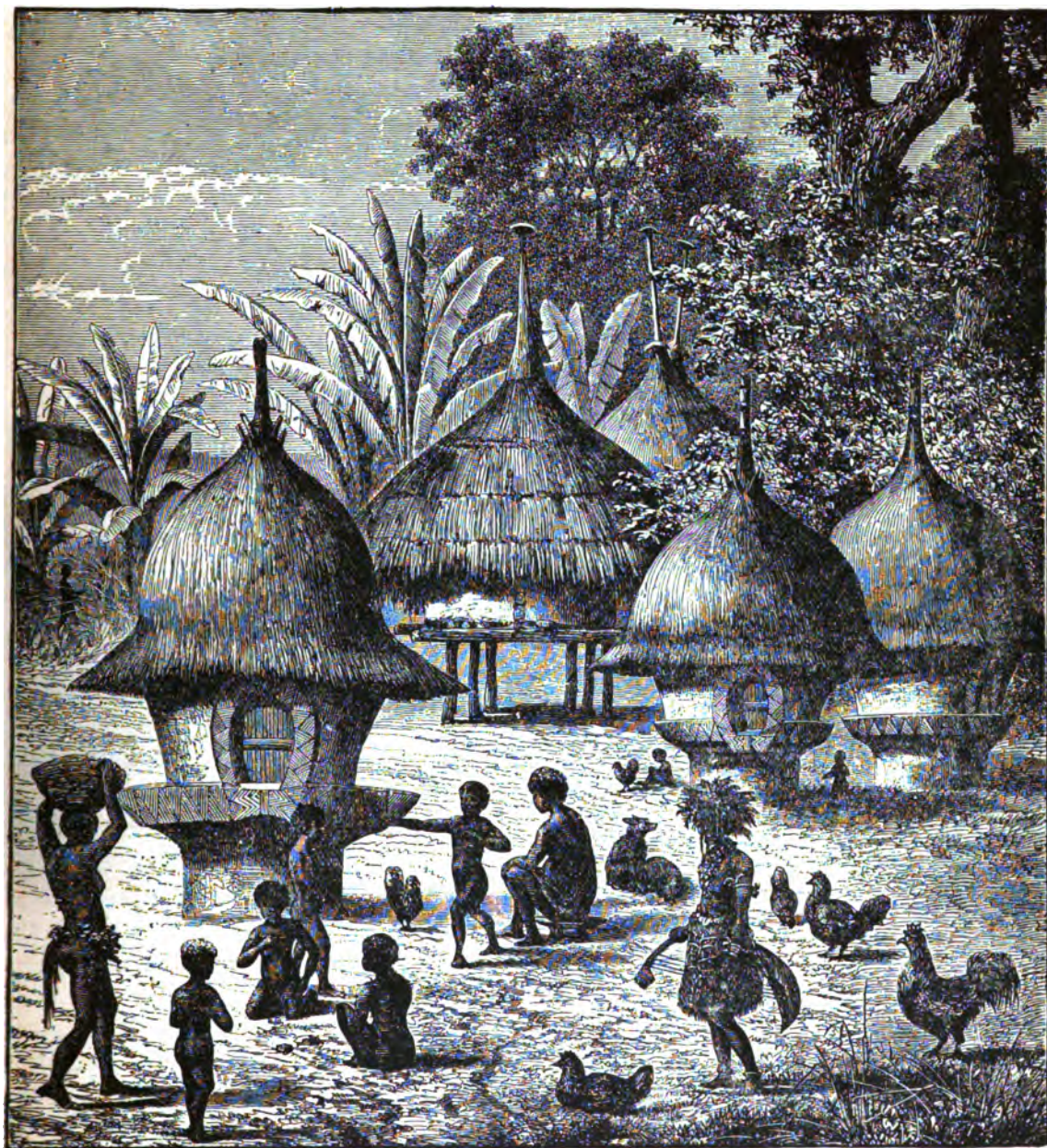
MUSTERING OF THE HOSTILES

#### CRUEL DEVICES ADOPTED BY THE NATIVES.

Among other difficulties encountered on the journey, Stanley says that very shortly after the expedition departed from Yambuya the members were initiated into the subtleties of savage warfare. Among other arts practised by the natives for annoying strangers was that of filling shallow pits with sharpened splinters, or skewers, deftly covered over with leaves. For barefooted people the results were terrible; and ten men were wounded by these skewers, which would often perforate the foot quite through, or the tops would be buried in the feet, producing gangrenous sores.



To these distressful annoyances, or more properly murderous obstructions, complaint is added against swarming insects, such as gnats, flies and ants, which in some places attacked the expedition in such numbers and with such venomous bites as forced the men to throw down their burdens and fight for life.



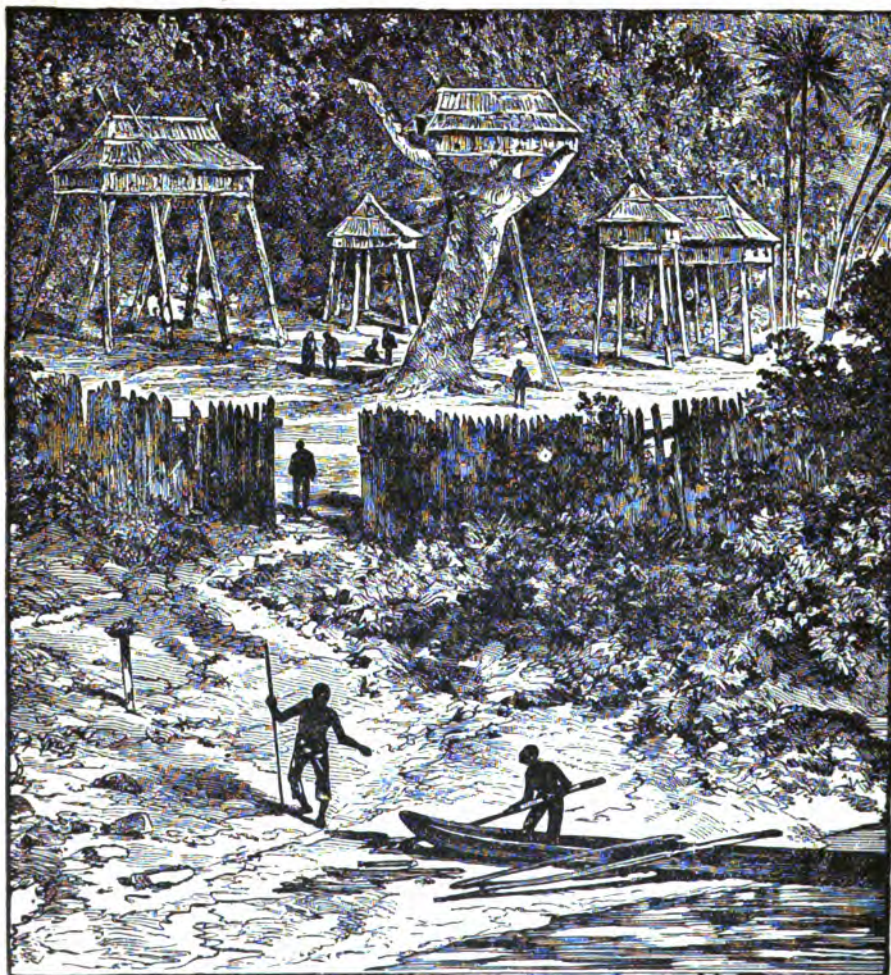
DWELLINGS OF TRIBES BELOW NEJAMBI RAPIDS.

The mornings along the river were generally lowering and very sombre, everything being buried in thick mist, which frequently did not clear off until nearly noon. While this lasted the air was still as death, and gave the insects



opportunity for foraging off every living thing. When the sun came out, and the breeze sprang up, the small winged creatures fled away to the deep forests and settled.

The Nejambi Rapids marked the division between two different kinds of architecture and language. Below were the cone huts; above were villages long and straight, of detached square huts surrounded by tall logs of wood, which added materially to the strength of the village. But all the villages were hostile,



ELEVATED DWELLINGS ALONG THE ARUWIMI.

and were also armed with strong bows from which poisoned arrows were discharged with deadly effect. Stanley and his officers became much exercised as to what might be the poison on the heads of the arrows by which Lieutenant Stairs and several others were wounded, and from the effects of which four died almost directly. During a halt at Avesibba several packets of dried red-ants were found, and the secret was out. The bodies of these insects were dried, ground into powder, cooked in palm oil, and smeared on the arrow tips, and thus the deadly irritant, by which so many men had been lost after the most terrible suffering, was conveyed into the arrow wounds. This poison is so potent that it is forbidden to prepare it near a village.

Stanley also mentions having seen immense piles of oyster shells on several islands in the Aruwimi, though this peculiar species of bivalves is not now found living in the river. He also notes a curious means employed by the natives in clearing the forests of tall white-stemmed trees characteristic of the Lower Congo,



which is by building a platform about the trees, ten, fifteen, and even twenty feet high, and then cutting off the trunk at that height. The purpose of this most singular practice could not be discovered, except that the natives considered too much labor involved in the clearing out of trunks and stumps, and therefore thought all useful means were accomplished by the lopping off of that portion of the tree whose foliage would give too much shade to what they planted. Nor is this theory without reason, for in Africa land has no ownership, and the tribes are usually migratory. A single, or at most two crops are harvested by one family on the same ground in many districts, hence a thorough clearing cannot be afforded. Stanley also incidentally notes having seen occasional huts built on piles, and even stumps of trees, at a considerable elevation, but does not give us the reasons for this kind of architecture.

#### EXCITING SPORT ON THE ARUWIMI.

While a much larger part of the journey toward Kavalli was made on land, along the river shore, yet in several instances large canoes, called *nuggers*, were procurable at native villages, and in these the expedition travelled until an interruption in the navigation compelled a return to the land. Canoes were always hard to obtain, and in nearly all cases where they could be hired the owners would not allow them to be taken beyond a few miles. It

is true, Stanley had a sufficiently well-armed force with him to take by violence what he was unable to secure by purchase, but his was a peace-



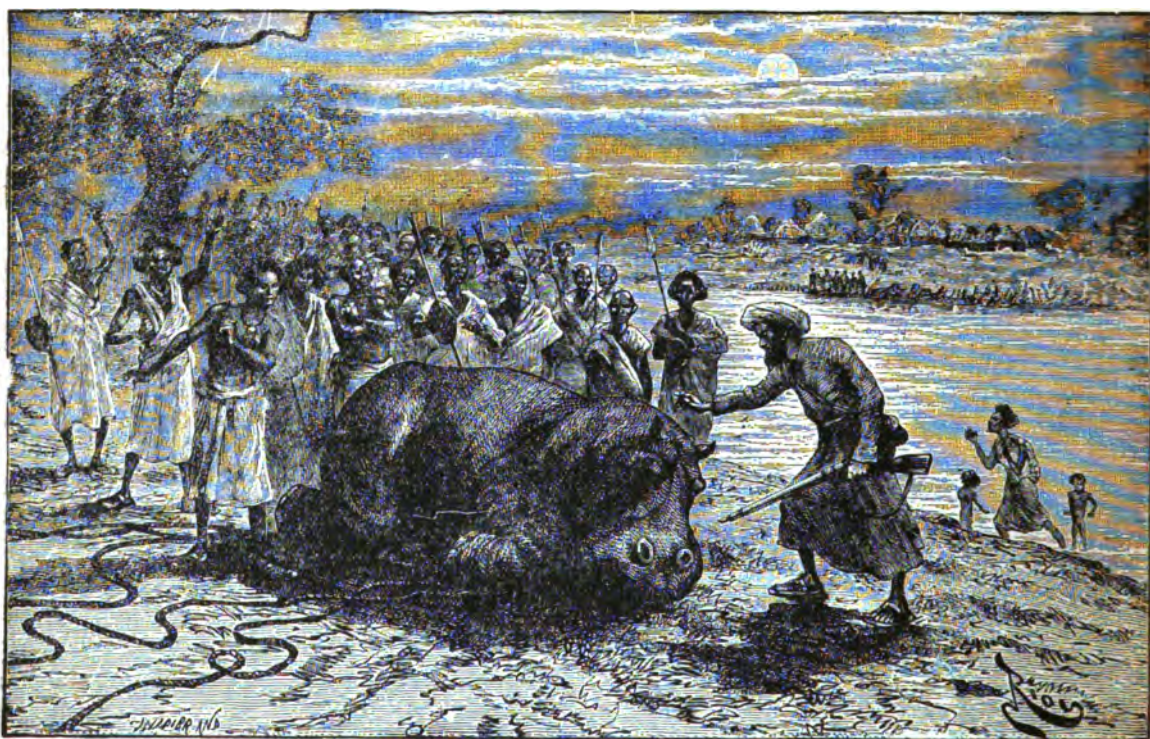
A SCHOOL OF HIPPOPOTAMI.

ful mission, and he avoided, even to the point of seeming cowardice, collisions with the natives, in no instance beginning an attack, and always resorting to every possible means for evading a fight even in his own defence. Notwithstanding his sufferance, however, he was forced many times to make a vigorous defence to avoid destruction at the hands of violently hostile tribes who opposed every conceivable impediment at their command to his advance.

The short relays of canoes that were obtainable gave great relief to the weary and footsore travellers, besides often affording exciting sport to the hunters and venturously inclined members of the expedition. The river has little current, on which account, as well as the few disturbances of the ancient quiet of that region, it is made the haunt of great numbers of hippopotami and crocodiles, while monkeys of many varieties are to be constantly seen in wanton gambols among the trees that line the banks. Being well supplied with arms and ammunition, Stanley and his lieutenants found much amusement shooting the larger game from the canoes; and even their Arab auxiliaries, who generally maintained a melancholy mien, threw off their sullenness for an occasional hunt along the shores.

Many times during the trip the party were sorely pressed for food, and were

forced to many expedients to obtain it. The natives were generally very poor themselves, and while having little to sell, were even less inclined to furnish food for strangers. Hunting, too, was frequently a doubtful resource, because, while in certain sections game was abundant, in others there seemed to be no animal life whatever. The Arabs—about a dozen having followed the expedition after Tipo Tib left it at Stanley Falls—fared worse than the others, because of their religious scruples about eating hippopotamus flesh, which they regard as unclean. But the gnawing pangs of hunger finally overcame the proscription of creed and belief, so that they were brought to partake of the forbidden food. It was a ludicrous sight to Christians to see a lay Mohammedan acting



BLESSING THE DEAD BODY OF A HIPPOPOTAMUS.

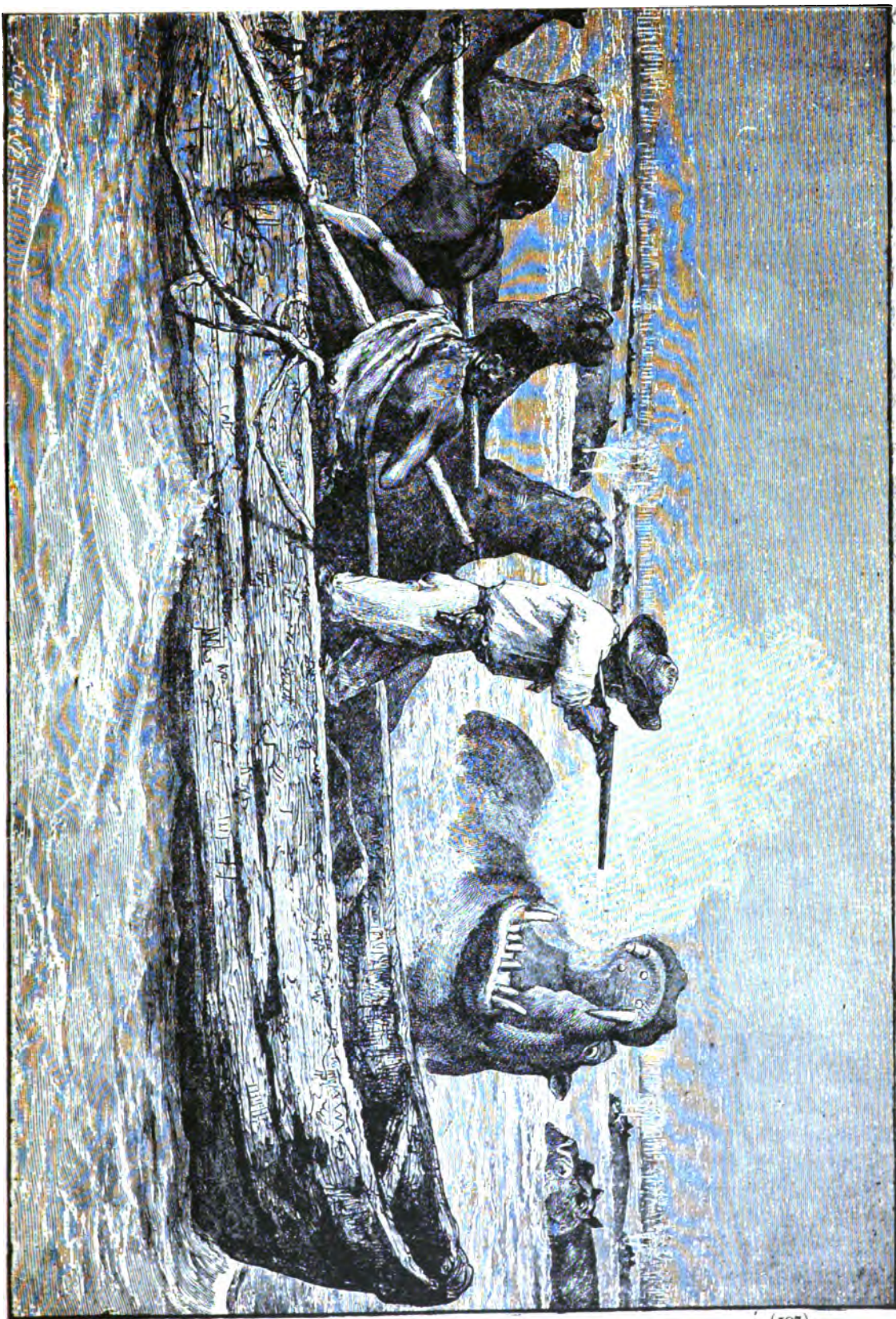
the part of priest and blessing the dead body of a hippopotamus preparatory to making a feast, and in the ceremony to see so strong a religious barrier destroyed. A common affliction does indeed make us all brothers.

#### A HIPPOPOTAMUS ADVENTURE.

The monotony of ruthless slaughter, which had continued for several days, was at last disturbed by an exciting incident in which Lieutenant Stairs figured more conspicuously than even his adventure-loving disposition desired. Slow progress was being made by some of the party on shore while others were poling and paddling at equally slow pace in a half-dozen nuggers, Stairs being in the lead, and Stanley following in his steel whale boat, the *Advance*. In a considerable cove, where the river had once made a turn and then swept back again into



STAIRS' ADVENTURE WITH A BULL HIPPOPOTAMUS.





its former channel, leaving a half-stagnant elbow, several hippopotami were seen sporting, and decision was immediately made to attack them. Stairs pushed forward, his approach being hidden by a jutting point, until he had gained a position sufficiently near to permit an effective shot. The nugger was now brought round to an unexpected meeting with a large cow hippopotamus, which Stairs fired at and badly wounded. In its violent struggles the animal turned



THE PRISON OF EMIN PASHA AND MR. JEPHSON AT DUFFILI.—(See page 530.)

over and over in the shallow place until its movements excited the compassion of its companions, three of which came charging to the rescue, with one uncommonly large bull in the lead. The shallowness of the water prevented the huge animals from diving and coming up under the canoe, as is their custom, and forced them to make the approach in full view. Thus when the bull, re-enforced by its almost equally dangerous companions, came rushing towards the



canoe with wide open mouth, Stairs opened fire upon it, but to so little effect that the animal was not checked, while its rage was greatly increased. The other three, however, were frightened by the discharge of the gun and made off in great haste, leaving their leader to fight the battle alone. The bull, whose head now presented a horrible sight by reason of his gaping jaws, red and frothing, with blood pouring from three wounds that seemed to be discharging their flood directly into his mouth, came charging onto the canoe, which it actually seized and would have torn in pieces together with the occupants had not those following behind in the other canoes come up at this juncture and poured an effectual broadside of shots into the mad monster. The result, however, was a badly broken canoe, and an impromptu bath by Stairs, who had leaped out of the boat when he saw the enemy's mouth apparently opened to receive him.

#### AMONG THE CROCODILES.

Along the Aruwimi, especially in the more desert regions, where famines are said to be frequent, the natives are omnivorous in their diet, eating every

kind of animal food, not excepting human flesh, crocodiles, monkeys, snakes, lizards and worms. The snake-eaters are particularly repulsive in their appearance no less than in their habits; for not only is their food most vile, but their filth and squalor



NOVEL MEANS OF KILLING CROCODILES.

are equally so. A group of these miserable people gathered about a fire, cooking their evening meal of snakes and lizards, is a sight not only appalling but one at once so disgusting and loathsome that we sorrow because all mankind is made of one likeness.

Having no effective arms with which to hunt the crocodiles, some of the Aruwimi tribes exercise a cunning expedient to effect the capture of these dangerous reptiles. It requires a cool head and steady nerves to put the plan into practice, but these requirements are seldom wanting among savage people. The native hunter, when he seeks this kind of game, takes with him a very simple arm, being only a thick stick some ten inches long, through which runs



a slender piece of iron sharply pointed at both ends. Finding his quarry asleep along some sedgy bank, he cautiously and noiselessly approaches until within a dozen feet or more of the crocodile. The hunter now drops down into a prostrate position and crawls carefully along towards the reptile's mouth. When within three or four feet he makes a peculiar clucking noise, which arouses the crocodile but does not alarm it. His motions are now such that the creature



A CROCODILE SNARE.

believes a meal to be near at hand and turns his head to seize the prey; at this moment the hunter thrusts his instrument into the mouth of the crocodile, who seizes it with avidity only to find itself helpless to do any harm with its teeth. Generally the pain caused by the sharp points of the weapon makes the crocodile very angry and in its rage pursues the hunter. In this case the creature only hastens its doom, for the hunter can easily keep out of reach of the crocodile's tail, which is now its only means of offence, and when it is sufficiently far from the water the hunter boldly seizes it and either doubles the forelegs up over the back, beats it to death with a club, or rips it up with a sharp piece of iron which serves the purpose of a knife.

Crocodiles are also caught by means of spring-traps made by bending over a strong sapling and attaching to the end a vine with an iron hook fastened to it, and a hoop so set that in reaching the bait on the hook the creature must thrust his head through the ring. When the bait is seized the vine is loosed from its fastenings and up goes the sapling, lifting the crocodile just high enough—while the hook serves to hold him—to leave him dancing on his hind legs and tail,

and strangulation ends his troubles in the course of an hour.

This same means of catching the crocodile is employed by a half-dozen tribes of South American Indians, and it is also used by some of the people in South Africa.

#### THE WAMBUTTI DWARFS.

It will be remembered that in Stanley's first trip across the Continent, as he came near the upper waters of the Congo he met an Arab caravan under



Tipo Tib, which he engaged to escort him a considerable distance; that the great Arabian chief told the intrepid explorer a wonderful story about a race of dwarfs towards the north with whom he had once come in contact much to his own cost. The reader will also recall to mind the fact that while making his way down the Congo Stanley had the fortune to capture a member of the pigmy tribe, but was not able to elicit any information from him beyond the simple fact that he, like all others of his people, was a cannibal.

The story of Tipo Tib received partial confirmation in the capture thus made, and also in the harrowing fears of Kabba Rega, who assured Stanley that there was a race of dwarfs living somewhere to the west of Unyoro of the most violently vindictive dispositions, and who, besides possessing surprising courage, were always murderously inclined, and capable of doing the greatest mischief. For these Kabba Rega entertained such a fear that he spoke of them as he would of avenging spirits, with powers of the supernatural.

That these fearful stories were a superstructure of fable built upon a small base of facts is not surprising, and it is with no wonder therefore that Stanley found them to be so. But the pigmies are certainly a verity, and even this much excites our liveliest interest to know something about them. The tribe, called Wambutti, occupy a considerable district lying on both sides of the Aruwimi, and nearly midway between Yambuya and Albert Lake. Their average height is certainly not more, perhaps less, than three feet, but occasionally specimens of the tribe may be seen five feet in height, while there are as many of the exceptionally short that scarcely exceed two feet; a majority of them are slightly under three feet. But though short of stature they are uncommonly muscular and are also very ingenious, particularly in working iron. Their chief weapons are bows and arrows, the former being occasionally made of steel and the latter invariably tipped with metal. The few bows, indeed the only one seen that was made of steel, seemed to be rather experimental than practical, for it was too stiff for even the strongest man to draw effectively. But it is very interesting to know that the tribe make and work steel, which is a most uncommon thing in Central Africa.



A DWARF WATCH TOWER.



## CUSTOMS AND APPEARANCE OF THE DWARFS.

The Wambuttis are fishers and hunters and pursue both callings with great success. In hunting the largest game they go in considerable bodies, surrounding such animals as the elephant and literally worrying it to death by persistent pursuit and the shooting of hundreds of arrows into it. They possess considerable quantities of ivory as trophies of the hunt, and they manifest no small ingenuity in carving it into fantastic designs for bracelets, anklets, armlets, and even necklaces.

Contrary, however, to tradition, the Wambuttis do not wear beards, and in all respects they have the negroid characteristics of woolly hair, black eyes,



DWARF SHOOTING SOCIABLE WEAVER BIRDS.

thick lips, flat nose and large mouth. They are certainly very courageous, but not nearly so vindictive and cunningly cruel as Kabba Rega and Tipo Tib represented; but that they are guilty of cannibalism there was not wanting the strongest evidence. Human skulls were frequently to be seen on poles about their villages and in a single instance a fairly well-cured human arm was seen hanging to the outside wall of a hut. It bore the appearance of having been

smoked for a considerable time, but none of the villagers could be induced to talk about any of their habits. In fact, there was no one in the expedition who could understand their language.

While the Wambuttis are evidently extremely barbaric, and no doubt practise cruelties which distinguish all barbarous tribes, yet Stanley had ocular proof of the fact that they also possess the most admirable traits of character and are moved by the instincts of love. There was no evidence of polygamy,



while the domestic ties were evidently very strong. Each family resided together in an elevated hut that was thatched with grass and carried up in a cone shape to a sharp point, or central support, which projected several feet above the crown of the roof. During a short stay at one of the villages a child of one the natives died, and Stanley saw the evidences of intense grief which the event caused. The mother appeared to be crazed by her sorrow and had to be restrained by her friends from committing some desperate act. Another woman, probably the grandmother, judged by her appearance, took the dead body upon her lap and poured out a libation of tears and wailings that was deeply affecting to behold.



ADVENTURE IN THE DWARF COUNTRY.

The disposition of their dead is similar to that practised by the Sioux Indians, the bodies being placed in rude coffins, frequently made from the hollow of trees cut of a proper length and closed at the ends, and then deposited on scaffolds, where they are secure from wild beasts.

#### THE QUIMBANDES.

Beyond the dwarfs, or nearer Lake Albert, lives an exceedingly fine appearing tribe called the Quimbantes, who are chiefly noted for their physical symmetry and the peculiar manner in which they dress the hair. Their only clothing is a narrow leathern girdle about the loins from which hangs, before and behind, a strip of



GATHERING HONEY.

hide, or cloth when procurable. But while they bestow small attention to their bodies, infinite care is evidently taken with the hair, quite as much, indeed,



as is bestowed by the Manyemas. Some are to be seen with the hair tightly rolled, with bright feathers rising out of a chignon, while the more fastidious contrive by some artful means to arrange the hair, by plaiting and twisting, into the form of a Roman helmet, while yet others present the appearance of wicker-work.

The Quimbandes are an indolent people, whose only known manufacture is willow baskets. They live chiefly by fishing, but vary their diet of fish by eating various insects, notably the locust—our grasshopper—which is highly esteemed by them. They also gather considerable quantities of honey, as



THE DWARFS' MANNER OF DISPOSING OF THEIR DEAD.

large stores were invariably found in their villages. Their houses are miserable pretences, made by setting up a few poles with a rack on top, which is then covered with loose grass. A ludicrous scene was precipitated by Mr. Williams, when he attempted to photograph a group of females who mistook his camera for a magic gun.

#### A TRIBE WITH TAILS.

Adjoining the Quimbandes is another peculiar tribe almost equally symmetrical in form and greatly resembling the Bongos, but Stanley has neglected to give us even their local designation, though from a photograph we have



FIRST CONTACT WITH THE NATIVES.—(See page 406.)





been able to make an excellent illustration. They wear scarcely as much clothing as their neighbors, nor do they bestow any care on the hair, leaving it to run riot like the indifferent pure Africans that they are. But they nevertheless have some idea of decoration, though it develops, to our tastes, in an increasing unsightliness rather than an improvement. The women affect the *pelele*, or lip ring, like some of the South American tribes, and by inserting a bit of ivory in the lower lip gradually enlarge the wound until pieces of bone, wood, or ivory, more than an inch in diameter, may be inserted and worn. Besides this singular, so-called ornament, they wear a cincture of hide, with a bundle of grass tied in front to serve the traditional purpose of fig-



SCARED BY MR. WILLIAMS' CAMERA.

leaves, and a cow-tail hangs from the belt behind, which led to the belief among travellers that they had natural tails. The wrists and ankles are invariably encumbered by numerous iron rings, a form of jewelery that is strikingly common among savage people.

Unlike the Quimbandes, these neighbors are an agricultural people, and are also somewhat pastoral, though their herds of cattle and sheep are always very small. They raise grain and tobacco and give considerable attention to poultry. Their dwellings are pretentious in size, but are so fragile in construction and material as to serve only a short time; either a fire burns them



THE PROMISED LAND: END OF THE GREAT CONGO FOREST REGION.—(See page 476.)





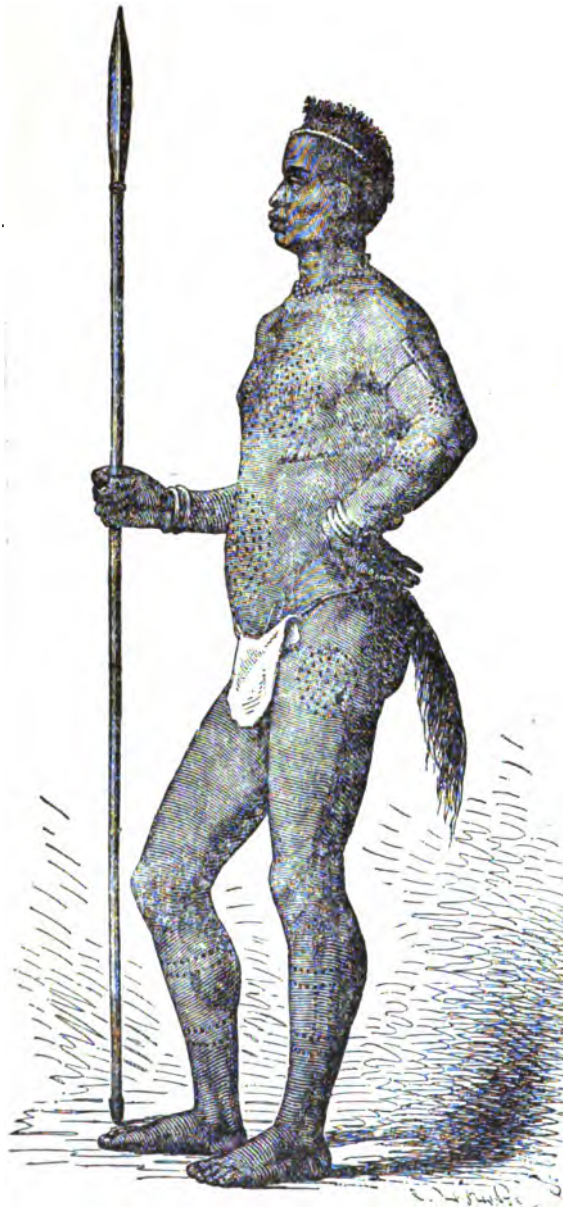
or a wind-storm soon destroys them. They are made almost entirely of grass and bear a striking resemblance to a large wheat stack, except that the apex, instead of being pointed, is made to assume a bushy appearance.

#### THE M'TEITA.

Still further eastward is the M'teita tribe, who are a picturesque people by reason of the numerous gewgaws the women especially affect, which, while they do not clothe or conceal the body, certainly do highly decorate.

The women are of pleasing features and often real pretty, even to the critical eye of an American. They are especially fond of bead-work, and the belles ornament their bodies with strings of various colored beads wound round and round the waist, breast, neck and head. In front is worn a lappet of cloth or skin, also decorated with beads, and the buttock is covered with a piece of fringed cloth, while the arms and legs bear a very burden of rings made of ivory, iron, and occasionally of copper. The men are not nearly so vain and are content with a plain piece of cloth about the loins—in this respect being more modest than the women—and sometimes a necklace of either beads or a small bit of leather with some equally simple ornament strung upon it.

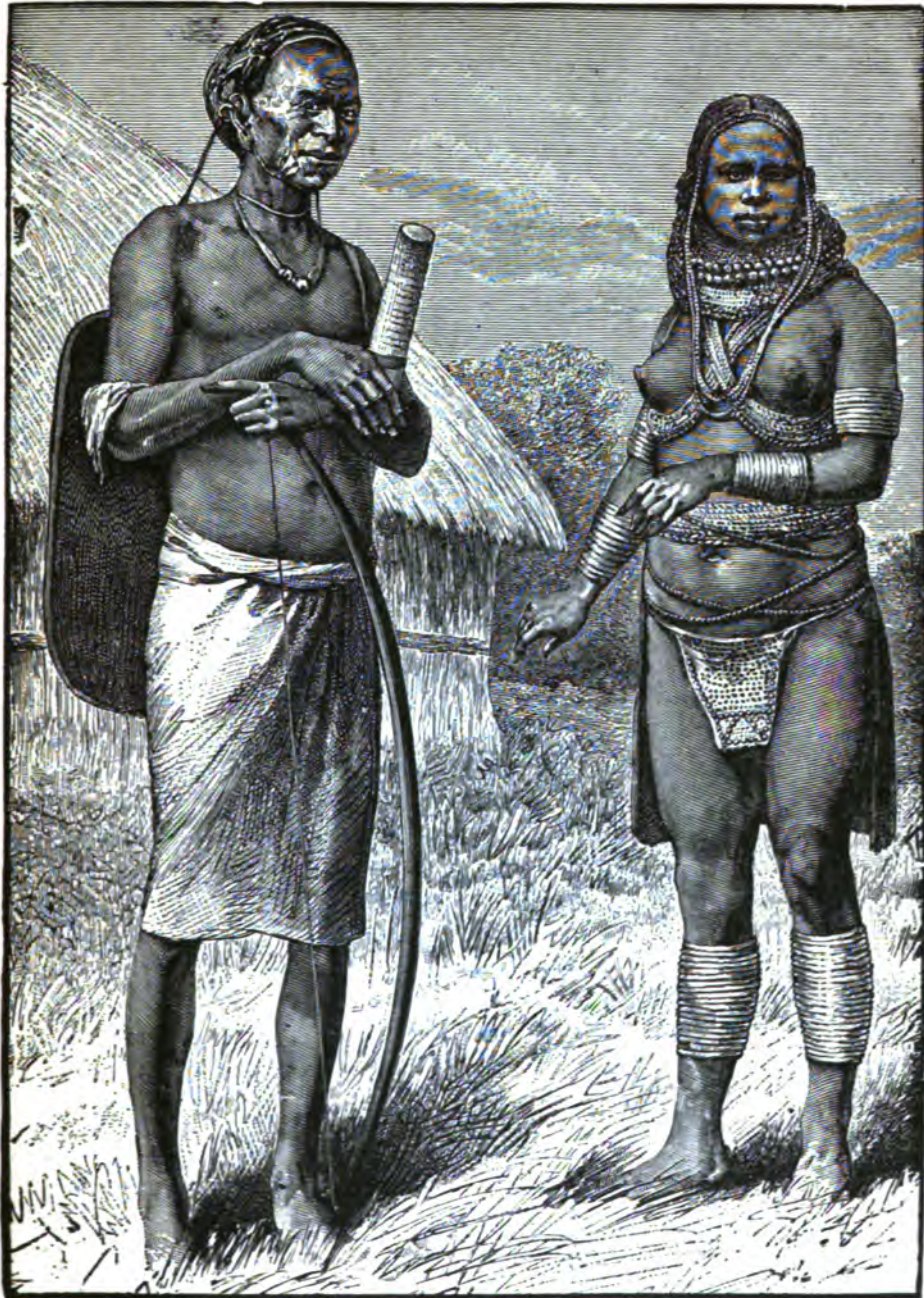
The M'teita do a little farming and raise a few goats and sheep, but they are chiefly traders, and as such travel considerably in Uganda, Unyoro, Usoga, and other kingdoms about Lake Albert. They construct very crude dwellings of grass, and with this crudeness is also



A DANDY.

found an utter lack of comfort or convenience, the floors having no covering except a thin layer of grass, which is not changed often enough to prevent a very foul odor, while the sides of thatch are so loose as to freely admit both wind and rain. But for all this they appear to be a contented, and certainly a hospitable people.





AN M'TITA MAN AND WOMAN.



## CHAPTER XXVII.

### THE APPROACH TO LAKE ALBERT.



**S**TANLEY'S approach to Lake Albert was indicated by not only a marked improvement in the natives, whose proximity to the semi-civilized lake tribes had produced a distinct influence for their betterment, but also the change was clearly noticeable in the game, which became gradually more plentiful. As Stanley has said, a considerable part of the journey was made through an almost desert region, which was not only an untrodden wilderness, but one in which nature had withheld her bounty. Very frequently the expedition was reduced to such desperate straits, for want of food, that the men were almost ready to excuse the practice of cannibalism among the people whose homes had to be made in such a country. Stanley mentions an incident somewhat ludicrous in its aspect, to illustrate the hunger from which the whole expedition suffered. He had bravely endured the privations in common with his men, and went on an allowance so small that his strength became much impaired. On one occasion he subsisted for an entire day on a single small box of sardines, and in the evening, seated alone in a place where he hardly expected to be observed, he ate the last little fish and then licked the oil out of the can as clean as ever a starving animal picked a bone. But what was his astonishment when at last he threw the empty box away to see three natives, who had been secretly watching him, make a violent scramble for it, and in the struggle for its possession they fought as do hungry dogs over a piece of meat. At length the stronger one secured the box, and spent quite half an hour both smelling and licking it, just as Stanley himself had done. Possibly the tin attracted their admiration, but certain it is that they would have prized, at that time, its former contents much more, for hunger was plainly stamped on their pinched features.

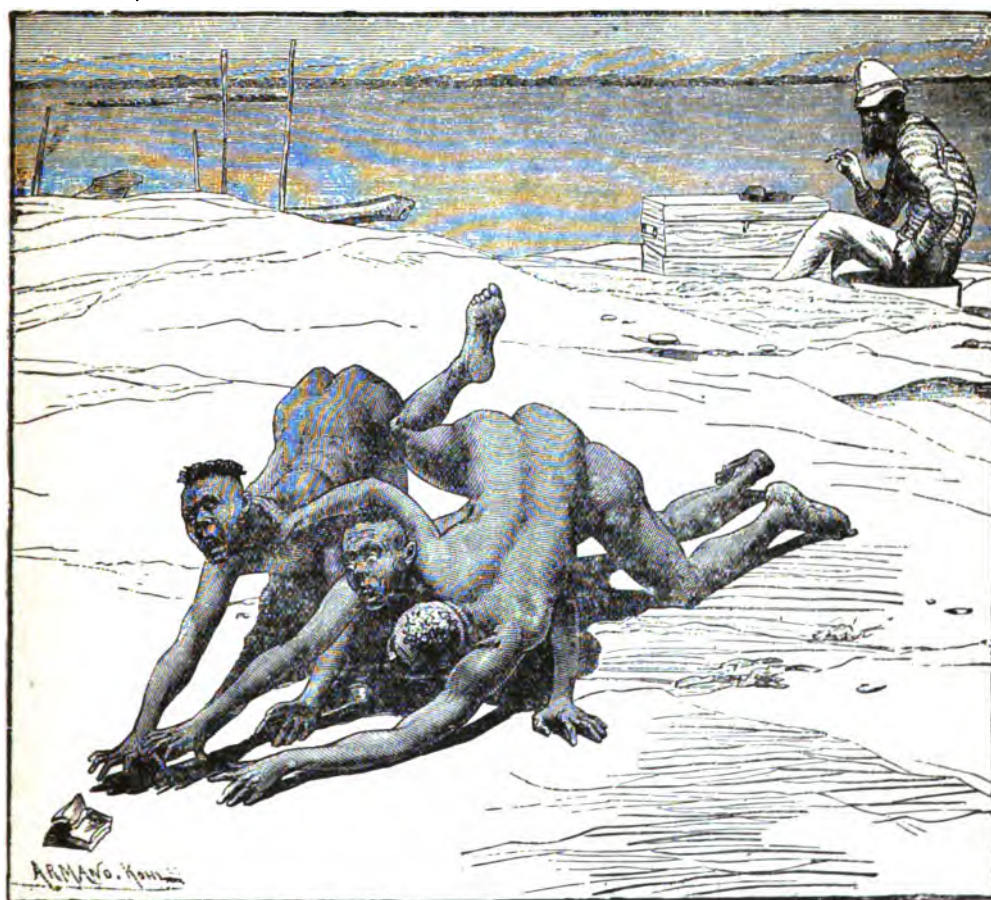
#### CHEER UP, BOYS!

As the country became more park-like the spirits of those composing the expedition grew buoyant. All the way Stanley had sought to sustain their courage by many promises both of rewards and assurances that the hardships would soon be at an end. His words were always, "Cheer up, boys; it is only a short distance to the station, where we shall find plenty." Thus so cheerful did he always himself appear, as did also his lieutenants, that the influence on the carriers was such as to keep them on the march. To turn back and go again through the desert wilderness was not to be thought of, hence the men



could hardly consider any other alternative than that which lay before them, but many more would no doubt have fallen exhausted by the way had not Stanley appealed to their courage as he did. At one place, however, there was a mutiny, which, but for Stanley's prompt action in visiting upon the leader a swift punishment by his own hand, might have proved quite serious. But when the leader went down under a blow from the handle of the great leader's axe, the others, only half persuaded to make resistance, quickly resumed their burdens, and thenceforth continued obediently on.

A show of force is the best preventive of actual violence, and the native Africans never respect a man so much as the one who shows determination.



STARVATION PRECIPITATES A SCRAMBLE.

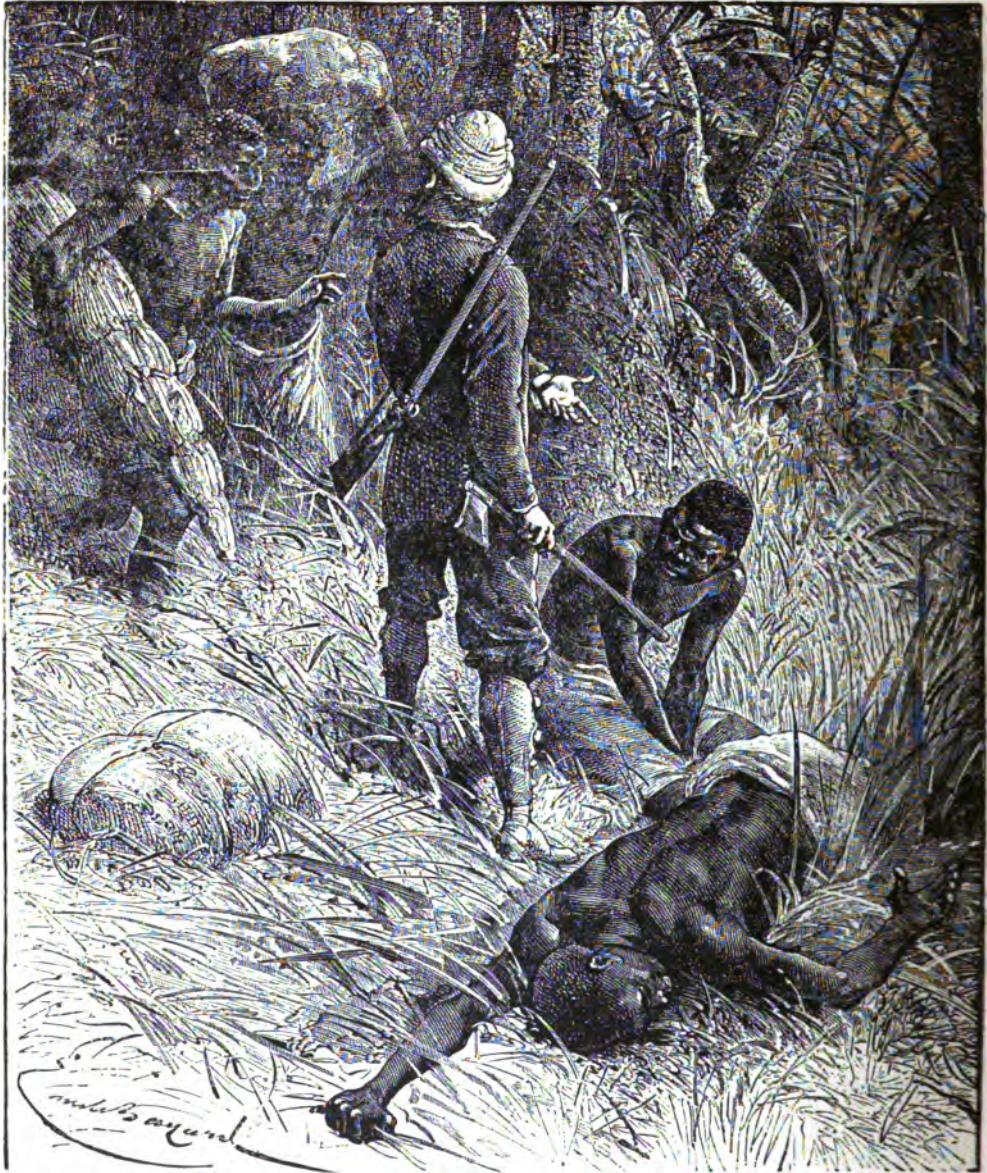
This knowledge is what induced Stanley to take with him a Maxim gun, quite as much as the possible need for it. A mere exhibition of its dreadful destructiveness would serve to over-awe the natives, and therefore Stanley had not really expected to have to put it to a deadly use, unless it should be necessary against well-armed and hostile Arabs, who it was not unlikely would be met, or against the Mahdi's forces, who were believed to have Emin Pasha a prisoner. But with his keen perception of every situation, and his great forbearance,



Stanley was not forced to slaughter the natives, and drove his way through the darkest regions with a very small sacrifice of human life.

CHARGE OF A MAD BUFFALO.

As the expedition reached the hills that overlook the great lake basin, which is about twenty-five miles wide, game began to appear, and to procure a



STANLEY ENFORCING ORDERS.

supply of fresh meat, a hunting party was organized to make a drive among the buffaloes, several of which had been seen. The main force and the carriers continued on the route, while Stanley, Nelson and Parke, with a dozen beaters, started on the hunt, intending to move parallel with the marching caravan.



They had covered several miles before a herd was discovered in a position favorable for an attack, as they did not wish to be led away any considerable



A BUFFALO'S MAD CHARGE.

distance from the column. At length a drove was descried less than a mile off to the right, and the beaters were sent out to get on the far side and drive them in. They accomplished their purpose so well that the buffaloes headed



directly for the hunters who had dropped down in the grass out of sight of the game. On they came at great speed until within a few yards, when the three hunters rose up and delivered a volley that killed two cows and severely wounded a bull. But the latter kept on at a thunderous pace and, as if blinded by its wound, drove directly for the column of carriers. The mad animal was discovered when it was perhaps a hundred yards off, when immediately there was an excitement that did not wait for the order to break ranks. Every man for the moment was an independent out of file, and the hurried manner of their wild, distracted retreat was as laughable to the disinterested spectator as it was serious to those in flight. Burdens were dropped with extraordinary prompt-



A RHINOCEROS CREATES CONSTERNATION.

ness and each man prepared to climb who could find a tree, while others just ran any way under an impromptu call to find another place. The bull perhaps never thought of making an attack, though its lowered head and high-flying tail certainly looked very dangerous, but it passed on through the broken ranks and out of sight without making any other demonstration.

LOOK OUT FOR THE RHINOCEROS!

Most singular to relate, on the next day the experience with the wounded buffalo was repeated almost identically with a black rhinoceros. The hunters had been shooting antelopes, when a rhinoceros was jumped, at which Parke made a shot, bringing the animal to its knees, the bullet having no doubt struck



the animal in the shoulder; but on the next instant it was up again and became a target for Stanley, who fired an ineffectual shot, which struck it too high on the back to penetrate the armor-like hide. The rhinoceros now had his anger up, but instead of turning to attack, which they seldom do, tore away and went "whoof-whoofing" towards the moving column, less than half a mile distant. The scare of the preceding day was yet fresh, and the sight of a charging rhinoceros filled the cavalcade with a terror which may not even be conceived, much less described. Down went the packs with the violence of extreme haste, and away went the carriers with a swiftness truly astonishing, every man for himself in tumultuous eagerness to reach safety first. The animal, seeing his supposed enemy in retreat, took courage and tossed one of the bundles on his horn, but did no further damage, taking himself off into the brush with this single exhibition of his temper.

#### A DISAPPOINTMENT.

At length Stanley and his party sighted Lake Albert, and the tedious, toilsome and perilous journey was at an end, at least for the time being. In Stanley's letter, found on preceding pages, is contained a description of the arrival at Kavalli, the station on Lake Albert, and an expression of his disappointment in his failure to meet with Emin Pasha, and his inability to procure boats to go in search of him. To this description I may add a few facts which Stanley has since reported by private letter. His men were so overjoyed at the sight of the lake, where food and rest were promised, that regardless of their heavy burdens the carriers ran at their top speed, and as the day was very hot, some of them actually sped down the hill and into the lake, so eager were they for the relaxation and enjoyment which its clear cool waters offered. A stop was made of some hours on the banks, during which the entire expedition, of men, women and children, indulged the incomparable pleasure of a delightful bath, in which the interest was so charming that every past misery was forgotten.

#### A RETURN TO THE ARUWIMI.

After sporting in the refreshing waters for a time the expedition entered Kavalli and remained there for nearly two weeks, Stanley all the while using every possible effort to procure boats to go on to Wadelai, and hoping all the while that news of his arrival would reach Emin and result in a meeting. But, as Stanley has so graphically reported, all his efforts and hopes were in vain, so that there appeared to be nothing for him to do but retrace his steps to Banalya, on the Aruwimi (also called the Ituri) river, where he had left his steel steam launch, as that was the only craft that could be obtained. Jephson had been sent on with an escort, by land, to Wadelai, which was known to be Emin's headquarters, some time before, and Stanley felt that by communicating a knowledge of his proximity to Lake Albert and his purpose to afford relief, that Emin would send one of his steamers to Kavalli to await him. In this belief, Stanley gave direction to a Kavalli chief to report his intentions,







and then prepared to plunge again into the wilderness which promised a repetition of all the perils and dreadful hardships through which he had just passed. His carriers were only induced to accompany him by his agreement to pay them very large rewards, and by threats of punishment in case of their refusal.

This return journey was accomplished in the manner already partly told, as also the third march which took him back to Yambuya in search of the rear column. To the descriptions previously given, however, I am permitted to add further particulars from Stanley letters just to hand.

After Stanley's return to Kavalli with the steam launch he still was unable to reach Emin, because in the mean time Emin had been to that station and went away almost immediately without informing the Kavalli chief of his intended destination, and particularly because reliable information, in the form of letters from Jephson, reached him giving a brief account of a Mahdi uprising that had occurred in the mean time which had resulted in the capture of both Emin and Jephson, who were then held prisoners at Wadelai. Stanley's force at Kavalli was too small to cope with so powerful an antagonist as the Mahdi, so he hurriedly left Kavalli again for Yambuya to bring up the rear column, with which additional force he hoped to be able to effect a rescue of Emin and Jephson, even should a battle be necessary.

#### DEPLORABLE CONDITION OF THE REAR COLUMN.

Writing from a village called Kaffurro, on the Kargagwe river, a branch of the Aruwimi, Stanley says: "My last report was sent off by Salim Behammod in the latter part of September, 1888. Over a year full of stirring events have taken place since then. I will endeavor to inform you what has occurred. When we reached the camp, after great privations, but nothing to what we were afterwards to endure, we found the 102 of the yet remaining members of the rear column in a most deplorable condition. I doubted whether 50 of them would live to reach the lake; but having collected a large number of canoes, the goods and sick men were transported in these vessels in such a smooth and expeditious manner that there were remarkably few casualties in the rear column. But wild natives, having repeatedly defeated the Ugarrowwa's raiders, and by this discovered the extent of their own strength, gave considerable trouble and inflicted considerable loss among our best men, who had always to bear the brunt of the fighting and the fatigue of the paddling. However, we had no reason to be dissatisfied with the time we had made. When progress by river became too tedious and difficult, an order to cast off canoes was given. This was four days' journey above the Ugarrowwa's Station, or about 300 miles above Banalya. We decided that as the south bank of the Ituri river was pretty well known to us it would be best to try the north bank, although we should have to traverse for some days the despoiled lands which had been a common centre to the Ugarrowwa's and Kilinga-Longa's bands of raiders. We were about a hundred miles from grass land, which opened up a prospect of





FIGHT AT AVI SIEDA, AUGUST 13, 1897: LIEUTENANT STAIRS WOUNDED WITH AN ARROW.



future feasts of beef, veal and mutton, and a pleasing variety of vegetables, as well as oil and butter for cooking.

On October 30th, having cast off the canoes, the land march began in earnest, and two days later we discovered a large plantation in charge of Dwaris. The people flung themselves on the plantains to make as large a provision as possible for the dreaded wilderness ahead. The most enterprising always secured a fair share, and twelve hours later would be furnished with a week's provision of plantain flour. The feeble and indolent revelled for the time being on an abundance of roasted fruit, but always neglected providing for the future, and thus became victims to famine after moving from this place. Ten days passed before we reached another plantation, during which we lost more men than we had lost between Banalya and Ugarrowwa's.

#### SMALL-POX AND OTHER SUFFERINGS.

Small-pox broke out among the Manyuema, and the mortality was terrible. Our Zanzibaris escaped the pest, however, owing to the vaccination they had undergone on board the *Madura*. We



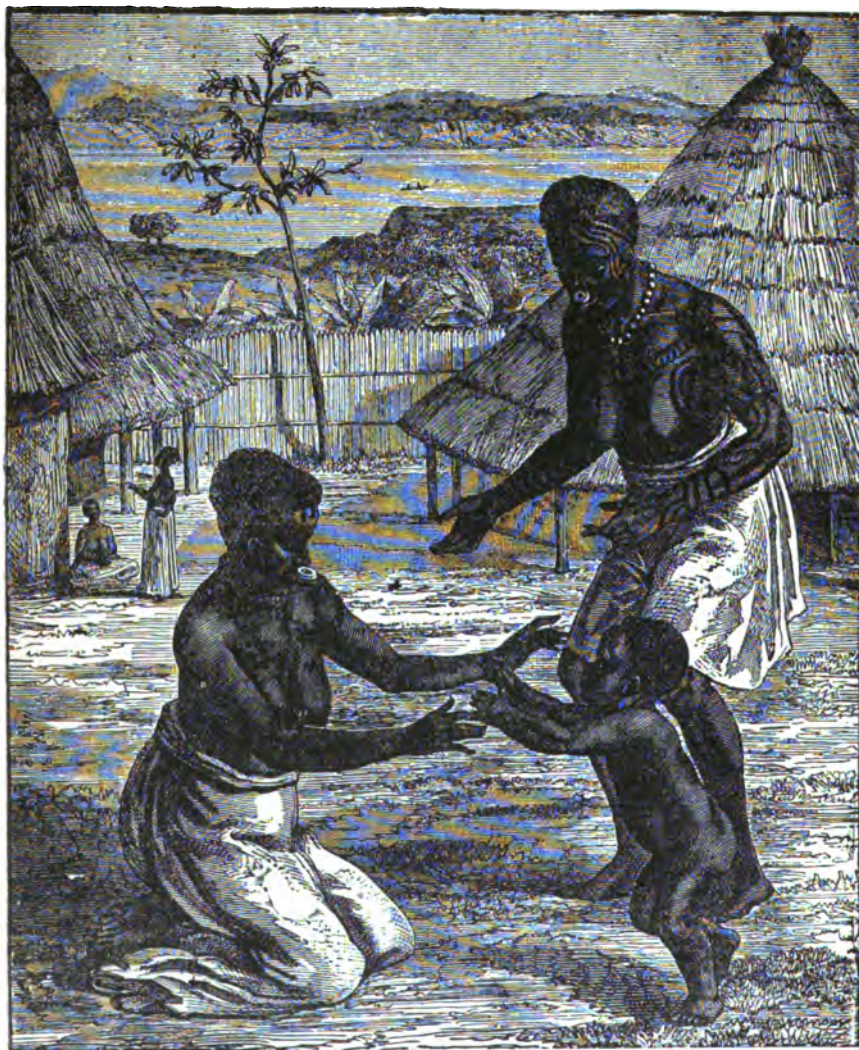
A DWARIS VILLAGE.

were now about four days' march above the confluence of the Ihuru and Ituri rivers, and within about a mile from Ishuru. As there was no possibility of crossing this violent tributary of the Ituri or Aruwimi, we had to follow its right bank until a crossing could be discovered. Four days later we stumbled across the principal village of the district, called Andikumu. It was surrounded by the finest plantation of bananas and plantains we had yet seen, which all the Manyumas habit of spoliation and destruction had been unable to destroy. There our people, after starving during fourteen days, gorged themselves to such excess that it contributed greatly to lessen our numbers.



Every twentieth individual suffered from some complaint which entirely incapacitated him for duty.

The Ihuru river was about four miles south-southeast from this place, flowing from east-north-east. It was about sixty yards broad and deep owing to heavy rains. From Andikumu six days' march brought us to another flourishing settlement, called Indeman, situated about four hours' march from a river supposed to be the Ihuru. Here I was considerably nonplussed by a



DWARIS WOMEN.

grievous discrepancy between native accounts and my own observations. The natives called it the Ihuru river, and my instruments and chronometer made it very evident it could not be the Ihuru. We knew finally. After capturing some Dwaris we discovered it was the right branch of the Ihuru, called the Duru river, this agreeing with my own views. We searched and found a place where we could build a bridge across. Bonny and our Zanzibari chief threw themselves into the work, and in a few hours the Duru river was safely bridged. We passed from Inde-

man into a district entirely unvisited by Manyuema." Here the writer describes daily conflicts with the Wambutti dwarfs, which he found very numerous in this region, which have already been noticed. The Wambuttis clung to the north-east route, which Stanley wanted to take; accordingly he went south-east and followed elephant tracks.



He says: But on December 9th we were compelled to halt for forage in the middle of a vast forest, at a spot indicated by my chart to be not more than two or three miles from Ituri river, which many of our people had seen. While we resided at Fort Bodo, I sent 150 rifles back to a settlement that was fifteen miles back on the route we had come, while many Manyuema followers also undertook to follow them. I quote from my journal part of what I wrote on December 14th, the sixth day of the absence of the foragers: Six days have transpired since our foragers left us. For the first four days the time passed rapidly, I might say pleasantly, being occupied in recalculating my observations from Ugarrowwa's to Lake Albert down to date, owing to a few discrepancies here and there, which my second and third visit and duplicate and triplicate observations enabled me to correct. My occupation then ended. I was left to wonder why the large band of foragers did not return.

#### ON THE BRINK OF STARVATION.

On the fifth day, having distributed all the stock of flour in camp, and having killed the only goat we possessed, I was compelled to open the officers' provision box and take a pound pot of butter, with two cupfuls of my flour, to make an imitation gruel, there being nothing else save tea, coffee, sugar and a pot of sago in the boxes. In the afternoon a boy died, and the condition of the majority of the rest was most disheartening. Some could not stand, falling down in the effort to do so. These constant sights acted on my nerves until I began to feel not only moral but physical sympathy, as though the weakness was contagious. Before night a Mahdi carrier died. The last of our Somalis gave signs of a collapse, and the few Soudanese with us were scarcely able to move. When the morning of the sixth day dawned, we made broth with the usual pot of butter, an abundance of water, a pot of condensed milk and a cupful of flour for 130 people.

#### CALLING A COUNCIL.

The chiefs and Bonny were called to a council. At my suggestion of a reverse to the foragers of such a nature as to exclude our men from returning with news of the disaster, they were altogether unable to comprehend such a possibility. They believed it possible that these 150 men were searching for food, without which they would not return. They were asked to consider the supposition that they were five days searching for food, without which they would not return, and then had lost the road, perhaps, or, having no white leader, had scattered to loot goats, and had entirely forgotten their starving friends and brothers in the camp. What would be the state of the 130 people five days hence? Bonny offered to stay with ten men in the camp if I provided ten days' food for each person while I would set out to search for the missing men. Food, to make a light cupful of gruel for ten men for ten days, was not difficult to procure, but the sick and feeble remaining must starve unless I met good fortune, and accordingly a store of buttermilk, flour and biscuits was prepared



and handed over to the charge of Bonny. In the afternoon of the seventh day we mustered everybody besides the garrison of the camp, ten men.

#### SEARCHING FOR THE MISSING.

Sadia, Manyuema chief, surrendered fourteen of his men to their doom. Kibbobora, another chief, abandoned his brother, and Fundi, another Manyuema chief, left one of his wives and her little boy. We left twenty-six feeble and sick wretches, already past all hope unless food could be brought them within twenty-four hours. In a cheery tone, though my heart was never heavier, I told the forty-three hunger-bitten people that I was going back to hunt for the missing men. We travelled nine miles that afternoon, having passed several dead people on the road; and early on the eighth day of their absence from camp we met them marching in an easy fashion. But when we were met the pace was altered, so that in twenty-six hours from leaving starvation camp we were back with an abundance around us of gruel and porridge, boiling bananas, boiling plantains, roasting meat and simmering soup. This had been my nearest approach to absolute starvation in all my African experience. Altogether, twenty-one persons succumbed in this dreadful camp.

#### LETTERS FROM JEPHSON.

On December 23d the united expedition continued the march eastward, and as we now had to work by relays, owing to the fifty extra loads, we did not reach the Ituri ferry, which was our last camp in the forest region before emerging on grass land, until January 9th. My anxiety about Mr. Jephson and Emin would not permit me to dawdle on the road, making double trips in this manner, so, selecting a rich plantation and a good camp east of the Ituri river, I left Stairs in command with 124 people, including Parke and Nelson, and on January 11th I continued my march eastward. The people of the plains, fearing a repetition of the fighting of December, 1887, flocked to the camp as we advanced and formally tendered their submission, agreeing to the contributions and supplies. The blood-brotherhood was entered into, the exchange of gifts was made and a firm friendship established. The huts of our camp were constructed by natives, and food, fuel and water were brought to the expedition as soon as a halting place was decided on. We heard no news of white men on Lake Albert from the people until on the 16th, at a place called Gevaris. Messengers from Kavalli came with a packet of letters, with one letter written on three several dates, with several days' interval between, from Jephson, and two notes from Emin, confirming the news in Jephson's letter. You can but imagine the interest and surprise I felt while reading the letters by giving you extracts from them in Jephson's own words:

DUFFILI, NOVEMBER 7th, 1888.

"DEAR SIR: I am writing to tell you the position of affairs in this country, and I trust the letter will be delivered to you at Kavalli in time to warn you to be careful. On August 18th a rebellion broke out here and the Pasha and I were made prisoners. The Pasha is a complete prisoner, but I am allowed



to go about the station, but my movements are watched. The rebellion has been got up by some half-dozen Egyptians—officers and clerks—and gradually others joined, some through inclination, but most through fear. The soldiers, with the exception of those at Labore, have never taken part in it, but have quietly given in to their officers. When the Pasha and I were on our way to Regaf, two men, one an officer, Abdul Vaal Effendi, and the other a clerk—went about and told to the people they had seen you, and that you were only an adventurer, and had not come from Egypt; the letters you brought from the Khedive and Nubar were forgeries; that it was untrue Khartoum had fallen, and that the Pasha and you had made a plot to take them, their wives and children out of the country and hand them over as slaves to the English.



ONE OF EMIN'S IRREGULARS DISPERSING A PARTY OF REBELS.

Such words in an ignorant, fanatical country like this acted like fire among the people, and the result was a general rebellion, and we were made prisoners. The rebels then collected the officers from the different stations and held a large meeting here to determine what measures they should take, and all those who did not join the movement were so insulted and abused that they were obliged for their own safety to acquiesce in what was done.

#### THE VICTORIOUS MAHDI.

"The Pasha was deposed and those officers suspected of being friendly to him were removed from their posts, and those friendly to the rebels were put in their places. It was decided to take the Pasha as a prisoner to Regaf, and



some of the worst rebels were even for putting him in irons, but the officers were afraid to put their plans into execution, as the soldiers said they never would permit any one to lay a hand on him. Plans were also made to entrap you when you returned and strip you of all you had. Things were in this condition when we were startled by the news that the Mahdi's people had arrived at Lado with three steamers and nine sandals and nuggers and had established themselves on the site of the old station. Omar Sall, their general, sent up three peacock dervishes with a letter to the Pasha demanding the instant surrender of the country. The rebel officers seized them and put them in prison and decided on war. After a few days the Mahdists attacked and captured Regaf, killing five officers and numbers of soldiers and taking many women and children prisoners, and all the stores and ammunition in the station were lost. The result of this was a general stampede of the people from the station of Brodons, Kirri, and Muggi, who fled with their women and children to Labore, abandoning almost everything. At Kirri the ammunition was abandoned, and was seized by natives. The Pasha reckons that the Mahdists number about 1600. The officers and a large number of soldiers have returned to Muggi and intend to make a stand against the Mahdists. Our position here is extremely unpleasant, for since the rebellion all is chaos and confusion. There is no head, and half a dozen conflicting orders are given every day and no one obeys. The rebel officers are wholly unable to control the soldiers. The Baris have joined the Mahdists. If they come down here with a rush nothing can save us.

"The officers are all frightened at what has taken place and are anxiously awaiting your arrival and desire to leave the country with you, for they are now really persuaded that Khartoum has fallen and that you have come from the Khedive. We are like rats in a trap. They will neither let us act nor retire, and I fear, unless you come very soon, you will be too late and our fate will be like that of the rest of the garrisons of the Soudan. Had this rebellion not happened the Pasha could have kept the Mahdists in check some time, but now he is powerless to act. I would suggest, on your arrival at Kavalli, that you write a letter in Arabic to Shukri Aga, Chief of the Mswa station, telling him of your arrival and telling him you wish to see the Pasha and myself. Write also to the Pasha or myself telling us what number of men you have with you. It would perhaps be better to write to me, as a letter to him might be confiscated. Neither the Pasha nor myself think there is the slightest danger now of any attempt to capture you, for the people are now fully persuaded that you have come from Egypt and they look to you to get them out of their difficulties. Still it would be well for you to make your camp strong. If we are not able to get out of the country, please remember me to my friends, etc. Yours faithfully,

"JEPHSON."

At the time the above letter was written a messenger could not be obtained



to carry it over the route to meet Stanley, who was known to be returning to the lake, and Jephson therefore had opportunity to add two postscripts giving ampler details of the troubles by which they had been surrounded, and also to convey the pleasanter information of Emin's release. He therefore added the following, under date of November 4th:

RELEASE OF EMIN, BUT SAD FOREBODINGS.

"Shortly after I had written you the soldiers were led by their officers to attempt to retake Regaf, but the Mahdists defended it and killed six officers and a large number of soldiers. Among the officers killed were some of the Pasha's worst enemies. The soldiers in all the stations were so panic-stricken and angry at what happened that they declared they would not attempt to fight unless the Pasha was set at liberty. So the rebel officers were obliged to free him and sent him to Wadelai where he is free to do as he pleases, but at present he has not resumed authority in the country. He is, I believe, by no means anxious to do so. We hope in a few days to be at Tunguru Station on the lake, two days by steamer from Nsabe, and I trust when we hear of your arrival that the Pasha himself will be able to come down with me to see you. We hear that the Mahdists sent steamers to Khartoum for re-enforcements. If so they cannot be up here for another six weeks. If they come up here with re-enforcements it will be all up with us, for the soldiers will never stand against them, and it will be a mere walk-over. Every one is anxiously looking for your arrival, for the coming of the Mahdists has completely cowed them. We may just manage to get out if you do not come later than the end of December, but it is entirely impossible to foresee what will happen."

Jephson's second postscript, dated December 18th, reads:

"Mogo, the messenger, not having started I send a second postscript. We were not at Tanguru on November 15th. The Mahdists surrounded Duffili station and besieged it for four days. The soldiers, of whom there are about 500, managed to repulse them and they retired to Regaf, their headquarters, as they have sent down to Khartoum for re-enforcements and doubtless will attack again when strengthened. In our flight from Wadelai, the officers requested me to destroy our boats and the advances. I therefore broke it up. Duffili is being renovated as fast as possible. The Pasha is unable to move hand or foot as there is still a very strong party against him, as officers are no longer in immediate fear of the Mahdists. Do not on any account come down to us at my former camp on the lake near Kavalli Island, but make your camp at Kavalli on the plateau above. Send a letter directly you arrive there, and as soon as we hear of your arrival I will come to you. I will not disguise facts from you that you will have a difficult and dangerous work before you in dealing with the Pasha's people. I trust you will arrive before the Mahdists are re-enforced or our case will be desperate. Yours faithfully,

"JEPHSON."



## STANLEY'S LETTER IN REPLY TO JEPHSON.

Stanley immediately returned a reply to Jephson's letter by the messengers, in which he wrote: "Be wise, be quick, and waste no time. Bring Buifa and your own Soudanese with you. I have read your letters half a dozen times over, but fail to grasp the situation thoroughly, because in some important details one letter contradicts the other. In one you say the Pasha is a close prisoner, while you are allowed a certain amount of liberty. In the other you say you will come to me as soon as you hear of our arrival here, and 'I trust,' you say, 'that the Pasha will be able to accompany me.' Being prisoners, I fail to see how you could leave Tunguru at all. All this is not very clear to us, who are fresh from the bush. If the Pasha can come, send a courier on your arrival at your camp on the lake below here to announce the fact and I will send a strong detachment to escort him to the plateau; even to carry him if he needs it. I feel too exhausted after my 1300 miles of travel since I parted from you last May to go down to the lake again. The Pasha must have some pity for me. Don't be alarmed or uneasy on our account. Nothing hostile can approach us within twelve miles without my knowing it. I am in the thickest of a friendly population, and if I sound a war note, within four hours I can have 2000 warriors to assist me to repel any force disposed to violence, and if it is to be a war, why then I am ready for the cunningest Arab alive. I have read your letter a half-dozen times and my opinion of you varies with each reading. Sometimes I fancy you are half Mahdist or Arabist, then Eminist. I shall be wiser when I see you. Now, don't you be perverse, but obey and let my order to you be as a frontlet between the eyes, and all, with God's gracious help, will end well. I want to help the Pasha somehow, but he must also help me and credit me."

## FASCINATED BY THE SOUDAN.

"On January 16th," says Stanley, "I received with this batch of letters two notes from the Pasha himself, confirming the above. But not a word from either Jephson or the Pasha indicating the Pasha's purpose. Did he still waver or was he at last resolved? With any man than the Pasha or Gordon one would imagine that being a prisoner and a fierce enemy hourly expecting to give the *coup mortal*, he would gladly embrace the first chance to escape from the country given up by his government. But there was no hint in the letters what course the Pasha would follow. These few hints of mine, however, will throw some light on my postscript, which here follows, and of my state of mind after reading these letters. I wrote a formal letter, which might be read by any person, Pasha, Jephson or any of the rebels, and addressed it to Jephson, as requested, but on a separate sheet of paper, after we reached Kavalli, I wrote a private postscript for Jephson's perusal, as follows:

KAVALLI, Jan. 18th, 3 P. M.

"MY DEAR SIR:—I now send thirty rifles and Kavalli's men down to the lake with my letters, with my urgent instructions that a canoe should be set



TORTURING THE MAHDI'S DERVISHES, BY ORDER OF KHIN FASHA'S KHEM, OFFICER.





off. I may be able to stay longer than six days here, perhaps ten. I will do my best to prolong my stay until you arrive, without rupturing the peace. Our people have a good store of beads and couriers' clothes, and I notice that the natives trade very easily, which will assist Kavalli's resources should he get uneasy under our prolonged visit. Should we get out of this trouble, I am his most devoted servant and friend; but if he hesitates again, I shall be plunged in wonder and perplexity. I could save a dozen pashas if they were willing to be saved. I would go on my knees and implore the Pasha to be sensible of his own case. He is wise enough in all things else, even for his own interest. Be kind and good to him for his many virtues, but do not you be drawn into the



THE COURIER TAKING EMIN'S LETTER.

fatal fascination the Soudan territory seems to have for all Europeans in late years. As they touch its ground they seem to be drawn into a whirlpool, which sucks them in and devours them with its waves. The only way to avoid it is to obey blindly, devotedly and unquestionably all orders from the outside. The committee said: 'Relieve Emin with this ammunition. If he wishes to come out, the ammunition will enable him to do so. If he elects

to stay, it will be of service to him.' The Khedive said the same thing, and added that if the Pasha and his officers wished to stay they could do so on their own responsibility. Sir Evelyn Baring said the same thing in clear, decided words, and here I am after 4100 miles' travel with the last instalment of relief. Let him who is authorized to take it, take it and come. I am ready to lend him all my strength and will assist him, but this time there must be no hesitation, but positive yea or nay, and home we go.

"Yours sincerely,

"STANLEY."



## THE ARRIVAL OF JEPHSON.

In the course of his correspondence Mr. Stanley says: "On February 6th Jephson arrived in the afternoon at our camp at Kavalli. I was startled to hear Jephson, in plain, undoubting words, say, 'Sentiment is the Pasha's worst enemy. No one keeps Emin back but Emin himself.' This is the summary of what Jephson learned during the nine months from May 25, 1888, to February 6, 1889. I gathered sufficient from Jephson's verbal report to conclude that during nine months neither the Pasha, Casati nor any man in the province had arrived nearer any other conclusion than what was told us ten months before. However, the diversion in our favor created by the Mahdist's invasion and the dreadful slaughter they made of all they met inspired us with hope that we could get a definite answer at last. Though Jephson could only say: 'I really can't tell you what the Pasha means to do. He says he wishes to go away, but will not move. No one will move. It is impossible to say what any man will do. Perhaps another advance by the Mahdists will send them all pell-mell towards you, to be again irresolute and requiring several weeks' rest.'"

## COURIER FROM EMIN.

Stanley next describes how he had already sent orders to mass the whole of his forces ready for contingencies. He also speaks of the suggestions he made to Emin as to the best means of joining him, insisting upon something definite; otherwise it would be his (Stanley's) duty to destroy the ammunition and march homeward. He continues: "February 13 a native courier appeared in camp with a letter from Emin, and with the news that he was actually at anchor just below our plateau camp. But this is his formal letter to me, dated the 13th:

"SIR:—In answer to your letter of the 7th inst., I have the honor to inform you that yesterday I arrived here with my two steamers, carrying a first lot of people desirous to leave this country under your escort. As soon as I have arranged for a cover for my people, the steamers have to start for Mswa Station to bring on another lot of people. Awaiting transport with me are some twelve officers anxious to see you, and only forty soldiers. They have come under my orders to request you to give them some time to bring their brothers from Wadelai, and I promised them to do my best to assist them. Things having, to some extent, now changed, you will be able to make them undergo whatever conditions you see fit to impose upon them. To arrange these I shall start from here with officers for your camp, after having provided for the camp, and if you send carriers I could avail me of some of them. I hope sincerely that the great difficulties you had to undergo and the great sacrifices made by your expedition on its way to assist us, may be rewarded by full success in bringing out my people. The wave of insanity which overran the country has subsided, and of such people as are now coming with me, we may be sure. Permit me to express once more my cordial thanks for whatever you have done for us.

"Yours,

"EMIN."

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### DISCOVERIES THAT EXCITE THE WORLD'S APPLAUSE.



CONSIDERING the trials, sufferings, and almost unparalleled hardships through which Stanley had passed in his philanthropic mission to relieve Emin, whose situation was certainly critical, with his power and influence destroyed and whose most ambitious and optimistic hopes could hardly picture a pleasing prospect, it is but natural that the great explorer should feel a sense of disappointment, if not disgust, at the unreasonable coolness and indifference with which Emin received his suggestions. It is not surprising either that this want of appreciation on the part of Emin should weigh heavily on the mind of Stanley and cause him time and again to review the privations which he had endured, in his undertaking to perform the most magnanimous and unselfish service for one who, while unappreciative, nevertheless needed the aid that had been rendered. Says he in a letter now before me:

"You know that all the stretch of country between Yambuya and this place is an absolutely new country, except what may be measured by five ordinary marches. First, there is that dead white of the map now changed to a dead black. I mean that the region of earth confined between east longitude 25 degrees and south latitude 29 degrees 45 minutes is one great compact of a remorselessly sullen forest with a growth of an untold number of ages, swarming at stated intervals with immense numbers of vicious man-eating savages, and crafty undersized men, who were unceasing in their annoyance. Then there is that belt of grass land lying between it and Albert N'yanza, whose people contested every mile of our advance with spirit, and made us think that they were guardians of some priceless treasure hidden in the N'yanza shores or at war with Emin Pasha and his thousands. Sir Percival in search of the Holy Grail could not have met with hotter opposition. Three separate times necessity compelled us to traverse these unholy regions with varying fortunes."

#### REHEARSING THE PERILS OF THE MARCH.

Referring to the imprisonment of Emin, Stanley then grows reflective over the miseries which he had so heroically endured, and says:

"Incidents then crowded fast. Emin Pasha was a prisoner, and an officer of ours was his forced companion, and it really appeared as though we were to be added to the list. But there is virtue, you know, even in striving unyieldingly, in hardening the nerves and facing those overclinging mischances without paying too much heed to the reputed danger. One is assisted much by knowing that there are no other *coups*, and the danger, somehow, nine times out of ten,



diminishes. The rebels of Emin Pasha's Government relied on their craft and on the wiles of the heathen Chinees, and it is rather amusing to look back and note how punishment has fallen on them. Was it Providence or luck? Let those who love to analyze such matters reflect. Traitors without the camp and traitors within were watching, and the most active conspirator was discovered, tried and hanged. The traitors without fell afoul of one another and ruined themselves. If not luck, then it is surely Providence in answer to good men's prayers. Far away our own people, tempted by extreme wretchedness and misery, sold our rifles and ammunition to our natural enemies, the Manyema, the slave

traders' true friends, without the least grace in either bodies or souls. What happy influence was it that restrained me from destroying all those concerned in it? Each time I read the story of Captain Nelson's sufferings I feel vexed at my forbear-



ALONG THE UPPER ARUWIMI.

ance, and yet again I feel thankful, for a higher power than man's severely afflicted the cold-blooded murderers by causing them to feed upon one another a few weeks after the rescue and relief of Nelson and Parke. The memory of those days at times hardens and again unmans me."

#### WONDERFUL DISCOVERIES.

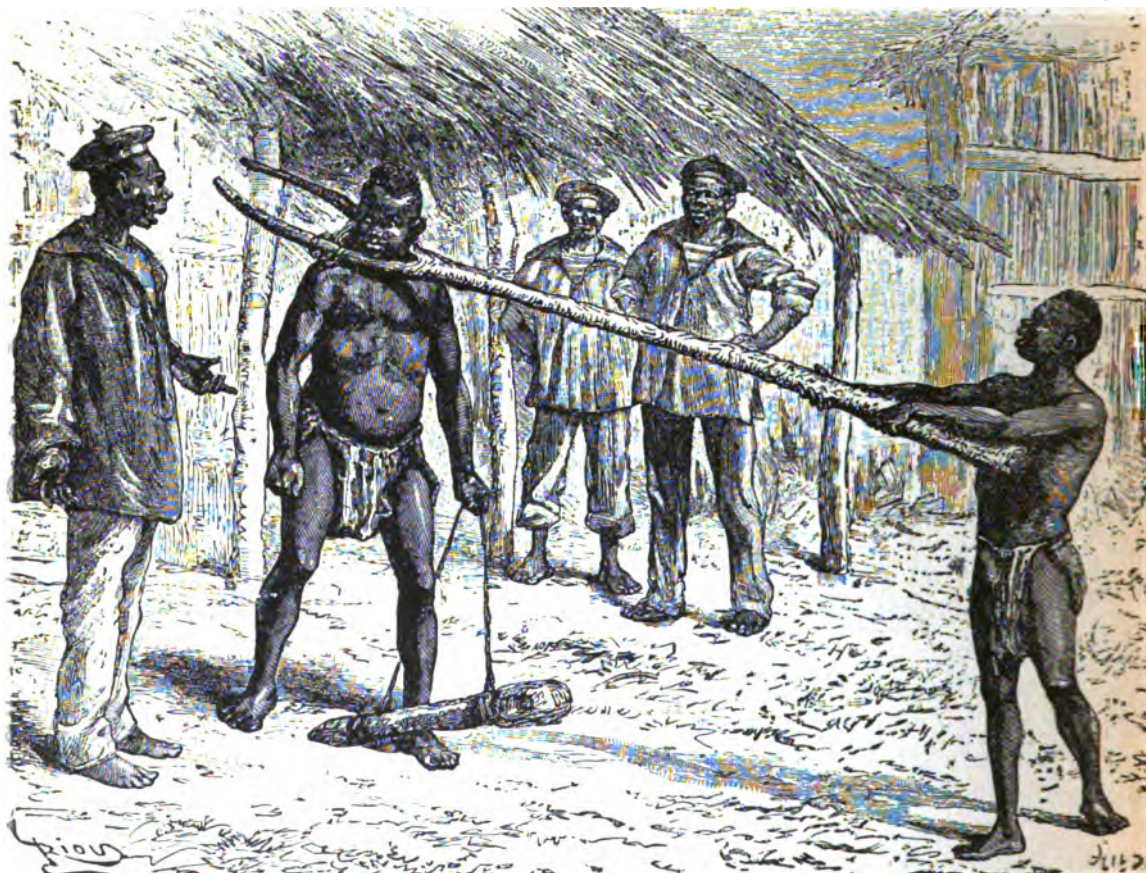
But with all these sufferings, including also an illness of twenty-eight days, which came near terminating fatally, and the apparent ingratitude of Emin, with the enthusiasm of a great explorer Stanley suddenly rises out of his depression of spirits to voice the joy of his important discoveries, that seem at once to compensate him for every hardship and every slight he ever endured. Says he: "Terrible as was this last march, it was delightful in the wonderful discoveries that we made, which crowded fast one after another upon our surprised vision. Snowy ranges of the Ruwenzori (cloud king or rain creator), the Semlikí river, the Albert Edward N'yanza, the plains of Noongora, the salt lakes of Kative, the new peoples: Wakonju, great mountain dwellers of a rich



forest region; the Awamba, the fine-featured Wazonira, the Wanyoro bandits, the Lake Albert Edward tribes and the shepherd races of the eastern uplands, then the Wanyankori, besides the Wanyaruwamba and the Wazinja, until at last we came to a church whose cross dominated a Christian settlement, and we knew that we had reached the outskirts of blessed civilization."

Continuing a report of his discoveries, written Sept. 8th, 1888, from a Batunda village on the Ituri, to Col. J. A. Grant, a member of the Relief Committee, he says:

"MY DEAR GRANT:—I have only been able to write scrappy letters hitherto, though I start them with a strong inclination to give our friends a complete

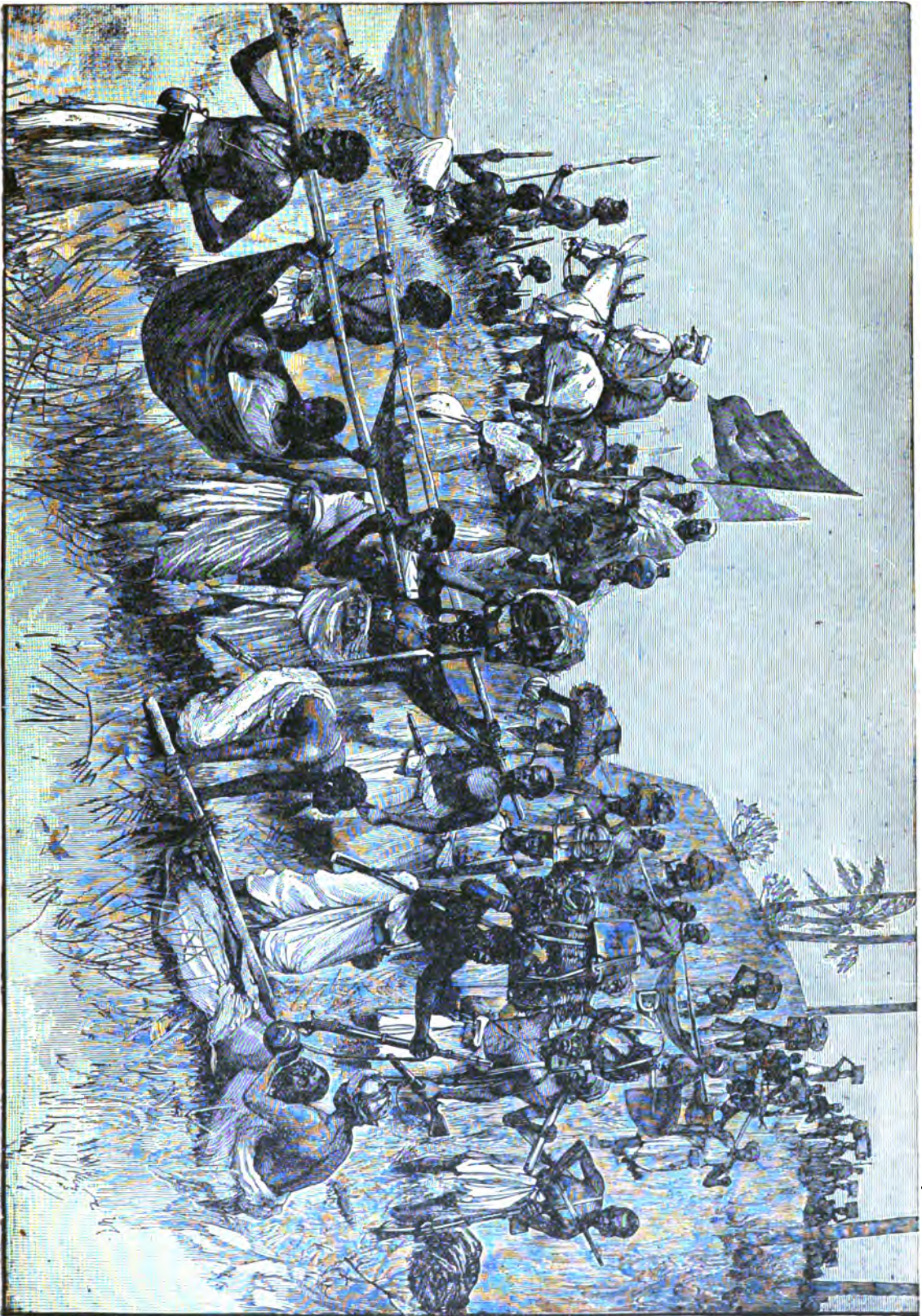


PUNISHMENT OF A TRAITOR.

story of our various marches and their incidents. But so far I have been compelled to hurriedly close lest I should miss the opportunity to send them. This one, for instance, I know not how to send at present, but an accidental arrival of a caravan or an accidental detention of the expedition may furnish the means. I will trust to chance and write, nevertheless.

"You, more than any of the committee, are interested in Lake Albert. Let us deal with that first. When on December 13th, 1887, we sighted the lake, the southern part lay at our feet almost like an immense map. We glanced rapidly





STANLEY'S AND EMIN PASHA'S FORCES ON THE MARCH TO THE COAST



over the grosser details, the lofty plateau, the wall of Unyoro to the east and that of Baregga to the west, rising nearly 3000 feet above the silver water, and between the hills the stretched out plains, seemingly very flat and grassy, with here and there a dark clump of brushwood, which, as the plain trended south-westerly, became a thin forest. The south-west edge of the lake I fixed at nine miles in a direct south-westerly line from this place. This will make the terminus of the south-west corner 1 deg. and 17 min. north latitude, by prismatic compass, magnetic bearing; of the south-east corner just south of a number of falls 1 deg. 37 min. This will make it about 1 deg. 11 min. 30 sec. north latitude, magnetic bearing of 1 deg. 48 min. Taken from north latitude 1 deg. 25 min. 30 sec., this exactly describes the line of shore running from the south-west corner of the lake to the south-east corner of Albert. Baker fixed his position latitude 1 deg. 15 min. north if I recollect rightly. The centre of Mbakovia terrace bears 1 deg. 21 min. 30 sec. magnetic from my first point of observation. This will make his Vacovia about 1 deg. 15 min. 45 sec., allowing 10 deg. west variation.

"In trying to solve the problem of the infinity of Lake Albert, as sketched by Baker, and finding that the lake terminus is only four miles south of where he stood to view it 'from a little hill' and on 'a beautiful clear day,' one would feel almost justified in saying he had never seen the lake. But his position of Vacovia proves that he actually was there, and the general correctness of his outline of the east coast of Vacovia to Magungo also proves that he navigated the lake.

#### VIEWS ABOUT LAKE ALBERT AND MOUNT RUEWENZORI.

"When we turn our faces north-east we say that Baker had done exceedingly well; but when we turn them southward our senses in vain try to penetrate the mystery, because our eyes see not what Baker saw. With Lieut. Stairs, Mounteney Jephson, Surgeon Parke, Emin Pasha, Capt. Casati, I look with my own eyes upon the scene. I find Baker has made an error. I am somewhat surprised also at Baker's altitudes of Lake Albert and the Blue Mountains, and at the breadth attributed by him to the lake. The shore opposite Vacovia is ten and a quarter miles distant, not forty or fifty miles. The Blue Mountains are nothing else but a vast upland, the highest cone or hill being not above 6000 feet above the level of the sea. The altitude of Lake Albert by the aneroid and the boiling point will not exceed 2350 feet.

"Last of all, away to the south-west, where he has sketched his infinite stretch of the lake, there rises about forty miles from Vacovia an immense snowy mountain, a solid, square-browed mass with an almost level summit between two lofty ridges. If it was a beautifully clear day he should have seen this, being nearer to it by thirteen geographical miles than I was.

"About the lake discovered by me in 1876 I can learn very little from the natives. At the chief of Kavalli's I saw two natives who came from that region. One of them hailed from Unyampaka and the other from Usongora. The first said that the Albert Lake is much larger than that near Unyampaka. The other



said that the southern lake is the larger, as it takes two days to cross it. He describes it as being a month's march from Kavalli. Their accounts differ so much that one is almost tempted to believe that there are two lakes, the smaller one near Unyampaka, and connected by a river or channel with that of Usongora.

"My interest is greatly excited, as you may imagine, by the discovery of Ruewenzori, the snowy mountain, and a possible rival of Kilima Njaro. Remember that we are in north latitude, and that this mountain must be near or on the Equator itself; that it is summer now, and that we saw it in the latter part of May; that the snow line was estimated at about 1000 feet below the summit.

"Hence, I conclude that it is not Mount Gordon Bennett, seen in December, 1876—though it may be so—which the natives said had only snow occasionally. At the time I saw the latter there was no snow visible. It is a little further east, according to the position I gave it, than Ruewenzori. All questions which this mountain naturally gives rise to will be settled, I hope, by this expedition before it returns to the sea.

"If at all near my line of march, its length, height and local history will be ascertained. Many rivers will be found to issue from this curious land between the two Muta Nzigas. What rivers are they? Do they belong to the Nile or the Congo? There is no river going east or south-east from this section except the Katonga and Kafur, and both must receive, if any, but a very small supply from Mount Gordon Bennett and the Ruewenzori. The new mountain must, therefore, be drained principally south and west; if south, the streams have connection with the lake south; if west, Semliki, a tributary of Lake Albert, and some river flowing to the Congo must receive the rest of its waters. Then, if the lake south receives any considerable supply, the interest deepens. Does the lake discharge its surplus to the Nile or the Congo? If to the former, then it would be of great interest to you, and you will have to admit that Lake Victoria is not the main source of the Nile. If to the Congo, then the lake will be the source of the River Lowa or Loa, since it is the largest tributary to the Congo from the east between the Aruwimi and Luama.

"For your comfort, I will dare to venture an opinion even now that the lake



THE KAVALLI CHIEF'S AMUSEMENT WITH STANLEY'S PRESENTS.



is the source of the Lowa, though I know nothing positive of the matter; but I infer from the bold manner in which the Aruwimi trenches upon the domain that any one would have imagined that it belonged to the Nile. It was only ten minutes' march between the head of one of its streams to the crest of the plateau whence we looked down upon Albert N'yanza. From the mouth of Aruwimi to the head of this stream are 390 geographical miles in a straight line. Well, next to the Aruwimi in size is the Lowa river, and from the mouth of the Lowa to the longitude of Ugampaka Post, in a direct line, it is only 240 geographical miles.

"Yours, very sincerely,

"HENRY M. STANLEY."

**DISAPPOINTMENTS CROWD FAST UPON ONE ANOTHER.**

The next letter received from Stanley reads as follows:

"I reached the Albert N'yanza from Banalya for the third time in 140



VIEW ON THE SEMLIKI RIVER.

days, and found out that Emin and Jephson had both been prisoners since the 18th of August, 1888, being the day after I made the discovery that Barttelot's caravan had been wrecked. The troops in the Equatorial Province had revolted and shaken off all allegiance. Shortly after the Mahdists invaded the Province in full force. After the first battle in May, the stations yielded and a panic struck the natives, who joined the invaders and assisted in the work of destruction.

"The invaders subsequently suffered re-

verses, and dispatched a steamer to Khartoum for re-enforcements. I found a letter waiting for me near the Albert N'yanza exposing the dangerous position of the survivors, and urging the immediate necessity of my arrival before the end of December, otherwise it would be too late. I arrived there on the 18th of January for the third time."

Journeying thus back and forth with seemingly endless sufferings, and a disappointment connected with every return to the lake, Stanley became at



length exasperated, and resolved upon heroic action to prevent his labors from resulting in failure, which the civilized world might really regard a farce. Emin was still at Wadelai, and appeared to have no inclination to remove from that place to join Stanley, though his indefinite letters in reply to Stanley's requests left it impossible to determine whether he wished to escape or remain.



STANLEY BAGGING AN ANTELOPE.

Stanley's anxiety grew greater as the indecision of Emin showed no signs of changing, and finally led to the transmission of a letter couched in such language that it brought a reply from Emin asking Stanley's indulgence for a time until he could communicate with his people and ascertain whether or not they desired to leave the Equatorial Province under Stanley's escort. This was the most pointed reply Emin had yet made, although it added little hope to the



situation, for Emin's people were scattered over a large territory, and it would require months of time to collect them together in the event that they decided to leave the country. But Stanley's patience seems to be inexhaustible, and he concluded to wait, devoting the period of provoking delay to an examination of the country and to such sport as the great amount of game in the lake districts afforded.

#### A LION HUNT.

Stanley engaged the services of a half-dozen natives who were familiar with the region to act as beaters, and with Williams, who was an inveterate sportsman, he enjoyed a season of splendid hunting. Several species of antelopes were



BUFFALO SHOOTING ALONG THE SEMLIKI RIVER.

particularly numerous, as were also buffaloes, and these fell to his rifle in great number. But the hunters thirsted for something more exciting, a desire which was at length gratified. Lions are scarce on the west side of Lake Albert, but they are occasionally seen, and at the time of Stanley's visit some depredations had been committed which were known to be chargeable to one or more lions, as the skeletons of bullocks had been found, on the bones of which were unmistakable tooth-prints of the lordly beast. Accordingly, arrangements were made to go in pursuit of the game. The country which they were believed to infest was thoroughly examined, but to no avail, and, after beating a district more than twenty miles in diameter without seeing any evidences of a lion's presence, the hunters were much discouraged, and would probably have returned but for the alluring





STANLEY'S ESCAPE FROM A WOUNDED ELEPHANT.



prospect of the country, which they followed towards the great Ruwenzori mountain with continual delight at the new wonders that burst one after another upon their enraptured vision, as will be presently described in one of Stanley's letters.

At length a villager was met who gave the hunters the pleasing information that two lions had visited the district on the night before, and had been frightened from the carcass of a giraffe—quite as uncommon in that region as the lion—which they had more than half devoured. This was good news, indeed, as the lions were now not only located, but it might be certainly depended upon that they would return to the feast sometime in the night. The hunters accordingly followed a guide to the place where the remains of the carcass lay, and finding it on the edge of a wooded country, they had no difficulty in securing a safe position in neighboring trees.


The moon did not rise until nearly midnight, so that the hunters set up a piece of paper on a stick near the carcass, to serve them in definitely locating the lions in case they made their visit to the body while it was yet dark. But this precaution was unnecessary, for the hunters spent a very uncomfortable four hours in their perches without hearing any sounds of game whatever. At length the moon arose in great majesty, flooding the plain and primeval forest, presenting at once a magnificent and romantic view. A half-hour afterwards the hunters were greeted with a yet more interesting sight, when they beheld the forms of no less than three lions, two of which were of immense size. They made their approach slowly, as if expecting an interruption, but finding everything still, they came on with more confidence, though the largest one appeared the most timid, evidently taking upon himself the responsibility of chief watcher. The hunters reserved their fire until two of the great beasts crouched upon the shoulders of the carcass and began devouring the body. At this instant two shots rang out almost simultaneously, followed quickly by two others, and a roaring and growling from two wounded lions that was truly frightful to hear. The one that acted as sentry bounded off, but was evidently hit in the hind quarters, from the manner in which he dragged his left leg; another escaped unhurt, but the smallest of the three had been struck by two bullets and was unable to rise, but it rolled over in agony, clawing at everything in reach, and growling with a savageness that was appalling. From their perches the hunters poured shot after shot into its body, but apparently to no effect, until at least twenty shots had been fired before it ceased to struggle violently. When at last death was certain, Stanley left his position in the tree and approached the body, which he found to be bleeding from so many wounds that the hide was considered useless, every shot, apparently, having taken effect, and several had passed entirely through the body.

The hunt having terminated so favorably, Stanley and Williams returned to the camp, bearing as a trophy the head of the royal beast to serve as evidence of the truth of their story.



## CHAPTER XXIX.

### A GREAT HUNT—PREPARATIONS FOR THE HOME JOURNEY.



THE success of Stanley's hunt in the regions west of Lake Albert led others to attempt an imitation of his prowess as a hunter, and the Abrab contingent started in quest of the two lions that had escaped; but though they were gone more than a week, and found a great deal of game, including a considerable herd of elephants, they saw no signs of the lions, nor did any of the villagers in the district where Stanley's successful hunt occurred. Attention was then given for several days to shooting hippopotami in Lake Albert, and in the rivers flowing into it, several being killed and the carcasses given to the lake natives, who very greatly enjoy hippopotamus flesh.

About the middle of February another hunting party was formed, not so much for pleasure as for food, since a supply of fresh meat could only be obtained by purchasing goats of the natives at an exorbitant price, or by shooting antelopes and buffaloes, which, fortunately, were fairly abundant. Stanley accompanied the party, carrying a Reilly rifle of large calibre, as it was his ambition to bag one or more elephants after a sufficient supply of meat had been secured, and it was his good fortune to meet with success in this desire. In the regions of the Ruwenzori mountains, south of Lake Albert, is a splendid range of grass lands, fairly teeming with game of the largest species, and about the small lakes and ponds, which are not infrequent in that district, elephants are more numerous than in any other region of Africa, unless it be along the most fertile stretches of the Congo banks.

It was not therefore a difficult matter for Mr. Stanley and his beaters to find abundant adventure among the vast herds of elephants that make the plains of this mountainous country their favorite grazing grounds.

#### A TERRIFYING SPECTACLE.

The first troop of elephants discovered by the hunters was in an open plateau near the Semliki river, where the grass was so high as to cover nearly three-fourths of their bodies, so that the portions visible bore some resemblance to a school of giant turtles swimming on the surface of a vast sea of grass; and in the distance, the undulations produced by the wind increased the illusion, making the immense pasturage appear like a vast body of water, rolling wave after wave towards the shore that lay miles beyond. As both wind and cover were favorable, Stanley and his gun-bearers were able to approach the herd without detection, and to get on their flank, where, in case of a sudden bolt, the



elephants would not be likely to run over the hunters, which is really one of the greatest dangers encountered in stalking these great animals. When in excellent range, Stanley selected a large tusker and gave it a mortal wound at the first fire, but the stricken elephant dashed away with the others, and ran nearly a mile before it halted from exhaustion. The herd made towards the jungle on the left, where it was easily followed by sight until all except the wounded elephant had disappeared in the dense growth. Stanley pushed on in the wake of the herd until he came near the stricken bull, and then reconnoitered for a position that would enable him to give it a final shot. But the



ANTELOPE SHOOTING IN THE SEMLIKI FOREST.

elephant was watchful, and while not able to exert itself as before, there was still sufficient vitality left to make it a dangerous foe. The beaters were called up, and as they moved forward the elephant again retreated, until it had gained the forest, where, in apparent exhaustion, it again stopped and trumpeted shrilly. A fairly close view showed that the great bull had been struck in the left temple, from which there was a copious flow of blood that left a well-marked trail over the two miles which it had now travelled. Stanley continued in pursuit until he again found his wounded quarry standing under a very large







tree and presenting a spectacle of extraordinary rage, tossing its trunk and head, frothing at the mouth, waving its tail and roaring in a voice that startled everything in the forest. To shoot at so large an elephant at long range, or without direction at one of its very few vital spots, would be a mere waste of ammunition, so that Stanley gradually approached nearer and nearer in order to secure a favorable shot; but this effort proved futile, for at a sight of the hunter the great beast seemed to summon all its remaining strength for a furious charge. Down it came plunging through the brush like a nameless mighty thing pushing everything before it, marking a route like a cyclone and filling the air with such shrill trumpetings as pierced the ears and lent frenzy to excitement. Stanley, being in its path, fired his heavy rifle at the monster's head, but with no effect other than to bring its anger into yet greater emphasis, and to invite an attack which the elephant made with an impetuosity truly appalling. After firing his gun Stanley made a quick retreat, but not so quickly as to throw the animal from his track, for now he was viciously and pertinaciously pursued. The beaters had scattered in every direction, leaving their master to his own wits and fortune, which most fortunately served him beneficently. The elephant was gaining rapidly and must surely overtake him, when at the last moment Stanley leaped to one side and dodged behind a large tree just as the mighty leviathan went thundering by, blinded with unexampled rage. In another moment Stanley's rifle was to his shoulder, and another bullet was sent into the elephant, which now paused and quickly received a third four-ounce ball in the side of the head near where he was first hit. The first bullet fired would certainly have proved fatal in a few hours, but it required the fourth shot to give the great bull his instant quietus. On receiving the last bullet the great elephant stood still for an instant, then raised his trunk slowly as he gradually sank down on his forelegs until he plunged heavily forward on his head, then rolled over on his left side quite dead. He was indeed a fallen monarch, who had stood nearly eleven feet in height and armed with tusks which, after extraction, weighed ninety pounds each.

#### VAST ELEPHANT HERDS IN THE CONGO REGION.

Although the district in which Stanley killed this uncommonly large elephant does not properly belong to the Congo basin, the region is adjoining, and is a part of the immense grazing lands in which these animals are so numerous. Commenting on the great number of elephants in the Congo basin, and Tipo Tib's enormous collections of ivory, Stanley says:

"Until recently we had heard a great deal about Tipo Tib's store of ivory—an enormous possession. Ward and other officers of the Belgian company saw it; and some of them could have related terrible tales of its history. There were tusks which told their own dark records, blackened with the fire of the burning villages from which they had been dragged; others stained by long burial in out-of-the-way places, and only unearthed by their wretched owners for the ransoming of wives and children. There may have been tusks,



and no doubt there were, which had been obtained in the way of legitimate trade; but, as a rule, the ivory of the Arab hunter is plunder. It constitutes a vast store, and of enormous value. There are said to be about 200,000 elephants, in about 15,000 herds, in the Congo basin. Each carrying on an average about fifty pounds of ivory in his head, these represent in the European market £5,000,000. But of yet greater value than the ivory of Central Africa is the rubber, palm oil, and orchilla weed which that region produces in most remarkable abundance. If every warrior living on the immediate banks of the Congo and its navigable affluents—which are of the aggregate length of 10,800 miles, within easy reach of the trader above Leopoldville—were to pick about a



TWO-HORNED AFRICAN RHINOCEROS.

third of a pound of rubber each day throughout the year, or to melt two-thirds of a pound weight of palm oil, and convey it to the trader for sale, £5,000,000 worth of vegetable produce could be obtained without exhaustion of the wild forest productions. At the same time, although limited as compared with other products, ivory remains a very valuable article of commerce. If 200 tusks arrived per week at Stanley Pool, or say 520,000 pounds of ivory per annum, it would still require twenty-five years to destroy the elephants in the Congo basin. This estimate will enable the reader to realize the value of Tipo Tib's store, numbering hundreds of tusks, averaging certainly not less than fifty pounds each in weight."



Mr. Johnston's experiences on his ascent of the Congo bear out other reports of the "happy hunting ground." The elephant seems to be in full and haughty possession of plain and forest. Canoeing or steaming up the river, you see, every morning, the previous night's devastations of the elephants, who break and destroy much beautiful vegetation, and often waste more than they eat. They are much more commonly seen during the dry season, at which time, the smaller streams being exhausted, the elephants have to seek the Congo for their bath and their drink. "Although they are much more frequently met with above Stanley Pool, still in certain districts of the lower river they are common, especially in the cataract region. In the country opposite Isangila elephants were often shot by members of Mr. Stanley's expedition; and at the Livingstone mission station of Banza Manteka, fifteen miles from the south bank of the Congo, elephants have at times trooped in long procession past the door of the mission house, while the awe-stricken missionaries shut themselves up securely within."

#### PREPARING TO RETURN TO ZANZIBAR.

When the hunt was concluded with such magnificent success—the game bagged being twenty-one antelopes, five buffaloes, thirteen springboks, three zebras, six pallahs and one elephant—Stanley returned with his party to the camp, hoping to be able to speedily move with his own and Emin's people towards home. The enforced waiting had not been without very great benefits, for on Stanley's third entry into Kavalli his men were in a pitiable condition from sickness and ulcers, the result of their last hard march, already described. This interval of waiting was employed by Dr. Parke in relieving the intense sufferings of the afflicted. From the time the expedition left Fort Bodo he had attended an average of one hundred sick and afflicted daily. The effects of this rest and treatment were seen in the fact that when the expedition reached Kavalli there were less than 200 fit for service, whereas on the 1st of April there were 280 able-bodied men both ready and willing to start on the long march to the sea.

Stanley sent his men to assist the removal of Emin and his people, or rather to bring their effects that had been landed from the steamers, to the plateau camp above Kavalli, from which point the start was to be made. Selim Bey was sent up to Wadelai to muster the people about Tunguru and Duffili, and bring them by steamer to the Kavalli camp, but now the greater vexations began, because at the rate that Selim was collecting the Pasha's people, it would require three months to get them together; besides, the goods brought down from Wadelai and landed at Kavalli were of a character that could not possibly be carried so great a distance as lay before them. Without their effects the people did not want to move, and here was at once a dilemma that exhausted all the vast store of patience that Stanley is credited with. Emin Pasha had no influence whatever over his people, and with Casati's efforts to persuade him to remain, the prospects for conducting him out of



the country were for a time cheerless indeed. In a few days the Egyptians in camp promised to leave with Emin and Stanley for the coast, but they soon changed their minds, after reflecting on the privations of such a march as lay before them, while the Mahdi enemies were now far away to the north, and a life of elegant ease was theirs while on the N'yanza Lake.

#### VIGOROUS MEASURES FOR SUPPRESSING A CONSPIRACY.

Reporting the harassments from which he now suffered, Stanley writes:

"\* \* \* I did not think I should be drawn into this matter at all, having formed my own plans some time before; but it intensified my feelings greatly when I was told that, after waiting forty-four days, building their camps for them, and carrying nearly fourteen hundred loads for them up that high plateau wall, only a few out of the entire number would follow us. But on the day after I was informed that there had been an alarm in my camp the night before; the Zanzibari quarters had been entered by the Pasha's people, and an attempt made to abstract the rifles. This it was which urged me to immediate action.

"I knew there had been conspiracies in the camp, that the malcontents were increasing, that we had many rebels at heart among us, that the people dreaded the march more than they feared the natives; but I scarcely believed that they would dare put into practice their disloyal ideas in my camp.

"I proceeded to the Pasha to consult with him, but the Pasha would consent to no proposition—not but what they appeared necessary and good, but he could not, owing to the want of time, etc. Yet the Pasha the evening before had received a post from Wadelai which brought him terrible tales of disorder, distress and helplessness among Selim Bey and his faction, and the rebels and their adherents.

"I accordingly informed him that I proposed to act immediately, and would ascertain for myself what this hidden danger in the camp was, and, as a first step, I would be obliged if the Pasha would signal for general muster of the principal Egyptians in the square of the camp.

"The summons being sounded, and not attended to quickly enough to satisfy me, half a company of Zanzibaris were detailed to take sticks and rout every one from their huts. Dismayed by these energetic measures, they poured into the square, which was surrounded by rifles.

"On being questioned, they denied all knowledge of any plot to steal the rifles from us, or to fight, or to withstand in any manner any order. It was then proposed that those who desired to accompany us to Zanzibar should step on one side. They all hastened to one side except two of the Pasha's servants. The rest of the Pasha's people, having paid no attention to the summons, were secured in their huts, and brought to the camp square, where some were flogged, and others ironed and put under guard.

"‘Now, Pasha,’ I said, ‘will you be good enough to tell these Arabs that



these rebellious tricks of Wadelai and Duffili people must cease here, for at the first move made by them I shall be obliged to exterminate them utterly.'


"On the Pasha translating, the Arabs bowed, and vowed that they would obey their father religiously.

"At the muster this curious result was returned: There were with us 134 men, 84 married women, 187 female domestics, 74 children above two years of age, 35 infants in arms; making a total of 514. I have reason to believe that the number was nearer 600, as many were not reported from a fear, probably, that some would be taken prisoners."



## CHAPTER XXX.

### THE MARCH TO THE SEA.

USTICE to the reputation of Emin Pasha, who has been assailed for the indifference, perhaps ingratitude, exhibited in his conduct towards Stanley at their first meetings, demands that it be recorded to his credit that, after the march really began, he gave his energies towards promoting the comfort of all who accompanied the caravan, and a loyal submission to Stanley as commandant. That he felt a sense of gratefulness for the relief given we may well believe, and which he expressed in the following letter:

"MSLALA, August 23, 1889.

"SIR: Having reached, under the escort of Mr. Stanley's expedition, to-day, this place, I cannot but hasten to write just two words to tell you how deeply we all appreciate the generous help you have sent us. When, in the stress of adversity, I first ventured to make an appeal to the world asking assistance for my people, I was well aware of such an appeal not passing unheard, but I never once fancied the possibility of such kindness as you and the subscribers of the Relief Fund have shown us.

"It would be impossible to tell you what has happened here after Mr. Stanley's first start; his graphic pen will tell you everything much better than I could. I hope, also, the Egyptian Government permitting it, some future day to be allowed to present myself before you, and to express to you then the feelings of gratitude my pen would be short in expressing in a personal interview.

"Until such happy moments come, I beg to ask you to transmit to all subscribers of the fund the sincerest thanks of a handful of forlorn people, who, through your instrumentality, have been saved from destruction, and now hope to embrace their relatives.

"To speak here of Mr. Stanley's and his officers' merits would be inadequate. If I live to return, I shall make my acknowledgments.

"I am, sir, with many and many thanks,

"Yours very obliged,

"DR. EMIN.

"W. McKinnon, Esq., Chairman of Committee of the  
Relief Expedition Fund."

"On the 10th of April," says Stanley, "we set out from Kavalli in number about 1500, for 350 native carriers had been enrolled from the district to assist



in carrying the baggage of the Pasha's people, whose ideas as to what was essential for the march were very crude. On the 12th we camped at Mazamboni's; but in the night I was struck down with a severe illness which well-nigh proved fatal.

"During my illness—of twenty-eight days—another conspiracy, or rather several conspiracies were afloat, but only one was attempted to be realized, and the ringleader of that one, a slave of Awash Effendi's, whom I had made free at Kavalli, was arrested, and after court-martial, which found him guilty, was executed.

#### THE LOFTY RUEWENZORI RANGE.

"The route I had adopted was one which skirted the Balega Mountains at a distance of forty miles or thereabouts from the N'yanza. The first day was a fairish path, but the three following days tried our Egyptians sorely, because of the ups and downs and the breaks of cone-grass. On arriving at the southern end of these mountains we were made aware that our march was not to be uninterrupted, for the King of Unyoro had made a bold push, and had annexed a respectable extent of country on the left side of the Semliki river, which embraced all the open grass-land between the Semliki river and the forest region. Thus, without making an immense detour through the forest, which would have been fatal to most of the Egyptians, we had no option but to press on, despite Kabba Rega and his Warasura. This latter name is given to the Wanyoro by all natives who have come in contact with them.

"The first day's encounter was decidedly in our favor, and the effect of it cleared the territory as far as the Semliki river free of the Warasura.

"Meantime we had become aware that we were on the threshold of a region which promised to be very interesting, for daily, as we advanced to the southward, the great snowy range which had so suddenly arrested our attention and excited our intense interest (on May 1, 1888) grew larger and bolder into view. It extended a long distance to the south-west, which would inevitably take us some distance off our course unless a pass could be discovered to shorten the distance to the countries south. At Buhobo, where we had a brief skirmish with Kabba Rega's raiders, we stood on the summit of the hilly range which bounds the Semliki Valley on its north-west and south-west sides. On the opposite side rose Ruewenzori, the Snow Mountain, and its enormous eastern flank, which dipped down gradually until it fell into the level, and was seemingly joined with the table-land of Unyoro. The humpy western flank dipped down suddenly, as it seemed to us, into lands that we knew not by name as yet. Between these opposing barriers spread the Semliki Valley—so like a lake at its eastern extremity that one of our officers exclaimed that it was the lake, and the female followers of the Egyptians set up a shrill 'Lululus' on seeing their own lake, the Albert N'yanza, again. With the naked eye it did appear like the lake, but a field-glass revealed that it was a level grassy plain, white with the ripeness of its grass. Those who have read Sir Samuel Baker's

'Albert N'yanza' will remember the passage wherein he states that to the south-west the N'yanza stretches 'illimitably.' He might well be in error at such a distance, when our own people, with the plain scarcely four miles away, mistook the plain for the N'yanza. As the plain recedes south-westerly the bushes become thicker; finally acacias appear in their forests, and, beyond these again, the dead black thickness of an impenetrable tropical forest; but the plain, as far as the eye could command, continued to lie ten to twelve miles wide between these mountain barriers, and through the centre of it—sometimes inclining towards the south-east mountains, sometimes to the south-west range—the Semliki river pours its waters towards the Albert N'yanza.

**A BRUSH WITH THE  
WARASURA.**

"In two marches from Buhobo we stood upon its banks, and, alas for Mason Bey and Gessi Pasha! Had they but halted their steamers for half an hour to examine this river, it would have been sufficient to excite much geographical interest; for the river is a powerful



A WARASURA WARRIOR.

stream from eighty to one hundred yards wide, averaging nine feet depth from side to side, and having a current from three and a half to four knots per hour, in size about equal to two-thirds of the Victoria Nile.

"As we were crossing this river the Warasura attacked us from the rear with a well-directed volley, but, fortunately, the distance was too great. They



were chased for some miles; but, fleet as greyhounds, they fled, so there were no casualties to report on either side.

"We entered the Awamba country on the eastern shore of the Semliki, and our marches for several days afterwards were through plantain plantations, which flourished in the clearings made in this truly African forest. Finally, we struck the open again immediately under Ruwenzori itself. Much, however, as we had flattered ourselves that we should see some marvellous scenery, the Snow Mountain was very coy, and hard to distinguish. On most days it loomed impending over us like a tropical storm-cloud, ready to dissolve in rain and ruin on us. Near sunset a peak or two here, a crest there, a ridge beyond, white with snow, shot into view—jagged clouds whirling and eddying round them, and then the darkness of night. Often at sunrise, too, Ruwenzori would appear fresh, clean, brightly pure; profound blue voids above and around it; every line and dent, knoll and turret-like crag deeply marked and clearly visible. But presently all would be buried under mass upon mass of mist, until the immense mountain was no more visible than if we were thousands of miles away. And then, also, the Snow Mountain being set deeply in the range, the nearer we approached the base of the range the less we saw of it, for higher ridges obtruded themselves and barred the view. Still, we have obtained three remarkable views—one from the N'yanza Plain, another from Kavalli, and a third from the South Point.

#### SCALING THE MOUNTAIN.

"In altitude above the sea I should estimate it to be between 18,000 and 19,000 feet. We cannot trust our triangulations, for the angles are too small. When we were in positions to ascertain it correctly, the inconstant mountain gathered his cloudy blankets around him and hid himself from view; but a clear view, from the loftiest summit down to the lowest reach of the snow, obtained from a place called Karimi, makes me confident that the height is between the figures stated above.

"It took us nineteen marches to reach the south-west angle of the range, the Semliki Valley being below us on our right, and which, if the tedious mist had permitted, would have been exposed in every detail. That part of the valley traversed by us is generally known under the name of Awamba, while the habitable portion of the range is principally denominated Ukonju. The huts of these natives, the Bakonju, are seen as high as 8000 feet above the sea.

"Almost all our officers had at one time a keen desire to distinguish themselves as the climbers of these African Alps, but, unfortunately, they were in a very unfit condition for such a work. The Pasha only managed to get 1000 feet higher than our camp, but Lieutenant Stairs reached the height of 10,677 feet above the sea, but had the mortification to find two deep gulfs between him and the Snowy Mount proper. He brought, however, a good col-

lection of plants, among which were giant heather, blackberries and bilberries. The Pasha was in his element among these plants, and has classified them.

"The first day we had disentangled ourselves of the forest proper, and its outskirts of straggling bush, we looked down from the grassy shelf below the Ruewenzori range and saw a grassy plain, level seemingly as a bowling-green, the very duplicate of that which is seen at the extremity of the Albert N'yanza—extending southerly from the forest of the Semliki Valley. We then knew that we were not far from the Southern Lake discovered by me in 1877.

"Under guidance of the Wakonju I sent Lieutenant Stairs to examine the river, said to flow from the Southern N'yanza. He returned next day, reporting it to be the Semliki river, narrowed down to a stream forty-two yards wide and about ten feet deep, flowing, as the canoe-men on its banks said, to the N'yanza Utuku, or N'yanza of Unyoro—the Albert N'yanza. Besides native reports, he had other corroborative evidence to prove it to be the Semliki.

"On the second march from the confines of Awavela we entered Usongora,—a grassy region as opposite in appearance from the perpetual spring of Ukonju as a droughty land could well be. This country bounds the Southern N'yanza on its northern and north-western side.

#### A VAST SEA OF SALT.

"Three days later, while driving the Warasura before us, or, rather, as they were self-driven by their own fears, we entered, soon after its evacuation, the important town of Kative, the headquarters of the raiders. It is situated between an arm of the Southern N'yanza and a salt-lake about two miles long and three-quarters of a mile wide, which consists of pure brine of a pinky color, and deposits salt in solid cakes of salt-crystals. This was the property of the Wasongora, but the value of its possession has attracted the cupidity of Kabba Rega, who reaps a considerable revenue from it. Toro, Ankori, Mpororo, Ruanda, Ukonju and many other countries demand the salt for consumption, and the fortunate possessor of this inexhaustible treasure of salt reaps all that is desirable of property in Africa in exchange, with no more trouble than the defence of it.

"Our road from Kative lay east and north-east, to round the bay-like extension of the N'yanza lying between Usongora and Unyampaka, and it happened to be the same taken by the main body of the Warasura in their hasty retreat from the salt-lake. On entering Uhaiyana, which is to the south of Toro, and in the uplands, we had passed the northern head of the N'yanza, or Beatrice Gulf, and the route to the south was open—not, however, without another encounter with the Warasura.

"A few days later we entered Unyampaka, which I had visited in January, 1876. Ringi, the king, declined to enter into the cause of Unroyo, and allowed us to feed on his bananas unquestioned. After following the lake shore until it turned too far to the south-west, we struck for the lofty uplands of Ankori, by the natives of which we were well received, preceded, as we had been,



by the reports of our good deeds in relieving the salt-lake of the presence of the universally obnoxious Warasura.

#### THE CARAVAN STRICKEN WITH FEVERS.

"If you draw a straight line from the N'yanza to the Uzinja shores of the Victoria Lake, it would represent pretty fairly our course through Ankori, Karagwe, and Uhaiya to Uzinja. Ankori was open to us, because we had driven the Wayneyoro from the salt-lake. The story was an open sesame. There also existed a wholesome fear of an expedition which had done that which all the power of Ankori could not have done. Karagwe was open to us, because free-trade is the policy of the Wanyambu, and because the Waganda were too much engrossed with their civil war to interfere with our passage. Uhaiya admitted our entrance without cavil, out of respect to our numbers, and because we were well introduced by the Wanyambu, and the Wakwiya guided us in like manner to be welcomed by the Wazinja. Nothing happened during the long journey from the Albert Lake to cause us any regret that we had taken this straight course; but we have suffered from an unprecedented number of fevers. We have had as many as 150 cases in one day. Ankori is so beswept with cold winds that the expedition wilted under them. Seasoned veterans like the Pasha and Captain Casati were prostrated time after time, and both were reduced to excessive weakness like ourselves. Our blacks, regardless of their tribes, tumbled headlong into the long grass to sleep their fever fits off. Some, after a short illness, died. The daily fatigues of the march, an ulcer, a fit of fever, a touch of bowel complaint, caused the Egyptians to hide in any cover along the route; and, being unperceived by the rear guard of the expedition, were left to the doubtful treatment of natives of whose language they were utterly ignorant. In the month of July we lost 141 of their number in this manner.

"Out of respect to the first British prince, who has shown an interest in African geography, we have named the southern N'yanza—to distinguish it from the other two N'yanzas—the Albert Edward N'yanza. It is not a very large lake. Compared to the Victoria, the Tanganyika, and the Nyassa, it is small, but its importance and interest lie in the sole fact that it is the receiver of all the streams at the extremity of the south-western or left Nile basins, and discharges these waters by one river, the Semliki, into the Albert N'yanza, in like manner as Lake Victoria receives all streams from the extremity of the south-eastern or right Nile basin, and pours these waters by the Victoria Nile into the Albert N'yanza.

"These two Niles, amalgamating in Lake Albert, leave this under the well-known name of White Nile.

#### A LAND DESOLATED BY PILLAGE.

"The southernmost stretch of the Ruwenzori range projects like a promontory between two broad extents of the ancient bed of the Albert Edward—formerly known as the Muta Nziga. To avoid the long detour, we cross this

hilly promontory in a south-easterly direction from the Semliki Valley, and enter eastern Usongora, and are in a land as different from that at the north-western base of the Ruewenzori as early summer is from mid-winter. As we continue easterly, we have Ruewenzori on our left now, and the strangely configured Albert Edward N'yanza on our right. The broad plains which extend between were once covered by this lake. Indeed, for miles along its border there are breadths of far-reaching tongues of swamp penetrating inland. Streams of considerable volume pour through these plains towards the N'yanza from Ruewenzori, without benefiting the land in the least. Except for its covering of grass—at this season withered and dried—it might well be called a desert; yet in former times, not very remote, the plains were thickly peopled—the zeribas of milk-weed and dark circles of euphorbia, wherein the shepherds herded their cattle by night, prove that, as well as the hundreds of cattle-dung mounds we came across. The raids of Waganda and the Warasura have depopulated the land of the Wasongora, the former occupants, and have left only a miserable remnant, who subsist by doing "chores" for the Warasura, their present masters.

"From Usongora we entered Toro, the Albert Edward N'yanza being still on our right, and our course being now north-easterly, as though our purpose was to march to Lake Albert again. After about twenty miles' march we turn east, leave the plains of the Albert Edward, and ascend to the uplands of Uhaiyana, which having gained, our course is south until we have passed Unyampaka, which I first saw in 1876.

"South of Unyampaka stretches Ankori, a large country and thickly peopled. The plains have an altitude of over 5000 feet above the sea, but the mountains rise to as high as 6400 feet. As Ankori extends to the Alexandra Nile, we have the well-known land of Karagwe south of this river.

#### A TRADITION OF THE SNOW KING.

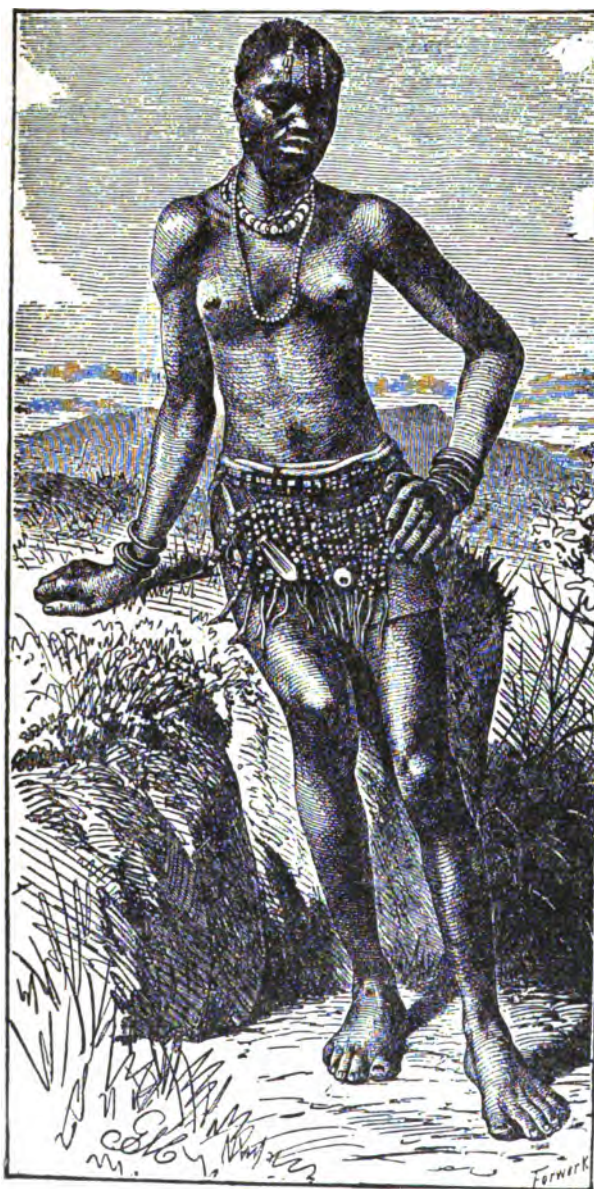
"Since leaving the Albert N'yanza, between Kavalli and the Semliki river, we traversed the lands of the Wavira and Baregga. On crossing the Semliki we entered the territory of the Awamba. When we gained the grassy terrace at the base of the Ruewenzori range we travelled on the border-line between the Wakonju, who inhabit the lower slopes of Ruewenzori, and the Awamba, who inhabit the forest region of the Semliki Valley. The Wakonju are the only people who dwell upon the mountains. They build their villages as high as 8000 feet above the sea. In time of war—for the Warasura have invaded their country also—they retreat up to the neighborhood of the snows. They say that once fifty men took refuge right in the snow region, but it was so bitterly cold that only thirty returned to their homes. Since that time they have a dread of the upper regions of their mountains.

"As far as the south-west angle of Ruewenzori, the slopes of the front line of hills are extensively cultivated; the fields of sweet potatoes, millet, eleusine, and plantations of bananas describe all kinds of squares, and attract



the attention; while between each separate settlement the wild banana thrives luxuriantly, growing at as high an altitude as the summits of the highest spurs, whereon the Wakonju have constructed their villages.

"Though we were mutually hostile at first, and had several little skirmishes, we became at last acquainted with the Wakonju, and very firm, close friends. The common enemy were the Warasura, and the flight of the Warasura upon hearing of our advance revealed to the Wakonju that they ought to be friends with all those who were supposed to be hostile to their oppressors. Hence we received goats, bananas, and native honey in abundance; our loads were carried, guides furnished us, and every intelligence of the movements of the Wanyoro brought us. In their ardor to engage the foe a band of them accompanied us across Usongora and Toro to the frontier of Uhaiyana.



A WAKONJU WOMAN.

#### DESCRIPTIONS OF THE TRIBES.

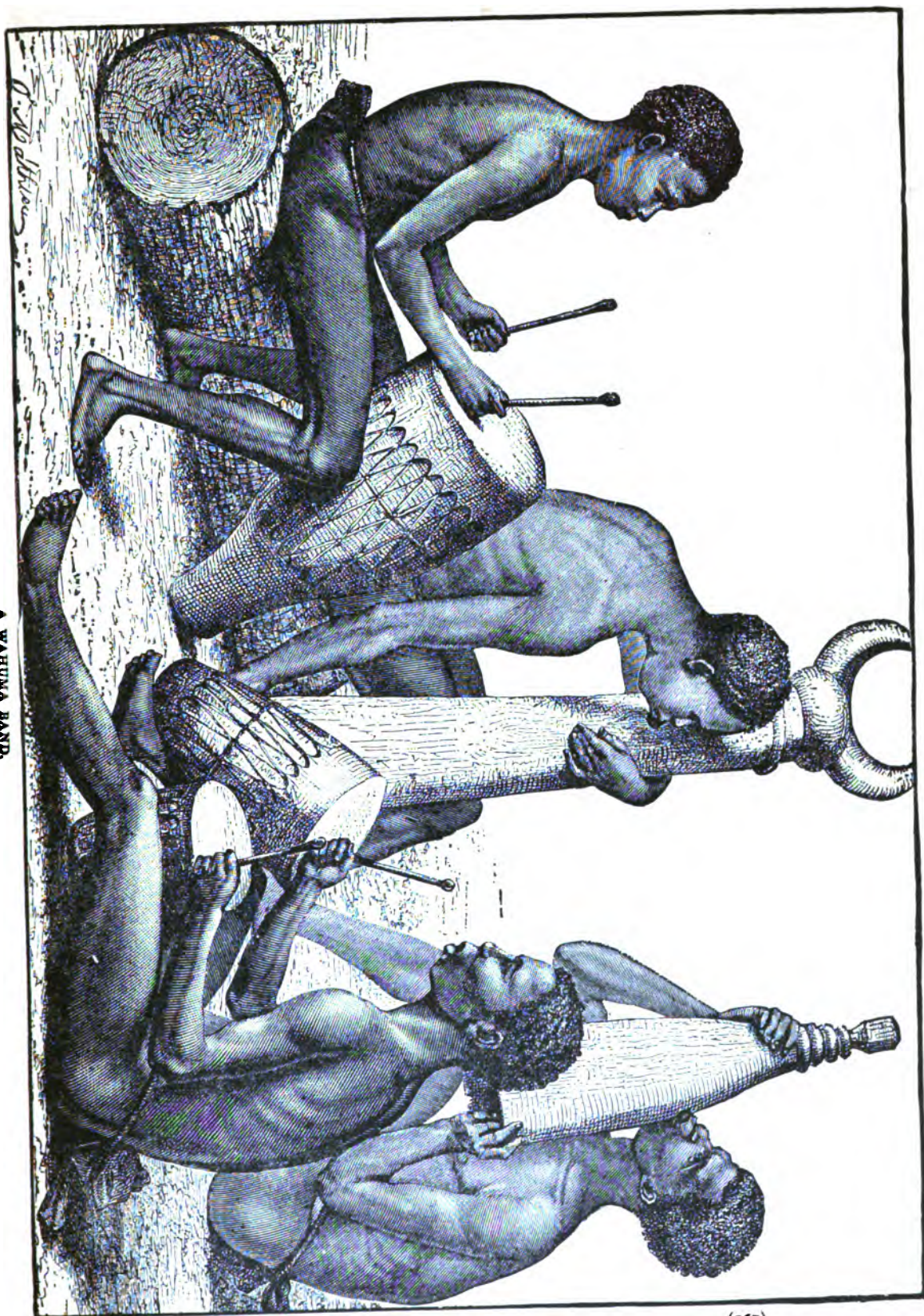
"South-west of Awamba, beyond the forest region of the Semliki Valley, begins Usongora. This country occupies the plains bordering the north-west and north of Lake Albert Edward. The people are a fine race, but in no way differing from the finer types of men seen in Karagwe and Ankori, and the Wahuma shepherds of Uganda. Their food consists of milk and meat, the latter eaten raw or slightly warmed.

"The Toro natives are a mixture of the higher class of negroes, somewhat like the Waganda. They have become so amalgamated with the

lower Wanyoro that we can find nothing distinctive. The same may be said of the Wahaiyana. What the royal families of those tribes may be we can only imagine from having seen the rightful prince of Usongora in Ankori, who was as perfect a specimen of a pure Galla as could be found in Shoa. But you need not conclude from this that only the royal families possess fine features.



▲ WAHUNA BAND.





These Ethiopic types are thickly spread among the Wahuma of these Central African uplands. Wherever we find a land that enjoys periods of peace, we find the Wahuma at home, with their herds, and in looking at them one might fancy himself transported into the midst of Abyssinia.

"Ankori is a land which, because of its numbers and readiness to resistance, enjoys long terms of uninterrupted peace; and here the Wahuma are more numerous than elsewhere. The royal family are Wahuma, the chiefs and all the wealthier and more important people are pure Wahuma. Their only occupation, besides warring when necessary, is breeding and tending cattle. The agricultural class consists of slaves—at least such is the term by which they are designated. The majority of the Wahuma can boast of features quite as regular, fine and delicate as Europeans.

"The countries to the south of the Albert Edward are still unexplored, and we have not heard much respecting them; but what we have heard differs much from that which you find illustrated by that irregular sheet of water called Muta Nziga in the 'Dark Continent' map.

"Ruanda bears the name of Unyavingi to the people of Ukonju, Usongora and Ankori, and is a large, compact country, lying between the Alexandra Nile and the Congo water-shed to the west, and reaching to within one day's long march to the Albert Edward. It also overlaps a portion of the south-west side of that lake. The people are described as being very warlike, and that no country, not even Uganda, could equal it in numbers or strength. The late queen has been succeeded by her son, Kigeri, who now governs.

#### REMARKABLE VICISSITUDES.

"Since the commencement of our march homeward from our camp at Kavalli, we have undergone remarkable vicissitudes of climate. From the temperate and enjoyable climate of the region west of Lake Albert we descended to the hot-house atmosphere of the Semliki Valley—a nearly three thousand feet lower level. Night and day were equally oppressively warm and close, and one or two of us suffered greatly in consequence. The movement from the Semliki Valley to the plains north of Lake Albert brought us to a dry but a hot land; the ground was baked hard, the grass was scorched, the sun, but for the everlasting thick haze, would have been intolerable; in addition to which the water, except that from the Ruwenzori stream, was atrocious, and charged with nitre and organic corruption. The ascent to the eastern plateau was marked by an increase of cold and many an evil consequence—fevers, colds, catarrhs, dysenteries and paralysis. Several times we ascended to over 6000 feet above the sea, to be punished with agues, which prostrated black and white by scores. In the early mornings, at this altitude, hoar-frost was common. Blackberries were plentiful along the path in north-west Ankori, 5200 feet above the sea-level.

"Yours obediently,

"HENRY M. STANLEY."

## CHAPTER XXXI.

### END OF THE JOURNEY.



CONCLUDING the story of Stanley's last and most wonderful expedition, we have now only to add a few facts and descriptions to carry the narrative of the final great march from Albert Lake to Zanzibar. As described in the preceding chapter, the route selected for the journey eastward was south from Albert Lake along the Ruwenzori range and Semliki river, thence south-eastward to the shores of Victoria Lake. This route proved a most fortunate selection, not only because of the valuable geographical and ethnological discoveries made, but also because the hostile Wanyoro tribes were thereby avoided. M'tesa, had he been living, would no doubt have given substantial aid to Stanley, but his successor, Kalema, was bitterly hostile to Christians, and with the powerful force at his command could have easily destroyed—as he certainly would had opportunity offered—the expedition.

#### EXPERT TREE CLIMBERS.

The many tribes not previously met with by white explorers, which Stanley came in contact with in the formerly unexplored region of Muta Nziga Lake, lent a new interest to the expedition, and greatly increases its value. Among other peoples whom Stanley describes in a letter printed in the preceding chapter, he found a tribe which added to their other curious customs and habits a singular propensity for climbing trees and making temporary habitations thereon. This practice no doubt grew out of the persecutions to which they were once subject by a more powerful neighboring tribe, which induced them to make their abode in the loftiest trees, where they would be at an advantage in repelling attack. Another reason is found in the frequent inundations of the district, which rendered an altitudinous habitation at certain seasons a necessity. Neither of these reasons now forcibly remains, for the people no longer suffer from their cruel neighbors as they once did, and owing to a gradual filling in of what was formerly a very low valley, the inundations are less frequent. But old habits, especially when transmitted, are very slowly abandoned, so that there are still to be occasionally seen these so-called tree-dwellers, while the tribes continue to retain their expertness as climbers. And their means for ascending large and lofty trees is quite as curious as were their former habitations. In scaling large trees the climber provides himself with a strong vine, which he throws around the tree, and then seizing the two ends in either hand he puts his feet against the body of the tree, and by working



the vine in a kind of twisting motion, fairly walks up by a series of leverages. To see a native thus ascending a tree, one would think the feat an easy one, but it requires much practice before it can be accomplished.

These people, though living between tribes that had more or less intercourse with Arab traders, knew nothing of firearms, and exhibited both curiosity and alarm when a musket was fired in their midst. While in camp on the Semliki Plain, Nelson shot an eagle in the sight of some of the natives, and instantly a singular scene ensued. Scarcely had the bird fallen to the ground when six athletic men rushed to the spot, and with grimaces, as if half asking the privilege, they set to work to strip the eagle of its quill feathers, and afterwards cut off the head and feet. The purpose of these trophies was presently understood, when an interpreter explained that the men thought the bird had been killed by magic, and that possession of the quills or parts would give influence over spirits of the air.



A TREE CLIMBER.

Further south, and to the east of the Ruwenzori range, the tribes are more familiar with Arab customs, and many of them are Mohammedans, a fact which is particularly true of the Wahuma, who affect the use of loin cloths and head dresses ornamented with feathers. Their habitations, however, are those of the savage, being cone-shaped huts flimsily constructed, and bearing a striking resemblance to those of our North American Indians. It is stated that upon certain occasions, which may be designated as public holidays, it is customary for the daughter of their chief or king to circulate among her people, borne upon the back of a lusty servant, and scatter small gifts, generally beads, to the throngs that gather about her way. This ceremony is supposed to be a symbol of the



care and generosity which the ruler feels for his people, and the blessings that will follow obedience to his commands.

The chief himself is distinguishable from his subjects only by a peculiar headress, which serves him as a crown, and the more pretentious dwelling in which he resides. He has, like all African potentates, a great number of wives, who minister to his wants with true slavish devotion, even to the absurd extent of feeding him, and of holding a vessel to his royal lips while he drinks. But aside from this custom, in which we observe the badge of abject subordination,



PLUCKING THE EAGLE FOR MAGIC FEATHERS.

the king exacts no further humiliating subjection from either his wives or his subjects, his real rule being tempered with justice and moderation. So that upon the whole, being blessed with a fertile district and a considerate king, the Wahuma may in truth be called a happy people.

#### INCIDENTS OF THE MARCH.

After reaching the region along the south shores of Victoria Lake, there was more or less fighting with the natives, but at no place was the expedition opposed by a sufficient force to make the contests much more than brief skirmishes, in which there were very few casualties. But while there was little





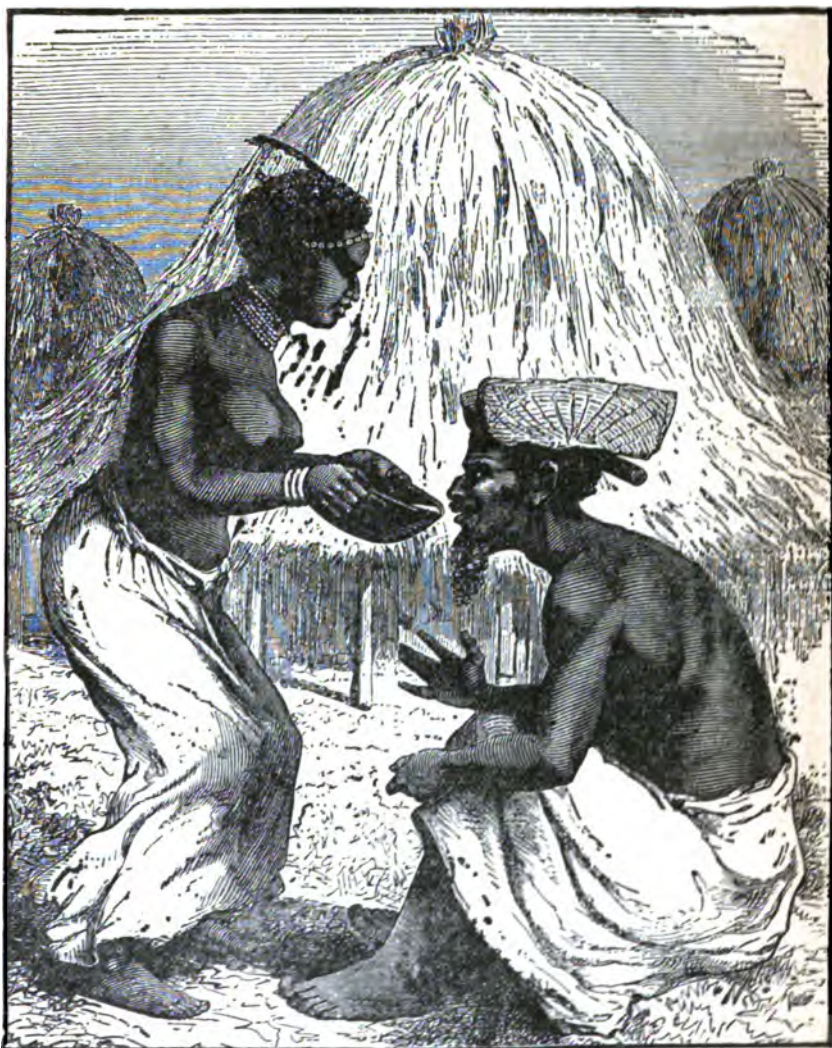
CEREMONY OF SCATTERING BEADS.



reduction of the caravan from this cause, other more serious obstacles were encountered, which depleted the ranks by several scores. There were occasional stretches of dense growth to be penetrated, swamps to be passed, streams to be waded and fever districts to be covered. These entailed hardships which brought on disease from which many never rallied, and died even while being carried in hammocks. An accident also occurred by which one of the Soudanese boys had his eyesight destroyed, while another was so severely burned about the face and body as to require nursing over the remainder of the way. Three boys had obtained some brass shells, from which they attempted to remove the bullets by melting out the lead. They placed the shells in a fire one evening after camp had been made, and while blowing the coals on which the shells were laid the cartridges exploded, with the results mentioned.

Occasionally, as the caravan passed by villages, the natives would rush out with shouts, gesticulations and a display of their singular weapons; and wizards would indulge in devilish dances in their incantations to oppose the march,

but finding small attention paid to their actions they most frequently concluded their wild exhibitions by making overtures of friendship; some, however, were disdainful to the last, and sent imprecations upon the vanishing caravan after failing to exact a tribute for the privilege of crossing their territory.

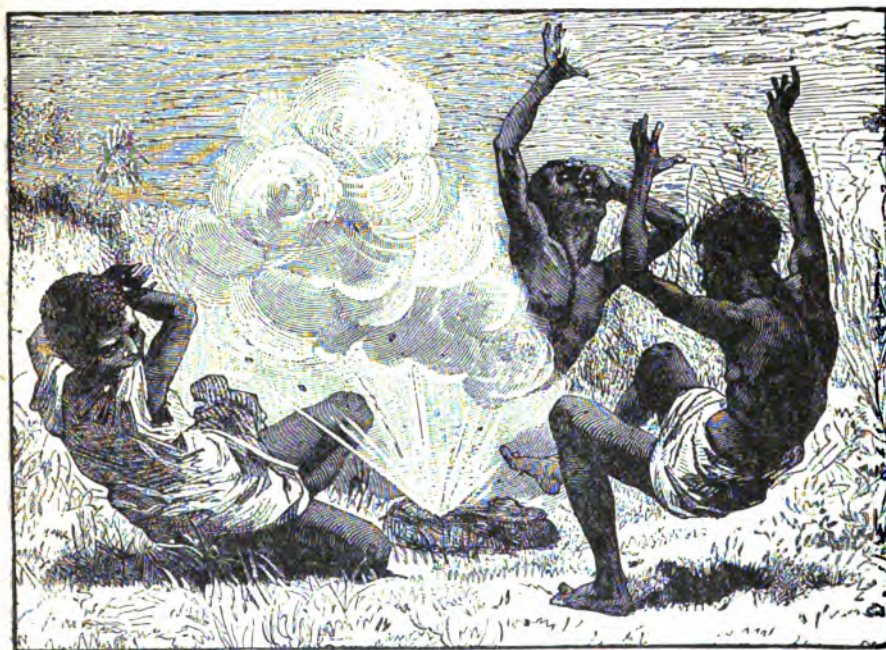


THE WAHUMA KING.



## EMIN PASHA'S DAUGHTER.

Among the members of the cavalcade was a daughter of Emin Pasha, a young girl of six years of age, named Ferida. Upon being introduced to her by her father, Stanley's curiosity was excited to learn what strange romance had culminated in the girl before him, and, to his casual inquiries, he learned the following interesting facts: Dr. Schnitzer (Emin Pasha) is, by birth, a Silesian Jew, but his Hebraic origin did not impose a religious prejudice against Islamism. In fact, the Doctor's long residence among the Moham-medans of the Soudan and lake regions made him lend a willing ear to the teachings of the Prophet, though possibly not so much from conviction as from self-interest:—for no one save a Mohammedan can live in peace in that region. But at all events Emin embraced the Moslem faith, outwardly at least, and



EXPLOSION OF THE CARTRIDGES.

accepted its teach-ings and practices. The Koran per-mits every man to have more than one wife, provided he is able to sup-port a plurality, and as it was the universal custom of those about him to live in poly-gamy, Emin had no wish to be a conspicuous excep-tion, which might reflect upon his sincerity as a Mo-hammedan, and thereby de-

stroy his influence; accordingly, he lived as did his people, and supported more than a single consort. The result of this union was the birth of a daughter, Ferida. This girl, though not the most beautiful of her sex, possesses a lovely disposition, and between her and the father there is an attachment really delightful to behold. Born amid savage surroundings, she had no refining influence about her save that exercised by her father; but through his constant care and patient instruction, she was taught in the several branches, and now has a fairly good education, which will be further advanced by all the advantages that can be secured for her in the best colleges of Europe.

## NEWS OF STANLEY'S RETURN.

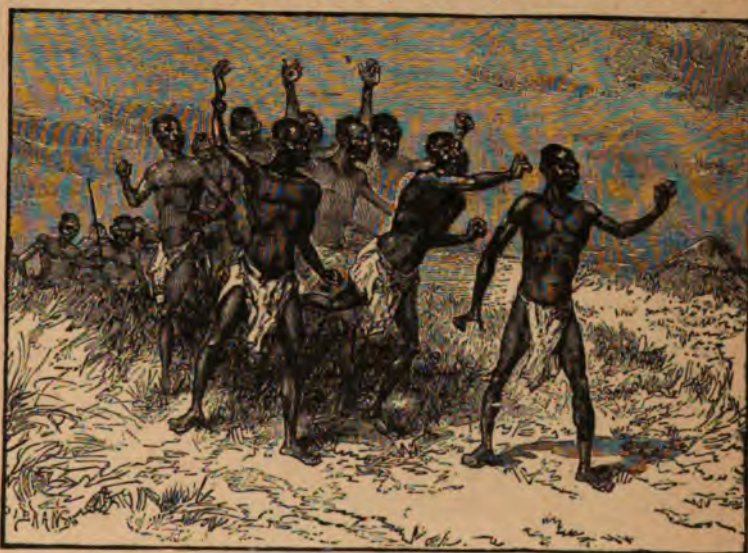
The first reliable news received of Stanley's approach to civilization was transmitted by Stanley himself to the British Consul at Zanzibar. The dis-



patch was written at Mpwapu, November 11th, 1889, and announced his arrival there on the fifty-fifth day after his departure from Lake Victoria, and the one hundred and eighty-eighth day after leaving Kavalli. In addition to making the glad announcement of his arrival at the German station of Mpwapu, he wrote thus ruefully:

"Every previous expedition has seen the lightening of its labors upon nearing the sea. But the long string of hammock bearers with us now tells a different tale. Till we can place the poor things in our company on ship-board there will be no rest for us. The worst of it is that we have not the privilege of showing you at Zanzibar the full extent of our labors. After carrying some of them a thousand miles, and fighting to the right and left of the sick, driving the Warasura from their prey over range after range of mountains, with every energy on full strain, they slip through our hands and die in their hammocks. One lady, 75 years old, mother of Vakiel, died in this manner.

"In North Usukuma, south of the Victoria N'yanza, we had as stirring a time for four days as anywhere on our route. There was continuous fighting during the greater part of the daylight hours. The foolish natives took an unaccountable prejudice against Emin's people. They insisted that they were cannibals, and had come



NATIVES SENDING THEIR IMPRECATIONS AFTER STANLEY.

for no good purpose. Talking was useless, as any attempt to disprove their impression only drove them into a white-hot rage, and in their mad hate, flinging themselves on us, they suffered severely.

"I am advised that the Semba and Mwene route is the best for securing an abundance of food, and therefore I propose to adopt it; but as regards danger from attacks by the natives, one road seems to be as bad as the other."

#### RECEPTION AT BAGAMOYO.

At Mpwapu Stanley was greeted by several friends who ministered greatly to his comfort, and who helped him on his journey to Bagamoyo, which was a distance of three weeks' march. After resting two days the caravan continued on, and on December 3d Major Wissmann met Stanley, Casati and Emin at the head of the long procession, as it filed into the small village of



Atoni, on the Kinghani river. Having heard of the approach of Stanley's expedition, Wissmann had provided horses for Stanley, Emin and the lieuten-



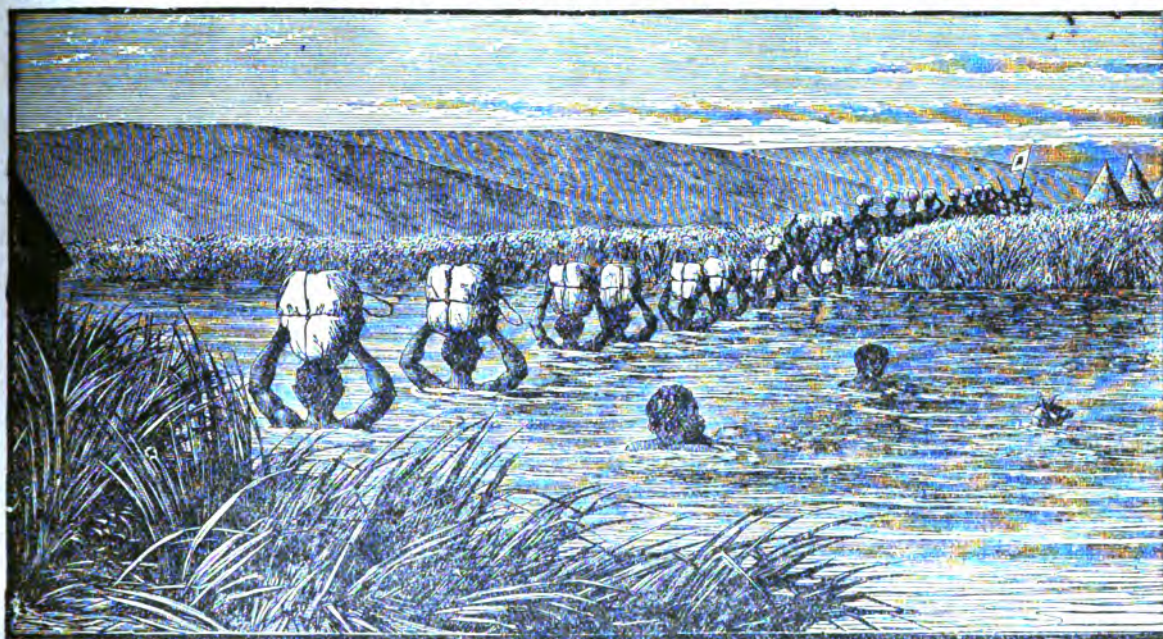
JEPHSON'S ADVENTURE WITH A SNAKE.

ants, in order to relieve the march of hardships at the latter end, and had these ready when the entrance into Atoni was made.



## THE MIRTH THAT A SNAKE PRODUCED.

But the expedition was in great need of horses long before the meeting with Wissmann, for every one was both weary and footsore, while the highway, though bearing the semblance of a road, was rough and thorn-bestrewed. But it was not every one in the expedition who could ride a horse, for to many of those belonging to Emin's party such an animal was a novelty, while even Stanley's assistants had lost much of their equestrianship in the now commoner practice of cavalry service on donkeys, oxen and goats, which latter animals Ward affirms served to bear both packs, and light men occasionally. But after leaving Kavalli there was no kind of riding animal in the expedition. One of the horses supplied by Wissmann was not exactly a Rocinante, but it was no less distinguished for its quiet demeanor, on which account its services



THE EXPEDITION CROSSING A STREAM.

were the more in demand, as there was not much confidence shown by any of the party in their ability to keep company with a spirited horse. However, it fell to the lot of Jephson to bestride this promising "beast," and off he set in good glee, at first distancing his followers, and keeping a goodly pace until he met with a most unexpected mishap. While moving at a slow trot, suddenly his horse reared with a spasmodic effort that all but unseated him, and dashed away with a spirit that might wreck windmills and opposing phantoms, giving Mr. Jephson barely time to see a large snake crawling along with some excitement in the road, and thus to surmise the cause.

When Jephson finally returned to the roadside from gathering up his accoutrements he was met by Stanley and Wissmann trudging along on slower horses near the centre of the caravan, and on relating his adventure he became



the object of a mirth that echoed along the line from one end to the other, and which brought upon him so many good-natured jibes that he could not again be induced to mount a horse even after his own was recaptured.

#### ARRIVAL AT BAGAMOYO.

Aside from the mishap to Jephson, there was no trouble experienced with the horses so kindly provided by Wissmann, and a triumphal entry into Bagamoyo was made at eleven o'clock, Wednesday morning, December 4. The town was profusely decorated in expectation of their coming, carriers having gone on in advance; and as the cavalcade came in sight of the coast, the German man-of-war *Sperber* fired a salute of twelve guns. There were several vessels lying in the roadstead, and all of these were handsomely decked in flags, giving a beautiful appearance to the channel between Bagamoyo and Zanzibar Island.

At three o'clock Wissmann entertained Stanley and Emin at a luncheon, at which several Europeans were present, among others the captain of the *Sperber*, who welcomed Stanley, and then congratulated Emin on behalf of Emperor William. In the evening there was a champagne banquet, attended by several representatives of foreign powers, chiefly consuls. The German consul toasted the Queen, which was followed by a toast to Stanley by Wissmann, which brought forth a most eloquent reply from the great explorer. In the course of his remarks, he gave praise to God for all that had been accomplished, and most feelingly referred to those soldiers who had accompanied him and left their bones, as an evidence of their devotion, bleaching in the forest. His speech throughout was eloquently reverential and modest, and gave a new exhibition of his true greatness.

#### AN ACCIDENT TO EMIN PASHA.

The joyful festivities that were thus inaugurated to manifest a gladsome welcome to the returned explorers were continued to a late hour, and until they were suddenly interrupted by a most deplorable accident, which came very near ending the life of Emin Pasha, turning mirth into instant mourning. Considerable wine was consumed during the ceremonies of jollification, Emin Pasha indulging to an extent which rendered him nearly unconscious of his surroundings. He had taken lodging at a typical Zanzibarian caravansary, in which all the windows are so low that the sills are nearly on a level with the floor. They are thus made in order to allow a fuller sweep of air, so necessary in a tropical country, and also to serve as a doorway leading out onto the veranda which invariably surrounds the second stories of the large buildings. When Emin retired to his room it was after midnight, and being very warm, as well as confused by the potations he had indulged in, he walked out through the long open window and seated himself on the railing of the balcony to catch the fresh air for a few moments before taking his repose. While thus seated, receiving the cooling night breeze, he lost his balance and fell to the ground below, a distance of nearly twenty feet. He struck with such force upon his side that he lost consciousness, but his groans attracted the attention

of others who were sitting on a porch on the first floor, and who hastened to his relief. The other members of the expedition were notified immediately, and in a few moments tender hands carried the unconscious body to a bed in the hotel, and Dr. Parke was hurriedly summoned, as were also physicians connected with the English and German fleets in the harbor. A brief examination showed that he was very seriously, perhaps fatally, hurt. In fact, all the physicians except Dr. Parke, gave it as their opinion that his injuries would prove mortal. Blood was flowing from his mouth, nose and ears, while there appeared to be equally dangerous body hurts. His physical condition, too, was much depleted by the long march and fevers from which he had been suffering for two months before, so that his chances for recovery appeared very small.

For nearly a week he remained unconscious, with a slightly blood-tinged serum running all the while from his ears, and other symptoms of brain concussion manifest. In the mean time telegrams of sympathy from Germany and England came two and three times on each day, concluding with requests for knowledge of Emin's condition. Anxiety was intense as it appeared that through his death the world would be deprived of a report of his services and discoveries in the Equatorial Provinces, but at length reason regained its shattered throne and the Doctor awoke from his death-like stupor. Hope revived as did the distinguished patient, and after four weeks he was pronounced out of danger. During all this time he could not be removed, and it was two months after the accident before he was able to leave Bagamoyo for Zanzibar. But though Emin received the very best attention, his injuries mended so slowly that it has not been thought advisable to send him either to Cairo or Europe, and on the 14th of January he suffered a relapse that leaves his condition still critical at this writing, January 20th.

#### HONORS TO STANLEY.

On the sixth of December Stanley crossed over to Zanzibar, where he was received with loud acclamations and a hundred public receptions were tendered him, while telegram after telegram from Queen Victoria, Emperor William, the Khedive of Egypt, and great men of Europe, poured in upon him until a less democratic and less sensible head would have been turned by a vanity such wealth of applause and honor most frequently excites. Vessels in the roads were a flutter with flags, bands serenaded him, toasts were drunk in his honor, decorations were bestowed upon him, governments placed their best ships at his service to convey him whither he wished to go and he was feted with untiring attentions for a month before he left for Cairo in a British vessel specially appointed to carry him. Arriving at Cairo he was received by a distinguished delegation of British officers and residents, who, after giving him a magnificent banquet, conducted him to the palace of the Khedive, where he received a no less hearty welcome at the hands of the Egyptian ruler, a banquet being given him at the palace on the third day after his arrival. Three days later he was likewise honored by Sir Evelyn Baring,



while floods of invitations continued to pour in upon him from scientific and distinguished social bodies in London.

Owing to his long continuance in a tropical country, and his emergence in the winter season, Stanley wisely concluded to defer his return to England until some time in the early spring, thus having to disappoint for a while the expectations of his admirers, who had hoped to extend a hearty welcome to him during the social season.

During this interval he is actively engaged preparing his final reports, and conferring with the Khedive and representatives of other governments concerning the suppression of the slave trade in Central Africa, the overthrow of the Mahdi, extension of Khedival sovereignty in the Soudan, and the projecting of railroads from the coast to the lake regions. His labors, so heroically accomplished, are thus evidently but the beginning of others of yet greater importance, for Stanley is now moved by an ambition to reclaim the whole of Central Africa to civilization, in whose abilities the Christian world reposes the greatest confidence.



## APPENDIX.

### ADVANCE OF THE MAHDI, AND INSURRECTION OF THE PASHA'S TROOPS.



As already explained, Mr. Stanley, upon his first meeting with Emin, April 29th, 1889, made arrangements for returning to Fort Bodo to bring up the garrison that had been left there, but thought it wise to leave Mr. Jephson with the Pasha, who had to proceed back to Wadelai to confer with his people, and ascertain how they would consider Mr. Stanley's proposal to conduct them to the eastern coast.

Fort Bodo was only eleven days' march from Lake Albert N'yanza, but upon reaching the camp Stanley learned that no news had been received from the rear column, so he resolutely set out in search of them, as described in Stanley's letter in the preceding chapter. A long interval therefore elapsed before his return to the lake, during which time many stirring events took place in Emin's province to which Mr. Jephson was a witness, and who has given us some graphic pen pictures of the thrilling adventures which befell him.

Mr. Jephson was the only member of the expedition who actually reached the Egyptian stations held by Emin on the Nile north of Lake Albert N'yanza. It was he who, during many months there, witnessed and shared Emin Pasha's final struggles with the treachery of the faithless Egyptians and Arabs, and the mutiny of a large part of the Soudanese garrisons, left under his command. Mr. Jephson and Emin Pasha had their lives threatened by these rebels, and from August 20, 1888, to late in November were imprisoned at Duffili, in the utmost uncertainty about their fate—whether they were to be delivered over to the Mahdi, whose army was rapidly approaching, or to be put to death, or carried off into the wild and savage lands west of the Nile. No other European was then in the neighborhood, and they were quite out of reach of any direct help from Mr. Stanley.

Mr. Jephson's experiences are therefore unique in the history of these adventurous doings, and may be regarded as the last chapter of the Fall of the Soudan Government; as the concluding event of all those memorable conflicts and disasters that began in 1882 with the rise of the Mahdi's power, and which comprised the destruction of Hicks Pasha's army in Kordofan, the mission of General Gordon, the siege of Khartoum, Lord Wolseley's grand Nile Expedition, the capture of Khartoum and death of Gordon, in January, 1885; the repeated battles with Osman Digna near Souakim, and every other incident of the past eight years in those vast territories lost to Egyptian dominion, and now utterly



cut off from intercourse with the civilized world. Emin Pasha, in 1888, still remained in command of these stations, except Lado, which had been captured the Mahdi's forces, constantly advancing to the south.

#### HORRIBLE TORTURE OF THREE DERVISHES.

Soon after the news that the Mahdi's people had arrived at Lado, Omar Saleh, commanding the army from Dongola, sent a long letter to Emin Pasha, commanding him, in the name of the Prophet, to surrender and accompany him to Khartoum, where honors of all kinds were awaiting him at the Mahdi's hands. This letter was brought to Duffili by three "peacock" dervishes. They were fine-looking men, of the Arab type, with an extremely dignified and self-reliant bearing. Their dress was somewhat peculiar: a long calico shirt, patched all over with different-colored cloth—red, blue, green and yellow—with the edges unhemmed and ragged; a loin-cloth of the same description was round their waists, and a huge many-colored turban covered their close-shaven heads; while for arms each carried a double-edged sword of the old Crusader type and three enormous spears, with heads like an elongated ace of spades, with immensely long bamboo shafts. When these dervishes, messengers of the Mahdi's Lieutenant-General, arrived at Duffili, the garrison of that station had already revolted against the rule of Emin Pasha.

The rebel officers seized the letter, and after reading it, placed it in their divan. A large council was held, at which it was decided not to surrender, but to collect as many men from each station as could be conveniently spared, and dispatch a force to Rejaf to repel the invaders. Meanwhile the dervishes, after being closely questioned, were put in irons and thrown into prison. On hearing the news of the attack by the Mahdi's people, and the subsequent fall of Rejaf station, the rebel officers again sent for the dervishes, in the hope of getting some information from them concerning Omar Saleh's strength and position. Being unable to obtain any news from them, they resorted to the cruel torture of giving them plenty to eat, but absolutely nothing to drink. For two whole days the poor fellows bore it without murmuring, and the officers, getting impatient, determined to torture them by a method which is commonly used in the Soudan. They again brought the dervishes before them, fastened a piece of split bamboo round their heads, and had it twisted up so tightly by means of a tourniquet that the bamboo cut through the flesh to the very bone. With every nerve strained by the torture, and faint from loss of blood, not a groan escaped the lips of these brave men, so strongly were they upheld by their fanatical trust and faith in their Prophet. They could only say that God through His Prophet would avenge them. It was a disgusting sight to see the Egyptian officers and clerks delighting in the torture, and smiling and exulting when the pain became too intense for flesh and blood to bear, and the poor dervishes fell fainting to the ground. The Soudanese officers, with their low bestial faces, gazed at these sufferings with a sort of stolid indifference, but even that was better than the fiendish delight displayed by the cowardly Egyptians. The

black female slaves, who gathered round to see what was going on, were more soft-hearted than their masters, and sobbed audibly and wrung their hands, in very pity for the brave men who bore their sufferings with such indifference and courage. Surely their religion could not be a low one to support them under such fearful torture. No one deserving to be called a man could help a feeling of admiration and respect rising in his heart for these brave fanatics. It may be that some such feeling crossed the mind of Fadl el Mulla, the chief of the rebels, for he ordered the soldiers to unloose their bands and give them water, and they were carried back to the prison in a semi-unconscious state. In a couple of days they were able to move about again, though they were still heavily ironed. Though beaten down in body and mind, their bearing towards their captors was as dignified and self-reliant as ever, but their look of patient suffering was more pathetic than any words. For weeks they remained in prison, but no amount of suffering would induce them to betray their comrades and give information against them. At length, when the Mahdi's forces were before Duffili, the rebels decided to execute them. The soldiers had a superstition that bullets were powerless to kill them; they were therefore taken down to the river, and there beaten to death with clubs, and their bodies were thrown to the crocodiles. If ever men suffered martyrdom for their religion, it was those three brave dervishes whose fate is here described.

#### REBELLION OF EMIN'S SOLDIERS.

The scenes and incidents connected with the rebellion at Labore are graphically described by Mr. Jephson, to whose accounts I am indebted for the information here recorded. After leaving the northern stations of Kirri and Muggi, Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson, on August 12, arrived at Labore. It had been Mr. Stanley's wish that Mr. Jephson should go round to all the stations in the province and read to the people at each station the letters which he had brought from his Highness the Khedive and Nubar Pasha in Egypt, and Mr. Stanley had also given Mr. Jephson a proclamation from himself to read to the soldiers. The chief of the station at Labore was one Surore Aga, a Soudanese slave who had risen to the rank of captain in the Egyptian army. He was a man on whom the Pasha had no reliance whatever, one of those ignorant, fanatical men who hated and distrusted any one who was not a Mohammedan. The event proved that the Pasha's want of trust in him was well founded.

On the afternoon of August 13, the soldiers, officers, clerks and officials of the station were drawn up ready to receive the Pasha and Mr. Jephson, and so hear the letters and proclamation which had been read at the other stations. It was noticeable that while Mr. Jephson was reading letters, and was afterwards speaking to the men, several of them were inattentive, and spoke in an undertone to one another; they appeared to be restless and incredulous. After the letters had been read, and while the Pasha was addressing a few words to them, a big burly Soudanese soldier, with a sort of bull-dog face, stepped from the ranks, and exclaimed in a loud tone, "All you are telling us is false: these



people have not come from Egypt; and those letters you have brought are forgeries. There is but one road to Egypt, and that is by Khartoum, and we only know that road; we will go by that road, or we will live and die in this country." He went on to say that the Pasha and Mr. Jephson had been spreading lies in the province, for had the letter which had just been read come from the Khedive, it would have given the soldiers a command to go to Egypt, instead of saying they might stay where they were if they liked.

The Pasha promptly seized the man by the collar, and tried to wrench his gun from his hands, at the same time calling to his three orderlies to arrest this man and put him in prison. Then arose a scene of confusion which baffles all description. The soldiers, with loud cries and execrations, surrounded the Pasha and Mr. Jephson, and, loading their rifles, pointed the weapons at them. The noise and shouting were tremendous; and for a few minutes there was no knowing how it might end. Some of the soldiers made a rush at the Pasha, hurled him on one side, and bore off their companion, with loud shouts of derision. The Pasha drew his sword to defend himself, but the officers dashed in between him and the soldiers, and struck up their rifles. At this moment a voice was heard crying out that the Pasha's and Mr. Jephson's orderlies were attempting to seize the ammunition in the storehouse. There was at once a general stampede to the powder-magazine, and the Pasha was left alone. Mr. Jephson followed the soldiers, who at first greeted him with howls and yells, but on his saying, "You see I am not afraid of you; I am alone, because I know you are soldiers, and not savages," they lowered their guns, and said, "No, we will not harm you." The officers had done what they could to calm them, but had been powerless to make any impression on the infuriated soldiers. If one of the guns which the soldiers were brandishing about, loaded and cocked, had gone off, a general massacre would have been the result, for when one shot was fired there would have been no stopping the tumult that would have followed.

The behavior of some of the Pasha's people during the first few risky minutes was peculiar. Rajab Effendi, the Pasha's secretary, hid behind a tree, where he was found afterwards in a state of collapse. Araf Effendi, a clerk, a queer-looking little Circassian, ran off screaming into Selim Bey's hut, where he hid himself under an angareb (bedstead), crying out that the Pasha and Mr. Jephson were murdered; while the black women of the household kept up a running chorus of screams. But Vita Hassan, the Pasha's apothecary, a Jew of Tunis, immediately on seeing what was happening, rushed off to the Pasha's house, and brought him his revolver. The Pasha's and Mr. Jephson's orderlies, and his boy Binza, also behaved with much courage, and were a great help in quieting down the people. It afterwards transpired that the soldier who started the mutiny was an orderly of Surore Aga, and had been instigated by his master to create this disturbance.

This was the beginning of the rebellion. A week later, on August 20, at

Duffili, Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson, on their arrival from the northern stations, were made prisoners by order of Fadl el Mulla Aga, who had usurped authority in the province. They were accused of conspiring against the Khedive and his people, and of treating his officers with injustice; and they suffered an irksome imprisonment of three months.

#### A DANGEROUS SITUATION.

Shortly after arriving at Chor Ayu, on the day of their departure for Labore, the Pasha received a letter from Hawashi Effendi, the senior of all his officers and chief of Duffili Station, saying that a rebellion had broken out in Duffili, and that he was made a prisoner in his own house.

It appeared that Fadl el Mulla Haga, chief of Fabbo Station, with two of his officers and sixty soldiers, had arrived in Duffili. They had told the people that the Pasha was conspiring with Stanley to betray them, and that Fadl el Mulla had been asked by certain officers, Egyptian and Soudanese, to take the head of the Government. He had removed the sentries from the storehouses and magazines, and had replaced them by sentries from his own soldiers, and had placed Hawashi Effendi under arrest in his own house, with orders to the sentries to permit no one to enter or leave the compound.

The soldiers, ever ready to believe ill against the existing Government, and further excited by the stories and rumors spread abroad by the Egyptian clerks and officials, had quietly given in, and Fadl el Mulla Aga had established himself as chief of the station, and from that time was practically the chief of the province. He had then liberated all the prisoners in the station.

The Pasha and Mr. Jephson were now indeed in a trap. The rebels of Rejaf and Labore were to the north, the rebellion in Duffili to the south, to the east was the Nile with its dangerous rapids, and a hostile population occupied the country to the west. The Pasha, however, had some hopes of putting down the rebellion in Duffili; so after considerable discussion, it was decided that on the next day the Pasha, with Mr. Jephson and a few followers, should march to Duffili, which was some sixteen miles distant.

It was then August 20, the Mussulman feast of Ed-el-Kebir; a bad time for the rebellion to break out, as it was a four days' holiday throughout the province, and a great deal of drinking was going on, which would naturally make the people more excitable, and ready to do mischief. However, nothing was to be gained, by staying at Chor Ayu; and the only chance that the Pasha had of putting down the rebellion was to proceed at once to the scene of the trouble, and endeavor to prevent its spreading to the southern stations, whose garrisons were supposed to be loyal.

On the road couriers were met, with another letter from Hawashi Effendi, entreating the Pasha to come as quickly as possible, or it would be too late to do any good. The messengers were eagerly questioned as to what had taken place at Duffili, and they gave it as their opinion that things were in a very bad way. The Pasha was in great anxiety, depressed and saddened by the



thought that the people with whom he had been living so long, and for whom he had done so much, and was willing to do so much more, should have turned against him, especially when help and relief were at last near.

A SULLEN SILENCE.

About three o'clock, the Pasha's party arrived at a hill, a mile and a half from the station; here a halt was called, to enable the rear of the column to come up. The party consisted of Emin Pasha and Mounteney-Jephson; Vita Hassan, a Tunisian Jew, who had been an apothecary in the Egyptian service, and six years before came up to take charge of the hospital in Lado; the Pasha's two clerks, Rajab and Araf Effendi; and Sultan Aga, a Lieutenant from Wadelai Station, who was in charge of the native porters carrying the baggage.

They could see the station in the distance, with the Pasha's flag flying at the flagstaff, and large numbers of people grouped about the outside of the station and in the square in front of the postern-gate, which was at once a guard-room and the chief entrance to the station. As they neared the station people might be seen massing in great numbers, and forming up on each side of the path along which the Pasha and Mr. Jephson were to pass. No salutes were fired, as is the usual custom on the Governor's entering the station; nor were the troops drawn up in line to salute the Pasha as he passed. It had always been his custom, when the trumpeters had played the Khedivial Hymn and had given three cheers for the Khedive, to inspect his troops, and to speak a few kindly words to them before entering his house. On this occasion there was no sign or token of respect or greeting; and as the party entered the station an order was given by an Egyptian officer, and ten soldiers took their places in front of the Pasha and Mr. Jephson, while the same number followed in their rear, cutting them off from their own people.

The whole station was alive with people, who all—men, women and children—seemed to have turned out to see the entry, and to witness their Governor's humiliation. At a glance the Pasha saw it was hopeless to speak to his people, or to endeavor to bring them round to his side. Every one pressed forward to see the prisoners, and to point at them with scorn. The clerks and officers kept somewhat in the background, as if ashamed to meet the Pasha's eye; while a party of soldiers, more or less excited by drink, began singing and shouting out insulting words as he passed; they finally made a rush at the Pasha's immediate followers, whom they disarmed and marched off to prison.

Meanwhile, the twenty sentries, followed by the shouting rabble, conducted the Pasha and Mr. Jephson through the station, every road and path to which was blocked by the crowds that came to look at them as they passed. Their entry on this day was a great contrast to their entry into the same station little more than a month before. Then, the Pasha was received by his troops paying all honor to their Governor; and Mr. Jephson was received with accla-

mations, as a welcome guest, who had brought them good tidings from his great chief, Mr. Stanley, one known to all the world; and the people had thronged to offer their salutations and to thank him for coming to help them. Now, on every face was to be seen indifference or scorn and derision. The Egyptian incendiaries had done their work, and all were against the Pasha.

#### THE PASHA MADE A PRISONER.

A large concourse of people had gathered in the square, which forms the centre of the station, and on one side of which is the Pasha's compound. An officer came forward and told the Pasha that he would now be a prisoner in his own house, there to await his trial by a tribunal of officers, taken from all parts of the province. The crimes of which he was accused were those of treachery to the Khedive and his people, and of injustice to his officers. The Pasha and Mr. Jephson were then conducted into their compound amid the jeers and shouts of the people. Sentries were posted at the gate and all round the thick boma which surrounded their quarters, and they were allowed to hold no communication with the outside world.

The mutineers had sent for some of the rebel officers of Rejaf, Bedden, Makraka, Kiri, Muggi, Labore, and the southern stations, to meet at Duffili to consider the Pasha's case. On the arrival of all these officers, a large council was held in the divan, and various witnesses were called to give evidence against the Pasha. Mr. Jephson's three orderlies were called and questioned by the rebels, who threatened to put them in chains if they did not tell the truth. They gave their evidence in a straightforward manner, telling the rebels they had come out with Mr. Stanley's Expedition by the order of Effendina (the Khedive), and showed the officers their rifles, marked with the Crescent and Star, to prove that they were Egyptian soldiers. The officers asked, "Where, then, are your uniforms?" They answered, "They were worn out on the road." The officers then made them go through a portion of their drill, to see if they were really soldiers. Fortunately, Abdullah, the sergeant, knew his drill, and acquitted himself well. The orderlies were then dismissed, and an officer went over to Mr. Jephson's house to request his attendance before the council.

At this time the greatest excitement prevailed in the station to hear the result of the first sitting of the council, and an immense crowd was collected to see the witnesses as they were conducted across the square by the sentries. Fadl el Mulla Aga and Ali Aga Djabar, the latter Chief of Rejaf, who had also rebelled, were elected Presidents of the Council. This man had, some months before, tried to take the Pasha prisoner, and had for three years been in rebellion against his authority. He had established himself in Makraka, and lived like a bandit chief, making himself feared and dreaded by his deeds of violence.

On entering the divan, all the officers and clerks rose and greeted Mr. Jephson, and Fadl el Mulla introduced him to the different officers and clerks,



and to Sheik Mooragan, the chief priest, the biggest scoundrel in the province; he was eventually the first man who went over to the Mahdists. Mr. Jephson was then questioned closely about the expedition, its origin and aims, and was made to go over the whole story from beginning to end, but he was constantly interrupted by questions from different officers and by exclamations of incredulity. The story was disbelieved, for the officers all said that had the expedition come from Egypt the Khedive would have sent some Egyptian officers with it; moreover, their relatives in Egypt would certainly have written to them, and sent their letters by Mr. Stanley.

Mr. Jephson then produced the Khedive's letter, and handed it to Fadl el Mulla; and the clerk of the station read it aloud before all the officers. After various comments had been made on the letter, all of a doubting character, certain brevets bearing the Khedive's signature were sent for, and the signatures of the letter and brevets were examined by the clerks and compared one with the other. For a minute or two they seemed uncertain, and then the head clerk, rising from his mat, threw the letter at Mr. Jephson's feet, exclaiming: "The letter is a forgery, and you and your master are impostors!" A confusion of voices followed, everyone talking at the top of his voice; and a plan was then and there made, in Mr. Jephson's presence, to entrap Mr. Stanley on his return to the lake, and rob him of all his guns, ammunition and stores, and then to turn him adrift to perish. Mr. Jephson was then conducted back to his house, and so ended the first day's sitting of the council.

#### HARDSHIPS OF THEIR IMPRISONMENT.

The life of Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson during their imprisonment was not a pleasant one. The rebel officers who began the revolution had behaved with some kind of decency at first, but as time went on quarrels among themselves began to be of everyday occurrence. The mornings were devoted to dealing with the affairs of the province, and the afternoons were given up to drunkenness and debauchery. All sorts of rumors concerning their fate from time to time reached the prisoners' ears, and it was finally settled that they were to be taken down in chains to Rejaf. Nobody known to be friendly to the Pasha was spared, but was either imprisoned or his house was looted.

The two European prisoners were shut up in a small compound, some ninety feet square, surrounded by a high thick boma or fence. There were six huts in the compound—one occupied by the Pasha, one by Mr. Jephson, one by Vita Hassan, two for kitchen and servants, and a storehouse. The prisoners had a few books, perhaps half a dozen, which were read and re-read half a dozen times over. From morning to night there was nothing to do except to talk over the different rumors and reports which occasionally reached their ears. Clerks sometimes were sent over by the rebel forces with different letters they wished the Pasha to sign, all relating to his deposition. Mr. Jephson was allowed to go about the station, but was always followed by two sentries, who closely watched his movements, and reported them to the rebels. It was a

pleasure he seldom availed himself of, as the people in the station were often exceedingly insulting. He was, however, obliged to go out to buy and arrange for getting food, as the rebels cut off nearly all their supplies, and only allowed them occasionally a little corn. Their servants were insulted and abused, and humiliations were heaped on the prisoners on every occasion.

The Pasha was very low in spirits, and depressed; it seemed almost impossible at times to rouse him from his melancholy. And so the weary days dragged on, until the Duffili people were electrified by the news that the Mahdi's troops were again upon them, this time burning to avenge their former defeat. The position of the prisoners seemed hopeless; accounts of the disasters experienced by the Pasha's people were constantly reported to them. They were unable to fight, and were not allowed to retire. The only thing left for them to do seemed to be to wait with what patience they might for the final blow. The rebel officers, in despair, at last appealed to the Pasha for advice! but in the struggle to retake Rejaf, Ali Aga Djabor and some of the Pasha's worst enemies were killed; and the remaining officers, being alarmed at what had happened, sent Emin and Mr. Jephson as prisoners to Wadelai. They had been just three months imprisoned at Duffili.

#### A JOYFUL LIBERATION.

In December, 1888, Emin Pasha and Mr. Jephson, having been released had left Wadelai, on the Nile, for Tunguru, one of the Egyptian stations on Lake Albert N'yanza, where Mr. Jephson could write to Mr. Stanley at Kavalli, explaining the situation of affairs, and on February 6th Mr. Jephson came to report in person, telling Mr. Stanley plainly that the only remaining obstacle was a sentimental feeling in Emin Pasha's own mind—a conscientious reluctance to leave the Soudanese people, so long entrusted to his care. This feeling, which was shared by his only European assistant, Captain Casati, is worthy of respect; and we know enough of Emin Pasha's character and conduct to ensure for him a degree of personal esteem and sympathy hardly less merited than that which public opinion has bestowed on General Gordon. Though not a soldier, he had bravely and skilfully defended the Egyptian stations against the attacks of the Mahdi's forces and their native allies, while he had, during ten lonely years, administered the domestic government of a large province with the best results, maintaining orderly rule, promoting useful cultivation, improving the condition of the country and the happiness of its natives; and he trusted in the loyalty of the Soudanese black troops, whose gratitude and devotion he had amply deserved. The traitors who conspired against him were some of the Egyptians and Copts employed in the Civil Service, and some of the Arab military officers—the same class of men who proved traitors to Gordon; and it is considered, by those who should be well acquainted with these transactions, that Emin Pasha ought to have dealt sternly and severely with those ringleaders of the revolt while he had the power; and that by an undue leniency, a passive toleration of their mutinous insolence, he brought him-



self into a helpless position. A man of single-minded integrity, of unassuming modesty and simplicity, of humane benevolence, a philanthropist, a philosopher, a student of the natural and moral sciences, Emin Pasha was not well qualified for a despotic commander who should put down rebellion with the hand of iron; nor had he been trained in the school of military or strictly governmental service.

#### A MAN OF NOBLE QUALITIES.

When Mr. Jephson accompanied Emin to Wadelai, in April, 1888, he found that "the 1st Battalion of troops, about 700 men, had long been in rebellion against the Pasha's authority, and had twice attempted to take him prisoner; the 2d Battalion, 650 rifles, though professedly loyal, was insubordinate, and almost unmanageable; the Pasha possessed only a semblance, a mere rag of authority; and if he required anything of importance to be done, he could no longer order, he was obliged to beg his officers to do it." The events in August and the following months, which have been fully narrated, were the natural consequence of this false position; but we know not whether to admire or to reprove the amazing tenderness of Emin Pasha, after the manner in which he was treated, for the rebellious soldiery who had been so far misled, and his forgiveness of the Arab and Egyptian traitors. He never thought of himself, but of saving those people and their families, whom he would not leave behind. Perhaps it was more of the innocent women and children that he thought; for most of the black soldiers had married and settled, with plots of land, houses and cattle, in the province under his gentle rule. We suppose that they, being heathen, were in danger of being carried off into slavery by the Mahdi's army; while the few Egyptians would have been put to death without mercy, and some of the Arab officers, having fought against the Mahdi, were perhaps in equal danger. Altogether, the number of people for whose fate Emin Pasha was so painfully anxious was estimated at ten thousand, mostly women and children. With rare generosity and humanity, whatever may be thought of the equity of his views, this remarkable man—Jew, Mohammedan, Christian or philosopher—declined to accept the immediate rescue of himself and his personal attendants unless he could take the people with him, and all their portable goods and chattels, under Mr. Stanley's escort to the east coast, a condition which Mr. Stanley finally consented to, and the removal was made, as was described in a previous chapter.

## ADDENDA—AN EPILOGUE.

FROM AN EPIC TO A TRAGEDY.



THE story of Stanley's journeys through Africa, and particularly that of his trip to relieve Emin Pasha, is a tragic one, and has compelled the startled interest and profound sympathy of the whole civilized world. The sequel, however, is more distressing, though less dramatic, and from an epic the theme must now change to an elegy if not a jeremiade.

The world delights in honoring a hero with adulation that approaches worship, and will pour out libations upon his grave, but the same ready spirit to glorify the great is no less prompt to pull down an idol when discovery is made that it does not honestly possess the virtue which it was once falsely supposed to embody. Mr. Stanley has not only led expeditions, but he has also been the historian of his deeds; the world has believed in him, and his reputation has grown amazingly upon each return he has made from the wilds of Africa, for every ear has been eagerly open to the astounding stories of perils, heroism and discovery which he had to relate. When he returned from his successful expedition in search of Livingstone the people of two continents bowed their heads in grateful admiration for his deeds; when he crossed the dark region of Africa applause burst afresh and praise for his heroism was on every lip. The tale of his hardships, though told by his own pen, was received with unquestioned faith, and all the earlier explorers of Africa's barbarous tropics were obscured by the splendor with which his own name shone. People forgot to ask if there were any means of confirming his statements, nor did they cease their applause long enough to even wonder why none of the white men who accompanied him returned to civilization; the spirit of vulgar adulation suppressed inquiry why one after another of the brave Englishmen who set out with him on his transcontinental journey fell by the wayside, not victims of attack by hostile natives, but by accidents, as described in an earlier part of this book.

ASTOUNDING revelations now being made, as to the real purposes of Mr. Stanley's last expedition, and the true story of the fatal misfortunes which nearly annihilated the Rear Column, have at last hushed the voice of doxology, and reason has now stepped to the front with a demand for investigation. If the hero of three expeditions passes the ordeal of honest inquiry, he will emerge with honors not only unsullied, but his character will appear the more glorious by a removal of the ugly doubts which now disfigure it.



If the meed of unqualified praise which I have given to Mr. Stanley in previous chapters shows disagreement with the imputations which I now make, I beg that the reader will not charge such disunion to any sudden enmity, but justly to revelations which have caused in me, as in nearly every one who has heretofore admired him, a revulsion of feeling which only his vindication after severe investigation can restore.

#### THE REAL PURPOSES OF THE EXPEDITION.

It is now openly charged, and with a basis of seemingly conclusive evidence, that the so-called Emin Pasha Relief Expedition, instead of being a philanthropic enterprise, was in reality a mercenary, if not a piratical undertaking. Let us hope, for the sake of England and America that this claim is untrue. But nothing at this time will justify suppression of the alleged facts upon which this terrible charge has been made. It is maintained that information reached the Khedive of Egypt, and was thence communicated to certain influential persons in England, that during the Pasha's service as governor of Equatorial Africa he had collected a vast quantity of ivory, the estimated value of which was \$4,000,000. Upon receipt of this report a scheme was conceived by certain Englishmen to acquire possession of this vast and precious store. In pursuance of this design, headed by members of the British East Africa Company, Mr. Stanley was engaged to command an expedition, which was to be despatched, however, for the ostensible purpose of relieving Emin, who was represented as being a prisoner in the hands of the false prophet of the Soudan, generally called the Mahdi. In fact, it is said, the expedition was expected to perform a double service, both of which were calculated to enrich those embarking in the undertaking, for besides acquiring the ivory which Emin had amassed by trade with the natives, it was the intention to open and secure additional territory in the richest region of Africa, and an extent that would give the British Company not only possession of the lake region, but a strip of marvelously rich land extending from the Atlantic on the west to Zanzibar on the east. The value of such a landed possession, with exclusive control of the Congo and lake navigation, can hardly be estimated, and shows the scheme for its acquisition to have been probably the most gigantic one ever projected.

It is further asserted by the English press, and corroborated by statements reported to have been made by Emin himself, that when Stanley, after a march of eighteen months from Yambuya, found the object of his search, he was greatly disconcerted and sorely disappointed when he learned that the immense quantity of ivory was at the bottom of Lake Victoria, having been thrown there by Emin to prevent its capture by the Mahdi. Having thus been defeated in his prime object, in order that the ostensible purpose of his expedition might be preserved, Stanley requested Emin to accompany him to Zanzibar, but to this Emin objected, stating in reply that he was in no need of relief; that there was no present danger from the Mahdi, who had retired to the north: that he

felt perfectly secure in his position among so many of his loyal subjects; and that, since great difficulty and hardships would attend a removal of his people from their homes, he preferred to remain with them and to share whatever fate might befall them. But Stanley insisted, until finding persuasive words unavailing he finally used coercive means, and by threats forced Emin to proceed with him (practically as a prisoner) to Zanzibar, that he might give evidence of having *rescued* the Pasha. Whether these charges be true or false, we have no present means of knowing; possibly the facts have been exaggerated, but it is true that Emin did not return to civilization, beyond Zanzibar; but on the other hand, as soon as he recovered from the injuries sustained by his fall, he immediately returned to his former station on Lake Victoria, where he is at this writing.

#### IS TRAVELLING IN AFRICA DANGEROUS?

It is human nature to like sensation. A ghost story is sure to have more readers than the relation of a scientific fact. Newspaper writers understand this so well that the press, like books of fiction, pander to this morbid desire, for it is an axiom that what is wanted enterprise will supply. Mr. Stanley was a correspondent before he became an explorer, and those who read his correspondence in the *New York Tribune*, sent while travelling with the Hancock expedition against the Indians, and the Peace Commission, in 1867, and who afterwards learned of the unreliability of his statements, will better know how to appreciate the stories which he has related about his experiences in Africa. But inaccuracy of statement may be pardoned for the sake of a good tale, especially when it occurs in a newspaper, which is rarely long preserved.

Mr. Stanley went to Africa for pleasure and profit, and he was not disappointed. Pleasure he found in the elegant ease and lordship which travel in that country affords, and profit came in immense measure from the books which he wrote. This leads us to inquire: "Is travel in Africa accompanied by great danger?" Readers of "*HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT*" are pretty well able to answer this question. It is curious that Stanley is about the only explorer of modern times that met with any great perils. Cameron, one of the earliest travellers in east Africa, found very few; Mungo Park was only harassed by Arabs; Burton, Speke, and Grant, who went to central Africa long before Stanley, met with little or no hostility from the natives. Sir Samuel Baker, who is nothing if not sensational, made two trips into the lake region, accompanied by his wife. Livingstone spent twenty-six years visiting all parts of southern and central Africa, and his wife, the daughter of Missionary Moffat, was in the country for thirty years, and both finally died there a natural death; Du Chaillu, Cumming, Anderson, Cavilham, Barth, Swinefurth, Wissmann, Long, and hundreds of others spent many years roaming over African tropics in pursuit of game, and in their books record no dangers save such as they experienced with wild animals. Instead of perils, a white



man of good intelligence has greater security in Africa than in Asia. The natives accept white men as their superiors, and minister to their comfort in every way; instead of painful journeys on foot, the white man is carried by slaves, and at every village he visits chiefs are sure to receive him cordially and to send him several of his choice wives to entertain him during his stay. Africa is, therefore, the paradise of the hunter, the adventurer, the ambitious, and the sensualist. No one can read the history of the most distinguished travellers in Africa without arriving at the irresistible conclusion that, aside from a few dangers from fevers in certain malarial districts, and very rare attacks of wild animals, a journey through central Africa is accompanied by no more perils than a trip over-land to California. No better proof of this fact can be afforded than is presented by the desire of every one who goes into Africa to make repeated visits to its wilds. A few have been killed there, just as a great many pioneers lost their lives on the frontier of our own country, but hostility of the Africans cannot be compared with the savage cruelty and murderous propensities of our western Indians. Indeed, Sir Samuel Baker asserts that a man may travel in perfect security through any part of Africa with no other weapon than a hand-organ.

#### MY TRIP THROUGH SIBERIA.

In 1882 I made an extensive journey through Siberia, going east as far as Irkoutsk, and north on the Yenesei river to Yeniseisk, visiting many mines, for the purpose of investigating the condition of exiles. On this trip I experienced no hardships beyond those caused by a journey of 5000 miles in a wagon, generally met with kindly treatment, enjoyed myself as never before or since shooting wolves on the borders of the tundra, and chasing Siberian wild sheep over the plains. I saw a few pitiable sights, but my individual experience, aside from this, was intensely delightful. The reader may imagine my surprise when I perused the articles contributed by Geo. Kennan to the *Century*, and read his harrowing details of suffering from unexampled hardships, though he went over the same route that I had travelled. But he made a more readable story than I did, because I confined myself to the drier details of fact, having no thought of dealing in fiction. By his tales of privations endured, he excited the sympathy of his readers and established himself as a hero—of the Munchausen tribe. Thousands of people read his papers in the *Century*, and other thousands paid their dollars to hear him lecture, so that he worked up a sensation and received an immense reward for his services in the very productive field of fiction.

Mr. Stanley may in this respect be compared with Kennan, since both exhibit identical instincts and a correct appreciation of public desires. But they are not wholly blameworthy, no more than the shop-keeper who sells gaudy wares which people eagerly buy because they are pretty and cheap; no more indeed than the novel-writer who tells a story to amuse a languid, milk-and-

water reader. True, the motive is different but the returns are the same, for there is profit in neither, though good entertainment.

It is iconoclasm to destroy cherished fancies, and Mr. Stanley shrewdly avoids such vandalism. He, like Du Chaillu, went out to discover a race of dwarfs, and of course he found them; they are doubtless as unreal as are many of the other monstrosities which have long been supposed to have their haunts in African wilds, but we dearly love to have our fancy tickled, and if to the dwarf tale he told he had added that he witnessed a battle between the pigmies and a flock of cranes, and after the contest was over his sight was gladdened by a fair view of a roc carrying away three elephants in its beak and talons, the measure of our gratitude would be overflowing. In this only are we disappointed.

#### DEATH FROM STARVATION.

Readers of "HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT" will remember, and those who hear Mr. Stanley lecture will listen to him tell, the sad story of the indescribable sufferings endured on his trip from Yambuya to Kavalli, and pity follows fast on a description of the horrors of Camp Starvation, where so many natives died, and from which Nelson was barely rescued. Since the revelations made concerning the misfortunes of the Rear Column, and the bandying of charges in violent cross-fire between Stanley and his officers, many doubts have been excited in me which had no place in my mind before. Like everybody else, I was carried away by enthusiasm and lent my voice to swell the cry of praise for the great African hero. But calm examination has succeeded, and I now discover many things which quite obscure the halo which I once saw resting like a crown on Stanley's head. The inquiry presents itself with remarkable persistence: How can the statement be explained, that Stanley lost two-thirds of his entire force by starvation, while among those who thus perished there was not a single one of his lieutenants? In performing his memorable march to Kavalli and back again to the Aruwimi, as already described, he was piloted by native guides who must have known the country, or if he had no guides then his trust was certainly largely imposed in his native carriers. The natives, even though they may not have been familiar with the territory traversed, were undoubtedly better prepared for the hardships encountered than was Stanley, or any of his white men. Africans are natural hunters, they live like our Indians, providing only for the day, and are accustomed to abstinence; in addition to this they are great hunters, and in the absence of game they know how to get sustenance out of berries, roots, and insects, so that a native can grow fat where a white man will starve.

These well known facts emphasize the importance of the question that has occurred to me with such force. Was it Stanley's brutalities that destroyed so many of his native carriers, or is the story of starvation as he relates it, with accompaniments most harrowing, only a fiction calculated to catch the sympathy of his readers and thus exaggerate his heroism? The most cruel



innuendoes have been thrown out against Stanley respecting the loss of the Englishmen who set out with him upon a passage of the Continent (in 1875), but these imputations are iniquitous, they are loathsome, and could only emanate from insane jealousy united to total depravity. I could no more believe that Mr. Stanley is brutish, a wanton or a poisoner, than I can believe the equally damnable story that Barttelot tortured his people to death and that Jameson purchased a little black girl and gave her over to be killed to gratify an inhuman desire to see her eaten. At this the soul of humanity revolts. The most depraved nature would stop short of this, and people who believe in God and in civilization will cry shame at such a libel, by whomsoever uttered. I likewise discredit, because of its apparent unreasonableness, the story of so many of Stanley's carriers and soldiers dying of starvation, because reason tells me that the lieutenants who accompanied him would have been the first to succumb to privations of any kind.

While the casual reader may, without reflection, think I do Mr. Stanley injustice, it is certainly not my purpose, for no one has been a more sincere admirer, as those who are familiar with the praise I have given him in "WORLD'S WONDERS," and in previous chapters of "HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT," know. The serious reflections cast upon him, and the doubts which reason at this late day has forced me to cast upon many of his statements, cause me a grief like that which Laban felt when he lost his idols. And my sincerest wishes now are that Mr. Stanley will be able, after a thorough investigation is made, to substantiate the charges which he has preferred against the officers of the Rear Column, and to relieve himself of the counter accusations brought against him. When this is done and verification is received of many astonishing statements which he has made in the face of improbability, I will lift my hat in grateful acknowledgment, and renew all the admiration which I formerly felt for him, as will tens of thousands of others whose faith is just now like my own.

The charges against Officers of the Rear Column, and the counter accusations of the survivors intimated in the foregoing, and out of which have grown revelations so discreditable to those concerned in the expedition, may be thus described:

#### STANLEY'S CHARGES AGAINST BARTTELOT.

Readers of "HEROES OF THE DARK CONTINENT" will recall the harsh language used by Mr. Stanley in his letter to Mr. M'Kinnon, chairman of the relief Committee, printed on pages 479-80, where he ascribes the sad condition of the Rear Column—as he found the remnants at Banalya—to the irresoluteness of Major Barttelot, and to the refusal of that officer to obey the instructions given him when he (Stanley) started from Yambuya for the Albert Lake. These reflections on the loyalty of the Commander of the Rear Column were cast as well upon Ward, Troup and Jameson, whom he indirectly charged with insubordination, if not cowardice and desertion. These insinuations Mr.

Stanley renewed and more explicitly declared in his book, which provoked Sir Walter Barttelot to a public denial of the charge and to the publication of his murdered brother's diary in refutation of the imputations. To the evidences presented in support of his denials, Sir Walter preferred against Stanley the charge, which is supported by the testimony of Mr. Troup, that when Stanley moved with the advance for Albert Lake he took with him every able-bodied man in the expedition, leaving the Rear Column with the sick, insubordinate, and vicious, and with such loads that it would have been impossible to follow him, however greatly disposed the officers of the Column might have been to do so.

In support of the charges of indecision and disobedience, which Mr. Stanley saw proper to make against his lieutenants left in command of the Rear Column, and irritated by the denials of the officers and their friends, he has sought to substantiate his accusations by preferring or confirming the most revolting criminations, such as strike not only at the character of the living, but which are intended to impeach the honor of the dead and bring civilization itself under arraignment.

#### STANLEY'S ARRAIGNMENT OF BARTELLOT.

Mr. Stanley's specific complaints are pointed chiefly against two of his officers who gave their lives as sacrifices to the really condemnable purposes of the expedition and whose lips may not now make answer to his impeachment of their reputations. Against Barttelot Mr. Stanley makes presentment that he was a martinet, a negro-hater, an insanely vindictive and inconceivably cruel, hot-headed scapegrace. He charges that Barttelot, as chief officer of the Rear Column, spent his time grimacing at the native carriers and practising many forms of refined cruelty to the blacks in his services. His specific allegations are to the effect that Barttelot experimented with some poisons with the intention of administering a fatal dose to Tipo Tib's nephew, a young man named Selim, against whom he conceived a violent antipathy. On another occasion, Barttelot, in a moment of uncontrollable passion, flew at a native woman like a mad dog and fastened his teeth in her cheek. At other times, it is declared, that this maddened officer went about the camp indiscriminately prodding the natives with a steel pointed staff, and that these cruel acts were committed with scarce the semblance of provocation. But his depravity and fiendishness were not limited to injuries thus committed, for on the day before his own death Barttelot is said to have kicked his little servant boy, named Soudi, in the side with such brutal severity that the poor lad died two weeks later from his hurts. Before this crime, however, it is charged that Barttelot ordered a mission boy, named John Henry, who had acted as his interpreter in conferences with Tipo Tib, to receive three hundred lashes, the penalty of death having been remitted to that of flogging at the entreaty of Bonny. The crime for which the lad was made to suffer was the theft of Barttelot's revolver which he sold for food. The punishment was so severe that mortification of the flesh quickly followed, and the boy died in



twenty-four hours. On the evening of the fatal kicking of Souidi, it is alleged that Barttelot prodded a Manyuema man at least thirty times, and ended his fiendish attack by beating the man's brains out, giving as his excuse that the victim had attempted his life a week before. This murder greatly inflamed the natives, who would have dealt summary justice to Barttelot had not Bonny knocked the murderer down, and thus given them to understand that he would be justly punished. On the following morning, July 19th, Barttelot was greatly incensed by a noise made by the natives in their ceremonies of greeting the rising sun. He sent two messengers to order a cessation of the pandemonium, but his commands being disobeyed, in great irritation he went himself, as Stanley maintains, armed with his steel pointed staff, and receiving only a grin of defiance from a woman who was beating a drum, he violently assaulted her. Her screams attracted the attention of her husband, a Manyuema named Sanga, who thrust his rifle through a crack in his hut near by, and shot Barttelot dead.

In all of these accusations Mr. Stanley is sustained by Mr. Bonny, with only slight and unimportant correction of details.

#### TESTIMONY CONCERNING THE KILLING AND EATING OF A GIRL.

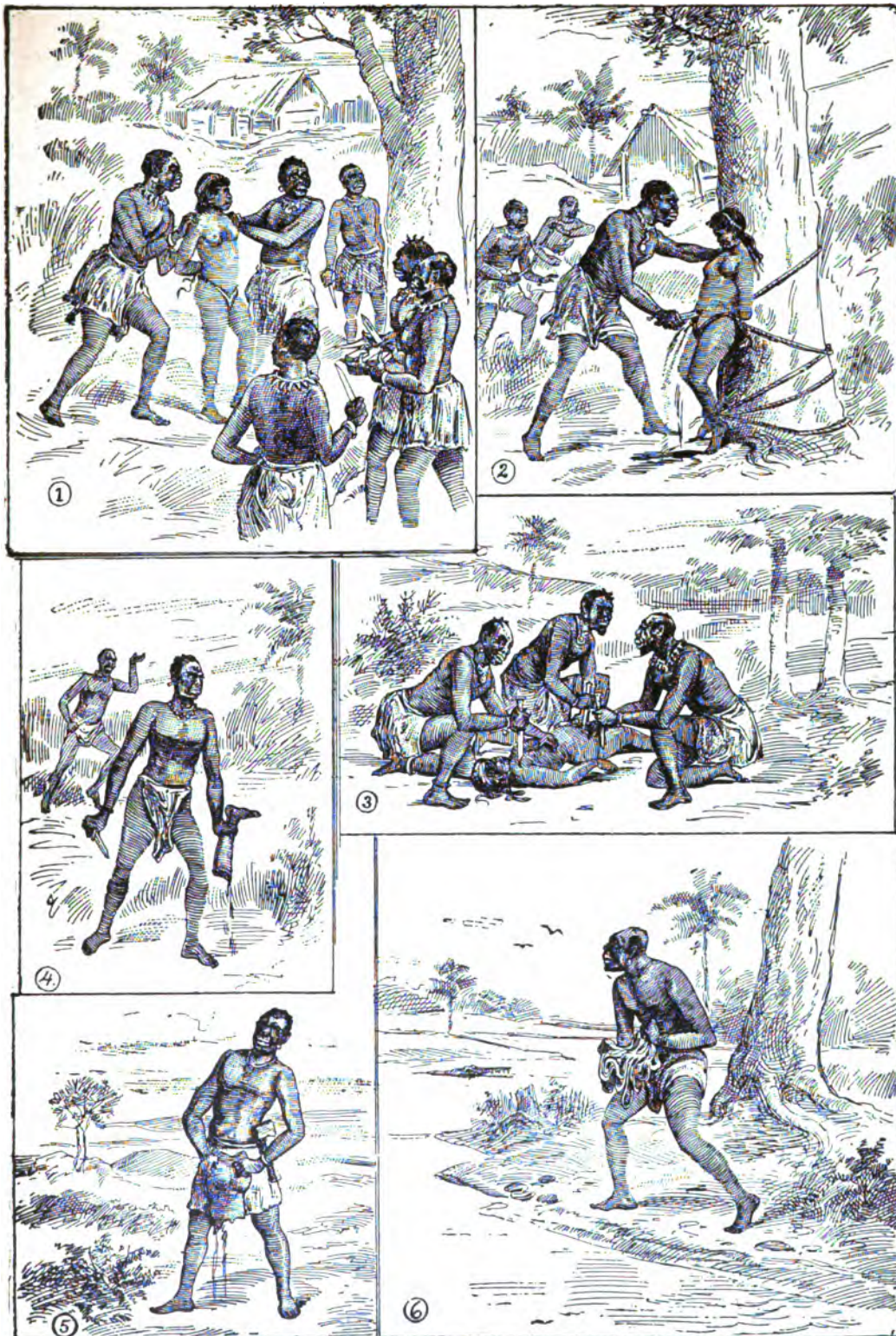
The charges brought against Jameson are a hundred fold worse than those under which Major Barttelot has received condemnation. As Mr. Stanley could only learn of the cruelties of Barttelot through information supplied by those with the Rear Column, so is he confined to the same sources in the testimony which he has to offer for the revolting accusation he makes against Jameson. His charge is, that to gratify a fiendish curiosity Jameson purchased a slave girl and gave her over to the cannibals to be eaten, exacting no other reward than permission to witness the killing and the feasting and to make sketches of the sacrifice and bloody orgies.

Mr. Stanley introduces the testimony of his Zanzibari servant, Saleh Ben Osman, in proof of this terrible charge, whose statement is as follows:

Jameson was visiting Stanley Falls for the purpose of urging Tipo Tib to provide the carriers which he had promised to Stanley. Upon passing through the village of Wakumwa, Jameson asked the head man of the Zanzibaris, Hamadi Ben Dowd, whether it was really true that the natives were cannibals, and ate each other. "Of course it is perfectly true," replied the other. Thereupon Jameson gave the man Hamadi some cloth to buy a young slave. Presently he (Hamadi) came back, bringing with him a young girl whom he had bought. Jameson then ordered him to hand her over to the natives, and told them to kill, cook and eat her. The Zanzibaris flatly refused to do this, and expressed their disgust by going away, but Jameson himself took the girl by the wrist and handed her to her savage executioners. She was stabbed with a knife, and whilst the body was still quivering the natives cut off the flesh from the bones, and having toasted it on sticks over the fire, they ate it. During the whole of the ghastly performance Jameson sat down and made sketches of it. Jameson was accompanied by Maftwa, his boy, Hamadi Ben Dowd and seven Zanzibaris. Tipo Tib, who heard of this upon Jameson's arrival at the Falls, refused to see him for two days, being too disgusted to speak with him."

#### ASAAD FARRAN DESCRIBES THE CANNIBAL FEAST.

Osman evidently speaks as one retailing reports, but notwithstanding such inadmissible evidence, great stress is laid upon his declarations. But this hear-



COPY OF SKETCHES MADE BY JAMESON, ILLUSTRATING THE KILLING AND CUTTING UP OF A SLAVE GIRL.  
(599)



say testimony is supplemented by the statement of another of Mr. Stanley's servants, an Assyrian named Asaad Ferran, who was with the Rear Column, acting as interpreter to Jameson when the latter went to Stanley Falls to solicit from Tipo Tib the services of several carriers that would enable the expedition to move from Yambuya towards the central lakes. The statement, which is sworn to, reads as follows :

Mr. Jameson went to the chief's house, Mohammed Ben Chamese, to visit him. There he saw Tipo Tib and Muni Somoai, chief and leader of the 400 men. Many others were present.

After talking on different matters through Selim Masondi, Tipo Tib's interpreter, Mr. Jameson said that he was very anxious to see a man killed and eaten by the cannibals, because, he said, "In England we hear much about cannibals who eat people, but being myself in the place, I would like to see it done."

That was interpreted by Selim Masondi to Tipo Tib and the other chiefs, whereupon, after consulting each other, they told Mr. Jameson if he wants to see a thing like this he should buy a slave, which he can present to the cannibals, and they will eat him. Mr. Jameson asked how much was the price of a slave, and was told half a piece of a handkerchief. This is six single pieces. He told them to pay the price, and went to the house where he lodged and brought half a piece of handkerchief. He came back with this and handed it to the man, who then went away. In a few minutes he came back, leading a girl about ten years old.

The girl was led by the order of Tipo Tib and other chiefs, at the request of Mr. Jameson, to the native huts to be eaten. Mr. Jameson, myself, Selim Masondi and Farhani, Mr. Jameson's servant, presented to him by Tipo Tib, and many others, followed. On reaching the native huts the girl, who was led by the man who had brought her, was presented to the cannibals.

The man told them: "This is a present from the white man. He wants to see how you do with her when you eat her."

The girl was taken and tied by the hands to a tree. About five natives were sharpening knives. Then a man came and stabbed her with a knife twice in the belly. The girl did not scream, but she knew what was going on. She was looking right and left, as if looking for help. When she was stabbed she fell down dead. The natives then came and began cutting her in pieces. One was cutting a leg, another an arm, another the head and breast, and another took the inner parts of the belly.

After the meat was divided, some took it to the river to wash it, and others went straight to their house. During the time Mr. Jameson had a book and pencil in his hand, making rough sketches of the scene. After this was over we also went back. I went to the chief's house. Mr. Jameson went to his house. On my return Mr. Jameson had the sketches already finished, painted with water colors. There are six small sketches, neatly done. The first, when the girl was led by the man; the second, when she was tied to the tree and stabbed in the belly, with the blood gushing out. Another, when she was cut in pieces. The fourth is the man carrying the leg in one hand and the knife in the other. The fifth is a man with a native axe and the head and breast. The last is a man with the inward parts of the belly. Mr. Jameson, when he finished these sketches, took them to the chief's house and showed them to the people there, with many other sketches.

#### A RETRACTION.

The gruesomeness of this statement, made by one who is confessedly too ignorant to write an intelligent report in any language, certainly bears signs of having been prepared by a practised hand. Its conclusiveness as competent evidence is, however, far from being complete, by reason of the fact that when an investigation of the horrible charge was begun by Belgian officers, this

same Asaad Farran voluntarily made the following retraction of his former statement, also under oath :

SEPTEMBER 25, 1888.

I, Asaad Farran, lately interpreter with the Emin Pasha Relief Expedition, declare most solemnly that the story of Mr. Jameson buying a girl is altogether misunderstood at Lutel. The story is entirely untrue. Such a charge against Mr. Jameson I declare to be unfounded. The six handkerchiefs given by Mr. Jameson were a present, and had no reference whatever to the occurrence with which, through the above misunderstanding, they have been erroneously connected.

ASAAD FARRAN.

Witness :—*P. L. McDermot,*  
*W. Burdett Coutts.*

Subsequently, through whose influence the reader must be left to decide, Asaad Farran subscribed to his first statement, which was signed at Cairo, March 4th, 1890, during Mr. Stanley's sojourn in that place.

It will be observed that there is a striking discrepancy between the statements of Osman and Farran, the former declaring that Tipo Tib was so incensed at Jameson's fiendishness that he refused to hold any intercourse with him, while the latter states that Tipo Tib actually ordered the girl to be prepared for the feast.

#### JAMESON'S REPLY TO THE CHARGES.

The report of Jameson's purchase of the slave girl, to be sacrificed to the ghoulisn appetite of cannibals, was first circulated by Farran sometime in June, 1888, and coming to the ears of Jameson, that gentleman wrote a letter, from which a portion referring to the cannibal story is thus quoted :

STANLEY FALLS, August 3, 1888.

WILLIAM MACKINNON, ESQ.,

President of the Committee of the Emin Pasha Relief Expedition.

SIR :—As you will see by Maj. Barttelot's letter, Asaad Farran, the dismissed Arabic interpreter, has written the most false and cruel statements about me after leaving Yambuya camp. As an officer of this expedition, it is my bounden duty to you to clear my character from such statements. I will tell now the simple narrative of the whole matter, which, much as it shocked me at the time, I little dreamed could be turned to such use against me. My whole time since my arrival here has been taken up with the affairs of the expedition, and I have not had a moment to get the necessary papers signed by the witnesses of everything mentioned by Asaad Farran before a Belgian officer, as I mean to do, and forward them to you. The facts of the case are these :

On my return journey from Kasongo, the day after our arrival at Riba Riba, the chief sent for me. On arriving at his house I witnessed a very curious dance, performed by some Wacasu slaves. He informed me that these people, having had a number of deaths among them, had gone away into the bush for two months, where no one had seen them, and returned to-day, having finished their medicine meeting. Tipo Tib, who was at the house, said : "This dance is generally followed by a lot of people being eaten," and he told me a lot of cannibal stories. I laughed, saying : "Since I have been in the country I have heard many such stories, but I do not believe them."

Another Arab present, who had been very kind to me on my way to Kasongo, told me another horrible story, which I told him flatly I did not believe could happen in any country in the world. He laughingly said : "Give me a bit of cloth and see." I only thought this was another of their plans for getting something out of me, and having some cloth of my own, I sent



my boy for a small piece of six handkerchiefs, which I gave him. Then came the most horrible scene I ever witnessed in my life. Asaad Farran even here cannot help lying. The whole thing happened so quickly that had I wished I could not have sketched it. I had nothing to sketch with, they all being in my house. The girl never looked for help. She seemed to know what was her fate, and never stirred hand or foot or head, except when she had to move to the place of execution. How the girl was obtained I do not know, but I will send you all particulars, signed by the witnesses, as promised.

Jameson died two weeks after writing this letter, and was thus prevented from supplying the statements and witnesses which he promised to do, but in the absence of these, which may yet be obtained if the investigation is pushed, the following warm commendation of Jameson, written by Mr. Wilson, Stanley's secretary, and presumably at the latter's direction, if not dictation, was sent to the widow of Mr. Jameson, under date of February 28, 1890:

Mr. Stanley further begs me to inform you that, at a fitting time and in a proper place, he will endeavor to prove the chivalrous feelings which animated the young gentleman, the noble energy which characterized him, and his high merits as a man and gentleman; and that no one, not even his dearest relative, can regret the irreparable loss which not only the expedition sustained in him, but science and the whole world, more than himself.

Approved:

HENRY STANLEY.

Long before this letter was written, Mr. Stanley had the particulars of the cannibal story from Farran's own lips, and which he evidently discredited until brought before the bar of public opinion by counter charges preferred against him by officers of the Rear Column, and the friends and relatives of those who had died in the discharge of their duties at Yambuya camp.

#### THE POSITION OF JAMESON EXPLAINED.

A reasonable explanation of the cruel, shocking declarations made by Osman, Farran, Bonny and Stanley against Jameson, especially in the light of Jameson's own letter, is not difficult to conceive: The Manyuema have always been regarded as cannibals, but being also the bravest and best soldiers of all the native tribes, the Arabs have employed them, as Tipo Tib does now; and though their customs may have been horrible, the Arabs have never sought to interfere with them, as it would have opposed their interest to do so.

On the occasion referred to, as Tipo Tib stated, having returned from a successful raid, or in celebration of some particular date or event, the Manyuema were about to make their customary offering of human victims, which fact coming to the ears of Jameson, he sought the opportunity thus presented to witness acts of cannibalism. While feasting off the bodies of human victims is by no means a rare custom with the Manyuema, they shrink from the practice before the eyes of those who they know regard such acts with horror; hence, to become a witness to their orgies, Jameson was required to pay what may be called an admission fee of six handkerchiefs, the greed of these cannibals being even greater for bright cloths than it is for human flesh. We may condemn the revolting desire thus manifested by Jameson; but while doing so, let us

not be unmindful of the fact that he was powerless to avert the sacrifice, and that, in seeking a view of the horrible execution and cannibalism, he was only betraying such a morbid desire as is found in ninety-nine of every one hundred persons, as is evidenced by the immense crowds attracted to the public hanging of a criminal. Another extenuating cause may be found in the fact that Mr. Jameson was a scientist, who accompanied the expedition solely for the advantages it offered him to make a study of the insect, animal, vegetable and native life to be found in Central Africa. He was a very rich man, highly esteemed by all the members of the several scientific bodies in England with which he was connected, and who would have profited by his experiences in Africa had he lived to publish them, as was his intention.

The fact that Jameson made sketches of the killing and eating of the slave girl is no evidence that he was instrumental in bringing about her death for that purpose, otherwise a like charge might be made against Ward, who made similar sketches, printed on page 441, representing acts which he himself witnessed. And if he preserved and sent to England the head of a negro who had been shot by an Arab, as Bonny relates, this fact can hardly be urged in proof of Jameson's barbarity, since the many dried human heads to be seen in nearly all the European museums are contributions made by ethnologists and other scientists, who must have been equally as barbarous, though they have not fallen under like condemnation.

#### A BELGIAN OFFICER CONTRADICTS STANLEY.

Mr. Stanley, when first referring to the killing of Barttelot, attributed the cause not only to cruelties which that impetuous officer practised towards the natives, but imputed the murder to immoralities on the part of Barttelot towards the negro women, thus intensifying the disgrace which he has sought to heap upon the character of the dead officer. In answer to this charge, Lieutenant Baert, a Belgian officer who was private secretary to Tipo Tib, and present at the court martial at Stanley Falls summoned to try Sanga, Barttelot's murderer, makes the following statement:

Stanley's statement that any English jury would have acquitted Sanga seems to be an impeachment of the court-martial's fairness. The real fact is that during the trial Sanga himself alleged no other motive for murdering Barttelot than that Barttelot, being disturbed during the night of July 17 by Manyuema musical revels—which he had strictly forbidden—issued from his tent, where Bonny also slept, and discovered that the noise was made by Sanga's wife. He raised a stick against her, whereupon Sanga, in unpremeditated anger, thrust a gun against Barttelot's breast and fired. He was so close that Barttelot's clothes were found burned on his body. This was the version of all the eye witnesses, corroborated by Sanga himself.

The savage needed no stronger motive than the aforesaid slight provocation to murder Barttelot, because he expected that, according to Manyuema customs, he would not be sentenced to more than a pecuniary penalty for taking another man's life. This impression was so much ingrained in Sanga's mind that when he learned he was really going to be shot he shrieked and swooned. This is a truthful account of the trial as recorded by my fellow judges, Captains Hancuse and Bodson, and myself and embodied in an official report, which can be found in the Congo State's archives.



Stanley's insinuations that Sanga was impelled by greater and fouler provocations may rest upon secret reports, which he probably believed true, but which are shown to be false by Sanga's own confession.

In addition to this statement of Lieutenant Baert, the log-book written by Bonny himself, detailing the circumstance of the murder, has been published and reads as follows:

**BONNY'S LOG-BOOK DESCRIBING THE MURDER OF BARTTELOT.**

July 17, 1888.—Maj. Barttelot arrived from Stanley Falls. Two men deserted on the road, taking his bag. He brings letter from Tipo Tib to Minivi, cautioning him against disobedience and reluctance about moving his people forward when ordered by the white man. He also had a letter from Abdullah ordering him to let the Major have 60 slaves, for whom he had brought chains from Stanley Falls. Major Barttelot told me that Tipo Tib had given him power of life and death over these people, and had written to that effect to Somai. Soon after this the Manyuema began firing guns, about 100 going off in five minutes. The Major and I tried our best to stop this waste of powder. Somai said he could not stop them. A Manyuema, who had discharged one of the guns, was caught by the Soudanese, and the Major flogged him very severely. No gun was fired after this during the night. [Signed] W. BONNY.

July 19.—The Major sent his boy Soudi to tell the Manyumas to stop beating their drums about 9 o'clock p. m. It stopped. Just before daybreak the Major again sent his boy Soudi to tell the Manyumas to stop beating drums and singing. The boy went. When he told them the message loud murmurs were heard and there followed two shots.

"I will stop this, and I'll shoot the first man I catch firing," said the Major.

I told him not to go out, but to leave them alone; it was their daily morning custom to sing. I said, "They will soon be quiet." He now called Amaris and three men to go and find the men who were firing. When he dressed he got his revolver and went out with it in his hand. When he came to where the Soudanese were, they said to him: "We cannot find the man who fired." The Major then approached Somai's people, where a woman was beating a drum and singing. While in this attitude a shot was fired through a loop-hole in the house and the bullet passed through him, burying itself in a post supporting the house. He fell dead. The Soudanese who were with him at once began running away. I went out as soon as I heard the Major had been shot, but none of the Soudanese would follow me. I believe they were hiding in their houses because they had no guns to protect themselves.

When I got outside there was a stampede, a screaming, shouting, firing, yelling, something fearful. With the help of Somai and the Soudanese I got the Major's body brought to my hut. Then I proceeded to quiet the people. When I met Sardi, one of the head men of the Manyumas, leading his men to attack me, I asked him if he had come to fight. He said "no," and then I told him to go quietly to his house with his men. He did so. I offered a big reward for the man who shot the Major, and at once dispatched two messengers to Stanley Falls with a letter to Sir Walter Barttelot, reading:

"SIR—I regret to inform you of the death of your son, Major Barttelot, who was shot through the chest this morning by a Manyuema. The gun used was an old Tower 62, large bore. He was shot dead. I buried him just within the forest, sewing him in his blanket and placing green leaves at the bottom of his grave, covering his body with the same. I read the church services over his body and ordered a wooden cross to be put over his grave. I am, sir, your obedient servant,  
WILLIAM BONNY."

To Jameson I wrote:

"DEAR JAMESON—The Major was shot dead early this morning. Push on quickly. Have written S. Falls.  
Yours, "BONNY."

I had now housed 300 loads, buried the Major, quieted the people, opened communication with Stanley, written Sir Walter Barttelot and Jameson, all of which brought this trying day to a close.  
[Signed] "WM. BONNY."

July 20.—Discovered the man who shot the Major. He is named Sanga.

[Signed] "WM. BONNY."

August 10.—Still at Unaria. Released 13 slaves from chains to-day—six men, seven women—then handed them over to the Soudanese to cook for them. Raided Zanzibaris' houses, which resulted in my getting 10 pieces of cloth. Gave a Zanzibari 60 lashes for being in possession of four pieces of handkerchiefs.

"WILLIAM BONNY."

Aug. 17.—Stanley arrived about 11 o'clock in the morning in good health, but thin. He came by water in about 30 canoes, accompanied by 200 followers, some of whom were natives belonging to Emin Pasha. I briefly told Stanley the news, handed him 11 letters addressed to him, and four addressed to Emin Pasha.

"W. BONNY."

#### HERBERT WARD'S CHARGES AGAINST STANLEY.

Before this, the reader has no doubt formed his opinion as to the culpability of the officers of this unfortunate expedition, but before concluding I beg to submit the statement of Herbert Ward in answer to Stanley's charges, and to add that Mr. Ward is sustained by Mr. Troup, who as I write is replying to Stanley's imputations from the public platform in England:

I have always been loyal to Mr. Stanley. By loyalty I mean that where praise was possible it has been given; where censure might have been indulged in it was withheld. I had hoped to maintain this attitude towards the leader of the expedition, but recent events make it necessary for me to depart from this position and deal with matters frankly and fully. It is obvious that in anything I say there is no malice, no sudden expression of ill-feeling. The controversy regarding the rear guard has drifted altogether away from the main point at issue, the question of responsibility for the disasters of the rear guard. Personal matters have been thrust into prominence and side issues have been raised, so that the vital question is altogether obscured. Despite whether or not Jameson bought a slave girl, and a hundred other matters which have been introduced may be useful in assisting Stanley to form public opinion in his favor, the matter in regard to which the whole controversy has arisen is quite distinct, and must not be ignored.

Mr. Stanley's contention is that the rear guard was wrecked by the irresolution of its officers, and their disregard of written instructions. Stanley may or may not be a scrupulous man; he undoubtedly is a far-seeing one, and it is impossible for any one, calmly regarding this matter, to avoid coming to the conclusion that a man of Stanley's character must have had a purpose in making such a charge. It would appear as if he feared one day he might have to answer the charge that has since been made, that he himself was responsible for the disaster. Excepting for Stanley's personal apprehension, there was not any reason why the details of Yambuya camp should not have been left untold. The story of Bartelot's death was unknown to his relatives, his comrades and employers, until Stanley thrust it before the public. There was a generous conspiracy of silence, but Stanley's vanity was alarmed, and lest it should happen that some one should say: "No doubt he did a fine thing, but how about his rear guard?" he collected all the tittle-tattle of the tale-bearers, all the passing trifles of petty individual impatience, and thus equipped he attacked the characters of his subordinates.

#### STANLEY HIMSELF RESPONSIBLE.

Yet all this time he knew that he himself was in part responsible for the catastrophe of Yambuya. Stanley would have us believe that his statement of the natives was above suspicion. In every respect the keynote of the expedition was struck by Stanley, when, after disembarking, he started through the cataract region of the Lower Congo, and left it to officers then inexperienced in African travel, to drive the load-bearers along as best they could, when his peremptory orders could only be carried out by the exercise of great severity. Stanley now talks in a very exalted way of indifference of the officers of the rear guard, but as a matter of fact he himself left the dead and sick behind him from the first day's march. I, who came up a few days afterward, had to



bury some of the dead he had left in his track. Stanley says Barttelot and the rest of us are responsible for the disasters, but who appointed Barttelot to the command of the camp? It is now stated on all sides that Stanley was informed beforehand that Barttelot was a thoroughly unsuitable man for the work before him; yet he took him out, and actually, at the supreme crisis of the expedition, selected this man for a position of momentous responsibility. This is all the more surprising because of the fact that it was a matter of common notoriety that Stanley disliked Barttelot just as much as Barttelot disliked him.

What can be thought of Stanley under these circumstances when he turned his back upon Yambuya, assuring Barttelot he had made a wise choice in selecting him to guard the interests of the expedition during his absence? It was a wise choice in one sense, for Barttelot was a true British soldier, inasmuch as with splendid loyalty to the best traditions of his service, he held sacred every instruction of Stanley's to the last.

Nevertheless, Barttelot was only thirty years of age, hot tempered to a degree, and he frequently publicly confessed to abhorring everything in the shape of a black man. So careful was Barttelot to observe his orders, that in the face of starvation he refused to open the stores of food which Stanley warned him were essential to the expedition. With disease and death around him, he refused to open the cases which meant relief and life. Yet Stanley accuses this man of disloyalty.

#### BARTTELOT OBSERVED ORDERS.

Barttelot obeyed his orders to the letter, and would not give us the stores. He would not touch the medicines because he had been told by his superior officer they were essential to the advance column. There was no other reason for it but the man's stolid sense of discipline.

People will argue that we should have taken the law in our own hands under the circumstances. This, however, would have been mutiny. It assuredly would have led to general bloodshed, for it must be remembered that fifty of our Soudanese, who were the soldiers of the expedition, and were the only armed force in the camp, were under Barttelot's sole command. He had served in Egypt with them, and their feelings towards him were those of extreme loyalty.

If Stanley will come back to the original question which he started, to apportion the blame of the disasters of the rear guard as it should be apportioned, he must take at least a fair share of blame, if blame there be, by his example. On the march up he initiated his staff, in indifference to human suffering of his load-bearers, to a fatalistic acceptance of their lot as mere beasts of burden. By the appointment of Major Barttelot, under all existing circumstances, he deliberately risked disaster, to use no stronger word. By the vague instructions he left he placed Barttelot in a position of bewildering alternatives, and by the alleged agreement with Tipo Tib he put Barttelot more or less at the Arab's mercy.

Let Stanley give up publishing affidavits from negro valets regarding the merits of bad men. Let him answer for himself whether he should not bear some of the responsibility for the disasters of the rear guard. Whatever he may have said or may know in regard to the conduct of individual officers does not affect the main question of responsibility.

HERBERT WARD.

I consider this one of the most valuable books that has been published for years. The subject is one that interests every human being, and I am glad to see it so thoroughly and entertainingly treated by a pen so able as Mr. Buel's. Money spent for this book will be judiciously and wisely invested.—Hon. WM. E. GLADSTONE.

# THE STORY OF MAN:

## A HISTORY OF THE HUMAN RACE.

BEING A FULL ACCOUNT OF ALL THE RACES AND TRIBES OF MANKIND, ANCIENT AND MODERN, WITH DESCRIPTIONS OF THEIR MANNERS AND CUSTOMS, DOMESTIC LIFE, RELIGIOUS BELIEFS AND CEREMONIES, AND MANY WILD ADVENTURES AMONG WILD PEOPLE, CANNIBALS AND BARBARIANS. A BOOK OF THRILLING FACTS, STARTLING MYSTERIES, AND ROMANTIC INCIDENTS IN ALL AGES OF THE WORLD.

BY J. W. BUEL.

The Famous Author of "The Beautiful Story," "The Living World," "Sea and Land," "The World's Wonders," "Exile Life in Siberia," Etc.

This is truly a book of wonders, relating the most remarkable events that have occurred in the history of all races, from the earliest ages down to the present time. It tells how people lived and what they believed thousands of years ago. It gives a history of the origin of races, and shows how they were distributed over the earth. It tells of vast continents, thickly populated, which disappeared in a single night beneath the sea, carrying down their precious burdens of human beings. It tells how nations arose and flourished for thousands of years, and then relapsed into barbarism, and no longer filled a place in the world's history. It describes Prehistoric Man, the Mysterious Mound Builders, the Cave, Lake and Cliff Dwellers, and those curious people who live in trees and burrow in the ground. It tells about the Giants and Dwarfs of history, and describes the Fierce Races of Cannibals that inhabit various parts of the earth. It recounts many wonderful and curious incidents common to men in all ages of the world, showing that through all the multitudes of races and peoples there has run a continuous thread of thought and feeling, the one touch of human nature that makes the whole world kin.

Illustrating and beautifying all these marvellous wonders and singular facts, there is a magnificent array of over 600 splendid engravings and colored plates, giving a Pictorial Panorama of the World and its people, such as was never seen in one volume before. These illustrations alone are worth ten times the price of the book.

## THE RICH FEAST PROVIDED.

This splendid volume contains over 700 elegant double size pages,  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 10\frac{1}{4}$  inches, equal to over 1400 pages of the usual size, illustrated with over 600 engravings and colored plates, representing nations and races of people, and many of the most wonderful and curious incidents in the history of mankind. It is printed from new plates, on very fine paper made specially for this book, and is bound in the most beautiful style. We make our own books, in our own manufactory, and use the profits that other publishers pay to outside manufacturers in perfecting the excellence and beauty of the bindings and the printing. Hence our books are noted for their superior finish and cheapness.

We sell directly to the people, through our authorized agents, so that purchasers have no middle men's profits to pay; and, as we manufacture in large quantities, at actual cost we are able to furnish books to subscribers at Wholesale Prices. The prices for "The Story of Man" are as follows:

- |   |        |
|---|--------|
| No. 1. CLOTH—Best Imp. Silk Cloth, Emblematic Designs, full side and back stamped in Gold and Silver, | \$3.50 |
| No. 2. HALF MOROCCO—Marbled edges, Gold side and back stamp, a Beautiful Edition,                     | 4.00   |
| No. 3. FULL MOROCCO—Gold edges and sides, a Grand, Beautiful and Artistic Edition,                    | 5.00   |

☞ This great and valuable book will never be for sale in the book stores, and those desiring it must purchase from the Agents.



# TALMAGE'S LIFE OF CHRIST, ENTITLED "FROM MANGER TO THRONE"

BY "THE WORLD'S PULPIT SOVEREIGN,"

**REV. T. DEWITT TALMAGE, D. D.**

EMBRACING A NEW LIFE OF JESUS THE CHRIST,

AND A HISTORY OF PALESTINE AND ITS PEOPLE, INCLUDING DR. TALMAGE'S ACCOUNT OF HIS JOURNEY TO, THROUGH, AND FROM THE CHRIST-LAND.

**I**LLUSTRATED with more than 400 superb engravings of the people, places and scenery of the Holy Land, by distinguished artists, and forming a beautiful and complete **PICTURESQUE BIBLE LANDS**.

Among the other illustrations are accurate copies of nearly two hundred of the **FAMOUS PAINTINGS** of the **OLD MASTERS** which have so long enriched the Galleries and Cathedrals of Europe, but were never before published in America. Also a **GRAND PANORAMA OF THE CRUCIFIXION**, in twelve colors, and ten feet in length, showing the city of Jerusalem, the surrounding country, and the people and their costumes as they were on the day of the world's greatest tragedy.



Rev. T. DeWitt Talmage.

## AGENTS WANTED

in every town and township, to whom we give exclusive control and territory. Write for full particulars at once, or, to secure preference and guarantee of territory, better act now, before territory is taken up.

## **PUBLISHERS' ANNOUNCEMENT.**

"FROM MANGER TO THRONE" will be published in one large quarto volume of over 600 pages, size  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 10\frac{3}{4}$  inches, equal to 1200 pages of the usual size.

## **STYLES OF BINDING AND PRICES.**

It would be impossible to sell this magnificent volume at the very low prices given below, except for the assurance of enormous sales. **ORDERS FOR OVER 415,000 COPIES** were placed with the publishers before the first form was printed, and it is probable from present indications that not less than **ONE MILLION** copies will be sold the first year. There has never been so great and universal a demand for any other book. This fact enables us to fix the prices so low as to bring them within the reach of every person, and thus insure the introduction of this splendid, beautiful and good book in every household.

Style A—Fine Silk Cloth, full side and back stamped in gold and colors, . . . . .	\$3.75
Style B—Half Morocco, combed edges, full gold sides and back stamps, . . . . .	4.50
Style C—Turkey Morocco, gold edges and sides, silk headbands, elegant presentation edition, . . . . .	5.50
Style D—Special Edition de Luxe, Levant Morocco Binding, extra superfine finish, . . . . .	10.00

**Sold only by subscription. Agents wanted.** Send for beautifully illustrated circular and full particulars about an agency.

**SEE TITLE PAGE FOR ADDRESS OF PUBLISHERS.**

The borrower must return this item on or before the last date stamped below. If another user places a recall for this item, the borrower will be notified of the need for an earlier return.

*Non-receipt of overdue notices does **not** exempt the borrower from overdue fines.*

Harvard College Widener Library  
Cambridge, MA 02138 617-495-2413



Please handle with care.  
Thank you for helping to preserve  
library collections at Harvard.